HISTORY OF ANCIENT INDIA

By
RAMA SHANKAR TRIPATHI, M.A., Ph.D. (LOND.)
Professor and Head of the Department of History, Banaras Hindu University; Author of "History of Kusumj in the Maurya Campaign".

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS
DELHI VARANASI PATNA
All rights, including those of translation and abridgement are reserved by the Author

Rs. 25.00

Available at:
1. Motilal Banarsidass
   Post Box 1586, Delhi-6.
2. Motilal Banarsidass
   Post Box 73, Varanasi.
3. Motilal Banarsidass
   Bankipur, Patna.
TO

THE SWEET

AND

EVER-CHERISHED MEMORY

OF

MY DEARLY BELOVED WIFE

HEMĀVATĪ DEVI

"A perfect Woman, nobly planned,
To warn, to comfort, and command;
And yet a Spirit still, and bright,
With something of angelic light."

"
PREFACE

The object of this volume is to provide within a moderate compass a compendious account of the history, institutions, and culture of ancient India from the dim ages of antiquity to the establishment of Moslem rule. It has not been planned to meet the needs of any particular class of readers. Its primary purpose is to serve alike students, scholars, and all others, interested in the study of ancient Indian history, as a book of ready use and reference. How far I have succeeded in striking a happy balance in my narrative to suit the requirements and tastes of each one of these groups that approach history from widely divergent angles, it is for competent critics to judge. But suffice it to say here that in the pages which follow every attempt has been made to avoid presenting a mass of the dry bones of historical fact or over-burdening the account with intricate discussions on knotty problems of history, on the one hand, and giving a mere general and readable survey of India's long and fascinating past, on the other. I have endeavoured to tap and utilise properly the available sources of information, literary, epigraphic, and numismatic, and also to embody and set forth in a consistent manner the results of up-to-date researches on different topics and epochs. All the materials have been patiently sifted and critically examined with the sole desire to arrive at historical truth and scientific accuracy; and the unfortunate tendency, manifest in some modern publications, to extol or decry without warrant any of the manifold aspects of India's panoramic story, has been scrupulously eschewed. It is my firm conviction that the historian cannot take sides in a controversy.
For he is neither a propagandist of ideas nor a panegyrist of the exploits of ambitious dynasts of old. He must, as far as possible, eliminate the subjective element, and hold up the mirror of his mind to reflect facts plainly without the least distortion or colouring. Besides, he cannot afford to be dogmatic in his statements, specially in ancient Indian history, where gaps still yawn and the evidence is not only vague, uncertain, and incomplete, but also at times conflicting or contradictory. Such being the nature of the data at our disposal, even the historicity of some kings is indeed a matter of doubt and controversy at this distance in time. Our scepticism, however, appears natural, when we remember that our ancient predecessors as well had a fair measure of it. We may aptly recall here the words of *Viṣṇu Purāṇa*,¹ which run to this effect: “I have given this history. The existence of these kings will in future become a matter of debate and doubt as the very existence of Rāma and other august kings has become today a matter of doubt and speculation. Emperors become mere legends in the current of time—the Emperors who thought and think “India is mine.” Fie on Empires, fie on the Empire of Emperor Rāghava.”

The idea of the work originated a few years ago, but, for reasons which need not be detailed here, it could not materialise earlier. Even now I have not been able to write a chapter on Greater India and another on the general features of our history. I hope, however, to add both in the second edition when it comes out. I have not also been able to give maps and illustrations owing to the forbidding prices of printing materials.

My debt to all those who have written before me on the history of ancient India is heavy. I have studied their works with care and profit, and have drawn upon

¹ Bk. IV, Ch. 24, vv. 64-77.
them where necessary. I owe special obligation to my esteemed friend, Prof. B. L. Sahni, who very kindly went through the proofs at much personal inconvenience, and ungrudgingly gave me the benefit of his scholarship and experience. To my valued colleague, Dr. A. S. Altekar, I am grateful for going through the MS. and making some useful suggestions. Lastly, my thanks are also due to Mr. Ram Sumer for helping me in the preparation of the Index.

The system of transliteration adopted in the text is the one followed in my earlier work, 'The History of Kanauj.' To illustrate, we may mention: Bāna, Rāṣṭrakūṭa, Saśigupta, Soma, Candra, Coḷa, Aṅga, Rigveda, etc. But, as a rule, I have not used diacritical marks in the case of modern place-names and other popular forms.

In conclusion, I crave the readers' indulgence for any blemishes and errors of omission and commission, which may still be discovered by the discerning eye, although no pains have been spared to make the account lucid, accurate, concise, and comprehensive. The subject dealt with here is vast and complicated, and while writing I was often reminded of the well-known lines of Kālidāsa:

कव सुरूपस्वरूप बन्ध: कव वाक्यमिश्रया मति:
किंचिन्दुस्तरे मोहातुपदेवासामिः सागरम् ॥

Vaisākhi Pūrṇimā
April 30, 1942

RAMA SHANKAR TRIPATHI
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

Ep. Ind.—Epigraphia Indica.
S. I. I.—South Indian Inscriptions.
C. I. I.—Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum, Volumes I, II & III.
R. E.—Rock Edict of Aśoka.
M. R. E.—Minor Rock Edict of Aśoka.
P. E.—Pillar Edict of Aśoka.
M. P. E.—Minor Pillar Edict of Aśoka.
Ind. Ant.—Indian Antiquary.
Jour. Ind. Hist.—Journal of Indian History.
J. N. S. I.—Journal of the Numismatic Society of India.
Mem. As. Soc. Beng.—Memoirs of the Asiatic Society of Bengal.
Ind. Hist. Quart., or I. H. Q.—Indian Historical Quarterly.
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

Arch. Surv. Ind., or A. S. I.—Archaeological Survey of India.
A. S. I.—Archaeological Survey of South India.
Cam. Sh. Hist. Ind.—Cambridge Shorter History of India.
E. H. I.—Early History of India (Vincent Smith).
Ox. Hist. Ind.—Oxford History of India (Vincent Smith).
History of Kanauj—History of Kanauj to the Moslem Conquest (R. S. Tripathi).
Bom. Gaz.—Bombay Gazetteer.
Invasion by Alexander—M'Crindle, Ancient India, Its Invasion by Alexander the Great.
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

Ancient India—M’Crindle, Ancient India as described in Classical Literature.
Hc.—Harṣacarita.
Hc. C. T.—Harṣacarita (English Translation by Cowell and Thomas).
G. O. S.—Gackwād Oriental Series.
Sachau—Alberuni’s India (English Translation).
Watters—On Yuan Chwang’s Travels.
Beal—Buddhist Records of the Western World.
Life—Life of Yuan Chwang (Samuel Beal).
Stein—English Translation of Kalhaṇa’s Rājatarangini.
Elliot—History of India as told by its own Historians.
Briggs—History of the Rise of the Mahomedan Power (Tārikh-i-Firishta).
CONTENTS

Dedication .............................................. v
Preface .................................................. vii
List of Abbreviations ................................. xi

PART I

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTORY

Sources
Absence of history—1; Non-historical works—2;
So-called historical literature—2; Foreign writings—4;
Archaeological—Inscriptions, coins, monuments—6,
7, 8; Conclusion or main features—9.

CHAPTER II

THE PRE-HISTORIC PERIOD

Section A
- Palaeolithic age—11.

Section B
- Neolithic age—12.

Section C
(i) The advent of metals—13.
(ii) The Dravidians—14.

Section D
Chalcolithic age—16; Importance of the new dis-
coveries—16; Buildings—17; Agriculture—18; Food
—18; Animals known—19; Use of stones and metals
—19; Ornaments—19; Household articles—19; Wea-
poms—20; Games and weights—20; Toys—20; Spin-
CONTENTS

 nothing and textile—20; Dress—21; Religion—21; Dis-
posal of the dead—22; Knowledge of writing—23;
Art—23; Who were the authors?—24; Extent and
origin—24; Date—25.

CHAPTER III
THE RIGVEDIC AGE

Origin and home of the Aryans—26; The Rigveda—
27; Geographical background of the Rigvedic
Aryans—28; Tribal divisions and wars—29; Political
organisation—31; Family life—32; Occupations—33;
Trade—34; Other features of life—35; Dress and
ornaments, Food, Drink, Amusements—35, 36;
Religion—36; Date—38; Indus and Rigvedic cultures
contrasted—39.

CHAPTER IV
LATER VEDIC PERIOD

Wider geographical outlook—41; Settled life—42;
Tribal groupings—42; Rise of powerful states—43;
The King—44; Political divisions and events—45;
Social changes—48; Position of Sūdras and Women—
49; Occupations—50; Other features—metals known,
coins, dress, amusements, food, writing—50, 51;
Religion and Philosophy—51; Progress of knowledge
—53.

CHAPTER V
THE SŪTRAS, EPICS, & THE DHARMAŚĀSTRAS

Section A
The Sūtras—56; Sūtra form—56; Age—56; Pāṇini
and his great Grammar—56; The Sūtras Proper—58;
Srauta Sūtras—58; Grihya Sūtras—58; Dharmasūtras
CONTENTS

-xvii

-59; Social Orders—59; Royal Powers—60; Taxes—61; Law—61.

Section B


Section C

The Dharmaśastras—73; Society: Vānas—73; The Stages of Life—74; Position of Women—75; The State—76; Justice—79; Taxation—80; Occupations and Trade—81.

PART II

CHAPTER VI

THE AGE OF THE BUDDHA

Section A

India just before the rise of Buddhism—82.

Section B

(a) Democratic or Autonomous clans—85, Details about the Sākyas, etc.—87.

(b) Monarchical states—89.

I. The Vatsa kingdom—89; II. Avanti—90; III. Kośala—Pasingadi, Viḍūḍābha—91, 92; IV. Magadha—Bimbisāra, Ājātaśatru—93, 94.

Section C

Religious movements—96; Career of Mahāvīra—97; Main doctrines of Jainism—99; Life of the Buddha—100; Date of the Buddha's death—101; His teachings
CONTENTS

—102; Relation between Jainism and Buddhism—103.

Section D

Economic condition—104; Village organisation—104; Cities—105; Arts and crafts—106; Guilds—106; Trade and Trade-routes—107; Money—107.

II—SUCCESSORS OF AJÁTASATRU

Udāyin, Dārsaka and others—108; Nandas—109; Origin—109; Mahāpadma—110; His successors—111; Date—112; Appendix—Genealogical table of the pre-decessors of the Nandas—113.

CHAPTER VII

CONTACT WITH THE OUTSIDE WORLD

Section A

The Persian conquest—Cyrus, Darius I, Xerxes—115, 116; Results of contact—116.

Section B

The invasion of Alexander—117; Alexander's cautious advance eastward—117; The Aspasioi routed—118; Nyssa—119; Defeat of the Assakenoi—119; Situation in North-Western India—121; Taxila and Abhisara—122; Poros—123; Alexander and Poros face each other—123; Causes of Poros' defeat—124; Re-instatement of Poros—126; Foundation of two towns—127; Defeat of the Glausai and younger Poros—127; Capture of Pimprama—128; Sangala stormed—128; The Greek army refuses to advance—129; Its causes—129; Alexander's appeal—132; No response—133; Altars—134; Retreat; Scheme of Administration—134; Sophytes—135; Voyage down the river—135; The Siboi and the Agalassians—136; The Malloi and the Oxydrakai—136; Abastanoi defeated—138; Subjuga-
tion of the lower Indus valley—139; Mousikanos—139; Brahmanic opposition—139; Characteristics of the Mousikanos kingdom—140; Pattala—141; Homeward route—141; Conclusion—141; Alexander's arrangements—142; Results of the Invasion—143; Society and Religion—143; Economic condition—144.

CHAPTER VIII
THE MAURYA EMPIRE

Section A—Candragupta Maurya
Ancestry—146; Conditions favourable to his rise—146; Destruction of Nanda Power and date of accession—148; Conquests—149; War with Seleukos—149; Megasthenes and Kauṭilya—150; Administration—151; (a) Military organisation—151, (b) Imperial government—152, (c) Provincial administration—153, (d) Municipal administration—154; Pāṭaliputra—155; Rural government—156; Penal code—156; Irrigation—156; Sources of income and expenditure—157; Megasthenes on Indian castes—157; The Imperial palace—158; His personal life—158; Candragupta's end—159.

Section B—Bindusāra
Candragupta's successor—160; Did he conquer the South?—160; Revolt—160; Foreign contact—161.

CHAPTER IX

Section A—Asoka
Accession—162; Disputed succession—162; The Kalinga war—163; His personal religion—164; Asoka's toleration—165; His "Dharma"—165; Peculiarities—166; Measures for its promotion—167; Humanitarian work—168; The third Buddhist council—169; Extent of the Empire—170; Administration—172; Reforms—173; Society—174; Monuments—175;
CONTENTS

Edicts—176; Estimate of Aśoka—177.

Section B

Aśoka’s successors—178; Causes of the downfall of the Mauryas—180.

Appendix I—Translation of R. E. XII—Toleration Edict—181.

Appendix II—Genealogical table of the Mauryas—182.

CHAPTER X

I—THE BRAHMAN RULERS

Section A—The Suṅgas

Subversion of the Maurya dynasty—183; Who were the Suṅgas?—183; Events—184, (a) War with Vidarbha—184, (b) The Yavana incursions—185, (c) The Aśvamedha sacrifice—186; Extent of the kingdom—186; Puṣyamitra’s persecutions—187; Puṣyamitra’s successors—187; Suṅga religion, art, and literature—188.

Section B—The Kuṇāras

Date and circumstances of their rise—189; A minor family—189; Appendix I—Genealogical table of the Suṅgas—190; Appendix II—Genealogical table of the Kaṇṇas—190.

Section C—The Sātavāhanas

Date of their rise—191; Which name to apply—Andhra or Sātavāhana—192; Origin of the Sātavāhanas—193; Rulers of the dynasty—193; Gautamiputra Sātakarṇī—194; Vaśiṣṭhiputra Śri Puḷāmāvi—195; Yajñaśri Sātakarṇī—196; The Dekkan under the Sātavāhanas—197, (a) Society—197, (b) Religion—197, (c) Economic conditions—198, (d) Literature—198.
 CONTENTS

II—KING KHĀRAVELA OF KALINGA

Chronological position—199; Events—200.

CHAPTER XI

I—THE EPOCH OF FOREIGN INVADERS

Section A—The Indo-Greeks

Revolt of Parthia and Bactria—202; Arsakes, Diodotus I, Diodotus II, Euthydemos—202, 203; Invasion of Antiochus III—203; Conquests of the Bactrian Greeks—204; Demetrius—204; Eukratides revolts—204; Division—205; House of Euthydemos—205; Menander—205; House of Eukratides—207; Heliodorus—207; Antialkidas—207; Hermæus—208; Results of Greek contact—208.

Section B—The Sakas and the Pahlavas

Saka migrations—211.

Section C—The Kushans

Yueh-chi movements—221; The five principalities—222; Kujūla Kadphises—222; Vima Kadphises—222; Kaniska—223; His date—223; Conquests—225; Hostages—225; Extent of Kaniska’s dominions—226; His capital—227; His Satraps—227; Kaniska’s public works—227; His religion—228; The Buddhist Council—229; Rise of the Mahāyāna—229; The Gandhāran Art—230; Kaniska’s court—231; His death—231; Vāsiśka—232, Huvīśka—232; Vāsudeva—233; Decay of the Kushan Empire—234.
CONTENTS

II.—THE "DARK" INTERVAL.

The Bhāraśiva Nāgas—234.

PART III

Chapter XII

I.—THE IMPERIAL GUPTAS

Origin of the Guptas—237; Beginnings of the Gupta power—237; Candragupta I—238; Samudragupta—240; Allahabad Pillar Inscription—240; Conquests—241; Degrees of conquests—243; Relations with foreign powers—245; The Āsvamedha sacrifice—247; His persona accomplishments—247; His Religion—248; Date of his death—248; Rāmagupta—248; Candragupta II Vikramāditya—249; Accession—249; Position of the Empire—250; The Vākāraka alliance—250; The Saka campaign—250; Results of the War—252; Who was king Candra?—252; Fa-hsien’s itinerary—253; Pātaliputra—253; State of Society—254; Religious condition—255; Administration—256; Epigraphic evidence—257; Family—the Prayag dynasty—258; Titles—258; Kumāragupta I Mahendrāditya—259; Date of accession—259; His power—259; The Āsvamedha sacrifice—259; The Puṣyamitra War—259; Religious condition—260; Skandagupta Kramāditya—261; Initial troubles—261; Hūma invasions—261; The Sudarsana lake—262; Religión—262; Titles, Death, etc.—263; The Later Emperors—263; Puragupta—263; Narasimhagupta—264; Kumāragupta II—264; Budhagupta—265; Bhānagupta—265.

Appendix—The Imperial Gupta Line—266, 267.

Chapter XIII

CIVILISATION UNDER THE GUPTAS AND RISE OF NEW POWERS

Section A

A glorious epoch—268; Religion—Brahmanism, Bud-
ddhism, Jainism, Religious benefactions—268, 269, 270; Revival of Sāṃskṛt—271; Development of literature—271; Education—273; Gupta currency—274; Architecture—274; Sculpture—275; Painting—276; Metalworking—276; Causes of activity—276.

Section B—The Vākāṭakas

Their importance—277; Origin and derivation of the name—277; Prominent rulers of the dynasty—278.

Section C—The Hūnas and Yaśodharman

Hūna movements—279; Attack on the Guptas—279; Toramāṇa—280; Mihirakula—281; Yaśodharman—281; Death of Mihirakula—283.

Section D—The Kings of Valabbi

Foundation of the dynasty—283; Origin—283; Growth of power—284; Dhruvasena II—284; Dharasena IV—285; Later history—285.

Section E—The Later Guptas of Magadha

Krīṣṇagupta and his successors—286, 287

Section F—The Maukhars

Antiquity—288; Origin—288; Their branches—288; The great Maukharis of Kanauj—289.

CHAPTER XIV

HARṢAVARDHANA OF THĀNESVAR AND KANAUJ

Importance emphasised by ample materials—291; Ancestors of Harṣa—291; Early position—292; Campaigns of Harṣa—295; Chronology of Harṣa's campaigns—297; Extent of the Empire—298; Administration—301; Military strength—301; Alliances, Harṣa's exertions—301, 302; Civil administration—302; Territorial divisions—303; General features—304; Criminal
CONTENTS

administration—304; Glories of Kanauj—305; Assembly at Kanauj—306; Quinquennial distributions at Prayāga—308; Yuan Chwang’s departure—309; Harṣa’s religion—309; General religious conditions—310; Harṣa’s patronage of learning—312; Harṣa as author—313; Harṣa’s death and its effects—314.

CHAPTER XV

POST-HARṢA AND PRE-MOSLEM NORTHERN INDIA

(From c. 647 A.D. to c. 1200)

Section A—The kingdom of Kanauj

I. Yaśovarman—316.
II. The Ayudhas—Vajrāyudha, Indrāyudha, Cakrāyudha—317.
III. The Imperial Pratihāras—
   Origin—318; Original territories—319; Beginnings of power—319; Nāgabhaṭa II (c. 805-33 A.D.)—320; Mihira Bhoja (c. 836-85 A.D.)—321; Mahendra Pāla I (c. 885-910 A.D.)—322; Mahipāla (c. 912-944 A.D.)—323; Mahipāla’s successors (c. 944-A.D.1036 ?)—326.

IV. The Gābadhavālas—
   Chaotic conditions—326; Origin—327; Candrādeva—327; Govindacandra—328; Vijayacandra—329; Jayacandra—329; Hariścandra—330; Note—Sriharṣa—330.

Section B—Nepal

Area—331; Outside contacts—331; Arisūvarman—332; Later history—332; Buddhism—333.

Section C—The Gādamānas of Śākambhari

Origin—333; Principal rulers—334; Ajayarāja—334; Vigrāharāja IV Visaladeva—334; Prithvirāja III—335.
CONTENTS

Section D—Sind
Area—336; Mcagre information—336; The Rai dynasty—337; Line of Chach—337; Advent of the Moslems—337; Results of contact—338; Later history—338.

Section E—The Sâhîs of Kabul and the Punjab
Turki Sâhîs—339; Hindu Sâhîs—340; Sâmantadeva—341; Jayapâla—341; Anandapâla—342.

Section F—Kashmir
Geographical application of the name—342; Early history—343; The Karkotaka dynasty—344; Dutla-bhavardhana—344; Lalitâditya Muktâpîda—344; Jayapîda Vinayâditya—345; The Utpala dynasty—345; Avantivarman—345; Sañkaravarman—346; Later Utpalas—347; The Line of Pârvagupta—348; The Loharas—348.

CHAPTER XVI
MEDIEVAL HINDU DYNASTIES OF NORTHERN INDIA—(continued)

Section A—Assam
Extent of Kâmarûpa—350; Legendary rulers—350; Early epigraphic notices—351; Bhâskaravarman—351; Later history—352; Pâla aggressions—352; Foreign incursions—353; Religion—353.

Section B—The Pâla.
Early history of Bengal—354; Who were the Pâlas?—355; Gopâla—355; Dharmapâla—355; Devapâla—357; Nârâyana-pâla—358; Mahipâla I—359; Nayapâla—360; Nayapâla's successors—361; Râmâpâla—361; End of the dynasty—362; Achievements of the Pâlas—362

Section C—The Senas
Origin—363; Vijayascna—364; Vallâlasena—365;
CONTENTS

Lakṣmanaśena—365.

Section D—Koliṅga and Odra

Extent—367; Scanty information—367; The artistic achievements of the Keśarīs—367; The Eastern Gaṅgas—368.

Section E—The Kāleucūris of Tripuri

Their lineage—369; Kolkalla I—369; Gāṅgeyadeva—370; Laksīnī-Karna—371; Karna’s successors—372.

Section F—The Candellas of Jejākabhukti (Bundelkhand)

Their origin—373; Beginnings of their power—373; Dhanīga—374; Ganda—375; Kiritvarman—376; Madanavarman—376; Paramārī—377; Candulla cities and lakes—377.

Section G—The Paramāras of Malwa

Who were the Paramāras?—378; Early stages of their power—379; Vākpati-Muṇja—380; Sindhurāja—381; Bhoja—381; Later history of the family—384.

Section H—The Cāṅkya dynasty of Anhilwāda

Founder’s ancestry and career—385; Bhūma I—386; Katna—387; Jayasimha Siddharāja—388; Kumārapāla—389; Later History of Gujarāt—390.

PART IV

CHAPTER XVII

THE DYNASTIES OF DAKŚINĀPATHA

Section A—The Cāṅkayas of Vāṭāpi (Bedami)

Signification of the term Dakśināpatha—392; Early history—392; Who were the Cāṅkayas?—394; Their rise—395; Pulakaśin II—396; Note—The Eastern Cāṅkayas of Veṅgi—398; Pulakaśin II’s diplomatic intercourse—399; Yuan Chwang’s testimony—400;
Unhappy end—400; Pulakesin II's successors—400; Patronage of religion and art—402.

Section B—The Rāṣṭrakūṭas of Mānyakhetā
Extraction of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas—403; Their original home—403; Rise of the dynasty—404; Growth of Rāṣṭrakūṭa Imperialism—406, (a) Govinda II—406, (b) Dhruvā Nirupama—406, (c) Govinda III Jagat-tunga—407; Amoghavarṣa I—408; Amoghavarṣa's successors—411; Kiśṇa II—411; Indra III—412; Amoghavarṣa II—412; Govinda IV—413; Amoghavarṣa III—413; Kiśṇa III—413; Downfall of the dynasty—415; The Rāṣṭrakūṭas and the Arabs—415; Religious conditions—416.

Section C—The Western Cālukyas of Kalyāṇa
Tailapa's descent—417; His career—418 C. 997 A.D. to 1042 A.D.—419; Someśvara I Ahavamalla (A.D. 1042-1068 A.D.)—420; Someśvara II Bhuvanaikamalla—422; Vikramādiṭṭya VI Gṛbhuvanamalla—423; Later rulers—424; The Kalacuri interregnum—425.

Section D—The Yadava rulers of Devagiri
Origin and growth of power—426; Sirighana—427; Later Yadava kings—428; Moslem invasions—428.

Section E—The Kākatiyas of Warangal
Origin—429; Brief account—430.

Section F—The Śilābhāras
Origin—431; History—431.

Section G—The Kadambaras
Derivation—432; History—432.

Section H—The Ganges of Taḷkāḍ
Descent—433; Short account—434.

Section I—The Hoyulas of Dvārasamudra
CONTENTS

Name and ancestry—435; Historical survey—435.

CHAPTER XVIII
THE STATES OF THE SOUTHERN PENINSULA

Section A
Survey of early history—458.

Section B—The Pallavas of Kāñcī.
Who were the Pallavas?—441; Beginnings of Pallava power—443; Pallavas of the Sanskrit charters—444; The Great Pallavas—445; Sīṃhāviśṇu—445; Mahendravārman I—446; Narasīmha-va- rman I—447; Paramēśvara-vārman I—449; Narasīmha-va- rman II—450; Nandīvarman and his successors—451; Administration—452; Literature—454; Religion—455; Art—455.

Section C—The Colas.
Derivation—456; Their territory and towns—457; Early history—457; The Imperial Colas—459; Vījayaśāya—459; Aditya I—459; Parāntaka I—460; Period of obscurity—461; Rājāraja (c. 985-1014 A.D.)—463; Rājendra I Gaṅgai-konda (c. 1014-44 A.D.)—463; Rājadhirāja I (c. 1044-52 A.D.)—466; Rājendra (deva) II (c. 1052-63 A.D.)—466; Vīra-Rājendra (c. 1063-70 A.D.)—467; Adhirājendra (c. 1070 A.D.)—468; Kulottunga I (c. 1070-1118 A.D.)—468; Successors of Kulottunga I—472; Administration of the Colas—473; The king and his officers—473; Territorial Divisions—473; Assemblies—474; Land-survey—476; Sources of Revenue—476; Expenditure—477; Army and Navy—477; The Colas as builders—478, (i) Irrigation works—478, (ii) Roads—478, (iii) Cities and temples, etc.—478; Their Art—479; Religion—479.
Section D—The Pāṇḍyas of Maṇḍura—480.
Origin—480; Pāṇḍya land—481; Early glimpses—481;
Obscure centuries—482; Period of growth—483; Cola
suzerainty—485; Renewed prosperity—486.
Appendix—Yuan Chwang's testimony—489.
Section E—The Coras—489.
Their origin and territory—489; History—490.
General Bibliography—493
Index of names—513
CORRIGENDA

For the daughter of the son of
hakkiya Čief

Read daughter of son of Thakkiya chief

ADDENDA

P. 173, note 1: See p. 183, Appendix II, for the names of Aśoka's queens. That Aśoka was a polygamist appears from traditions and the Queen's edict, in which there occurs a reference to his second wife (cf. 'dutiyāye deviye'), Kāl (ō) uvāki, mother of Tivala (Tivana).

P. 176, note 11: An idea of the immense difficulties, that the engineers of Aśoka had to face in transporting these pillars to distant places, may be had from Shams-i-Širāz, who gives us a vivid description of how Sultan Fīroz Shah removed one of these columns from the village of Toprā (Ambala district, Punjab) as a trophy to Delhi. We are told that the earth at its base was first carefully dug, and it then fell gently over on the bed of silk-cotton prepared for it. Next, it was thickly encased in reeds and raw-skins to prevent any damage and was raised on to a carriage with 42 wheels specially constructed for the purpose. A stout rope was fastened to each wheel, and it was drawn by two hundred men at a time. Thus, the carriage with the full weight of the pillar was pulled by 8,400 men (42×200). When the carriage reached the bank of the Jumna, the monolith was very "ingeniously transferred" to large boats collected there. It was then safely conducted to Fīrozabad and set up near the Jami Masjid with infinite skill and labour. Sultan Fīroz Shah is represented to have removed another Aśokan pillar also from the vicinity of the town of Mirath (Meerut). Both these columns still stand near Delhi on the Kotla and the Ridge respectively (see Elliot, III, p. 350; Smith, Aśoka, 3rd ed., pp. 121-23; Bhandarkar, Aśoka, and ed., pp. 215-17).

P. 210, note: That the Yavanas influenced the development of Indian astronomy is obvious from a number of Greek terms preserved in the works of Indian astronomers. Thus, in Varāha Mihira's Hārā-Sāstra, we have such names for the signs of the Zodiac as Āru (Ars), Hālī (Hilīr), Žau (Zear). Among other terms may be mentioned kandra for jamatra, jāmtra for diametron. At a later period, however, Indians made a great advance in astronomy, and probably taught it to the Arabs.
PART I
CHAPTER I
INTRODUCTORY

Sources

Absence of History

Ancient Indian literature, varied and rich in many respects, is singularly deficient in history. There is no work in all the literary treasures of the Brahmans, Buddhists and Jains comparable to the Book of Kings or the Annals of Livy or the Histories of Herodotus. This is not because India's past is barren of deeds worthy of remembrance. On the other hand, the ages were filled with heroic achievements, great upheavals and dynastic vicissitudes, but, strangely enough, these events did not find any systematic record with due regard to chronology. Whether this curious neglect of an important branch of literary activity was due to a lack of proper historical sense, or to the indifference of the religious orders, that controlled and developed the literatures, towards the fleeting mundane affairs of life, there is no gainsaying that the historian of ancient India suffers greatly from the initial difficulty of the want of genuine works of historiography.  

\[1\] cf. Alberuni: "The Hindus do not pay much attention to the historical order of things; they are very careless in relating the chronological succession of things, and when they are pressed for information and are at a loss not knowing what to say, they invariably take to tale-telling" (Sachau, Alberuni's India, Vol. II, p. 10).
LITERARY SOURCES—NON-HISTORICAL WORKS

The sources of early Indian history may broadly be divided into two classes, literary and archaeological, which are either indigenous or foreign.\(^1\) Let us first take up the former.

**Literary sources**

**Non-Historical Works**

The earliest literature of India is purely of a religious kind. The patience and industry of a multitude of scholars have, however, succeeded in extracting from it useful bits of history. For instance, the *Vedas*—specially the *Rigveda*—have furnished us with fragments of historical information relating to the progress of the Aryans in India, their internal divisions and wars with the "Dasyus" and other cognate topics. Similarly, the *Brahmanas* (e.g., *Aitareya, Satapatha, Taittirīya*) and the *Upaniṣads*, like the *Brihadāraṇyaka* and *Chāndogya*, as also the Buddhist *Piṭakas*, *Nikāyas*, *Jātakas*, etc., and Jain canonical works (e.g., *Kalpa Sūtra, Uttarāśaṇa-Sūtra*) incidentally embody historical traditions that may be utilised with profit. Modern research has further demonstrated how such non-historical sources as the *Gārgi-Upaniṣad*, an astronomical work, or the dramas of Kālidāsa and Bhāsa, or even the chance illustrations of grammatical rules by Pāṇini in the *Aṣṭādhyāyī*, or by Patañjali in the *Mahābārīya*, sometimes afford us welcome light on dark corners of history. But valuable and trustworthy as these casual references are, they are far too meagre to satisfy our curiosity.

**So-called Historical Literature**

We must, therefore, turn to such works as contain what we may call the rudiments of history. The two

Epics—the Ṛāmāyana and the Mahābhārata—represent the first notable attempts of the ancient Hindus in this direction. No doubt, they give interesting pictures of the then religious and social conditions, but as chronicles of political events they seem lamentably full of tale-telling and chronological aberrations. Next come the Purāṇas, eighteen in number, which are said to have been recited by the Sūta Lomaharṣana or his son (Sauti) Ugraśravas. Normally, they should deal with five set subjects, viz., (a) Ṣarga (primary creation), (b) Pratīṣṭhā (re-creation after periodical dissolution of the universe), (c) Vaṃśa (genealogies of gods and Rishis), (d) Maṃvantara (groups of maḥāyuga “great ages” in a Kalpa or æon, in each of which the first father of mankind was Manu), (e) Vaṃśāvartī (histories of old dynasties of kings). Of these, the last topic alone is important for the purpose of history, but it is found in the Matsya, Vāyu, Viṣṇu, Brahmāṇḍa, Bhāgavata and Bhārata only out of the extant Purāṇas. Thus, most of these “collections of ‘old world’ legends” have got no historical value whatsoever. Even the rest contain much that is manifestly mythological and altogether confused from the chronological point of view. They sometimes treat contemporaneous dynasties or rulers as successive, or omit some of them entirely (e.g., the Purāṇas are silent about the Kushans, Indo-Greeks Indo-Parthians, etc.). No dates are given, and even names of kings are not uniformly accurate (cf. the list of Andhra kings). Notwithstanding these defects, the Purāṇas certainly transmit scraps of historical data, and it would not be fair to disparage their authority roundly. Among other early productions relevant to our purpose, we may particularly mention Bāṇa’s

---

1 One may aptly recall here Goethe’s observation: “The historian’s duty is to separate the true from the false, the certain from the uncertain, and the doubtful from that which cannot be accepted.”—Maxims, No. 433.
HARṢAŠĀRAṬA, SANDHYĀKARANANDI’S RĀMAŚĀRAṬA, PADMA-
GUPTA’S NAVASĀHASĀṆKARĀṬA, BILHANA’S VIṆṆAMAṆ-
KĀṆDEVAṆĀṬA, AND JAYAṆĀṆI’S PRĪTHVĪṆAṆI-VIṆṆAṆI. UN-
happily, however, these works preserve very little histori-
cal matter, and are more of literary pieces, being ful-
of elaboration, metaphor, and imagery. The only work in 
SANSKRIT, which can be described as a near 
approach to history, as we understand it, is the RAṆA-
TARANĪṆI of KALHANA. It was begun in 1148 A.D., and 
is based on writings of previous chroniclers as well as 
on royal charters and laudatory inscriptions. KALHANA’S 
account of KASHMIR for a few centuries immediately 
preceding his time is quite reliable, but for the earlier 
period he too is unfortunately subject to strange 
lapses. In addition to these, we cannot omit to con-
sider the evidence of some southern, chiefly TAMIL 
works (e.g., the NANDIKKALAMBAKAM, OTṭRAṆṆI’S 
KULOTTUNGAN-PILLAIṆTAMIL, JAYAGONDAR’S KALINGATU-PṆṆANNI, 
RAṆARṆI-SOṆI-UṬṆI, COLAVĀṆI-CARITAM, etc.); the CEYLO-
Nese chronicles, the DIṆṆAMAṆI (fourth century A.D.), 
and the MAṆṆAVAṆI (sixth century A.D.); and 
such Prakrit compositions as VĀṆṆI’s GADAVAVO and 
HEMACANDRA’S KUMĀRĀṆAṬAṆI; all of which demand 
a cautious and critical use.

FOREIGN WRITINGS

Not less valuable than the above sources are the 
accounts of foreign writers or travellers, whose knowl-
dge of INDIA was based either on hearsay or on actual 
stay in the country for a short time. To this category 
belong men of several nationalities—Greek, Roman, 
Chinese, Tibetan, and Moslem. The earliest reference 
to INDIA is made by HERODOTUS who deposes to the 
political connection of North-western India with the 
Achaemenian empire in the fifth century B.C. Next, 
ALEXANDER’S hurricane campaign in the Punjab and 
SIND formed the subject matter of a number of GREEK
and Roman works by Quintus Curtius, Diodoros Siculus, Arrian, Plutarch, and others; and the value of their testimony can best be judged from the fact that but for them we should have known nothing about the Macedonian invasion, so thoroughly have Indian writers maintained silence regarding this memorable episode. The *Indika* of Megasthenes, the Seleucid ambassador at the Maurya court, is another important source of information about the institutions, geography and products of India. It is now lost to us, but fragments are still preserved in the form of quotations by later authors, such as Arrian, Appian, Strabo, Justin, etc. Similarly, the *Periplus of the Erythrean Sea* and Ptolemy’s *Geography* furnish geographical data of interest.

Like the classical (Greek and Roman) works, Chinese literature is also of great help in reconstructing ancient Indian history. There are numerous notices in it regarding the movements of the predatory Central Asian tribes that profoundly affected the destinies of India; and above all, we have the excellent narratives of Fa-hian (399-414 A.D.), Yuen Chwang (629-45 A.D.), and I-tsing (c. 675-93 A.D.)—three of the most distinguished pilgrims, who visited India in search of knowledge and with the desire to worship at the sites hallowed by the memory of the Buddha. Further, the works of the Tibetan Lāmā Tārānātha, the *Dulva* and *Tangyur*, etc. may also be profitably consulted.

Then come the Moslem authors, who inform us how step by step the armies of Islam conquered India and introduced another vigorous factor into Indian polity. The most celebrated of such writers was Alberuni, a man of versatile intellect and a scholar of Sanskrit. He followed in the train of Mahmūd’s invasions, and wrote in 1030 A. D. the *Taḥkīk-i-Hind,*

1 cf. The *Fo-kwo-si.
2 cf. The *Si-yu-ki.*
a mine of information on India and her peoples. Still earlier Moslem writers were Al Bilāduri, Sulaimān (Sīltīlat-ul-Tawārīkh), and Al Masʿūdi (Muraq-ul-Zahāb). Among other Moslem works, we may mention: Hassan Nizāmī’s Tā’ī-ul-Maāsīr, Mirkhond’s Rawzat-us-Safa, Khond Mīr’s Habīb-us-Siyar, Firishta’s Tārīkh-i-Firishta, Nizāmuddin’s Tabaqāt-i-Akbarī, Minhājuddin’s Tabaqāt-i-Nasīrī, Al Uthbī’s Tariqāt-i-Yamīnī, Ibn-ul-Athrī’s Al-Tārīkh-ul-Kāmil.

The observations and writings of these foreigners are particularly valuable not only for the light they throw on the political events, society, manners, geography, and religion of ancient India, but also because they establish synchronisms in the troubled sea of Indian dates. Indeed, the identification of Sandrakottos with Candragupta Maurya has been regarded on almost all hands as the sheet-anchor of Indian chronology.

Archaological sources

Inscriptions

Where the literary sources are reticent or obscure, inscriptions fortunately come to our rescue. Many thousands of them, the earliest belonging to about the fourth or fifth century B.C., have been unearthed, and perhaps a large number still await the archaeologist’s spade. They are found engraved on rocks, pillars, stone tablets, metal plates, caves, etc., and are couched in the languages current at different periods and localities—Sanskrit, Pāli, mixed dialects, or the languages of Southern India, viz., Tamil, Telugu, Malayalam, and Kanarese. Some of them are of considerable literary merit too, being either in prose or verse or a combination of the two. The majority of inscriptions are in the Brāhmi script, written from left to right; but a good

1 cf. the Piprāwā (Basti district) Vate Stūpa inscription (J.R.A.S., 1898, pp. 573-88), and the Bādhi (Ajmer) inscription,
number are also incised in Kharoṣṭhī running, like Arabic and Persian, from right to left. Their decipherment, which is a marvel of scholarship, reveals that their object is to record a donation, public or private, or to commemorate a great event, or the exploits of a conqueror. The edicts of Aśoka, containing his ethical exhortations, are, of course, a class by themselves. The subject-matter of inscriptions is indeed very varied. There are even Sanskrit plays (e.g., at Dhār and Ajmer) and musical rules (e.g., at Kudimiyāmalai, Pudukotta State) recorded on stone. The importance of these documents can hardly be over-emphasised. They are extremely useful in fixing dates, and often regulate and supplement what we learn from literature and other sources. For instance, in the absence of such epigraphic evidence the veil of oblivion would hang heavily even on rulers like Kharavela or Samudragupta, and our knowledge of the medieval Hindu dynasties would be altogether incomplete. Sometimes foreign inscriptions, too, unexpectedly lend us aid. Thus, the Boghaz-Koi (Asia Minor) inscriptions, which mention Vedic gods, probably testify to the movements of Aryan tribes. We have elsewhere referred to the contact of India with ancient Iran, and curiously it is confirmed by inscriptions discovered at Persepolis and Naḵš-i-Rustam. Similarly, inscriptions throw a flood of light on the political and cultural relations between India and the Far East in early times.

Coins

The next guides, we may appeal to, are coins. Like the inscriptions, they corroborate the information

¹ They are respectively known only from the Hādihīamphā and the Allahabad Pillar inscriptions.
² The Behistun record does not, however, include India in the list of provinces ruled by Darius.
derived from literature, and often modify or amplify it. They are of various metals—gold, silver, copper, or alloy, and contain legends or simple marks. Those with dates are doubtless very valuable for the framework of Indian chronology, but even undated and anonymous ones yield fruitful results when we carefully consider their fabric and type. Coins are almost our sole evidence with regard to the Indo-Scythian and Indo-Bactrian kings—Indian authors having completely ignored the latter except Menander. Coins shed remarkable light on the existence of *ganas* (autonomous communities) in ancient India, and also on the religious predilections of certain monarchs (e.g., of Kaniska) and their personal accomplishments (e.g., of Samudragupta). The purity of the metal undoubtedly reflects the economic conditions of the time, and the provenance of the coins helps us in fixing the limits of a kingdom. But the latter must be applied cautiously. For the discovery of Roman coins in South India would by no means indicate an extension of Roman power or political influence in India. It only recalls the famous lament of Pliny over the drain of Roman gold to this country in exchange for articles of luxury and spices, etc.

**Monuments**

Last, but not the least, are the monuments. They are not directly concerned with political history, but these temples, *Stūpas*, and monasteries (*vihāras*) vividly depict the artistic achievements and religious devotion of the people and princes alike. The monumental remains in foreign lands open to us a rarer unknown chapter of India’s ancient glory. Shrines, dedicated to Śiva, on the Dieng plateau (Java), and the vast panorama of bas-reliefs on the walls in the colossal temples
at Boro-Bodur and Prambanan (central Java), as also the remarkable ruins at Angkor Vât and Angkor Thom (Kambuja), reveal the hand of Indians, and show that they had migrated to the Far East and spread their power and culture there.\(^1\) Even for purposes of chronology, the evidence of monuments cannot be entirely despised, for experts have demonstrated how important conclusions follow a close study of the stratification of buildings. Further, it may not be out of place to add here that sculptures and paintings (e.g., at Ajantâ) occasionally illumine our path where we might otherwise have walked with faltering steps.

**Conclusion or Main Features**

Such, in brief,\(^2\) are the sources for the resuscitation of India’s early past. The most striking feature, when compared with modern history, is the meagreness of our materials and the wide range over which they lie scattered. Accordingly, the historian must work like a miner with the pick and shovel of his perseverance and critical judgment to get at the gold of facts without the dross of courtesies exaggerations and poetic embellishments. Quite often rocks intervene in the shape of conflicting claims, utter absence of dates, or prevalence of several eras at different periods and places.\(^3\)

---

\(^1\) See Dr. R. C. Majumdar, *Ancient Indian Colonies in the Far East*, Vol. I, Champa; *Savarpadipa*; and publications of the Greater India Society; Dr. B. R. Chatterji, *Indian Cultural Influence in Cambodia* (Calcutta, 1928); *India and Java* (Calcutta, 1933); H. G. Q. Wales, *Towards Angkor*, and works of French and Dutch scholars.

\(^2\) Literary works and inscriptions, referred to above, are merely illustrative. All the available sources, ancient as well as modern, have, however, been discriminately utilised by us.

\(^3\) See Cunningham, *Book of Indian Eras*. We know of about a score of ancient systems of reckoning.
and it is only after overcoming these difficulties that we can achieve the object of building a connected and consistent account of ancient India. And here we must also bear in mind that the North is the predominant factor in our history, having been the centre of large empires that rose like waves in the sea and soon broke up into nothing. Aspirants to supreme dignity turned longing eyes across the Vindhyas, but never did India completely come under one sovereign umbrella, and even in the heyday of the Mauryas the extreme South remained outside the Imperial ambit. This lack of political unity in ancient India, despite the fact that she was indisputably a geographical and cultural unit, is the weakest point of her history, and, therefore, dynastic wars and territorial aggrandisements absorb our interest and attention to a greater degree than her achievements in the domain of religion, art, and literature.

1 Dr. R. K. Mookerji, The Fundamental Unity of India (Longmans, Green & Co., 1914).
CHAPTER II
SECTION A
PALEOLITHIC AGE

The story of the early man in India is largely shrouded in mystery. The common belief is that the remotest past represented the Satyuga—an age when man lived in an ideal state of happiness, free from misery, want, and decay. Sober history unfortunately does not know of any such golden period. On the other hand, all indications point to the fact that primitive man was sunk in the darkness of ignorance and barbarism, and that he marched towards the light of civilisation only by slow stages. So far as our evidence goes the earliest inhabitants of India were perhaps the paleolithic (derived from Greek words signifying ‘old stone’) men. They were a savage people who sought shelter under trees and in natural caverns.\(^1\) They had no idea of cultivation, and probably did not quite know how to make a fire. They could not turn out pottery, and were ignorant of the use of metal. They lived on the chase and on nuts, roots, and fruits afforded by nature. Their implements for purposes of peace and of war against wild beasts and other denizens of water and forests were chipped in stone, and were of crude workmanship.\(^2\) It is noteworthy that a majority of them are

\(^1\) Certain caves in the Kurnul district are believed to have been tenanted by paleolithic men (V. Rangacharya, *Pre-Musalman India*, Vol. I, p. 48).

\(^2\) Palaeolithic implements have been divided into ten classes—axes, arrow-heads, spears, digging tools, circular hurling-stones,
made in a peculiar kind of rock known as quartzite. Of course, where this material was not available other hard rocks were used. Besides some sites in the Dekkan, the districts of Madras, Cuddapah, and Chingleput in South India have yielded a rich harvest of such tools. Sometimes they were also made of bone and wood, but being perishable they have all disappeared. Lastly, these men did not construct tombs to bury their dead, who were perhaps left to be devoured by animals and birds.

SECTION B
NEOLITHIC AGE

The next stage in the progress of man in India, as elsewhere, was reached when the use of the rough stone implements was not quite discarded, but most of them were carefully dressed and polished. They were now turned into highly finished objects of diverse and complex forms to meet a variety of requirements. These neolithic (from a Greek word meaning ‘new stone’) men had made considerable advance towards civilisation. Apart from natural shelter in rocks, they constructed dwellings, perhaps “huts of wattle and thatches, daubed with clay,” for themselves. They knew how to produce a fire and the art of cooking. They occupied themselves with fishing and hunting,

collectors, knives, scrapers, cores, hammer-stones and (probably) strike-a-lights (?). "Ibid., pp. 52-13.

1 Catalogue of Pre-historic Antiquities in the Government Museum, Madras (1901); Notes on the Ages and Distribution of Indian Pre-historic Antiquities (Madras, 1916). Col. Bruce Foote has made a special study of Pre-historic artifacts in India. See also Panchanan Mitra, Pre-historic India, (Calcutta, 1923); A. C. Logan, Old Chipped Stones of India, (Calcutta, 1906); P. T. S. Aiyangar, The Stone Age in India; V. Rangacharya, Pre-Musulman India, etc.

2 For their numerous types, see Pre-Musulman India, I, pp. 124-25.
tended flocks of domesticated animals, and also began the cultivation of land. Their food was simple, consisting of game, forest produce, vegetables, milk, honey, wild grains, etc.; and the dress of these neolithic men was probably leaves, barks of trees, and skins. They made pottery, at first by hand, but afterwards the wheel was used. The earthenware were either plain or painted and decorated with representations of flowers, leaves, etc. The neolithians chose the tough trap rock for their weapons of offence and defence, but things of domestic use were made of other materials of various colours. They buried their dead and erected tombs, as is evident from some pre-historic skeletons discovered in the district of Mirzapur. On the other hand, the finds of funeral urns, meant for the ashes of the dead, would show that cremation too was not unknown. Presumably they worshipped spirits of nature as embodied in trees and stones, and propitiated them by bloody sacrifices and offerings of food and drink. Further, in the caves of the Vindhya hills, there are neolithic “cup-marks” and “ruddle drawings,” which give us some idea of the artistic efforts of these men. All these features indicate that the palaeolithic and neolithic men must have been separated by a wide gap, maybe of centuries. Indeed, some scholars even deny that the latter were the descendants of the former. But our evidence being imperfect, it would be better not to dogmatise on this point. It is, however, certain that the neolithic culture was widespread, as remains of this period have been found almost all over the country, particularly in Bellary, Salem, Karnul, and other districts of the Madras Presidency.

SECTION C

I. THE ADVENT OF METALS

After many centuries, perhaps, the neolithic man
in India learnt the use of metals. Gold was probably his earliest discovery, but it served as a material for ornaments only. His implements and weapons were made of other harder metals. The remarkable finds in a large number of ancient sites prove that in South India stone was directly superseded by iron, whereas in North India axes, awls, swords, spearheads, daggers, harpoons, etc., were at first made of copper, and it was in turn followed by iron. Hoards of such copper implements have been discovered "all across Northern India almost from the Hooghly to the far side of the Indus, and from the foot of the Himalayas to the Cawn- pore District." The times when the use of these metals became general are known as the Iron and Copper ages. It is, however, important to remember that, unlike other countries, there are no traces in India, except in Sind, of a Bronze Period intervening between the Neolithic and Iron ages. Bronze, which is an alloy of copper and tin,\(^1\) is harder than pure copper, and is doubtless better suited for the manufacture of weapons, but the early men in India somehow did not make it the ordinary material for use. The few implements of this metal, that have been discovered in Jubbulpur, were, in the opinion of antiquarians, either experimental or of foreign origin. And bowls and other objects, found in South Indian cemeteries, were simply articles of luxury meant for domestic purposes, and would hardly indicate the existence of an age when bronze tools were commonly used.

II. THE DRAVIDIANS

The Dravidians, so called from the Sanskrit term Draviḍa, were one of the earliest cultured races of India,

\(^1\) Generally, the ratio of alloy in bronze is nine parts of copper and one of tin.
THE DRAVIDIANS

Unhappily, the problem of their origin is still a puzzle, almost defying any definite solution. A number of scholars strongly affirm that they were the descendants of the primitive inhabitants of India, who in course of time had ascended up the ladder of civilization. On the contrary, others are of opinion that they were foreign immigrants into this country from the Tibetan plateau or from the "Turanian homeland of Central Asia." Western Asia is, however, generally supposed to have been their original abode, and the similarity of the Dravidian and Sumerian ethnic types undoubtedly lends some colour to this view. In this connection we must not omit to take into account Brāhū, the island of Dravidian speech in Baluchistan. It is believed that it represents the tongue of those who lingered on behind, while the main body advanced towards Hindustan through the mountain passes. This looks plausible enough, although sometimes a different conclusion is drawn from the existence of Brāhū that there was a Dravidian overflow from India into Baluchistan. Whoever the Dravidians may have been,¹ it is certain that they were an important element of population both in Northern and Southern India. Their languages still predominate in the South, but "Dravidian characteristics have been traced alike in Vedic and Classical Sanskrit, in the Prakrits or early popular dialects, and in the modern vernaculars derived from them."² The Dravidians were conversant with the use of metals, and their pottery was of an improved type. They knew agriculture, and were perhaps the earliest people to build dams across rivers for irrigation purposes. They constructed houses and fortifications, and their villages were ruled by petty chiefs.

¹ Many western scholars favour the view that the Dravidians belonged to the Mediterranean race. See e.g., Mr. J. Kennedy, J.R.A.S., 1898, pp. 249, 261.
CHALCOLITHIC AGE

As observed by Dr. L. D. Barnett, Dravidian society was “to some extent patriarchal,” and their religion was generally “dark and repulsive.” They worshipped the Mother Goddess and a host of spirits, often with bloody human sacrifices, and the emblems of generation. Presumably, the Dravidians were identical with the “Dāsas” or “Dasyus” of the Rgveda, and we shall, therefore, hear more about them when we come to the period of the Aryans.

SECTION D

CHALCOLITHIC AGE

Importance of the New Discoveries

So far we were almost groping in the dark. We now see the twilight of Indian civilisation. The remarkable archeological discoveries at Harappa in the Montgomery district and Mohenjo-daro in the Larkana district, besides other sites in the Punjab, Sind (like Canhu-daro, Jhūkar-daro), and Baluchistan (e.g., Nāl, Kelat State), make it abundantly clear that several centuries before the period of the Rgveda, there were busy centres of life and activity along the course of the river Indus. They show that the people possessed a high degree of culture, which was similar to, and in many respects more advanced than that of contemporary Mesopotamia, Elam, and Egypt. Chalcolithic is the name usually given to this age—an age “in which arms and utensils of stone continue to be used side by side with those of copper and bronze.” To get a glimpse into this remote past, we must take note of the relics unearthed at Mohenjo-daro, which are essentially akin to those found at other

1 Antiquities of India, p. 4.
2 Sir John Marshall, Mohenjo-daro and the Indus Civilization (3 volumes); K. N. Dikshit, Pre-historic Civilization of the Indus Valley (Madras, 1939); N. Law, Ind. Hist. Quart., March, 1932 (Vol. VIII,
BUILDINGS

places. The picture may be dim, but the outlines are sufficiently firm.

Buildings

Mohenjo-daro or the 'City of the Dead' is at present a heap of ruins. It is difficult to surmise what brought about its destruction. Earthquakes, inundations, the Indus altering its course, climatic changes—any of them may account for its final abandonment or disappearance. But it is evident from the excavations, which have been carried out down to the subsoil water, that the site must have been occupied for centuries. It was a prosperous city, well-planned and having wide streets and lanes at regular intervals. The buildings, considerably varying in size, appear to have been plain but dignified. Stone not being easily obtainable, walls were raised of burnt brick, laid in mud or in both mud and gypsum mortar. Crude or sun-dried bricks were reserved for foundations and terraces, where the elements could not do much damage. There were stairways leading to upper storeys, and windows and doors for admitting light and air. Bath-rooms and circular brick-wells were important features of most houses. The system of drainage, public or private, was remarkable. Dust-bins and rubbish chutes indicate the extreme care taken in matters of conservancy. On the whole, the people were flourishing, and even ordinary dwelling houses were provided with necessary conveniences. The larger structures were perhaps public property. One of them, a spacious pillared hall of the Intermediate

---

1 Was this lack of ornamentation in houses due to simplicity of tastes? Or, did the owners deliberately avoid outward marks of possessing wealth to escape the burden of extra taxes?

2
Period, may have been a shrine, although no images have been found there. The most striking of all remains is, no doubt, a vast hydropathic establishment—a brick Bath, 39 ft. × 23 ft. × 8 ft., with water-tight walls and flights of steps at the ends and other subsidiary verandahs, galleries and rooms. It was filled with water from a well nearby. Its drain with a corbelled roof, more than six feet in height, deserves particular mention. Another accessory to the great Bath is probably a hammâm or hot-air bath, pointing to the existence of “a hypocaustic system of heating.”

Agriculture

Little do we know about the agriculture of the Indus peoples, although the existence of such big cities as Mohenjo-daro and Harappa—clearly indicates that food must have been available in an ample measure. Perhaps the grains they cultivated were wheat and barley, specimens of which have been found there. It is uncertain whether the plough had replaced the hoe, or the latter was still in use. Scholars believe that in olden times Sind received copious rainfall, and this, as also the presence of a great river, must have made the problem of irrigation easy of solution.

Food

Besides the above cereals and dates (stones of which have been discovered), it appears from half-burnt shells and bones and offerings to the dead that the Indus people used as food pork, beef, mutton, poultry, fish, and the flesh of other water animals. Perhaps milk and vegetables were also included in the dietary.

1 The elaborate system of drainage and the use of burnt bricks for the exposed parts of buildings point to the same conclusion.
2 Indus. Besides, there was the Mihran, which dried up in the 14th century A.D.
Other Aspects of Life

Animals Known

They knew several kinds of domesticated animals, of which bones of bull, sheep, pig, buffalo, camel, and elephant have been recovered; while those of the dog and horse, having been found near the surface, may belong to later times. The wild animals familiar to them were rhinoceros, bison, monkey, tiger, bear, hare, etc., which are depicted on seals and copper-tablets.

Use of Stones and Metals

Stone was rare in this region. It had accordingly to be imported from other places for door-sockets, saddle querns and millers, statuettes, cult objects, etc. The metals known to the Sindhu people were gold, silver, copper, tin, and lead, which were used for a variety of purposes. The discovery of bronze in the earliest layer at Mohenjo-daro proves beyond doubt that it was then in use there. Iron has, however, not been found.

Ornaments

Ornaments, chiefly necklaces, ear-rings, anklets, and girdles of beads, were commonly worn by men and women of all classes. The rich made them of gold, silver, ivory, faience and other semi-precious stones like lapis lazuli, jasper, carnelian, agate or onyx; whereas those for the poor were made of copper, bone, shell, and terra-cotta.

Household Articles

Copper and bronze seem to have superseded stone as material for household implements and utensils. Mostly, however, they were earthenware. Quite a large number of such bowls, dishes, cups, saucers,
vases, basins, and stone-jars of different forms have been discovered. Generally the pottery was wheel-made, and was painted and sometimes "glazed."

**Weapons**

Likewise copper and bronze had replaced stone for weapons of war or of chase. People were acquainted with maces, axes, daggers, spears, bows, arrows, and slings. Defensive weapons like shields, helmets, and armour were perhaps unknown, nor is there any trace of the sword.

**Games and Weights**

Stones were also used for weights, marbles and dice, which are among the most remarkable relics discovered. It is interesting to note that, like the Vedic Aryans, the Indus people were fond of dice. The smaller weights, of chert or slate, are cubical, whereas the heavier ones are conical in shape. It is said that they are made with "greater accuracy and consistency than those of Elam and Mesopotamia."

**Toys**

Generally they were clay models of birds, animals, men and women, rattles, or representations of carts. These playthings are sometimes useful as depicting the actualities of life.

**Spinning and Textile**

Spinning must have been freely practised in the houses of Mohenjo-daro, as would appear from the large find of spindle-whorls. Those of the rich were made of faience; the poor used the cheaper pottery and shell. Wool was used for warmer textile, and
cotton for the lighter one. The latter, found adhering to a silver vase, appears on careful examination by experts to resemble the present-day coarser Indian variety with its "typical convoluted structure."

**Dress**

The dress of the people, like their personal features, must have varied. A statue, for instance, represents a male figure wearing a long shawl, drawn over the left shoulder and under the right, so as to leave the right arm free. The nude statues must not be taken to indicate that nudity was prevalent. They may have been meant for religious purposes.

**Religion**

Our scanty knowledge of the religion of these early peoples is derived from the seals, copper tablets, and figurines of metal, terra-cotta, and stone. The most prominent deity is the Mother or Nature Goddess, whose worship was so common in ancient times in all countries from Persia to the Aegian coasts. This cult found a fruitful soil in India, and out of it developed the worship of Sakti with all its elaborate rites. Further, a seal portrays a highly conventionalised figure of a three-faced male god, seated Yogi-like, with animals on each side, who has been recognised as the prototype of the historic Siva. If this conjecture be correct, Saivism may legitimately claim to be the oldest living religion. That the worship of the phallic emblems—the linga and the yoni—was also prevalent is clear from the discovery of scores of aniconic objects of stone together with ring-stones, whereas the existence of

---

1 From immemorial antiquity, India is the home of the worship of Prakriti or later Sakti, goddess Pritib, and a host of Grīmadavatas (Ambā, Māhā, etc.)
Tree-worship and Zoolatry or Animal worship is evidenced by certain representations on seals. Popular Hinduism of today contains many of these elements, thus furnishing a remarkable proof of the extraordinary continuity of Indian culture through the ages.

Disposal of the Dead

An examination of the data available, both at Mohenjo-daro and Harappa, shows that probably there were then three methods of disposing of the dead: (a) complete burial, (b) burial after exposure of the body to birds and beasts, (c) cremation followed by burial of the ashes. The discovery of cinerary urns and jars, goblets or vessels with ashes, bone, and charcoal may, however, suggest that during the flourishing period of the Indus valley culture the third method was generally in vogue. At Mohenjo-daro, about a score of skeletons, some in public streets and others in a room, have been unearthed, but there is no trace of a cemetery or burial place. At Harappa, on the other hand, a cemetery has been brought to light in the plain level ground near the mounds. It is noteworthy that the remains of the dead at the latter site are associated with a distinct type of pottery decorated with vegetable patterns and peculiar animal designs.

Knowledge of Writing

One of the most interesting items of information we get about the Indus people is in regard to their acquaintance with some sort of writing. Of course, no regular documents on stones or baked clay tablets have been found. But a large number of seals

and sealings, having excellent representations of unicorns and bulls and other objects, have inscriptions in a script, which belongs to the same order as Proto-Elamite, Sumerian, Minoan, and Egyptian. Its decipherment has so far defied the ingenuity of scholars. The view, commonly held, is that it represents a pictographic system of writing, each sign standing for a particular word or object. A late stage of development is indicated by certain strokes and marks, which were perhaps vowel signs. It is believed that the direction of writing is from right to left, but in some cases it is **boustrophedon**, i.e., from right to left in the first line and left to right in the second. Nothing can yet be postulated about its connection with the later **Brahmi**. Very likely the Indus script did not extend to other parts of India, or survive long.

**Art**

The Indus people appear to have made great progress in the ceramic art. They were fond of painted pottery, and some specimens of delicate workmanship and colour have come down to us.

Again, sculptures in the round, of stone and bronze, display great merit and anatomical faithfulness. The figure of a dancer standing on the right leg with the left leg raised in front is beautifully executed, and the pose is so full of movement that there is hardly any parallel to it even among the sculptures of the historic period.

But by far the most remarkable are the engravings on the numerous seals and sealings. The treatment of animals, specially the bull, is superb and full of realism. These figures leave no room for doubt that

---

1 See also L. A. Waddell, *The Indo-Sumerian Seals Deciphered* (London, 1925).
2 A list of no less than 396 signs has been prepared.
the Indus people, like the ancient Greeks, possessed artistic skill of a high order, and could delineate with vigour and effect.

Who were the Authors?

The skeletal remains as well as the sculptured heads\(^1\) indicate that the population at Harappa and Mohenjo-daro was of a cosmopolitan character, consisting at least of four distinct ethnic types, viz., Proto-Australoid, Mediterranean, the Alpine and the Mongolian branch. Which of these races was the prime author of the Indus valley civilisation? Diverse answers have been given to this query. It has been suggested that they were the pre-Vedic peoples (probably Dravidian), whose culture the Aryans destroyed. Some look upon the latter as the authors of this civilisation, pushing thereby the date of their (Aryan) domination in India considerably back. Others regard the Indus people as the kith and kin of the Sumerians or some allied race, and the common features between the civilisations of Sumer, Elam, and the Indus valley, despite their individual characteristics, no doubt, lend support to this view. Cultural evidences and arguments based on physical types are, however, shaky; and we cannot, therefore, be dogmatic over this problem until more conclusive clues are forthcoming.

Extent and Origin

Besides Mohenjo-daro and Harappa, archaeological explorations reveal that there were a number of other sites in lower and upper Sind (e.g. Jhūkhar-

\(^1\)But this evidence must be used with caution. For, as has been well pointed out, artists were by no means anthropologists; and the number of skulls discovered is too small to allow of any “safe generalisations” regarding the existence of several racial types (Hindu Civilisation, p. 13).
daro, Canhu-daro), South Punjab and Baluchistan (e.g., Nāl in Kelat State) belonging to the same Chalcolithic culture. As yet no traces of it have been found in the Gangetic valley, which in later times played an important part in the cultural and political history of India. Wherefrom, then, did the Indus valley culture originate? Was it an independent growth on Indian soil? Or, was its development due to the contact and impact of the ancient civilisations of Elam, Mesopotamia, and other Western lands? To these questions, a definite answer one hesitates to give at this stage of our knowledge.

Date

We do not know how long this culture flourished in the Indus valley, but from the stratification of buildings at Mohenjo-daro, where have been unearthed seven strata—three of the Late Period, three of the Intermediate, and one of the Early, leaving aside such as are submerged under the sub-soil water—it has been assumed, assigning roughly 500 years to each of the layers, that the period of its occupation fell approximately between 3250-2750 B.C. Of course, the beginnings of its civilisation may go earlier still, for Mohenjo-daro and its complex city life was a product of centuries of evolution. Moreover, a comparison of its finds with Mesopotamian and Elamite relics shows resemblances, which could not be merely fortuitous. If, as has been supposed, they prove that there was intercourse between these countries the Indus valley civilisation may be rightly taken to be “contemporary with the early culture of Sumer and with the later Pre-diluvian culture of Elam and Mesopotamia.”
CHAPTER III.

THE RIGVEDIC AGE

Origin and Home of the Aryans

The twilight slowly brightened into dawn, and the sun of Vedic culture rose on the horizon of Indian history. Who were its progenitors, and wherefrom do they emerge into our historical view? Questions like these have been a bewildering source of controversy. Some Indian scholars, attaching great importance to the Pauranic evidence, strongly maintain that the Aryans were autochthons of the land. But their arguments do not find a wide support. Others with equal emphasis aver that the original Aryan home was the Arctic Circle (B. G. Tilak); or Bactria (Rhode); or the Pamirs. The general opinion, however, is that the Indo-Aryans, as also the Avestan Iranians, were a branch of the ancient "Indo-Germanic" (Indo-European) peoples or the Wiros, and before their eastward migration, perhaps due to divisions, dissensions, or overgrowth of population in a circumscribed area, they occupied for long a common habitat, which has been variously located in Central Asia (Max Müller); European Steppes, north of the Black Sea (Benfey); Central and Western Germany (Geiger); or Austria, Hungary and Bohemia (P. Giles). This belief rests on grounds of the close similarity between the speech

---

1 See Dr. Isaac Taylor, The Origin of the Aryans, London, 1886; G. Childe, The Aryans; A. C. Das, Rigvedic India (Calcutta, 1947); B. G. Tilak, Arctic Home in the Vedas (Poona, 1903); Lachhmi Dhar, The Home of the Aryans (Delhi, 1910).
2 P. Giles uses the term 'Wiros,' meaning 'men' in most of the early languages (Cam. Hist. Ind., Vol. I, p. 66).
ARYAN HOME: THE RIGVEDA

as presented in the Rigveda and the Avestan and the "Indo-Germanic" tongues spoken by most European nations; and also on the flora and fauna known to them and the likeness of their culture as inferred from the meagre data available. Language and common peculiarities of life are, however, no certain proofs of consanguinity, for they can be adopted by one community from another. Nor are the anthropological researches of any particular help. They simply show that there is a physical type in India, which in many respects is akin to certain European races. Thus, though we cannot be sure that the blood of Europe runs in Indian veins, it is conceivable that the Indo-Aryans were at some stage not altogether isolated from the forefathers of the Western peoples.

The Rigveda

The earliest work, which the Aryans have left to posterity, is the Rigveda. It is a collection of 1017 hymns, supplemented by 11 others called Vālakhiliyas; and is systematically arranged into 10 mandalas or books. The hymns represent compositions of different periods, and are of varying degrees of literary merit, being productions of priest-poets—mostly men and two or three women—of various families. Excepting a few

1 cf. e.g., Sanskrit Pitri with Zend Pater, Latin Pater, Greek Pater, Celt Athir, Teuton Fader, Tocharian Pater, and English Father; or Sanskrit Dau with Latin Dux, Irish Dú, Gothic Œsai, Lithuanian Du, and English Tau; or Sanskrit Atri, Latin Etr, Irish Er, Gothic Itr, and Lithuanian Eštī.
2 cf. Cun. Hist. Ind., I, Ch. III, pp. 64-76.
3 The Rigveda itself speaks of older and later Rishi and their compositions. Wintermuth thinks that there must be a gulf of centuries between the different strata of Rigvedic hymns. Great care was taken to preserve its textual purity by a number of devices like Pada-padha, Krauna-padha, Anukramani, etc.
4 Orthodox tradition, however, regards the hymns as revelations to the Rishi.
hymns, they are all invocations to the gods, conceived as personifications of the powers of Nature, to bestow spiritual and material favours on the worshippers. It is only those that are not directly addressed to the deities, which incidentally throw some light on princely liberality and tribal wars, as well as on the life and habits of the people. The information, scanty no doubt, is all the more valuable in the absence of any other material remains for giving us a glimpse into this distant age.\(^1\)

**Geographical Background of the Rigvedic Aryans**

The Rigveda does not preserve any memory of the early movements of the Aryans, or how they entered India. Indeed, their geographical horizon appears from certain allusions to have been limited to an area extending from Afghanistan to the Gangetic valley. That the former region was occupied by the Aryans is obvious from the mention of rivers like the Kuhbā (Kabul), the Suvaśṭu (Swa), the Krumu (Kurram), and the Gomati (Gomal). The vast stream of the Sindhu (Indus) is well known, so also are its five tributaries—the Vītāstā (Jhelum); Asikni (Chenab); Paruṣṇī, later Irāvatī (Rāvi); Vipāśa (Beas); and the Sutudri (Surlej). Similarly, the Driṣadvati (Chautang) is named, but the Saraswati, now lost amid the sands, evokes many a fervent song. From these references, one may reasonably infer that the Aryans were spread over all the tracts watered by these rivers, and they probably composed the bulk of the hymns here.\(^2\) The Gaṅgā
cf. श्रीप्रीति मल्लिकार; and also म हि श्रावसि तिमधने, मिलानि श्रावसि।

\(^1\) See A. C. Das, *Rigvedic Culture* (Calcutta, 1943).

\(^2\) The hymns to the goddess Upāt were apparently inspired by the glorious dawn of the Punjab. But those referring to the “strife of the elements” and the phenomenon of thunder and lightning were, according to Keith, composed “in the country round the Saraswati river, south of the modern Ambālā” (*Cam. Hist. Ind.,*...
(Ganges) and the Yamunā (Jumna) are mentioned only twice or thrice, which shows that though Aryan bands had advanced towards the Gangetic Doab, it was still an unfamiliar land. The sea was unknown to them, the word samudra being used to denote large expanses of water. The Himalaya or Himavant mountains are alluded to, but not the Vindhyas or the Narmadā river. Evidently, therefore, the Aryans had not yet established settlements in the southern direction. Other evidences are also in accord with the conclusions stated above. Thus, for instance, the Rigveda mentions the lion, but not the tiger, the denizen of the swampy jungles of Bengal. That the Aryans had not yet advanced to the eastern regions is further proved by the absence of any mention of rice. We must, however, urge caution against undue emphasis on such argumentum ex silentio, and as an illustration of its dangers it may be pointed out that salt, although abounding in Northern Punjab, is not even once mentioned in the Rigveda.

Tribal Divisions and Wars

The Rigvedic Aryans were not a homogeneous lot. They were divided into several tribes, the most important having been the five allied ones, viz., Anus, Druhyus, Yādus, Turvasas, and Purus, who dwelt on either side the Saraswati. Besides these, mention is also made of the Bharatas (later merged into the Kuruś), Trisūṣ, Śriṇjayas, Krivis, and other minor tribes. Quite often, they were fighting among themselves, and one of the notable events of Rigvedic history was the great battle on the Paruśná, in which Sudās, king of the Bharatas, defeated with heavy losses the confederate tribes led by ten kings under the guidance of Viśvāmitra.
The victory is celebrated by his family priest, Vaśisṭha, but we do not know if Sudās attempted any consolidation of his conquests. Close upon the heels of the attack by the above-mentioned five allied tribes and by those of the North-west, viz., Alinas, Pakthas (cf. modern Pakhtuns or Pathans), Sivas, Bhalānases, and the Viśāṇins, he had to face another crisis on the eastern side of his kingdom. Sudās, however, overcame it by successfully repulsing his assailants under the leadership of Bheda near the Jumna. The latter was perhaps a non-Aryan chief, as the curious names of the three tribes—Ajās, Śigrus, and Yakṣus—under him suggest. Thus, besides inter-tribal warfare, the Aryans were engaged in struggles with the “Dasyus” or “Dāsas”. They were carried on with unceasing relentlessness, for the two peoples had strong differences, both racial and cultural. The Aryans were tall and fair, and the “Dasyus” were dark-skinned and of short stature. Their features were uncouth, being flat-nosed (anāsaḥ). They did not believe in Vedic gods (a-devasu), indeed reviled them (deva-pīya), never performed sacrifices (a-yajvan) or any rites (a-karman), but worshipped the phallic emblems (ājna-devaḥ) and followed strange laws (anyāvrata). Their speech was unintelligible (mṛṣībra-vāk). These characteristics indicate that the “Dasyus” probably belonged to the Dravidian stock, then occupying the parts over which the Aryans were seeking to establish their domination. The “Dasyus” fought valiantly in defence of their homes and herds of cattle, and they yielded to the superior might of the Aryans only when the destruction of their pūrṇa and durgas, towns and crude fortifications, made

1 The Rgveda mentions other non-Aryan peoples like the Simyus, Pitācus, Kikārus, etc. Among other prominent Dās chief, we hear of Pīru, Dhuni, Cumuri, Śambra.

2 A. C. Dey, Rgvedic Culture, pp. 157-18 (Calcutta, 1925).
further resistance futile. Many of the ‘Dāssas’ became slaves (*dāsā* = slave) of the conquerors, having been admitted in society as *Śūdras*, but others retired into the jungles and mountain fastnesses, where we still find their descendants living in primitive conditions.

**Political Organisation**

The family (*griha* or *kula*) was the ultimate basis of the Vedic state. A number of families, connected with ties of kinship, formed the *grāma*. An aggregate of villages made up the *viś* (district or clan), and a group of *viś* composed the *jana* (tribe). The tribe was under the rule of its chief or king (*rājan*), who was often hereditary, as would appear from several lines of succession mentioned in the *Rigveda*¹. Occasionally the *Rājan* was elected by the *viś*, but it is not clear whether the choice was limited to members of the ruling house or was extended to other noble families. The king led the tribe in battle, and ensured their protection, in return for which the people rendered him obedience or gave voluntary gifts. Perhaps the king did not then raise any fixed taxes for the maintenance of the royal state. When free from fighting, he dispensed justice and performed sacrifices for material prosperity. The *Purohita*, besides the *Senāñi* (‘leader of the army’) and the *Grāmaññi*, was the most important member of the royal entourage. He received gifts and by spells and incantations prayed for his master’s success in all undertakings. The king was by no means an autocrat; his powers were limited by the will of the people as expressed in the *Sabba* (‘council of Elders’) and *Samītī* (‘assembly of the whole people’).² The states were usually small, but due

¹ *cf.* e. g., Vadhryāśva, Divodāsa, Pijavāsa and Sudās.

² The true import of these terms is not quite clear. According to Keith, the *Samītī* was “the assembly of the people for the busi-
to wars and the "Dasyu" menace the tendency to coalesce under an overlord, or evolve bigger territorial units, had already started.

Family Life

The Rigvedic Aryans had developed a healthy family life, in which the ties of wedlock were held sacred and indissoluble. Monogamy was the usual rule, though among the "upper ten" polygamy was not unknown. There are no traces of polyandry and child-marriage. Women enjoyed a certain amount of freedom in choosing their husbands, under whose protection and care they lived after marriage. Their position was of greater honour and authority at that time than is perhaps the case now. They controlled the household affairs, and participated in the sacrifices and other domestic ceremonies and feasts, gaily wearing their bright apparel and ornaments. There was perhaps no segregation of females or restriction upon their movements. They were educated, some of them like Apalā, Viśvarā, and Ghoṣā even composing mantras after the fashion of the Rāṣis. The standard of morality was comparatively high, but occasionally we learn of cases of lapse.

Besides husband and wife, the family consisted of other members—parents, brothers, sisters, sons, and daughters, etc. Generally their relations were marked by cordiality and a spirit of mutual accommodation and help. Sometimes, however, disputes about

ness of the tribe," and, the Sabhā denoted "the place of assembly, which served besides as a centre of social gatherings" (Cam. Hist. Ind., I, p. 96).

1 cf. B. S. Upādhyāya, Women in Rigveda, 2nd ed., (Benares, 1941); See also Dr. A. S. Altekar, The Position of Women in Hindu Civilization, (Benares, 1938); C. Bader, Women in Ancient India, (London, 1923); Indra, Status of Women in Ancient India, (Lahore, 1941).
property, specially relating to land, cattle, ornaments, etc., must have caused ill-feeling and even the break-up of the family.

Occupations

As described elsewhere, the Aryans were then engaged in continual warfare, which was as such one of their main occupations. They fought either on foot or on chariots, drawn by horses, but horse-riding apart, cavalry is nowhere mentioned. Coats of mail (varma) and helmets of metals (jīpā) were used for protection on the battle-field. The principal weapons were the bow (dhanus) and arrow (bāna), spears, lances, axes, swords (āsi), and slingstones. The warriors fought to the accompaniment of war-cries and the music of drums (dandubhi).

One of the important means of living for the Rigvedic Aryans was cattle-breeding. Their wealth and prosperity depended upon the possession of a large number of cows, which they regarded as "the sum of all good." We can, therefore, well understand their extreme desire to multiply them. Among other domesticated animals were horses, sheep, goats, dogs and asses.

Agriculture was their next occupation. Ploughing appears to have been an old practice of the Aryans, for it is significant the root kṛṣ occurs in the same sense in both Sanskrit and Iranian. The plough was drawn by bulls, and had a metal share to make furrows (śītā) in the fields (kṣetra). Water was led into them by means of channels.1 The corn cultivated was yava (perhaps barley) and dhānsya, and when ripe, it was cut with sickles, threshed and winnowed properly, and then stored in granaries.

The Rigvedic Aryans also practised hunting for

1 Water was drawn out of wells or from rivers. Manure too, if used then, must have added to the fertility of fields.
sport as well as livelihood. Birds and wild animals were caught in nets and snares (pāla), or sometimes they were killed with bow and arrow. Pits were also dug for capturing deer, lion, and other beasts.

There is no mention of fishing, and navigation was limited to rivers by boats of crude construction. The absence of anchor or sails indicates that the Rigvedic people did not dare into the open main.

Trade

Coins were unknown. Accordingly, trade was carried on by barter and the cow was regarded as the standard of value. There are grounds to believe that haggling was known, but a bargain, once made, held good.

Life being still primitive and simple, the requirements of the people were few, and could be easily supplied by themselves. But evidence is not lacking to show that specialisation in certain crafts had already begun. The worker in wood was an important figure in Vedic society, as his services were particularly needed in the construction of chariots, both for war and the race. He was still carpenter, joiner, and wheelwright in one, and the dexterity of his art is often compared to felicity in composing hymns. We also learn of the worker in metal, who forged weapons, ploughshares, kettles and other domestic utensils. The general name for metal is agni (Latin aṣi), which may denote either copper or bronze or iron. Goldsmiths fashioned ornaments of gold to minister to the wants of the gay and the rich. Mention is made of the tanner, who tanned leather and made such articles as bow-strings and casks. The work of sewing, plaiting of mats with

\[1 \text{Niśra was not a coin, as supposed by some scholars. It was probably a kind of ornament worn on the neck.}\]
grass and reeds, and weaving of cloth was mostly done by women. What is most noteworthy is that during the age of the Rigveda none of these functions bore the stamp of inferiority, as was the case subsequently, and they were carried on by the free members of the tribe.

Other Features of Life

Clothing

(a) It appears from the casual allusions to dress in the Rigveda that the people wore a lower garment (nīva), another garment, and a cloak. Sheep's wool was used for weaving cloth. They were embroidered with gold and dyed in the case of the rich, who further adorned their persons with such ornaments as ear-rings, necklets, armlets, bracelets, garlands, etc. The hair was oiled and combed. Women wore it "plaited"; and some men, too, preferred coils on their heads. Shaving was known, but beards were the norm.

(b) Food

The Rigvedic Aryans took both animal and vegetable food. The meat of sheep and goat was freely eaten and offered to the gods. It was also customary to kill the fatted calf on festive occasions or to entertain guests, but the cow was "agnīyā"—not to be slaughtered, because of her usefulness. Milk was, however, the chief article of diet. Among its various preparations, ghee and dahi (curd) were most commonly used. Grain was powdered into flour and with milk and ghee made into cakes. Vegetables and fruits were also included in the menu of the Rigvedic Indian.

(c) Drink

Mere water and milk did not satisfy the tastes of
the age. People were almost addicted to fermented drinks. On religious occasions Soma was the favourite beverage, but Sura, a spirit distilled from grain, was the ordinary drink. The priests, however, disliked its use owing to its intoxicating character. Sometimes it led to the commission of crimes, which were by no means rare then.

(d) Amusements

The Rigvedic Indian did not lead a dull and drab life. He was fond of merry-making and pastimes. Joyous occasions were marked by music and dancing, the latter often not quite innocent. The musical instruments included the drum (dundubhi), the cymbal, the lute (karkari), and the flute. Singing may also have been practised for aught we know of its later development in Sāman songs. Besides chariot-racing and horse-racing, gambling with dice was the most popular amusement. Despite the loss of fortune and consequent ruin, the gambling-hall was the most frequented place and offered irresistible attractions to the players.

Religion

The religion of the Rigveda is essentially simple, though it has many gods. This is natural, as the hymns are the product of a long period of priestly effort, and represent the deities of the various tribes. Most of the objects of devotion are the personifications of natural phenomena. They may be broadly classed as (1) Terrestrial gods, like Prithvi, Soma, Agni; (2)

1. The ninth mandala of the Rigveda is devoted to a praise of the Soma. Its juice had exhilarating effects. All efforts to identify the plant have so far not met with success.
2. Both sexes indulged in this form of amusement.
Atmospheric gods, like Indra, Vāyu, Maruts, Parjanya; (3) Heavenly gods, like Varuna, Dyaus, Asvins, Sūrya, Savitri, Mitra, Pūshan, and Viṣṇu—the latter five forms being all associated with the different phases of the sun's glory. Among these deities, Varuna occupies the place of honour, and is extolled in many a sublime hymn. He is god of the sky, and with him is bound up the conception of riśa, first indicative of the cosmic and then of moral order. Next comes Indra, the god of thunder-storm, whose majesty is another favourite subject of praise. He causes the rain to fall and thus relieves the dryness of the earth. His importance grew with the advance of the Aryans to regions noted for storm and seasonal rainfall. It must not, however, be supposed that any kind of hierarchy among the gods was in the course of formation. The poets at different times ascribed pre-eminence to different gods, as they had to serve many masters and needs. The Rīgveda also mentions abstract deities, such as Śraddhā (faith) and Manyu (anger); and among goddesses Uṣas (goddess of Dawn) inspires much noble poetry. To propitiate these gods, prayers and sacrifices or oblations of milk, ghee, grain, flesh, etc. were offered. The utmost stress was laid on the performance of the latter in order that the worshippers may enjoy all happiness and prosperity. There is also a tendency in a few hymns of the Rīgveda to identify one god with others, or to group them in pairs (e.g., dyānā-prithu), and carrying it further the composers arrive at the great monotheistic doctrine that "the gods are one and the same," only sages describe them differently.  

1 The Rīgveda also refers to some minor deities like the Ribhus (sarial elī) and Apsaras (water- nymphs). There is, however, no trace in it of Zoolatry and Totemism.
2 cf. इन सिते ब्रह्माण्यदृष्टिपद. दिव्य: गुप्ति सम्पन्न। एकं सहिष्णु बहुवा वधधाति रेवतीशनमानान्: II
(Rīgveda, 1, 164, 46).
Here we may consider the date attributed to the bulk of the Rgveda, or the civilisation it represents. Jacobi and Tilak are of opinion, mainly on astronomical grounds, that the hymns were composed at least 4,000 years before Christ. But their view is not generally accepted. On the other hand, Max Müller, arguing backwards from the known date of the Buddha, whose religious system was a reaction against Brahmanism and pre-supposed the existence of the entire Vedic literature, divided the latter into four epochs—Sūtra (600–200 B.C.); Brāhmaṇa, Āranyaka and Upaniṣad (800–600 B.C.); Mantra (1000–800 B.C.); and Chandas (1200–1000 B.C.)—and thus arrived at 1200–1000 B.C. as the period of the beginning of Vedic hymns, assigning approximately 200 years for the development of each epoch of the Veda. The arbitrariness of the last assumption was, however, a serious flaw in Max Müller's argument. Another line of evidence is furnished by recent researches at Boghazkoi, where inscriptions recording treaties between the Hittites and kings of Mitanni have been discovered. It is clear from these documents that Vedic gods were worshipped in Asia Minor at least as early as 1400 B.C.\(^1\) Of course, this discovery may lead to different conclusions. Some think that here we stumble upon the Aryans on their progress eastward; and others, relying on the typically Vedic character of the deities, postulate that the inscriptions represent the westward migration of the Indian Aryans. Whatever the truth, the well-known Tel-el-Amarna inscriptions, belonging to the same time as the Boghazkoi records, also mention Sanskritic names like Ārta-

\(^1\) Indra, Varuna, Nāsatya and Mitra, who are invoked as protectors of the contracts, are respectively mentioned as In-da-ra, Ű-ru-w-na, Na-sa-at-ti-la, Mi-it-ra.
tama, Tusratta, for Mitani princes; and even some of the Kassites, who ruled in Babylonia between c. 1746-1180 B.C., bore such names as Shurias (Skt. Sūrya) and Maryas (Skt. Marutas), etc. Considering all this evidence, it may be reasonably supposed, with some margin for error, that the beginnings of Vedic poetry and civilisation go back to about the sixteenth century B.C.¹

**Indus and Rigvedic Cultures Contrasted**

It may be interesting to note the dissimilarities between the Indus and Rigvedic cultures. The Indo-Aryans were still in the village state, living in small thatched houses of bamboo. The Indus people, on the other hand, had developed a complex city life with commodious houses of brick, equipped with bathrooms, wells, and sanitation. The metals known to the Rigvedic Aryans were gold, copper or bronze, and perhaps iron. The Indus people have left no trace of iron; they used silver more commonly than gold, and their utensils and vessels were made of stone—a relic of the Neolithic age—as well as of copper and bronze. The weapons of offence were almost the same in both the ages, but the defensive helmet and coat of mail, known to the Rigvedic people, were not a feature of the Indus civilisation. It appears from the numerous seals discovered at Mohenjo-daro that the bull was their most important animal, but during the Rigvedic period the cow takes its place. The horse was unfamiliar to the Indus valley people, whereas the Rigvedic Aryans had domesticated it. Further, in the Indus

¹ Mr. B. G. Tilak, however, believed that "the traditions recorded in the Rigveda unmistakably point to a period not later than 4,000 B.C., when the vernal equinox was in Orion, or, in other words, when the Dog-star commenced the equinoctial year" (*The Oris*, Poona).
valley the worship of the phallic symbols was current; the Rigveda, however, shows no trace of it. The Indus people knew some sort of writing, and in art they had made considerable progress. The Rigvedic age is, however, devoid of any tangible proofs of Aryan achievement in this direction. These points of difference are enough to show how wide is the gulf between the two civilisations. And it was not a hiatus in time only, for either hypothesis, that the one was the progenitor or the descendant of the other, would land us in a difficulty or dilemma. The only possible assumption, which may satisfactorily explain the divergent characters of the Indus and Rigvedic cultures, is that the latter, although later, was unrelated to the former and had an independent origin and development.¹

¹ See also Sir John Marshall, Mohenjo-daro (Vol. I), Ch. VIII, pp. 110-12.
also comprised in the confederation. The Kurus and Pañcālas are held out in the texts as examples of good manners and pure speech. Their kings are model rulers, and their Brahmans are celebrated for learning. They (Kuru-Pañcālas) undertake military operations in the right season, and their sacrifices are performed with the minutest details and care.¹ Their close neighbours in the Madhya-deśa were the Saivas on the Jumna, the Vašas and the Uśinaras, who did not play any conspicuous part. The Sṛṇjayas were another tribe, who seem to have been allied with the Kurus, as they had at one time a common priest. We also hear of the Matsyas, who were settled round about modern Jaipur and Alwar.²

Rise of Powerful States

The amalgamation of tribes and their wars of aggrandisement gradually led to the formation of bigger territorial units as compared with those of the Rigvedic times. The ideal of ‘paramountcy’ or ‘universal sovereignty’ now began to loom large on the political horizon, and kings performed sacrifices like the ‘Vajapeya’, the ‘Rājasūya’ and the ‘Aśvamedha’ to symbolise the degree of success achieved in realising their ambitions. The Aitareya and Satapatha Brāhmaṇas mention the names of some monarchs, who performed the ‘Aśvamedha’ sacrifice along with the ‘Aindra Mahābhiṣēka,’ such as Para of Kośala, Satānika Sātriţiśa, and Purukutsa Aikṣvāka, etc. As the kings extended their sway, their titles also changed. Thus, Rāja was used for an ordinary ruler, and Adhirağa, Kāra-dhirağa, Samrāṭ, Virāṭ, Ekarāṭ, and Sārvabhauma denoted various gradations of suzerains.

¹ Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, III, 2, 3, 15; see also Cam. Hitt. Ind., Vol. I, pp. 218-19.
² See also B. C. Law, Ancient Mid-Indian Kṣatriya Tribes.
The King

With the emergence of larger realms, the importance of the royal rank also grew. This is reflected in the importance attached to, and elaboration of, the consecration ceremony itself, in which figured prominently such state functionaries as the Purusha, the Raja (noble), the Mahati (chief queen), the Sala (charioteer or bard?), the Senani (army commander), the Gramani (village headman), the Bhagadaga (collector of taxes), Ksatriya (Chamberlain), Samghrabhi (treasurer), Aghasupa (superintendent of diceing), and others.¹

The king, whose position was commonly hereditary,² still led in war, although minor operations were entrusted to the Senani. He (i.e., the king) punished the wicked, and upheld the Law, Dharma. He controlled, if not owned, the land, and he could deprive any individual of it. Misuse of the latter prerogative must have meant considerable hardship to the commoner. Popular assemblies like the Sabha and the Samiti,³ were not yet defunct, and, rather rarely heard of during this period. The growth in the size of the kingdom must have made their frequent meetings difficult, and in consequence their control or check over the ruler must have progressively decreased. The will of the people, however, sometimes asserted itself. Thus a king named Durjata was expelled by his discontented subjects, but he was subsequently restored to the throne by his Sthapati Cakra.

¹The Rathas are fewer in number in the earlier texts.
²For instance, in the case of the Senajayas, they lasted for ten generations.
³It is significant that the Atharvaveda (vii, 12) describes the 'Sabha' and 'Samiti' as twin-daughters of Prajapati. Cf. राजा जनकारा सब्बाक्ष मित्र प्रमाणप्रेषितां समितिको। During its period of prosperity, the Sabha functioned as a place for discussing public business.
CHAPTER IV

LATER VEDIC PERIOD

Wider Geographical Outlook.

We have to depend upon the Sanshitiṣṭ of the Yajurveda, Sāmaveda, Atharvaveda, the Brāhmaṇas, the Aranyakas, and the Upaniṣads, all religious works, for the later Vedic period, which, roughly speaking, comes down to about 600 B.C. During this age the Aryan civilisation gradually extended towards the east and the south. The north-western parts of India, the home of the Rigvedic tribes, fade into unimportance, and even the customs of those still dwelling there are viewed with disfavour. The centre of culture shifts to Kurukṣetra; and Madhyadesa, the land of the Yamunā and the Gaṅgā, comes into prominence. Kośala (Oudh), Kāśi, and Videha (North Bihar), rise as great Aryan centres in the east. Mention is also made of Magadha (South Bihar) and Aṅga (South-eastern Bihar), although these regions had not yet been Aryanised and

... The Brāhmaṇas are attached to the Vedas. They are theological treatises in prose, explaining in detail the value and efficacy of sacrifices. The important Brāhmaṇas are the Aitareya, Śatapatha, Pañcarātra and Gāopatha. The Aranyakas are the concluding portions of the Brāhmaṇas, so called because on account of their mystical character they had to be studied in the seclusion of the forest. The extant ones—e.g., Aitareya, Kaṇṭakā, and the Taittirīya—form appendages of the Brāhmaṇas of the same names. The Upaniṣād discard sacrifices. Their theme is how to obtain jñāna and deliverance by the absorption of the individual soul in the world-soul. Besides Śāyana and Kṛṣṇa, there are ten other noted Upaniṣād, viz., Taittirīya, Aitareya, Kaṇṭakā, Kaṭha, Śvetāsvatara, Lau, Kena, Prākaṇa, Mandaika, Māṇḍuka.
their inhabitants were regarded as strangers. We now hear for the first time of the Andhras and other out-cast tribes like the Pundras of Bengal, the Sabaras of Orissa and C.P., and the Pulindas of South-western India. Vidarbha or Berar occurs in two late passages of the Aitareya and Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇas. Thus, nearly the whole of Northern India from the Himalayas to the Vindhyas, and perhaps even beyond, had now come within the ken of the Aryans.\(^1\)

**Settled Life**

There is ample evidence to show that large cities had now sprung into existence, and the people enjoyed a more settled form of life. We learn, for instance, of Kāmpiliya and Āsandivant, the capitals of the Pañcālas and Kurus respectively. References are also made to Kauśāmbi and Kāśi; the latter is still a great living town.

**Tribal Groupings**

In addition to the above changes, we find a noteworthy change in the relative importance of the different tribes. The Bharatas of the Rigveda are no longer a mighty political unit; their place is taken by the Kurus and their neighbours and allies, the Pañcālas. It appears that the Bharatas and Purus were merged into the Kurus. The Pañcālas were also a composite clan, as their name, derived from pāṇca—five, shows. According to the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, they were formerly called Kravis, who may, therefore, have been one of the constituent tribes. Perhaps the earlier Ānus, Druhyus, and Turvasas, that disappear now from history, were

---

a great patron of men of letters. Earlier than the Brahmadattas, Kāśi was ruled by a family that traced its descent from Purūravas, the great ancestor of the Bharatas.

Kośala was another eastern kingdom, which roughly corresponded to Oudh. It was under the domination of the house of Ikṣvāku. For long, it remained the eastern limit of Aryan civilisation until the Sadānāra (Gandak) was crossed. The earliest capital of the kingdom was Ayodhyā, which was the seat of the epic hero, Rāma, too.

Other contemporary powers, mentioned in the Brāhmaṇas and the Upaniṣads, were:

Gandhāra extending on both sides of the Indus with Taxilā (Rawalpindi district) and Puṣkarāvati (modern Chārsadda, Peshawar) as its principal towns; the Kekaya territory lying between Gandhāra and the Beas river; the Madras, whose country in Central Punjab corresponded to modern Sialkot and adjacent districts; the Matsya kingdom comprising parts of Alwar, Jaipur and Bharatpur; and the land of the Uśināras situated in Madhyadeśa. These states were generally prosperous and well-governed, and the people were left free to pursue the arts of peace. At the same time, too much stress should not be laid on such a vain boast as that of Aśvapati Kekaya, who, according to the Chāndogya Upaniṣad, claims that he had cleared his kingdom of all thieves, drunkards, debauches and illiterate men. Magadha and Aṅga were still regarded with aversion. For in a text of the Atharvaveda fever is wished away to the peoples of these lands. The

1 Jala Jñānakarṇya is represented in a late passage as the Purvapīṭha of the Videhas, Kāśīs, and Kośalas. Does this show that the three kingdoms were once allied together?

2 cf. न ने सेतने जनवरों दे न कपड़ें दे मन्दन: नामांकितानि वा विद्वान स्त्रीरूप स्वसिंह कुस: II (Chāndogya Upaniṣad, v, 11).
Magadhas are also contemptuously described as Vṛā-
flyus, outside the pale of orthodox Brahmanism, and
speaking a strange unintelligible language.

Social Changes

Society did not remain unaffected by the changes
that were taking place during this period. No doubt,
the division into four classes is already referred to in a
late hymn of the Rīgveda¹ but it is a moot point whether it
bears any other traces of familiarity with the institution
of caste, apart from the clear distinction between the
Ārya and the Dasyu. Now the divisions became more
pronounced, and the caste-system was well on its way
towards crystallisation. Unfortunately, the causes of
this development are obscure. The starting point of
these distinctions was, of course, the “colour bar”
between the fair Ārya and the dark Dasyu. But the
constant wars of the Āryans, the growing complexities
of life and political conditions, and the tendency towards
specialisation in labour, gradually resulted in the forma-
tion of hereditary occupational groups. Thus, those
who possessed a knowledge of the sacred lore, offici-
cated in religious ceremonies and received gifts were
called Brahmans; those who fought, owned land, and
wielded political power were classed as Kṣatriyas; the
general mass of people—the traders, the agriculturists,
and the craftsmen—were grouped under the term
Vaiśya; and the Śūdra, reserved for menial service, was
generally recruited from the conquered Dasyus. There
was, however, still no unnatural rigidity of castes as in

¹ cf. the Purāṇānakta (X, 90, 12), which states that Brahmans,
Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras originated respectively from the
mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of the Creator.

(Paraṇaṇātmanavāma, vṛddha, ṛṣi, 1, 5, 1, etc.).
Unfortunately our knowledge of the political divisions and events of the Brāhmaṇic period is very meagre. We can glean only a few facts from incidental anecdotes in sacrificial literature and from other dubious references in the Epics and the Purāṇas. We have already seen that the Kurus were the most important tribe now, and with them were closely associated the Pañcālas. The first great Kuru king is the one mentioned in the Atharvaveda, Parīkṣit by name. During his time the people were happy and contented, and the kingdom almost “flowed with milk and honey.” It roughly corresponded to modern Thāneśar, Delhi and the upper Doab with its capital at Āsandivant, later Hastināpura. The next ruler of note was Janamejaya, who, according to the Brāhmaṇas, was a great conqueror and extended his sway as far north-west as Taxila. The Mahābhārata deposes that sometimes he held his court there, and listened to Vaiśāṃpāyana’s narration of the Kuru-Pāṇdu conflict. He performed a Sarpa-satra (snake-sacrifice) and perhaps two horse-sacrifices. We further learn that Janamejaya had some dispute with the Brahmans, and his three brothers Bhīmasena, Ugrasena, and Strutasena, had each to atone for killing them by performing the Āsvamedha sacrifice. Little definite is known about Janamejaya’s successors. The kingdom was visited by such calamities as hail-stones, locusts, etc., and ultimately Nīcakṣu abandoned Hastināpura, on account of floods in the Ganges, in favour of Kauśāmibi.

With regard to the Pañcālas, our information is still more scanty. Some of their kings must have

and also as a court of justice. Then there are references to Samiti sometimes electing or re-electing a king. cf. भगवान दे समिति: कल्पविध (Atharvaveda, vi. 88,3); or नात्में समिति: कल्पते (Ibid., v, 19,11).
achieved notable victories, as they are said to have performed the horse-sacrifice, a sure indication of growth in political power. The Upaniṣads mention Pravāhana Jaivali, a patron of learning, who used to hold intellectual tournaments at his court. These learned conferences (Pariṣads), in which they followed the method of debate and discussion to thrash out the truth, were then a potent factor in stimulating thought and diffusing knowledge. The capital of Pañcāla was Kāmpilya, and the kingdom roughly corresponded to modern Farrukhabad district and parts of Rohilkhand.

After the downfall of the Kuru, Videha rose into importance. It was almost identical with modern Tirhut, and its capital, Mithilā, though not mentioned in Vedic texts, is a well-known town in later literature. This region received the light of Vedic civilisation after Kośala, as is clear from the story of Videgha Māthava in the Satapatha Brahmana.\(^1\) The most notable ruler of Videha was Janaka\(^2\), the royal scholar and philosopher of the Upaniṣads, who flourished not long after the destruction of the Kuru capital. Like Akbar, he encouraged philosophical discussions, and his court was adorned by intellectual celebrities of the type of Yājñavalkya.\(^3\) Janaka was called Samartha, and his power and fame even excited the jealousy of Ajātaśatru of Kāśi.

The last-named monarch belonged to the Brahma-datta line, perhaps Videhan in origin. He was also

---

\(^1\) It is said that Māthava the Videgha went along with his priest, Gotama Rāhugana, from the land of the Saraswatī to Videha after crossing the Sadānāra (Gandak), which formed the eastern boundary of Kośala. Beyond this river, Agni Vaiśvānara did not burn over the country i.e., it did not then come within the pale of Aryanism.

\(^2\) The modern town of Janakapura still preserves in its name a memory of this great ruler.

\(^3\) Among other learned men of the times may be mentioned Uddālaka Arupi, Śveraketu Aruneya, Satyakāma Jabala, etc.
the succeeding age. For we know that Cyavana, a Brahman seer, married Sukanyā, the daughter of Kṣatriya Saryāta; Kṣatriya rulers like Janaka of Videha, Ajāraśatra of Kāśi, and Pravāhana Jaivali of Pañcāla distinguished themselves in the knowledge of the Brahman; and Prince Devāpi performed a sacrificial ceremony for his brother, Sāntanu. As local particularism and the influence of the Brahmans waxed, the system began to lose elasticity, and mobility or change of occupation was disfavoured. Further, the off-spring of the inter-marriages among the different classes, being looked down upon, tended to form separate groups. This process continued on account of other causes, like the adoption of a new calling or craft, until society became a strange congeries of mutually exclusive entities bound by strict laws of con- 
nubium and commensality.

Position of Südras and Women

The Südras are no doubt recognised as a distinct order of society in later Vedic literature, but they were regarded as impure and not fit in any way to take part in sacrifices, or recite the sacred texts. Aryan marriages or illicit relations with Südras were severely condemned. They were also perhaps not allowed to possess property in their own right. Indeed, the Aitarsya Brahmana at one place represents the Südra as “the servant of another, to be expelled at will, and to be slain at will.”

Similarly, the position of women was not high in all respects. Instances of Gārgi Vācaknāvi and Maitreyi, of course, prove that education was imparted to

4 Such instances of Brahmas and Kṣatriyas apart, it is noteworthy Vedic literature does not record the case of any Vāsiya rising to higher social rank.

5 Manu calls the crossings between the members of the different castes Anuloma and Pratiloma marriages.
females, and some of them attained to rare intellectual heights. Women could not, however, inherit or own property; and their earnings, if any, accrued to their fathers or husbands. The birth of a daughter was considered "a source of misery." Kings and the richer people practised polygamy, which must have caused considerable irritation in the family circle.

**Occupations**

During this period great progress in agriculture was made. The quality and size of the plough (śrā) was improved; and the use of manure was well understood for increasing production. In addition to barley (jau), several other kinds of grain like rice (pālī), wheat (godiṃas), beans, and sesame (tila) were now cultivated in their due seasons.

The fertile plains of Northern India increased the material prosperity of the Aryans, and this gave rise to a variety of occupations to meet the needs of the people. We thus hear of charioiteers, hunters, shepherds, fishermen, fire-rangers, ploughers, chariot-makers, jewel-workers, basket-makers, washermen, rope-makers, dyers, weavers, slaughterers, cooks, potters, smiths, professional acrobats, musicians, guards of tame elephants, and so on.

Astrologers and barbers now appear as important figures. The physician healed the sick, but his profession was for some reason stamped with inferiority. Women mostly engaged themselves in dyeing, embroidery, basket-making, etc.

**Other Features**

The growth of civilisation is further reflected in the knowledge of more metals. While the Rgveda

---

1 Some ploughs were so heavy as to be drawn by a team of twenty-four oxen.
mentions gold and ayas of uncertain import, this period
knows of lead (tīl), tin (trapu), silver (rajata), gold
(hiranya), red (lohiita) ayas (copper) and dark (śūma
ayas (iron). Gold and silver were mostly used for
making ornaments, bowls, vessels, etc. Gold was
obtained from river-beds, or from the bowels of the
earth, or from ore by smelting.

Regular coinage had not yet started, though the
use of Sata-mā, equivalent to 100 krispulas or gujiya
berries, was leading towards it. Thus the cow as a
unit of value was gradually being replaced.

The dress, amusements, and food remained almost
the same as in the time of the Rigneda. In a hymn of
the Āshvavēda, however, meat-eating and drinking of
Surā are regarded as sinful acts. This may have been
due to the doctrine of Abhiśa, which now begins to
germinate.

The later Vedic period was also probably marked
by the knowledge of writing. It has been suggested
by Bühler and others that it was introduced in India
by traders from Semitic lands about the 9th century
B.C. On the contrary, some scholars1 stoutly main-
tain its indigenous origin, for which they assign an
earlier date. The problem has been a veritable battle-
ground for scholarly ingenuity, and it will continue to
defy solution until some new discovery is made, or
we get some unexpected light from the decipherment
of Moheno- daro seals.

Religion and Philosophy

The theology of the later Vedic literature does not
fundamentally differ from that of the old hymns. The
deities of the Rigneda reappear; only we notice a change
in their emphasis. Prajāpati, "the lord of creatures," who is the main subject of Brahmanic speculation, does

1 See e.g., MM. G. H. Ojha, Prāchinas-lipi, Introduction
not, however, attain the position of a popular god. The two deities that share universal veneration are Rudra and Viṣṇu, still dominant in modern Hinduism. In the Rāgveda, Viṣṇu is a mere form of the Sun-god; his worship by no means takes precedence. So is the case with Rudra, who has now won the most prominent place in the Vedic pantheon. He is called the “great god”, and he already bears the epithet Śiva, “propitious,” current at the present day. What was his primacy due to? Was the fusion of cultures in any way responsible for this development? At any rate, a seal, found at Mohenjo-daro, depicting a male god, who, according to Sir John Marshall, “is recognisable as the prototype of the historic Śiva,” raises a strong presumption in favour of this view.

But though religion continued to remain polytheistic, there was a vast change in the religious spirit. The older hymns were now becoming obscure and unintelligible, and the appreciation of the striking phenomena of Nature no longer inspired the poet-priests to spiritual flights. Thus, religion assumed a stereotyped form, and the Brāhmans rose into such complete ascendency that they came to be regarded as veritable “gods on earth.” They laid stress on rigid formalism, and elaborated a most complicated and all-embracing ritualistic system. Mystic significance was attached to sacrifices and everything connected with them was endowed with magical powers. Indeed, it was thought that the welfare of the sacrificer depended upon their careful performance, and if there was the least deviation from any of the complex and minute details, dire consequences were sure to follow. In short, the sacrifice assumes such importance in the Brāhmaṇas that

There were now Sattra-sacrifices lasting from a few days to a year or years. The number of priests also increased with the growth of rituals. The Hotri, Udgātri, Adhvaryu, and Brāhmaṇa had each several assistants.
it is no longer the means to an end, but an end in itself.

This is, however, only one side of the shield. The age was essentially one of intellectual ferment, and while the priests were firmly entrenching themselves behind the cult of the sacrifice, some of the best minds among both the Brahmans and the Kṣatriyas were turning away from it and seeking peace and salvation in true knowledge (jnāna). Their bold philosophical speculations are embedded in the Upaniṣads, like the Chāndogya and the Bṛhadāranyaka, which later on gave rise to the principal schools of Hindu philosophy (Darśanas), viz., Sāṅkhyā, Yoga, Nyāya, Vaiṣeṣika, Pūrva and Uttara-mimāṃsā. Striving restlessly to solve the riddle of the universe and to grasp the nature of the Self, the Aryan mind enunciates the great doctrine that the ultimate reality was one, Brahman. True knowledge alone led to infinite bliss by the absorption of the individual Ātman in the world Ātman. The natural corollary of this doctrine was the theory of transmigration, and the belief gained ground that until release was obtained by jñāna, the soul remained a prey to endless births and deaths. These were regulated by one’s own deeds—an idea, which marks the beginning of the doctrine of Karma, i.e., no act, good or bad, is ever lost, and it must bear its proper fruit in the cycle of existence.

Progress of Knowledge:

The mental stir of this epoch led to progress of

1 e.g., the Mundaka Upaniṣad (1, 2, 7) dubs those devoted merely to ceremonies and ritual as fools. Similarly, the Bṛhadāranyaka compares one performing sacrifices to gods to an animal serving the needs or comforts of his owner.
2 The pithy expression Tat tvam asi, “That art thou,” beautifully sums up the Vedānta position of the identity of the individual soul with the world Soul.
knowledge in other directions as well. The systematic and intensive study of Vedic texts and the practical needs of religion in due course resulted in the growth of such sciences as Vyākaraṇa (grammar), Sīkṣā (phonetics), Kalpa (ritual), Nirukta (etymology), Chandas (metrics), Jyotiṣa (astronomy). These Vedāngas or "limbs of the Veda" aim at "explaining, preserving or practically applying the sacred texts."¹ In this group, the most interesting works are those dealing with sacrificial aspects, or with phonetics, derivation, and grammar. We may specially mention here the Nirukta of Yāska, which, apart from its value for exegesis and grammar, is "the earliest specimen of Sanskrit prose of the classical type." It was thus another development of the period, that of the several dialects arising out of the old Vedic speech of the Punjab, the one current in Madhyadeśa assumed pre-eminence and became the standard vehicle of expression. It was styled Sanskrit, "polished," in contradistinction to the common vernaculars called Prākrits. Its form having been fixed by the labours of grammarians, particularly Pāṇini,² Sanskrit gradually tended to be limited to the learned classes of the community. Next, the beginnings of civil law may be traced to the attempts which were made to lay down rules for the conduct of an individual in relation to his gods, family, society, and the state. The new manuals had no literary merit or grace; they were composed in a peculiarly condensed and drab prose style suitable for the purpose of memorisation. Indeed, such emphasis and importance was

¹ Macdonell, *India’s Past*, p. 38.
² The date of Pāṇini has been the subject of frequent controversy. Keith places him "not later than 300 B.C." (Cam. Hist. Ind., Vol. I, p. 113; *Aitareya Aranyaka*, pp. 21-23); whereas Macdonell believes that Pāṇini "lived after, probably soon after, 500 B.C. (India’s Past, p. 136). Sir Ramakrishna Bhandarkar, on the other hand, plausibly argues that Pāṇini flourished about "the beginning of the seventh century B.C. (E. H. D., 3rd. ed., p. 16).
given to conciseness in the Sūtras that an economy of a syllable even was considered almost as important as the birth of a son.
CHAPTER V
GLEANINGS FROM THE SUTRAS, EPICS AND DHARMAŚĀSTRAS

SECTION A
THE SŪTRAS

Sūtra form

The origin of the Sūtras may be traced to the practical needs of the time. As the mass of sacerdotal tradition was growing rapidly both in matter and volume, it became increasingly difficult to learn everything by heart and to save the texts from undergoing changes in the course of oral transmission. Accordingly, a new prose style, convenient to memory though exceedingly dry, was developed; and treatises, in which rules were just strung together (sūtra = thread), were produced. Their merit consisted in the use of the fewest possible words. It is believed that “the general period of the Sūtras extends from the sixth or seventh century before Christ to about the second century.”¹ Whatever one may say regarding this latter limit, the oldest Sūtras, at any rate, “seem to go back to about the time when Buddhism arose.”²

We have already referred in a footnote to the controversy regarding the date of Pāṇini, and there is no doubt that Yāska was anterior to him. A native

² India’s Past, p. 17.
of Śalātura in the north-west, Panini is chiefly known for his work on grammar, the Āṣṭādhyāyī, which is a monument of thoroughness and "algebraic brevity." Incidentally, however, he gives bits of information useful for historical purpose. During his time, the Aryans were probably unfamiliar with the Dekkan, for whereas he mentions Kaccha (Cutch) in the west, Kalinga in the east, and Avanti in the south, no name of a place beyond the Vindhayas occurs in his Grammar. The states (janapadas), of which he knew about twenty-two, were called after their peoples, like the Gandhāris, Madras, Yaudheyas, Kośalas, Vṛijjis, etc. He also speaks of such territorial units as Vīra (province or division), Nagara (city) and Grāma (village). Monarchy was the norm, but there are references to Gānas and Śāṁghas too. The king was the supreme head in all matters, and below him, as shown by Dr. R.K. Mookerji, were the Pārīṣadvācos i.e., members of the Pārīṣat (council), Ādyakṣas (heads of departments), Vyāshārikas (Law-officer), Aṃpyāyikas (literally, one who devises ways and means. Was he in charge of finance?), Yuktas (officers in general), and other functionaries of administration. Further, we get a few details about the economic life of the people as well. It appears from Panini that the main sources of livelihood were agriculture, service (Janapada-vritti), profession of arms and labour. Trade and business (kṛaya-vikṛaya) flourished, and loans were advanced on interest. Among the crafts, he mentions weaving, dyeing, leather-working, hunting, carpentry, pottery-making, etc. He also records the existence of craft-corporations or guilds (pāgas). These organisations must have helped specialisation and promoted a sense of discipline and respect for law.

1 Dr. R. K. Mookerji, Hindu Civilization, Ch. VI, pp. 120 f. It is a book full of useful information.

2 Ibid., pp. 122-127.
The Sūtras Proper

As already mentioned, one of the six Vedāṅgas is Kalpa, which covered "the whole body of Śūtras concerned with religion." It is divided into three classes. Of these, the Śrauta Sūtras convey nothing historically valuable; they primarily deal with the great Vedic sacrifices of Ṣavis (oblation) and Soma and other religious matters. They were, so to say, a continuation of the ritual side of the Brāhmaṇas, but they were never regarded as revealed or sacred. Later perhaps than the Śrauta manuals are the Grihya Sūtras, treating of domestic ritual. They embody minute rules for the performance of the various ceremonies marking every important epoch of an individual's life from conception to cremation. The most interesting of these sacraments (Sāṁskāras) were Pūjāsavāna (ceremony for having an issue); Jāta-karma (birth-rite); Nāmakarana (naming ceremony); Cūḍā-karma (tonsure); Upāṇayana (Initiation for study as a Brahmācārī); Samāvartana (rite of return home); Vivāha (marriage), of which no less than eight forms were known; regular daily performance by every householder of the five great sacrifices (pañca-mahāyajña), besides other offerings on special tithis like new and full-moon days, etc.; and finally Antyaśṭhi (funeral rite). In one of these treatises, the Kuṣāṇa Śūtra, are also dealt with medicinal formulas and magical practices for averting disease and disaster. Thus the Grihya

1 They were as follows: Brāhma, Dāiva, Ārpa, Prājāpatya, Āsura, Gāndharva, Rākṣasa, Pañcāca.

cf. ग्रहणौ सर्वस्मैप्रमाणं सांस्कृतत्वमस्तुः ।

Sūtras give us an excellent insight into the ceremonies and superstitions associated with home-life in ancient India.

Dharmasūtras

The next class of Sūtras is that of the Dharmasūtras, which are chiefly concerned with society rather than with the family. They deal with social usages and customs of every-day life. In them we see the beginning of civil and criminal law. Of course, they treat more exhaustively of the religious, but touch only lightly on the secular, aspect of law. The principal Dharmasūtra authors are Gautama, who "can hardly date from later than about 500 B.C."1 and Baudhāyāna, who is supposed to have belonged to Southern India. Next come Apastamba, assigned by Bühlert to about 400 B.C., and Vaiśāṭī who certainly flourished after Gautama. Apastamba appears to have belonged to the South, perhaps the Andhra country, but Vaiśāṭī was doubtless a Northerner. Lastly, we may mention the not extant Mānava-dharma-sūtra, on which is based the metrical Mānava-dharma-lāṣṭra, still considered the most authoritative work on law and an individual’s conduct in life.

Social Orders

According to the Sūtras, Varṇapatramu-dharma was a firmly established feature of society. They describe the duties and obligations of the "Dvijas"—Brahman, Kṣatriya, and Vaiśya—as well as of the Śudras. We are also told that a "Twice-born" must pass through four stages (Āśrama) in life, viz., Brahmucarya (period of studentship), Gārhadha (married or householder's state), Vānaprastha (state of reclusion), and Sannyāsa.

1 A History of Sanskrit Literature, p. 26o. Gautama's manual is wholly composed in prose aphorisms.

See infra for more details.
(hermit’s life)—the last two being marked by the practice of ascetic exercises and retirement from worldly concerns. Tremendous emphasis was now laid on the purity of social orders (varṇas), which was possible only if the rules of marriage and interdining were meticulously observed. It was essential to avoid eating defiled food and coming in contact with what was unclean. There were strict injunctions regarding these matters, although differences of opinion do exist among the various authorities on certain points. Indeed, the older ones appear to be more lax in their views. For instance, Gautama allows a Brahman to take food offered by a “Dvija,” and in need even that given by a Śūdra. In marriage, too, a good girl, though low-born, was sometimes accepted by a Brahman, it being definitely understood that she would occupy an inferior position, and the progeny of such union would be legally considered mixed. Marriage within the same gotra and within “six degrees on the mother’s side” was prohibited, but the Dāśśāvatīṣas or Southerners, on the other hand, had the curious custom of marrying the daughter of a maternal uncle. Thus, differences in the Dharmasūtras were to some extent due to local customs and conditions. Generally, however, their outlook was narrow, and this conclusion is further supported by their interdiction of sea voyages and learning the language of “barbarians” i.e., foreign tongues.

Royal Powers

The Dharmasūtras indicate the duties of the king. He was to afford full protection to his subjects from danger and molestation, and to chastise the evil-doers; to provide means of subsistence to learned Brahmans or Srotriyas, students, and the disabled and infirm, who were not fit to work; to dispense justice; to reward the good; to lead in battle and fight with courage and resolution. He lived in a magnificent building (veśma), which
was located in the town (*pura*). Besides, there were other halls to entertain guests and to serve as assembly houses (*sahās*). Loyal and honest men were appointed to guard the people in towns (*nagara*) and villages (*grāma*) from thieves and robbers, and they had to make good the loss suffered by a person if the culprits remained untraced and stolen property could not be recovered.

**Taxes**

For purposes of administration and maintenance of the royal state, people paid taxes, which varied from one-sixth to one-tenth of the produce of land. The king could also, according to Gautama, take “one day’s work per month from artisans, one-twentieth on merchandise, one-fiftieth on cattle and gold, and one-sixtieth on roots, fruits, flowers, herbs, honey, meat, grass, and firewood.”

**Law**

The fountain of law was not the king; its source was the body of the sacred texts—the Vedas—and the tradition and practice of those who knew the Vedas. Further, it is stated that the administration of justice should be regulated by “the Vedas, Institutes of the sacred Law, the Vedāṅgas, the Purāṇas, the (special) laws of countries, castes, families (not being opposed to the sacred records), the usages of cultivators, traders, herdsmen, money-lenders, and artisans.” Thus, the customs and usages of the various groups (*varga*) and guilds (*śrenī*) were respected by the king.

The *Dharmasūtras* also throw some light on the laws of inheritance and the status of women, who, it appears, could not, on their own account, offer sacrifices or inherit property. Another unwholesome fea-

---

ure was that the idea of equality—before the majesty of law was not well developed in the Sūtras, for caste considerations and the status of individuals had then much to do in the determination of punishments; and for a similar offence a Sūdra was heavily fined, whereas a Brāhmaṇa was leniently treated.

SECTION B

THE EPICS

Origin of Epic Poetry

The beginnings of epic poetry in India may be traced to the ākhyānas, gāthās, and nārāyamās, mentioned in the Brāhmaṇas and other later Vedic texts.¹ They were recited by professional rhapsodists at certain ceremonies, and were considered very pleasing to the gods. In course of time these “songs in praise of men” developed into epic poems of considerable length, but of these only two are extant in Sanskrit. The Rāmāyaṇa and the Mahābhārata thus embody a mass of floating legends and bardic lauds recounting the triumphs and reverses, in war and love, of ancient heroes and heroines.

The Rāmāyaṇa: Its Main Story

The Rāmāyaṇa has been called ādikāvya, as it is the first example of a narrative poem written in Sloka metre in accordance with the rules of poesy. It contains 24,000 verses in all, and is ascribed, according to orthodox tradition, to the sage Vālmiki. Briefly its story is as follows:

There was a king of Ayodhya named Daśaratha,

¹ These and the Atharvaveda also mention itihāsa (story) and purāṇa (legend), which may accordingly be regarded as the literary precursors of the Epics.
whose son was Rāma by Kauśalyā. After the young prince was married to Sītā, the daughter of king Janaka of Videha, his father expressed a desire to make him Yuvārāja or heir-apparent. The announcement evoked universal joy, but it was soon turned into sorrow, when his step-mother, Kaikeyī, demanded in lieu of two boons, she had kept in reserve, that Rāma should be immediately sent into fourteen years' exile and that her own son, Bharata, be installed in his place. Accordingly, Rāma went to the forest followed by his devoted wife, Sītā, and his third brother Lakṣmanā. The subsequent adventures of the royal exiles in the course of their wanderings, the forcible carrying away of Sītā by the “demon-king” of Lanka, Rāma’s anxious search of her; alliance with Sugrīva, war against Rāvana, return to Ayodhya after Sītā’s recovery, and accession to the throne are then delineated with considerable skill and effect. The Rāmāyana is superb indeed both as regards form and matter, and it portrays ideal characters in almost all aspects of human life.

Age of the Rāmāyana

According to modern critics, the entire Rāmāyana is not the product of one hand. Their investigations have demonstrated that apart from minor interpolations in other portions, the first and seventh books were definitively added afterwards. For here occur statements in conflict with those in later books and Rāma is transformed into an incarnation of the universal god Viṣṇu, whereas in the original poem (II-VI) he is merely a human hero. This process of deification must have taken some time, and it may even be that the genuine and spurious parts are divided by centuries. Now, to what period are we to assign the epic kernel itself? There can be no doubt from the insertion of the Rāmo-
pāṇḍuṇā in the third book of the Mahābhārata that “the poem of Vālmīki must have been generally known as an old work before the Mahābhārata assumed a coherent form.” Besides, it is significant that the Rāmāyaṇa does not refer to Pāṭaliputra, founded by Udāyan; the capital of Kośala is still called Ayodhyā, and not Sāketa, which was its name in Buddhist and other later works. Buddha is mentioned only once, and that too perhaps in an interpolated verse, and the political conditions indicate the paternal rule of kings, exercising sway over small states. A consideration of all these and other points has led Dr. Macdonell to suppose that “the kernel of the Rāmāyaṇa was composed before 500 B.C., while the more recent portions were probably not added till the 2nd century B.C. and later.”

Is the Rāmāyaṇa Historical?

The approximate determination of the date of the Rāmāyaṇa does not, however, solve the difficulty of the chronological setting of its heroes. This problem, of course, does not disturb the average Hindu. To him, Rāma is a divine figure, who lived “once upon a time,” and the account of his deeds is a source of inspiration as well as a mine of absolute historical facts. But the critical reasoning of the historian is unable to find much useful information of the latter class. Indeed, some scholars even doubt if the narrative contains any history at all. For instance, Lassen and Weber take the Rāmāyaṇa to represent allegorically “the first attempt” of the Aryans to conquer the non-Aryan South, and spread their culture there. Macdonell and Jacobi, on the other hand, believe that it is a fanciful creation based on Indian mythology. According to this inter-

1 A History of Sanskrit Literature, p. 306.
2 Ibid., p. 309.
pretation, Sītā is the personification of the furrow-goddess; Rāma stands for Indra; and his conflict with Rāvana may be traced to the old Indra-Vritra myth of the Rgveda. Without labouring the point further, it amply illustrates how the story of the Rāmāyana offers a fruitful ground for speculation. There is no doubt that it is thickly interwoven with mythological fiction, but to discredit the historicity of Rāma altogether appears too wide an assumption. He is mentioned in the Buddhist Daśaratha Jātaka, where we see him in his normal form divested of divine attributes. It is also known that Kośala was an important kingdom in Madhyadesa ever since Aryan expansion eastwards. What, therefore, may be taken as the nucleus of fact is that Rāma was a real person, who belonged to the royal Ikṣvāku house of Ayodhyā, and whose achievements both in war and peace left a deep impression upon the popular imagination. The epoch of Rāma's beneficent rule is, however, as uncertain as the contemporary political condition of Northern or Southern India.

The Mahābhārata: Its Age

The Mahābhārata, which at present consists of over 100,000 verses (संहितासंहिता), has the rather doubtful honour of being the bulkiest epic known to literary history. It is divided into 18 (eighteen) books (पर्वां) of unequal size with the Harivamsa as a supplement. According to orthodox tradition, Dvaipāyana Vyāsa was the author of this stupendous work, but the essential lack of uniformity in its language, style, and contents clearly indicates that it is not the production of one brain or of one period. It is a gradual growth from an epic kernel,¹ which was in course of time

¹ Macdonell believes that the original epic kernel of the Mahābhārata consists of about 10,000 Ślokas or verses (A History of Sanskrit Literature, p. 285). He postulates three stages of its de-
thoroughly remodelled, extended, and enriched by Brahmans with an enormous amount of mythological, philosophical, religious, and didactic matter. The Ātvalīyana Gṛihyaśūtra furnishes the oldest evidence for the existence of the Mahābhārata in some form, and a land-grant of about 500 A.D., where it is definitely called "a collection of a hundred thousand verses," shows that by this date, or some time—say a century—earlier, it already existed in its present shape. Thus the beginnings, growth, revision, and interpolations of this tremendous compilation are to be ascribed to this long interval between the fifth century B.C. and 400 A.D. roughly.

The Story in Brief

The framework of the epic deals with the great conflict between the Kauravas, the hundred sons of Dhritarāṣṭra, and the Pāndavas, the five sons of Pāṇḍu. It was the culmination of their long-standing rivalry, which began thus:

After the death of Vīciṭra-Vīrya, the Kurus, his younger son Pāṇḍu succeeded him, as the elder, Dhritarāṣṭra, was born blind. But owing to Pāṇḍu’s premature death, Dhritarāṣṭra himself had to assume the reins of government within a short time. Being fond of his nephew, Yudhiṣṭhira, a man of rare virtue, he then nominated him heir-apparent. This aroused the jealousy of his eldest son, Duryodhana, who by his machinations compelled the Pāṇḍus to escape from the capital. During their wanderings they went to Pāścālā, where Arjuna won in a svayamvara velopment. (Ibid., p. 284).

1 Extensive episodes and whole works, like the Brūgamad Gītā, have often been inserted to preach a moral.

2 The Hindi Priṭihāṣā Rājo of Cāṇḍ Bardāi has similarly been rehandled and expanded into its present bulky form.
the king's daughter, Draupadi, for himself and his brothers. This alliance proved a turning-point in their fortunes, for with a view to conciliating them Dhrisitarasstra divided his kingdom, giving Hastinapur to his sons, and to his nephews a region of which Indraprastha became the capital. Here, too, the Pandavas were not allowed to reign in peace. Duryodhana lured Yudhishtira to play with him a game of dice, in which the latter lost everything—kingdom, wife, honour—and had to go in exile for twelve years. On the expiry of the period, he tried to get back the lost kingdom, but Duryodhana scornfully rejected Yudhishtira's terms. This led to a trial of strength. Hostilities lasted eighteen days on the famous battlefield of Kuruksetra, and there was indescribable suffering and slaughter. Ultimately victory rested with Yudhishtira, who ruled gloriously for a brief period, and then retired to the Himalayas with his brothers, giving the care of the crown to the distinguished Pariksit.

Its Historical Value

In the main the story of the Mahabharata is based on historical truth. Hastinapur and Indraprastha were doubtless real cities, and, despite their utter destruction by the ravages of time and the elements, their names still survive. The former is now represented by a hamlet of the same name on the Ganges in the Meerut district, and the latter is recognised in the small village of Indarpur on the Jumna, near modern Delhi. The traditional date, 3102 B.C., of the famous war between the rulers of the two places will hardly stand the test of criticism, but it has with some plausibility.

Mr. J. Rao thinks that the War took place in 3139 B.C., as according to a tradition Krishna passed away at the commencement of the Kalyuga after the lapse of 36 years from the Mahabharata war (The Age of the Mahabharata, p. 3, etc.).
been placed about 1000 B.C.¹ For the *Satapatha Brahmana* is familiar with the heroes of the epic, and it mentions Janamejaya as almost a recent personage. It is also known that the Kurus were a great people during the later Vedic period, although the Pândus do not at all figure either in the *Brähmanas* or in the *Sûtras*. They first emerge into view with the later Buddhist literature as a mountain tribe. Does this show, as has sometimes been conjectured, that they were foreign immigrants, unrelated to the Kurus? At any rate, the theory is supported to some extent by their rude, uncourteous manners; practice of polyandry; and the name “Pându,” meaning “pale,” which may perhaps indicate their Mongolian affinities. If the suggestion has any substance, the present text of the *Mahâbhârata* gives an altogether garbled version of the actual origins and relations of the chief combatants. Similarly, it is difficult to accept its testimony regarding their allies. For instance, we learn that the Kuru hosts included the rulers of Prâgijyotisa (Assam), Avanti and Dakšinâpatha, the Cinas, Kûrâs, Kambojas, Yavanas, Sakas, Madras, Kaikeyas, Sindhus, Sauvîras etc.² Apart from the fact that they were not all contemporaneous, it is doubtful whether these distant powers were interested in what was perhaps a local conflagration in Madhyâdesa. And surely they could not be called to arms as feudatories, for the nearness of the Kaurava and Pândava capitals itself shows that they did not hold an extensive sway. In short, there are undoubted deviations from historical accuracy in the *Mahâbhârata*, but the central theme is authentic, and its characters,

² The allies of the Pândus were the kings of Pañcâla, Košâla, Kâli, Magadha, Cedi, Mûryâ and the Yudus.
whose exploits were first popularised by story-tellers and minstrels, are by no means imaginary.

**Gleanings from the Epics**

The two Epics have not only many common phrases and fables but the conditions depicted in them are very much alike. We shall accordingly draw on both together for a picture of the life of the princes and the people. It must, however, be remembered that all the data do not relate to any particular period, as the Epics are a gradual growth, and were compiled and enlarged centuries after the events described.

(a) *The King*

The epic king was not an absolute despot satisfying his personal caprice only. He was amenable to the will of his brothers, councillors and the populace. He had also to recognise and respect the laws of different groups—*Kulas* (families), *Jātis* (castes), *Srenis* (guilds), and *Pāgas* (communities). A wicked king was deposed or killed “like a mad dog.” Even the immediate heir, if bodily defective, was not called to the throne. The king was installed and crowned with due ceremonies, and he was the leader of his people both “at home and in the field.” He was expected to undertake expeditions with the advice of the ministers and the blessings of the priest, but in practice the king probably decided the matter himself in collaboration with his allies. The *Subbā* had now become a mere body for consultation on military matters. The king lived amid pomp and splendour, and dancing-girls and women of easy virtue formed a part of his retinue. His chief recreations were music, gambling, hunting, animal fights, and wrestling contests. He meted out justice in the hall adjoining the palace. In old age he usually abdicated or retired in favour of his eldest son.
The capital was well protected with a surrounding wall, gates, towers, and moats, and supplied with the necessary amenities of life. There were music-halls, pleasure-gardens, well-laid out squares, beautiful buildings for the king and grandees of the court, and attractive booths for traders. The thoroughfares were lighted at night with lamps, and the dust-nuisance was allayed by watering them regularly.

(b) Administration

The king administered the realm with the help of a Mantripurisad (ministry), which, according to the Mahabharata, consisted of four Brahmans, eight Kshatriyas, twenty-one Vaisyas, three Sudras, and one of the Suta caste. The Prime-minister and other councillors were men of the highest integrity, sagacity, and character. Besides, the king was assisted in the discharge of his duties by subordinate rulers (Samanai), the Yuvaraja (Crown-prince), the aristocracy, and such high officers as Purohita (Priest), Camapati (Commander-in-chief), Dvarapala (Chamberlain), Prade斯塔 (Chief Justice), Dharmadhyaksa (Superintendent of Justice), Dandapala (Presiding Judge of the Criminal Courts, or Chief Police Officer?), Nagardhyaksa (City-Prefect), Karmanirmankrit (Superintendent of Works), Karagadvikari (Superintendent of Prisons), Durgapala (Warden of forts), etc.

The village or grama, which was the lowest unit of administration, enjoyed considerable local autonomy under its headman (Grampa). Next, in the ascending scale were officers of ten (Dasagrami), twenty (Vimlaphina), a hundred (Satagrami), and a thousand villages (Adhipathi). These officers collected revenue, detected crime, and maintained order within their jurisdictions, each being responsible to the next higher authority, and all even-

1 Sastiparana, LXXXV, 7-11.
Army: Ganas: The People

The king's army consisted of the Aryan nobles and commoners, who served as archers, slingers, rock-throwers, cavalrymen, chariot-drivers, elephant-riders, etc. The suggestion that fire-arms i.e., cannon and gunpowder were also used will hardly bear criticism. All that one may believe is that perhaps there were some "magically blazing" weapons like Cakras and arrows. It was deemed glorious for the warrior to die fighting. The Ksatriya fought for renown or for his chieftain. The king pensioned the widows of the fallen. Those captured in battle became the victor's slaves for a year at least. Sometimes, however, they were restored to freedom on certain conditions. Incidentally, it may be interesting to note that grass-eating was regarded as a sign of submission.

Ganas

The Sāntiparvan of the Mahābhārata (Ch. 107, verses 6-32) also refers to the Gana form of government i.e., the rule of the many. Its strength and prosperity depended on avoiding internal disunion, keeping councils secret, obeying the leaders, and respecting established customs and usages. Sometimes a number of Ganas formed a sort of confederation (Samgha). For instance, chapter 81 of the Sāntiparvan represents Kṛśna as Head of the Andhaka-Vraṇi league.

People

Caste was already a firmly-rooted institution. The nobles and the Brahmans had the upper hand in society, whereas the un-Aryan "Sudras" were the under-dogs, and the slaves, "born to servitude," had no rights and possessions. The position of women had deterio-
rated as compared with what it was in the Vedic age. The custom of Sati is spoken of, and polygamy was practised. Going out veiled, sometimes referred to, was perhaps a court-custom. We also hear of Svayamvaras, i.e., self-selection of the bridegroom.

The bulk of the population lived in villages around forts (durga), perhaps of mud, tending cattle and practising agriculture. In times of danger, such as war and cattle-lifting raids, they took shelter inside these rude defences. The villagers were autonomous in ordinary affairs, but the king as the overlord administered justice and exacted taxes, which varied according to need and were perhaps paid mostly in kind. Merchants and others dwelt in towns. The former brought goods from afar, and paid customs duties. Townsfolk probably paid fines and taxes in money. The use of false-weights, sometimes alluded to, must have necessitated a careful supervision of the market-place by the state. The guilds of merchants and artisans wielded great influence, and, next to the priests, their heads (mahajan) were the objects of royal attention and solicitude.

The people were addicted to eating meat and drinking intoxicating liquors, although vegetarianism was gradually gaining ground on account of the doctrine of Ahimsa, stressed by the best minds of ancient times.1

(f) Religion

The worship of the striking phenomena of Nature was now left far behind. The Vedic deities had yielded precedence to the cult of the Hindu Trinity—Brahma, Vishnu, and Siva. New gods and goddesses, like Surya (Sun), Ganesa and Durga, arose, and it became a popular article of faith that Vishnu took on incarnation for establishing righteousness on earth. Along with this, the

1 cf. Chandogya Upanishad, III, 17, 4.
doctrine of transmigration was widely accepted. The Epics thus indicate that the foundations of modern beliefs had been well and truly laid.

SECTION C

THE DHARMAŚĀSTRAS

The Dharmaśāstras

The Dharmaśāstras represent the traditional teachings of certain Brahmanical schools on Dharma or civil and religious law. These texts, in Sloku metre, are the most important sources of Hindu law, and they throw a good deal of light on ancient Brahmanical institutions and civilisation. Of these codes, the principal ones are the Māṇavadharmaśāstra belonging “rather to the time of our (Christian) era or before it than later;”¹ Viṣṇudharmaśāstra, which, though in Sūtra form, is decidedly posterior to the work of Manus, being largely based on it; Yājñavalīkyaśuṣṭi, composed in Mithilā about the fourth century A.D.; and Nāradaśuṣṭi of about the fifth century A.D. Besides, there are minor Suṣūṣṭis, later Nibandhas, and commentaries, like the Mitākṣarā, which have also in course of time become authoritative.

Society: Vṛṇas

As in the Dharmaśāstras, so in the Dharmaśāstras, caste-distinctions are the “frame” of society. Each of its limbs had its particular duties and privileges. Thus, according to Manus, the Brahman was to study and teach, perform Yajña and assist others in doing it, give alms and receive gifts; the Kṣatriya had to administer and to protect people, to spend money for advancing

¹ Hopkins, Cam. Hist. Ind., Vol. 1, p. 279.
knowledge and the cause of truth, to perform Yajñas, to study the scriptures, and above all, to fight bravely and fearlessly; the Vaiśya tended cattle, performed Yajñas etc., lent money on interest, and carried on trade and agriculture; and the Sūdra ministered to the physical comforts of the community, i.e., did menial service. The law-books also refer to “mixed castes,” which originated from inter-marriages and illicit relations. Next, there were the non-Aryans, the Mlecchas, Cāṇḍalas, Svapākas, etc., considered even lower than the Sūdras, almost beyond the pale of society.

The Stages of Life

The Dharmaśāstras mention the rules of the four stages of life (Āśrama), which applied to a Dvijā or “Twice-born.” The first, Brahmacārya, was the period of studentship. It began with the Upanayana ceremony, but the age of initiation often varied, as it depended on the circumstances and capacity of the youngster and the order to which he belonged. He learnt the Vedas and other sacred works or the Vedāṅgas and Darśanas etc., under the paternal care and guidance of teachers—Upādhyāyas and Ācāryas. The Brahmacārī’s life was one of discipline and regular activity; he had to study diligently, worship daily and perform Agnihotra, beg alms, collect wood, and bring water etc., for his guru or teacher. Modern students may well take a leaf out of the book of their ancient compeers. After the completion of education, the Brahmacārī entered the Grihasthāśrama i.e., married and became a householder. A Grihastha was expected to give charity liberally and to clear the three debts he owed to gods, Rishi and fore-fathers by Yajña, study and continence, and progeny respectively. In the third stage, Vānaprastha, an individual renounced all the “good things” of life and repaired to the solitude of the forest for calm con-
temptation, living there on the simplest fare, roots, and fruits, etc. Last of all was the stage of Sannyāsa, when all worldly connections were cut asunder and the body was subjected to mortification with a view to probing into the mysteries of existence and realising the ultimate Reality. The Sannyāsi subsisted on whatever he got by begging, and dedicated himself to the promulgation and dissemination of Truth and Righteousness. Such was the scheme of life enjoined on the upper three classes by the law-givers, but it is doubtful how far their injunctions were followed in practice. At any rate, it appears that Sannyāsa was generally meant for, and embraced by, the Brahmans only.

**Position of Women**

The Dharmasastras give us some idea of the position of women. At one place Manu says: "Where women are worshipped (honoured), the gods shower their blessings; but where they are not honoured, all acts are fruitless." Curiously, however, in another verse he regards them as a source of evil leading men astray. He does not also contemplate that a woman could ever be independent; she was to be under the tutelage or guardianship of her father in childhood, of her husband in youth, and of her sons in old age. Further, according to Manu, women were of unstable temperaments, and they could not, therefore, be called as witnesses. He countenan-

---

1 cf. यज्ञायाय कर्त्तव्यं स्त्रियाः स्त्रियाः तथा देवता।
कृष्णानां न पुरुषात्मां सर्वाक्षरामहाः: किमतः।

2 cf. स्वाभाव एव गरीवी गरीवीयोहस्मिल तुस्तन्तु।

3 cf. ग्राहिताः स्त्रियाः कौमार्यो मातृ। स्मार्तिः योवने।

4 cf. उत्साती स्वस्वयं न नीति स्वस्वमन्थनिः।

5 cf. उन्नि स्वाते युम्न न स्नी स्वात्मस्महिं।

6 cf. मनुश्रुत स्माते मेहरानी (Ibid., II. 213).

7 cf. (Manusmriti, III, 76).

8 cf. उद्भवितं स्वाते युम्न न स्नी स्वात्मस्महिं।

9 cf. उद्भवितं स्वाते युम्न न स्नी स्वात्मस्महिं।

10 cf. मनुश्रुत स्माते मेहरानी (Ibid., IX. 3).

11 cf. मनुश्रुत स्माते मेहरानी (Ibid., VIII. 77).
ces marriages of maidens when they are only twelve or eight years old; but with regard to the sale of daughters he seems to express contradictory opinions. A woman could be abandoned or divorced by the husband if she was barren or bore only daughters, as also on the ground of unfaithfulness. Manu deprecates widow-remarriage and Niyoga (Levirate), whereas Nārada permits both. Stridhana apart, it is not made explicit by Manu if a widow was entitled to inherit her husband’s property. Nārada denies this right to her; Yājñavalkya, on the other hand, recognises a widow as her husband’s heir. Although the custom of Sati does not obtain sanction till late, the lot of widows, debarred as they were from participating in auspicious ceremonies, must have been hard indeed. There is no mention of Purdah, and Manu admits that nobody could “guard a woman by force.”

The State

The Smritis recognise monarchy as the normal form of government. Manu emphasises the necessity of having a king, for without him confusion would reign supreme all round (VII, 3). The king is attributed a divine origin. Manu says: “A king, though an infant, must not be despised because he looks a human being; verily, he is a great deity in human form.” He further adds: “Through his powers (pra-

---

1 Ibid., IX, 94.
2 See Manusmriti, VIII, 204; III, 51; IX, 98.
3 Ibid., IX, 81.
4 Ibid., IX, 65.
5 She could inherit the property of her issueless son (Ibid. IX, 217).
6 Ibid., IX, 10.
7 cf. बालोवृत्तं नावलन्तर्णं मनुन्म वृत्तिभुविनः 
महति देवता हृदया नरस्ववेण श्रिष्टि (Manusmriti, VII, 8).
bhüu), he is Agni (Fire), Vāyu (Wind), Arka (Sun), Soma (Moon), Dharmarāṣṭ (Yama), Kubera, Varuṇa and Indra. But at the same time it is to be noted that a king, though considered divine, is not represented as an absolute autocrat ruling with an iron hand for his own glory. He wielded the Doṇḍa only to maintain and enforce the Dharma. He was by no means regarded as above the Law. Indeed, it is said that Law destroys a king, who is indolent, sensual, tyrannical, and unrighteous. According to Manu, the sources of Dharma are (a) the Vedas, (b) the Smritis, (c) Āśāra i.e., practices of pious men, and (d) self-satisfaction. To these Yājñavalkya adds certain secondary sources, like deliberation, decision of Pariṇāds and of learned persons, temporary needs not inconsistent with one's duties, royal edicts, special usages of guilds, corporations, etc., and local customs. Manu also refers to the laws of countries (deśdharma), of castes (jātīdharmā), of families (kuladharmā), of heretics (pāṣaṇḍas), and of corporations (gānas).

The Dharmaśāstras recognise a Kṣatriya alone as king, although history knows of kings belonging to other castes also. He led a well-regulated and strenuous life for the good and progress of his people and kingdom. In the discharge of his onerous responsibilities, he acted on the advice of a cabinet consisting of seven or eight ministers, and whatever orders the king gave were taken down, or passed on, by secretaries (Śabāyāt). He received petitions from his subjects in the assembly-hall (sabhā), adjacent to the palace, and decided cases prescribing fines, religious expiations,

1 Ibid., VII, 7.
2 Ibid., VII, 17-28.
3 cf. केदीर्निकति भर्मण्य भ्रृतीवै श्वरायां च तविदाम्।
प्राप्तार्घव: राष्ट्रामातांनतथुरते च न। (Ibid., II, 6).
4 Manusmṛti, I, 118.
and other penalties according to the nature of the offence and the status of the parties concerned. Besides the counsellors (amātus or mantris), the king governed through a host of officials, high and low, Mahāmātras and Yuktus, assisted by spies (cāras), agents provocateurs, and other instrumenta imperii. The principal departments of state were those of (a) Espionage, which kept a strict watch everywhere and on everybody; (b) Finance, in charge of income and expenditure; perhaps it also supervised stores, working of mines, etc.; (c) Military, to preserve internal peace and repel foreign invasions; (d) Police, meant to apprehend criminals and maintain law and order; (e) Justice: it dispensed justice and settled disputes.

Lastly, a few words may be said about the divisions of the kingdom and local administration. The empire (rāstra) comprised ādus or janapadas (regions or provinces), sub-divided into visayas (divisions), nagaras (cities) or puras (towns), and grāmas (villages). A nagara or city was placed under such a high officer as could inspire awe and confidence among citizens, and he was also given authority to deal with all matters concerning urban life (Sarvārthasaṁtaka). A village was under the Grāmika, who was by way of remuneration daily supplied by the villagers with all the essential requisites of food, fuel, and drink (VII, 118). Over him were officers of ten villages (Daśī), who got one kula of land (sufficient to be tilled by six pairs of oxen); officers of twenty villages (Viniśateta or Viniśi), assigned five Kulas; officers of a hundred villages Sateṣa or Satādhyakṣa), allowed to have one village for their maintenance; and officers of a thousand villages (Sabatrapati), remunerated with the revenues of a town.

1 Manusmṛti, VII, 121.
2 Ibid., VII, 111, 118, 119. Vīṣṇu omits the lord of twenty villages.
Justice

The Smritis generally enumerate eighteen causes of disputes, such as debts, sales without adequate title, fixing of boundaries, partition, non-payment of wages, breach of contract, partnership, adultery, violence, slander, larceny, robbery, etc. Thus, there were both kinds of cases—civil and criminal. Those accused or suspected of theft had to prove their innocence by oath or ordeal, or sometimes both were combined. Manu mentions only two kinds of ordeal, fire and water (VIII, 114), but Yājñavalkya and Nānda add three more—scales, ploughshare, and poison—and in the Brihadāranyakapāramitā the list mounts to nine varieties. Punishments inflicted or recommended are severe. For example, a cow-lifter had his nose cut off, and one who stole more than ten “kumbhas” of grain or silver or gold was executed (VIII, 320, 321). Any kind of reasonable conduct was usually visited with the death penalty. A Brahman, if found guilty, suffered excommunication, losing all right to inheritance. Indeed, Manu lays down that whatever crime a Brahman may commit, he should never be killed but only exiled (VIII, 580). At the same time, however, it may be observed that for a similar offence Manu prescribes a fine of one Karpāpna only for a commoner and one thousand in the case of a king (VIII, 336). This was perhaps in accordance with the principle that the more eminent, influential, and knowing a man is the heavier should his punishment be.

In civil law, the later Smritis treat of contracts and business partnerships—an idea not quite known to the earlier works and the Sūtras. Manu speaks only of religious partnership—Brahmans sharing fees (dakṣiṇā) by officiating together in a ceremony, but Yājñavalkya

1 Not uncommon civil litigation was avoided by arbitration.
mentions partners in trade and agriculture (II, 265). Similarly, Nārada and Brihaspati refer to them, and how their shares were to be determined. The lawbooks further show that loans were advanced, and the interests on them varied from fifteen per cent to sixty per cent according to the castes of the debtor. Usury is, however, generally discouraged; a Brahmā specially was not expected to charge a high rate of interest. If a debt could not be cleared, a Sūdra-debtor did some kind of labour in lieu of it. To enforce payment of debt, the practice of sitting and fasting unto death in front of the debtor’s house was also sometimes resorted to.

**Taxation**

Taxes were intended to be light and equitable. The king is advised not to put too great a burden on the people, nor to resort to unrighteous and cocious methods. The Mahābhārata, for instance, exhorts him to gather taxes from his subjects like a bee sucking honey from flowers, or a calf drawing milk from the udders of the cow. The great law-giver, Mānus, allows a king to take from merchants one-fiftieth part of their profits in cattle and gold, and one-sixth, one-eighth, and one-twelfth of agricultural produce such as rice etc. (VII, 130); and also one-sixth of the profits in ghee, honey, perfumes, vegetables, fruits, roots, etc. (VII, 131, 132). Artisans, smiths, and labourers paid taxes in the form of a day’s labour monthly (VII, 138). The Śrotriyas were, however, exempted from taxes (VII, 133). Others enjoying this immunity were the blind, the deaf, the lame, the aged, and those who helped the Śrotriyas (VII, 394).

In conclusion, we may add that among other important

---

1 Nārada altogether forbids Brahmans to practise money-lending (Nāradaśāstra, I, 114).
2 Ṣaṅgīparvan, Ch. LXXXVIII, 4-8.
sources of state-revenue were excise duties, customs or tolls, levies at ferries, etc.

*Occupations and Trade*

The *Smritis* indicate to some extent the material condition of the people by the crafts they mention. Thus, we hear of blacksmiths, goldsmiths, oilmen, dyers, tailors, washermen, potters, weavers, leather-workers, distillers, makers of bow and arrow, wood and metal-workers, etc. Besides, there were the mechanics and artisans, who were regarded as particularly useful members of society.

Agriculture was the mainstay of the mass of people, but trade, too, was not neglected. It was carried on by barter as well as by the medium of coins consisting of gold *svargas*, silver *raupya* *māsakas*, *Dharanas*, and *Satamānas*, and copper *Kārṣapanas* (VIII, 135-137). The state fixed the prices of articles, and anybody guilty of adulteration or the use of false measures and weights was punished. It was prohibited to export grains in times of famine, or such goods as were under state-monopoly. There were well-known trade-routes, which occasionally were unsafe. Rivers were crossed by boats, and on land carts and animals conveyed merchandise to and fro.
PART II
CHAPTER VI

I. THE AGE OF THE BUDDHA

SECTION A

India just before the rise of Buddhism

The Buddhist and the Jain works are primarily devoted to the inculcation of religious ideas rather than the narration of political events. Occasionally, however, we obtain flashes of historical light from stories or anecdotes preserved in these books. It is thus incidentally that we learn of the sixteen great powers (solasā mahājanapadas), which must have existed in the seventh or the early sixth century B.C., as the list is given in the oldest Buddhist writings and it does not exactly fit in with the conditions prevailing in the Buddha’s time. These states were:

1. Kāśi with its capital of the same name, also called Vārānasi. It greatly prospered under the rule of the Brahmāyattas. Aśvaseṣa, father of Tīrthamkara Pārśva, is believed to have been one of the early kings of Kāśi.

2. Kośala: Its capital was Sāvatthi (Sravasti) or Saheṭ Maheth, in the Gonda district, during the Buddhist period. Prior to that, Sāketa and Ayodhyā had served as capitals. The rulers of Kośala and Kāśi were often

3 See e.g., Abhidharma Nikāya (I, 123; IV, 252, 256, 260). The Buddhist Sanskrit work, Mahāvastu, gives a slightly variant list. The names, as mentioned in the Jain text Bhagavatī Sūtra, are also different.
at war, and one of the former, Kamsa, uniformly styled
"Bārānasigghah" in Pā́lī works, eventually succeeded in
annexing the latter kingdom. At any rate, it is known
beyond doubt that Mahākosāla, father of Pasenadi,
exercised complete sway over Kāśi.
3. Aṅga: It lay to the east of Magadha, with
Campā, near Bhagalpur, as its capital. Some of the
Aṅga monarchs, like Brahmadatta, appear to have
defeated their Magadhan contemporaries. Subsequently,
however, Magadha emerged supreme.
4. Magadha: It comprised the modern districts
of Patna and Gayā, and the capital was Girivraja. Among
the notable pre-Buddhist rulers of Magadha were
Brihadratha and his son Jarāsandha.
5. Vaijī: It represented a powerful confedera-
tion of eight clans, and was called after one of them.
The other prominent clans were the Licchavis, the
Videhas, and the Jñāstrikas. In Buddhist literature,
the Vaijīs, like the Licchavis, are often located at Vai-
śāli, which may accordingly be taken as the seat of
the confederacy itself.
6. Malla: The territory of the Mallas was on
the mountain slopes, probably to the north of the
Vaijīan confederation. They had two branches with
their capitals at Kuśinārā and Pāvā. It is noteworthy
that in Pre-Buddhist times the Mallas were a monarchy.
7. Četi or Cedā: The land of the Četis, identified
with the Cedis of the older documents, lay near the
Jumna, and roughly corresponded to modern Bundel-
khand and adjacent tracts. Its metropolis was Sukti-
matī or Sothivatī-nagara.
8. Varṣa or Vatsa: The country of the Vācchas
was situated along the banks of the Jumna, to the north-
east of Avanti, with its capital at Kauśāmbī or Kosambī
(modern Kosam, about thirty miles from Allahabad).
It was Nīcakṣu who fixed his residence here after the
destruction of Hastināpura. To this Bharata dynasty
belonged Parantapa, father of the Buddha’s contemporary Udëna.

9. Kuru: The Kuru realm was in the neighbourhood of Delhi. Among its towns may be mentioned Indapatta (Indraprastha) and Hatthinipura (Hastinapura). The Kurus had now lost their political importance.

10. Pañcâla: This region roughly corresponded to modern Rohilkhand and a portion of the Central Doab. It had two divisions, Northern and Southern, the Ganges forming the boundary line. Their capitals were Ahicchatra and Kâmpilya respectively. One of the early Pañcâla kings, Dummukha (Durmukha), is credited with conquests in all directions.

11. Maccha or Matsya: The Matsyas ruled to the west of the Jumna and south of the Kurus. Their capital was Virât-nagara (modern Bairâ, Jaipur State).

12. Sûrasena: The Sûrasenas were masters of a kingdom, of which Mathurâ was the capital. It was here that the Yádava family played a great part.

13. Assaka: In the Buddha’s time the Assakas were settled on the Godâvari with Potali or Potana as their chief town, but when the list was drawn up their territory appears to have been between Avanti and Mathurâ.

14. Avanti or Western Malwa: Its capital was Ujjain. The metropolis of its southern portion was Mâhissatâ or Mâhiśmati (modern Mándhâtâ), where ruled the Hâlayas in ancient times.

15. Gandhâra i.e., modern eastern Afghanistan: Its capital was Takşasilâ (modern Taxilâ, Rawalpindi district). The kingdom perhaps also included Kashmir.

16. Kamboja: The Kambojas also held sway in the north-west, being usually associated with the Gandhâras in epigraphic records and literature. We hear of
Rājapura and Dvārakā as its important towns.\(^1\)

The list is curious in certain respects. It recognises Āṅga and Kāśī as still independent, and does not mention Orissa, Bengal, or any place south of Avanti.

**SECTION B**

**INDIA AT THE TIME OF THE BUDDHA**

(a) *Democratic or Autonomous Clans*

We learn from works in Pāli that at the time of the Buddha there were, besides monarchical states, a number of democratic or autonomous clans, some of little account, and others enjoying considerable power.\(^2\)

Amongst such communities we learn of the following:

1. The Sākyas of Kapilavatthu or Kapilavastu: They were settled on the border of Nepal and English territory, and their capital has been identified with the present Tilaurā-koṭ. They traced their descent from Ikṣvāku of the Solar race.

2. The Bhaggas of Sūnsumagiri: They were an ancient clan, being identical with the Bhargas of the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*. According to Dr. Jayaswal, their seat of power was somewhere in or about the district of Mirzapur.\(^3\)

3. The Bullis of Allakappa: Not much is known about them. They were located near the kingdom of Veḷādīpa, presumably between modern Shahabad and Muzaffarpur.

4. The Kālamas of Kesaputta: The location of their chief town is uncertain. Has it anything to do

---


\(^3\) Hindu Polity, p. 49.
with the Kesins—a people mentioned with the Pancaelas in the Satapatha Brahmana? Alara, the great teacher of the Buddha, belonged to this tribe.

3. The Koliyas of Ramagama: They were to the east of the Sakyas, and the river Rohini formed the dividing line between the two territories. Their relations were generally peaceful, but once the two clans came into conflict for the distribution of the waters of the Rohini.

6. The Mallas of Pava, identified by Cunningham with Padraun in the Gorakhpur district. Some, however, take Fazilpur to stand on the site of ancient Pava.

7. The Mallas of Kusinar, corresponding to modern Kasi, where was discovered a small temple with a colossal statue of the Buddha in the Parinibbana (Parinirvana) posture.

8. The Moryas of Piphalivana: The identification of the capital is doubtful. They are said to have been a branch of the Sakyas, and were so called because their place ever resounded with the cries of peacocks (mora).

9. The Videhas of Mitthila (present Janakapura just within the Nepalese border). It is noteworthy that Videha, once ruled by Janaka of Upasadic fame, was no longer under a monarchical government.

10. The Licchavis of Vaisali or modern Basarh in the Muzaffarpur district. They were an important people then. They were Ksatriyas, and as such got a share of the Buddha’s relics. They came into intimate contact with both Mahavira and the Buddha, and thus greatly profited by their exhortations and teachings. It is represented that the Licchavi oligarchy had a governing body comprising 7,707 Rajas. The Licchavis were noted for their full and frequent assemblies, and they carried on discussions in a spirit of confidence and concord.
Details about the Sākyas, etc.

The Buddhist works naturally give us more details about the Sākyas, as the Buddha came of this stock. We are told that at the helm of the state was the President, who bore the title of Rājā. It is uncertain whether he was drawn from one noble family only, and for what period he was elected. Thus, the Buddha's father, Suddhodana, was a Rājā, and we also hear of his cousin, Bhaddiya, holding this office. The business of the clan was carried on in the open assemblies in Santhūgāras or Mote-halls, where the young and the old, the rich and the poor alike were present. The Buddhist works give us a vivid idea of how deliberations were conducted in these assemblies, which were modelled on the religious Sanghas. We learn that there were regular meetings with proper seating arrangements made by a special officer called āsanapādāpaka or āsanaprajñāpaka. Each meeting to be valid must have the requisite number of members present, but the chairman (Vinayadhara) was not counted for the purpose of the quorum. It was the duty of the whip (Ganāparaka) to complete the quorum by requisitioning the presence of members. The business began with the formal presentation (sthāpanā) of the motion (katti or jñāpti), which was followed by a proclamation (anusāsanam). Discussion related to the motion only, and all cantankerous and irrelevant talk was avoided and checked. A resolution (pratijñā) received one reading (jñāpti-dvitiya-kamma) and sometimes even three (jñāpti-trutiya-kamma). Silence of the members on the resolution was regarded as assent, but in case of disagreement they had recourse to various devices,

like referring the matter to a committee, with a view to arriving at a unanimous decision. If no unanimity was possible, votes (chanda) were taken. Voting was by tickets (salāka), generally slips of wood, of various colours to indicate different views. The officer collecting votes was styled Salākāgāhāpaka, who was expected to show no kind of prejudice, malice, or fear. Voting was perfectly free and unfettered, and the majority view (yo-bhuyya-sikan) prevailed. A question, once decided, was not to be re-opened. Records of proceedings also appear to have been kept by clerks. The procedure was thus truly democratic, anticipating in many respects the working of modern popular assemblies.

The clan subsisted on the produce of the rice-fields, and the cattle grazed in the village common or the forests. The villages were grouped together, and persons following particular crafts generally lived at one place. For instance, potters, smiths, carpenters and even those following priestly avocations had their own settlements. On the whole, the Śākyas were a peaceful community, and cases of theft or other crimes were rare. Perhaps they also had, like the Koliyas, regular police officers, who were distinguished by a special headdress, and who were notorious for "extortion and violence." When caught, the offenders were produced before a court of justice and carefully tried. The Vajjians, at any rate, had, as would appear from the Aṭṭhakathā or Buddhaghosa's commentary on the Mahāparinibbāna-Sutta, a very complicated judicial system; and punishments were awarded according to the Book of Precedents (Pavenu Potthaka), when the accused was uniformly adjudged guilty by a succession of officers, viz., Justices (Viniccaya Mahāmātis), Lawyers (Vohārikas), Doctors of Law (Sūtra-dharas), Council of Eight (Aṭṭhakulaka), the General (Senāpati), the Vice-Consul (Upa-rāja), and the Consul (Rāja). Each of these could, of course, let off the person charged, if
considered innocent.¹

(b) Monarchical States

During the lifetime of the Buddha the most important development in the politics of the country was the rise of the four kingdoms of Kauśāmbī (Vatsa), Avanti, Kośala, and Magadha.² They were now ruled by vigorous personalities, who had launched a policy of aggrandisement and absorption of neighbouring states. It inevitably led to conflicts among these powers, and, as we shall presently see, they were all ultimately welded into one mighty empire.

I. The Vatsa kingdom: Its capital was Kauśāmbī or Kosambi, identified with modern Kosam on the Junnā, to the south of Allahabad. The Buddha’s contemporary ruler of this land was Udena or Udayana, son of Śatānīka Parantapa, of the Bharata dynasty. Tradition has preserved many stories of Udena’s love adventures and wars. For instance, the Udenasattvha informs us how once, after being captured—perhaps in war³—by Pajjota (Pradyota) of Avanti, Udena eloped by a clever ruse with his rival’s daughter, Vāsuladatta or Vāsavadatta, and married her in his capital. Similarly, other legends mention the daughter of Dhridhavarman, whom he restored to the throne of Ānga, and Padmavati, sister of king Darśaka of Magadha, as Udena’s queens. Echoes of his digvijaya and victory in distant Kaliṅga, and enmity with a Kośala king come from later Sanskrit works like the Kathāsaritsāgara and the Priyadasikā. It is,

¹ Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, pp. 20-23; B. C. Law, K. C. B. I., pp. 120-21.
² D. R. Bhandarkar, Carmichael Lectures on the Ancient History of India, 1919.
³ According to tradition, Udena, who was specially proficient in playing on the lute, fell into a trap dexterously set up by Pradyota. See also H. K. Deb, Udayana Vatsuvāna (Calcutta, 1919).
no doubt, difficult to rely upon them implicitly, but that Udana was a powerful prince, who was at war with some of his contemporaries and formed matrimonial alliances with the ruling houses of Avanti, Magadha, and Aṅga, appears to be the substratum of truth.

We do not know whether his son, Bodhikumāra, succeeded him. The *Kathāsaritsāgara*, at any rate, would have us believe that the kingdom of Kosambī was annexed to Avanti by Pālaka, son of Pradyota.

Lastly, it may be added that Kosambī became a centre of Buddhist activity from the time of the Buddha, who was himself often there. Udana was at first not favourably disposed towards the new teaching, but was subsequently much impressed by conversation with a celebrated Buddhist monk, named Pindola.

II. Avanti: It was at this time ruled by Canda Pajjota (Pradyota), who had his capital at Ujjayini. He had, as already noticed, matrimonial relations with Udana of Kausāmbī and perhaps also with the Sūrasena king of Mathurā, called Avantiputta. Pajjota was a man of cruel disposition and inordinate ambition. According to the *Purāṇas*, he had the “neighbouring kings subject to him.” We have referred above to his clash with Udana, and his power apparently grew to such an extent that even Ajātaśatru had at one time to fortify his capital in expectation of an attack by Pajjota (Pradyota). His successors were weaklings, about whom history has not condescended to record anything of note. Of course, one of them, Pālaka, appears to have annexed Kosambī to his realm. He was over-

---

1 *Suttaṅga of the Majjhima Nikāya* is called after Bodhikumāra. As a Yuvrajā perhaps, he governed the Suttisumagiri region, where he is said to have built a magnificent palace for himself.

2 Pradyota was also known as Mahāsaṇa on account of his large army (cf. तत्त्र वाकपरिमाणानिवृत्त नाममेव महासेन इति *Stapano-vāsudattā, V, 50*).
Košala

thrown by Ajjaka or Áryaka, son of Gopāla, who did not ascend the throne in favour of his brother Pālaka. The Purīpat, on the other hand, insert one Viśākhayūpa between the two. Then followed Avantivardhana.

Avanti was another important centre of Buddhism. It was the home of several ardent adherents of the Buddha, like Mahākaccāna, Soṇa, Abhaya Kumāra, etc. Indeed, Dr. Rhys Davids suggests that Buddhism, born in Magadha, received its garb in Avanti, i.e., the Pāli canon was composed in the form of speech then current there.

III. Košala: The rise of Košala in the very centre of Northern India was an important feature in the political situation of the sixth century B.C. Already during the time of Kañsa, who was one of the predecessors of Pasenadi (Prasenajit), the Buddha’s Košalan contemporary, the long-drawn struggle between this kingdom and Kāśi had ended in the absorption of the latter. There are also references in Pāli literature indicating that the Sākyas had accepted the hegemony of Košala, and Pasenadi is often described as “the head of a group of five Rajāś.” Besides, his sister’s marriage with Bimbisāra, king of Magadha, must have further secured his position. But this very matrimonial alliance eventually became the cause of discord and conflict. For, as we shall see below, when Bimbisāra was starved to death by his son Ajātaśatru, the former’s wife, Kośaladevi, died of grief. Pasenadi then confiscated the township of Kāśi, which had been conferred on her as pin-money (nghana-rupamāla). This led to war between Košala and Magadha, and it went on for some time with unvarying relentlessness but with varying fortunes. At last, a treaty was drawn up, and Pasenadi gave to Ajātaśatru the hand of his daughter, Vajirā, and also the revenues of the township of Kāśi in dispute.

However, this appears to be a mistake.
Educated at Taxilā, Pasenadi was a large-hearted ruler. He gave lands on the royal domains to the Brahmins, and also donated groves and built monasteries for the Buddhist monks. His relations with the Buddha were specially cordial, and he often used to visit him and seek his advice in difficulties. Once Pasenadi expressed amazement at the way the great Teacher maintained peace within the Order (Sāṁgha), whereas the former was sorely troubled by the depredations of robbers, like Aṅgulimāla, and by the machinations of his family and ministers. Indeed, Pasenadi lost his throne on account of the revolt of his son, Viḍūḍābha (Viruddhaka),1 instigated by the minister Dīgha-Cārāyaṇa. Pasenadi invoked Ajātaśatru’s aid, but before entering Rājagriha the Kośala king died of fatigue and anxiety at its gates. Ajātaśatru honoured him by a state-funeral, and wisely left Viḍūḍābha undisturbed.

Viḍūḍābha

Viḍūḍābha’s reign is darkened by the terrible atrocity which he perpetrated on the Sākyas.2 Apparently he did all that to avenge their treachery in marrying Vāsabha-Khattiyā, a slave-girl, to his father, but perhaps his real motive in invading the territories of the Sākyas was to destroy their autonomy completely. We do not know anything more about Viḍūḍābha or his successors.3 When the curtain rises again, Kośala has become a part of Magadha.

---

1 Other forms of the name are Virudhaka or Kaudraka.
2 Viḍūḍābha or Viruddhaka attacked the Sākyas and massacred a large number of them. This happened shortly before the Buddha’s death, and it led to the dispersal of the Sākyas from their homeland.
3 Their names are Kulaka, Suratha, and Sumitra: cf. वुशकालुः गुलाको भाष्यः कुलकालु सुरशः स्मुतः।
कुमितिः सुरष्वतापि बन्त्यरूप समिता गुरुः।
IV. Magadhā: The land of Magadhā, regarded with aversion in Vedic literature, first owed its political importance to the dynasty founded by Bribhadratha. His son, Jarūsandha, who is the hero of many extravagant legends, appears to have been a powerful king. This line came to an end in the sixth century B.C., for when the Buddha lived and preached, Magadhā was ruled by Bimbisāra of the Hāranya-kula. He was the son of a petty chieftain, Bhattiya, and was also known as Seniya or Śrenika. At first, he held his court at Girivraja, but later another capital, aptly called Rājagrigha, arose around his new palace.

Bimbisāra extended his influence in the beginning by a policy of matrimonial alliances. His principal queens were Kośaladevi, sister of Pasenadi; Cellanā, daughter of the Licchavi prince Cetaka; and Kṣemā, Madra (Central Punjab) princess. These marriages not only show the high position of Bimbisāra among his royal contemporaries, but they seem to have also paved the way for the expansion of Magadhā. For instance, Kośala-devi alone brought as pin-money a part of Kāśi yielding a revenue of a hundred thousand.

Bimbisāra also enlarged his kingdom by his military skill. We learn that after defeating Brahmadatta, he boldly annexed Aṅga, which roughly corresponded to modern Monghyr and Bhāgalpur districts. That other territories were absorbed into Magadhā during the reign of Bimbisāra is further clear from the estimate of its size given by the Pāli commentator Buddhaghosa, according to whom it had almost doubled itself during the interval between the Buddha and Bimbisāra’s successor. The government was well organised, and the

---

1 We have followed the Pāli version. The Purāṇa, on the other hand, makes Bimbisāra a descendant of Śiṣunāga. See Infra.
2 Identified with modern Rajgir. The Cyclopean walls of the old capital are among the most remarkable finds in India. Rājagrigha was on the outskirts of Girivraja.
activities of the high officers of the realm, called Mahā-mattas (Mahāmātras), were strictly watched and controlled. The administration of criminal law was also severe.

Bimbisāra cultivated friendly relations with distant states, for he is said to have received an embassy from a king of Gandhāra, named Pukkusāti. Incidentally it shows that Bimbisāra must have flourished when Gandhāra was still an independent kingdom, i.e., prior to the Achaemenid conquest about 316 B.C. We can arrive at a closer approximation to truth by another method. According to the Ceylonese chronicles Bimbisāra's reign lasted 52 years, and Ajātasatru had ruled for 8 years at the time of the Buddha's death, which has been fixed by Geiger and other scholars in 483 B.C. Add to this sixty years (52+8), and we get 543-44 B.C. as the date of Bimbisāra's accession to the throne. He was a patron of the Buddha from the very start of the latter's career, and as a mark of good-will Bimbisāra presented the famous Bamboo grove (Karanda-Venu-vana) to the Saṅgha. He also fed monks and exempted them from paying fares and ferry dues. But Bimbisāra made endowments in favour of other sects as well, and we cannot, therefore, be sure how far he progressed along the path. Indeed, the Uttarāṭṭhirayana (Uttarāṭṭhirayana) Śūtra and other Jain works even represent him as a devotee of Mahāvīra and having faith in his Law.

Ajātasatru

Bimbisāra was succeeded by his son Ajātasatru, also called Kunika, about the year 491 B.C. The latter was at first his father's viceroy at Campā, the capital of

---

1 According to the Parīkṣa, the duration of his reign was only 28 years.
Aṅga, where he learned the art of government. Tradition says that at the instigation of Devadatta, a cousin of the Buddha and his rival to the leadership of the Saṅgha, Ajātaśatru imprisoned his father and starved him to death. It is difficult to accept this story literally, but what appears probable is that Bimbisāra's end was tragic and perhaps due to foul play. Afterwards, Ajātaśatru is represented in the Saṁmatiṇabhūta-Sutta as having expressed remorse to the Buddha for his heinous crime, and the great Teacher felt impressed by his penitence and exhorted him to "go and sin no more." Ajātaśatru's visit to the Buddha is also depicted in one of the Bhārhut sculptures of about the middle of the second century B.C.

The manner of her husband's death gave such a tremendous shock to Kośaladevi that she too died of grief. Pasenadi immediately confiscated the revenues of the Kāśi estate, which had been settled on her as 'pin-money', and this resulted in hostilities between him and Ajātaśatru. The duel was a prolonged affair, fortune favouring each combatant alternately. At last, they came to terms, and the Magadhan monarch got not only the disputed township of Kāśi, but also the hand of Pasenadi's daughter, Vājirā. Henceforth Kāśi was permanently absorbed into the kingdom of Magadh.

The next important event in Ajātaśatru's reign was his conflict with the Licchavis. Traditions differ regarding its cause. Any of these—Cepaka's refusal to surrender Ajātaśatru's half-brothers, Halla and Vehalla, who had taken shelter in Vaiśāli with certain prized objects, or an alleged treachery on the part of the Lic-

1. This is alleged against Ajātaśatru, when his plot to kill Bimbisāra with a dagger miscarried, and the latter had abdicated in favour of him.
2. The Jaina tradition, however, does not represent Ajātaśatru as a parricide.
chavis concerning a mine of gems—may have provoked war.¹ But the real motive appears to have been the destruction of the power of the neighbouring oligarchy, which was without doubt a thorn in the side of an ambitious potentate. Ajátašatru took all possible precautions to ensure victory. He sent his trusted ministers, Sunīḥa and Vassākara, to sow dissensions among the Licchavi chiefs. He organised his army carefully, and equipped it with powerful and destructive weapons. The war, though long and sanguinary, ended in favour of Ajátašatru, and the Licchavi territories passed under his rule. Perhaps after the conquest of Vaiśāli, he carried his arms further northward, and the regions up to the mountains accepted submission to him. Thus the annexation of Āṅgā, Kāśi, Vaiśāli, and other surrounding lands made Magadha the mightiest kingdom in Northern India. It naturally aroused the jealousy of Avani, and although we hear of Ajátašatru fortifying his capital in anticipation of Pradyota’s invasion, we do not know if it ever materialised in his time. According to Pāli works, Ajátašatru’s reign lasted 32 years, but the Purāṇas give 27 years only as its duration. The Jain works testify that he was a follower of their faith, but the Buddhist texts would have us believe that in his later days Ajátašatru did honour to the Buddha and found solace in his ethical teachings. Thus, it was due to his regard for the Buddha that Ajátašatru claimed a share of his relics, and enshrined them in a Stūpā.

SECTION C

RELIGIOUS MOVEMENTS

The sixth century B.C. is one of the cardinal epochs in human history. It was an age of extraordinary

mental and spiritual unrest in several regions widely apart. For instance, Zoroaster in Persia and Confucius in China were promulgating their teachings about this time. In India, too, ardent spirits were unusually active in quest of Truth, and the centre of this ferment was Magadha, where the Brahmanic influence was not yet so deep or potent. Already the Upaniṣads had marked a stage of revolt against cumbersome rituals and bloody sacrifices. The pretensions and caste-exclusiveness of the Brahmans, which were galling to the people in general, had further prepared the ground for new doctrines to germinate. A host of teachers went up and down the country preaching and propagating their solutions of the abstruse problems of God and Soul, and of how to escape from the endless misery of births and deaths by the light of knowledge or the rigours of self-mortification. Numerous reforming schools thus sprang up, but most of them either died out or outlived their utility in course of time. Two of these, known as Jainism and Buddhism, however, proved strong enough to survive, and even today they profoundly influence the thought and faith of mankind.

Career of Mahāvīra

According to the Jains, their religion originated in the remotest ages of antiquity. They believe that Mahāvīra, the last Tīrthaṅkara, was preceded by twenty-three other prophets. Of these, the penul-

1 The Pāli works mention that, when the Buddha began his ministry, there existed no less than sixty-two different sects (according to the Jain texts, their number was 565). Among these were the Ājīvikas, Jātikalas, Mūḍa-sāvakas, Pālivraja, Māgandikas, Gotamakas, Tadandikas, etc. The most prominent teachers of the time, besides the Buddha, were: Purāna-Kassapa, Makkali-Gośāla, Nigantha-Nāḷaputta, Ajita-Kelakambarin, Pañcuddha-Kacchāyana, Sañjaya-Belatśaputta.
timate, Pārśvanātha, appears to have been an historical personage, but the rest are all dim and shadowy figures, wrapped up in mythology. He was the son of king Aśvasena of Benares, but Pārśva abandoned the royal state in favour of a life spiritual. His main injunctions were: (1) non-injury, (2) non-lying, i.e., not to tell lies, (3) non-stealing, (4) non-possession. We do not know how far he progressed in his mission, but the next Tirthamāra, Mahāvīra, who followed Pārśva after about 250 years, definitely placed the religion on a secure footing. Vardhamāna, as Mahāvīra was known earlier in his family circles, was born at Kurda-grāma, near Vaiśāli. He was the son of Siddhārtha, Head of the Kṣatriya Jātrika sect, and his mother was Trisālī, sister of the Licchavi chieftain, Četaka, whose daughter was married to Bimbisāra. Vardhamāna thus had an aristocratic lineage, and this must have materially helped him in his ministry. We learn that after leading an ordinary householder’s life till the age of thirty, he wandered away from home to become an ascetic. He practised severe meditation and subjected his body to the utmost self-torture for twelve long years. At last, he attained to omniscience (kaivalya), and was hailed as the ‘Nirgrantha’ (free of fetters), or the ‘jina’ (conqueror), from which is derived the name of his followers. From this time onward till his death, thirty years later, at the age of seventy-two, Mahāvīra spread the tenets of his religion in Magadha, Aṅga, Mithilā, and Kośala. To the four virtues enjoined by Pārśva, he added a fifth, viz., strict chastity. He gave up clothing, and went about naked. Some scholars trace the division into Svetāmbaras and Digambaras to this new practice of Mahāvīra. But this view does not appear to be tenable, as the schism took place in the third century B.C. after the return of the Jains from South India, where they had retired owing to famine under the leadership of Bhadrabāhu. Mahāvīra
passed away at Pāvāpuri (in the Patna district), perhaps in *circa* 527 B.C.¹ This date, however, is open to certain objections.

**Main Doctrines of Jainism**

The Jains repudiate the authority or infallibility of the Vedas,² and do not attach any importance to the performance of sacrifices. They believe that every object, even the smallest particle, possesses a soul (*jīva*), endowed with consciousness. A natural corollary of this principle was their scrupulous observance of *ābhinnā* or non-injury to any sentient being. Sometimes, however, its strict enforcement led to strange contradictions, for history records instances of Jain kings ordering the execution of persons guilty of killing animals. The Jains reject the conception of a Universal Soul or a Supreme Power as the Creator and Sustainer of the universe. According to them, "God is only the highest, noblest, and fullest manifestation of the powers which lie latent in the soul of man."³ The Jain goal of life is to attain deliverance from the fetters of mundane existence. The cause of the soul's embodiment being the presence of *kārmis* matter, *mokṣa* can be achieved, if and when a Jain gets rid of all *karma* inherited from past lives, and acquires no new one. The way to this lies through the Three Jewels (*Triratna*) of right faith, right knowledge, and right conduct. The Jains greatly emphasise the practice of penances, such as *yoge* exercises and fasting, even to the point of death. The idea is that rigorous discipline gives strength to the soul, and keeps the lower matter subdued.⁴

¹ Another date suggested for Mahāvīra's decease is 546 B.C.
² The Jains have got their own Canon.
⁴ See Mrs. S. Stevenson, *The Heart of Jainism*, Jagminder.
Like Jainism, Buddhism also was founded by an illustrious Kṣatriya. His family name was Gotama, but he is better known by his spiritual title of the Buddha. He was born of Māya in the Lumbini garden (modern Rummindci or Rūpan-dehi), near Kapilavastu. His father, Suddhodana, was the "Rāja" of the proud Sākya clan. Fearing his son's reflective cast of mind, he married him to Gopā or Yaśodharā¹ at an early age, and surrounded him with all kinds of enjoyments and luxuries. But, in a world full of disease and misery, these did not offer any satisfaction to the meditative Gotama. He, therefore, escaped one night in his 29th year from the palace, leaving his wife and newly-born son Rāhula behind, to seek solace in the life of a recluse. Not getting any mental repose or calm from his studies under two distinguished teachers of the time named Āḷāra Kālāma and Uddaka Rāmaputta, Gotama went to the sylvan retreats of Uruvela, near modern Bodhgaya, to practise the severest austerities. He subjected himself to such rigorous discipline that he was reduced to a mere skeleton. But he did not in any way advance towards the goal, and consequently he gave up the method of self-torture, so common then, as fruitless, and partook of milk-food offered by Sujātā, who had gone to worship the tree-deity. At last, one night, while he sat under an umbrageous Pīhal tree on a seat made of grass, the light dawned on him and he became the Buddha, the perfectly Enlightened One, at the age of thirty-five. After some misgivings whether people will understand its abstruse nature,


¹ Other texts call Gotama's wife Bhaddakacchā or Bimbā.
he decided to promulgate his message to the world, and accordingly he first turned the wheel of the Law in motion at Sarnath. His first converts were those very five Bhikṣus, who had abandoned his company in the forests of Uruvelā, thinking Sramāṇa Gotama to have deviated from the path of penances for the pleasures of the palate. For the next forty-five years his life was one of incessant activity. He preached to the people in their vernacular, and won their heart and mind by his noble teachings, kindness, moral grandeur, and deep sympathy. Princes and peasants, all extended their support to him, and within a short time his Saṅgha grew into a mighty organisation. Buddhism had a chequered career in India, and although it has now almost disappeared from the land of its birth, it is still a powerful religion in the East and Far East, and holds sway in various forms over countless millions of men.¹

Date of the Buddha's Death

After a long and successful ministry, the Buddha passed away at the age of eighty at Kuśinagara, modern Kasia in the Gorakhpur district, where some years ago a colossal statue of the Master was discovered in a reclining posture. It is difficult to determine exactly the date of this event, which may be regarded as one of the most important points in our system of chronology. Vincent Smith placed it in 486-87 B.C., but the year 483 B.C., as proposed by Fleet and Geiger on a thorough examination of the available data, may be accepted as very near the truth.²

² Some scholars, on the other hand, take 543 B.C. to be the date of the Buddha's Parinibbāna.
His Teachings

The teachings of the Buddha were essentially simple and of a practical nature. He did not concern himself with the problems of God or the Soul, as he believed such discussions were of no help in one's moral progress. He declared that everything was transitory or impermanent (samañña aniccān or anityam). Like other teachers of his day, he regarded existence as an evil, but he was far more deeply stirred by the grim reality of sorrow and suffering. He, therefore, mainly addressed himself to analysing its cause and finding out a way leading to its cessation. These were the Four Noble Truths (Cattāri atīya-sacca), which he proclaimed with all his earnestness, viz., sorrow (dukkha); cause of sorrow (dukkha-samudaya); cessation of sorrow (dukkha-nirodha); and the path leading to the cessation of sorrow (dukkha-nirodha-pratītya). According to him, the root of all human misery was 'desire' (tanha), and its annihilation was the surest means of ending unhappiness. He held that death was no escape from it, as it led to rebirth and further suffering. The suppression of 'thirst' (tanha) was possible if people followed the noble Eightfold Path, viz., (1) right belief, (2) right thought, (3) right speech, (4) right action, (5) right means of livelihood, (6) right endeavour, (7) right recollection, (8) right meditation. The Buddha called it the Middle Path (Majjhima-magga) as it avoided both the extremes of gross luxury and grim austerity. Even those who were unable to retire from the concerns of life could obtain success by following it. The members of the Sangha were to strive after the attainment of Nibbana or Nirvana, or "extinc-

1cf. (1) samādhi, (2) samādhi, (3) samādhi, (4) samādhi, (5) samādhi, (6) samādhi, (7) samādhi, (8) samādhi.
tion of personality" (?). They were exhorted to be strictly pure in thought, word, and deed. As an aid to this, he laid down ten commandments, of which the first five were to be observed by the laity also: (1) not to covet others' property, (2) not to kill, (3) not to use intoxicants, (4) not to tell lies, (5) not to commit adultery, (6) not to take part in singing and dancing, (7) not to use unguents, flowers, or perfumes, (8) not to eat at odd hours, (9) not to sleep on comfortable beds, (10) not to accept or keep money. The Buddha thus prescribed a severely practical code of conduct for his disciples, and discouraged philosophic speculation considering it unprofitable for one's spiritual advance. What was still more important is his healing declaration that all could partake of his message, irrespective of sex, age, or position in society.¹

Relation Between Jainism and Buddhism

For a long time it was commonly believed that Jainism was only an offshoot of Buddhism or vice versa. It is, of course, now too late in the day to hold this opinion, although the similarities between the two systems are remarkable indeed. Both are indifferent to the authority of the Vedas, and deny the efficacy of rituals. Both ignored God, and decried distinctions based on birth. Both emphasised the principle of Abhimaśā and the effect of Karma upon an individual's future life. Both tolerated popular superstitions and beliefs. These are no doubt striking resemblances, but their approach towards certain fundamental problems is widely different. For example, Buddhism propounds that everything lacks an ego (Anātmavādā),

whereas according to Jainism every object or particle
in this world is tenanted by a soul (Jīva). Jainism
glorifies self-mortification. The Buddha, on the other
hand, recommended the Middle Path, avoiding the ex-
tremes of sensualism and asceticism. Their concep-
tions about deliverance and salvation also are not quite
similar. Being products of the same age and land,
it was inevitable that Jainism and Buddhism should have
some common features, but at the same time their
differences were so marked that often there was a good
deal of rivalry between them.

SECTION D

ECONOMIC CONDITION

Village Organisation

The Jātakas, the Piṭakas, and other Pāli works
furnish interesting information on the economic con-
dition of India at the time of the rise of Buddhism.
As at present, the bulk of the people then lived in vil-
lages. The population of a village (grāma) was concen-
trated within a relatively small area, as the dwellings
(grihas) were all clustered together to ensure safety.
Around the villages there were arable fields (grāmaka-
śetra), divided into plots by channels for water or
marked by a common fence. The holdings were
usually small, but larger ones were not altogether
unknown. The village folk had common rights over
the adjacent forest (vana or dāva or dāya) and the grazing
grounds, where the cattle belonging to various house-
holders were sent under the charge of a collectively
hired herdsman (gopālaka).

The rural economy was based on what may be

1 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, Ch. VI, pp. 87-106; Cass. Hist.
Ind., Vol. I, Ch. VIII, pp. 198-219.
called 'peasant proprietorship'. But no owner could
sell or mortgage his part of the land without the con-
sent of the village council. He cultivated the fields
himself, but often employed labourers or slaves for
the purpose. There were no big estates or landlords.
The king received the tithes and his share, varying from
one-sixth to a twelfth, of the produce in kind through
the headman (gāmabhājakā). The latter was an im-
portant person in the village. He carried on there
the business of the government. At that time he
was probably either a hereditary officer or was elected
by the village council, which also helped him in main-
taining local peace and security. The village residents
were endowed with a sturdy civic spirit. They united
of themselves in such undertakings as laying irrigation
channels, building mule-halls, rest-houses, etc. The
women extended their full co-operation in these works
of public utility. On the whole, each village was self-
sufficient, and life was simple and unsophisticated.
There were few rich men and no paupers. Crime was
rare, but people sometimes suffered greatly from famines
occasioned by droughts or floods.

Cities

Very few cities (nāgaras or nīgamār) are mentioned
in Buddhist literature. Of these, the most im-
portant were: Bārānasi (Benares), Rājagaha (Rājagriha),
Kauśāmbi, Sāvatthi (Srāvasti), Vesāli (Vaisālī), Cempā,
Taxilā, Ayojihā or Ayodhyā, Ujjēni (Ujjain), Martharā,
etc. Imperial Pātaliputta was yet to be founded.
The towns were generally fortified, and the houses
were built of wood and brick. The poor then, as
now, lived in meagre dwellings, the rich in im-

1 Manu says that the king should take as his share 1/50th of
cattle and gold from merchants and 1/60th or 1/8th or 1/40th of the
produce from cultivators (Manu, VII. 130). Besides, we
sometimes hear of special levies, forced labour and other exactions.
posing and sumptuous structures, well plastered and painted both inside and outside. In the cities the people enjoyed greater comforts and led a gayer life.

**Arts and Crafts**

The main industry of the people was, of course, agriculture. Besides, they had made considerable progress in such crafts as wood-work including cart-making and ship-building, architecture, leather-dressing, pottery, garland-making, weaving, ivory-work, confectionery, jewellery, and work in precious metals. There were other occupations (bīna-sīppas), e.g., tanning, fishing, hunting, dancing, acting, snake-charming, rush-weaving, etc., to which was attached a social stigma. It was the general tendency of young men to follow their fathers' callings, but exceptions are also recorded. For castes did not always determine crafts. Thus, we find a weaver turning an archer, Kṣatriyas working in the fields, and Brahmans taking to trade, carpentry, and even tending cattle.

**Guilds**

Persons following the same profession normally organised themselves into guilds (jṛṣṭi), and often lived, or had their business centre, in one ward or street (vāthi) of the town. The Jātakas name at least eighteen such groups. Each had a President (Pamukha) or Alderman (Jeptithaka), whose position was one of great responsibility and honour. Sometimes, to ensure greater cohesion different vārgas or guilds perhaps combined together under a common head.

---

4 The Jātakas often give a list of eighteen principal crafts. This included the Worker in wood (Vaddhaka), Smith (Kammāra), Worker in stone (Pāśana-kattaka), Weaver (Tantu-rāja), Dyer (Rangakāra), Potter (Kumbha-kāra), Barber (Nabapaka), etc.
Trade and Trade-Routes

In those days trade, both inland and foreign, was fairly brisk. Merchants made fortunes by dealing in articles like silks, muslins, cutlery, armour, brocades, embroideries, rugs, perfumes, drugs, ivory, ivory-work, jewellery, etc. They went long distances up and down the great rivers of the country, and even undertook coasting voyages to Burma and Ceylon from Tāmralipīti (Tamluk) on the east, and from Bharukaccha (Breach) on the west. There are also references to voyages as far as Bāveru (Babylon). Inland, the traders followed certain well-established routes, connecting the various parts of India. One of them ran from Sāvatthi (Sravasti) to Patiśṭhāna or Pratiśṭhāna (modern Paithān in the Nizam’s dominions); another linked Sāvatthi with Rājagaha; a third skirted along the base of the mountains from Taxilā to Sravasti; and a fourth connected Kaśi with the ports of the western coast.¹

In crossing the desert of Rajputana the caravans were guided in the cool of nights by stars under the direction of ‘land-pilots.’ Brigands infested these routes, especially the less frequented ones, and looted merchandise when they could safely do so. Such dangers, coupled with the taxes and octroi duties paid in each state that was crossed, must have raised the prices of commodities very high.

Money

The age of barter was almost drawing to a close. Now the ordinary medium of exchange or transactions was a coin called Kābhāpana (Kārpāpana). It was of copper, 146 grains in weight, and marks were punched on it by merchants or guilds, guaranteeing its standard and

¹ These long routes had several intermediate halts, and there were ferries on the way for crossing rivers.
fineness. Other coins referred to in Pāli texts were Nikkha and Swappa of gold. Smaller copper tokens are called Mātaka and Kākanikā. We also hear of instruments of credit and interest (vadāhī) paid on loans.¹ Banks were then unknown, and surplus money was either converted into ornaments, or hoarded in jars and buried in the ground, or put in the custody of a friend and a written record was kept of it.

II. Successors of Ajātasatru

According to works in Pāli, Ajānasatru was succeeded by his son Udāyin or Udāyibhadra (cf. Dīgha Nikāya) about 459 B.C. The Purāṇas, however, insert after Ajānasatru another king named Darśaka, whose historicity is also established by the Śūnapauravasadatta of Bhāsa.² Some scholars suppose that the Purāṇas have wrongly placed him, and identify him with Nāga-dāsaka, the last ruler of the line of Bimbhīśa. Udāyin is chiefly known for having founded the city of Pātaliputra on a spot where his father had built a fort to ward off an expected attack from the side of Avanti. It was strategically situated on the confluence of the Sone and the Ganges,³ and was thus better suited to serve as the capital of a growing kingdom. Udāyin’s successors, Anuruddha, Munda, and Nāga-dāsaka, were mere nonentities,⁴ and although the story that all of them were parricides might not be true,⁵ it is certain that their weakness or

¹ Money-lending (IPA-dāka) was, of course, regarded as a legitimate profession, but usury was strongly disfavoured.
² We are told that Darśaka was king of Magadha, and his sister Pālmāvati was married to Udāna (Udayana) of Kosambi.
³ The junction of these two rivers is now several miles up Patna.
⁴ As shown below, the successors of Udāyin, according to the Purāṇas, were Nandivardhana and Mahānandin.
⁵ Vincent Smith, however, refers to the analogy of Parthian history, which knows of three successive parricide princes, e.g., Orodès, Phraates IV, and Phraates V, (E. H. I., 4th ed., p. 36, n. 2).
unpopularity must have gone a long way to enable Śiśunāga—a mere amāṭya (minister)—to seize the throne for himself. This king is represented in the Purāṇas as an ancestor of Bimbisāra, but the Ceylonese chronicles indubitably prove that the former came several generations after the latter. After the coup d’état, Śiśunāga is said to have made Girivraja his residence, placing his son at Vārānasi (Benares) as governor. The most noteworthy achievement of Śiśunāga was the annihilation of the power of the Pradyotas, with whom a clash had become inevitable after their conquest of Kosambi. Probably the vanquished king of Avanti was Vartivardhana or Avantivardhana, and it is significant that the Pradyota dynasty disappears from the stage of history about this time. Thus, this triumph made Śiśunāga ruler of almost the whole of Madhyadeśa, Malwa, and other territories in the North.

The Nandas

About the middle of the fourth century B.C., the Śiśunāga dynasty was overthrown by an upstart named Mahāpadma, who initiated a line known in history as that of the Nandas.

Origin

Traditions differ regarding his origin. According


2 cf. बाराणसी चुंथ स्थाप संवाष्टति निरित्रवः।

3 Called Ugrasena in Pāli works. The name is in allusion to his huge army. Similarly, the name Mahāpadma perhaps indicates that his army was as big as could be arranged in the lotus fashion (Padmarākhā). Or, does it signify that he possessed wealth amounting to a Padma? # Has the name Kālaśoka or Kākavarṣa anything to do with his dark complexion?

* (Dr. p. 110, n.1).
to the *Purāna*, he was born of a Śūdra woman, but in Jain works he is described as the son of a courtesan by a barber. The Greek writer, Currius, gives a slightly different account. He deposes that Alexander's Magadhan contemporary was the son of a barber, who by his good looks had won the queen's heart, and who subsequently assassinated the reigning sovereign, perhaps Kālāśoka or Kākavarṇa, represented in the *Harṣacarita* to have been done to death with a dagger thrust into his throat in the vicinity of his capital. Which- ever version may be true, there is no doubt that Mahāpadma was low-born, and he owed his position to successful intrigue. At first, he pretended to be the guardian of the young princes, but eventually he killed them also and seated himself on the throne.

*Mahāpadma*

Mahāpadma greatly extended the influence and the limits of the Magadha kingdom. He is said to have subverted many contemporaneous powers, like the Ikṣvākus, Kuruś, Paṇcālas, Kaśis, Śūrasenas, Maithilas, Kalingas, Aśmakas, Halhayas, etc., and implacably uprooted the Kṣatriyas. Perhaps it is in allusion to his conquests that the *Purānas* call him *Sarvakāstraṇatka* like Paraśurāma, and an *Ekarāṭ* (sole suzerain), although the latter term exaggerates his real position. Of course, Magadha had already absorbed the neighbouring states in the earlier reigns, and the fall of Avanti in the time of Śiśunāga had left it without any rival in

---


2 They were ten in number, and are believed to have ruled jointly.

3 See also *Pol. Hist. Ass. Ind.*, 4th ed., pp. 187-90. **cf. महापद्मस्तः; शुलगतिः बहुवासिताक्षरितिः महापद्म महापद्मी तत्वानांम परशुराम धिर्यदेव धिर्यदेवताकारी महापद्मति। ततः महापद्म सूक्ताम धिर्यदेवति। स वैज्ञानिकयुक्तिविद्यासनी महापद्म पूर्विनी महापद्म।**
the North. We further know from a reference in the Kathāsaritāgāra to Nanda’s camp that Kośala formed a part of Magadha, and the Hāthigumpha inscription, which refers to the excavation of a canal by Nandarāja, identified with Mahāpadma, doubtless proves that Kalinga had come under its domination. Incidentally, this epigraph also sheds light on his religious predilections, for Nandarāja (Mahāpadma?) is represented as having removed to his capital a prized image of a Jain Tīrthamākara. Presumably, it was on account of their leanings towards Jainism that the Nanda monarchs had Jain ministers like Kalpaka, Sākaṭala, etc. Thus, Magadha had step by step emerged as the premier kingdom, and thenceforth its history was that of India itself for a pretty long period.

**His Successors**

Mahāpadma was followed by his eight sons, of whom the last was the contemporary of Alexander. He is called Dhanananda in Buddhist literature, whereas the Greeks mention the name Agrammes or Xandrames (Augrasainya?). He maintained, according to Curtius, a stupendous army, consisting of 200,000 foot, 20,000 horse, 2,000 chariots, and 4,000 elephants, and was reputed to be the possessor of immense riches. But Agrammes or Dhanananda was avaricious, irreligious (adhārmika), and of tyrannical disposition, and this, along with his base ancestry, made him extremely unpopular among his subjects. Indeed, it was represented to Alexander by a chief named Phegeis

---

1 They are mere names. The Purāṇas do not mention them except Mahāpadma’s son Sukalpa or Sumāilya (Sahalya). cf. तवामायवस्त्री सुकला, सुमाल्य, सम्बल (Vīyav P.).

2 Traditions of the fabulous wealth of the Nandas are preserved in the Mahābhārata, Kathāsaritāgāra, Yuan Chwang’s Records, and a Tamil poem.
MAHĀPADMA'S SUCCESSORS

(Phegeus) or Bhagala that if he had advanced further he
would have easily defeated the Nanda ruler. After Alexander's departure Candragupta Maurya, who had met
the Greek invader with a view to furthering his designs
against the Nandas, took advantage of the situation,
and destroyed the Nanda authority in Magadha with
the help of the wily Brahman, Cāṇakya.¹

Date

According to the Purāṇas, Mahāpadma ruled for
28 years² and his eight sons for twelve years only.
The Ceylonese chronicles, however, mention 22 years
as the length of the reigns of all the Nandas. The
dynasty probably came to an end about 322-21 B.C.

¹ cf. Viṣṇu Purāṇa: तदव नवकैतासन्यान् कौटिस्या बाध्यः
समुदरिष्यति।

² The Mahāpurāṇa, however, gives him a long reign of 88
years, which is obviously an error for 28. If the former version
be accepted, the duration of the Nanda dynasty, consisting of two
generations, would come to 100 years. cf. महापरवर्त्तमाणे एकं
बर्षमाणे प्रत्ययच्यो भविष्यति (Viṣṇu P.).
## APPENDIX

### Genealogical Table of the Predecessors of the Nandas

#### (a) Parshu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Length of reign</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>Sisunaga</td>
<td>40 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>Kākavarna</td>
<td>26 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>Kṣemadharman</td>
<td>36 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>Kṣemajit or Kṣatrajasa</td>
<td>24 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Bimbisāra</td>
<td>28 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>Ajataśatru</td>
<td>27 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.</td>
<td>Dāśaka</td>
<td>24 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII.</td>
<td>Udayin</td>
<td>33 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX.</td>
<td>Nandivardhana</td>
<td>40 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X.</td>
<td>Mahānandini</td>
<td>43 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>321 years</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### (b) Ceylonese Chronicles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Length of reign</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>Bimbisāra</td>
<td>12 years</td>
<td>Came to the throne in <em>circa</em> 343 B.C., at the age of 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>Ajataśatru</td>
<td>32 years</td>
<td>The Buddha died in the 8th year of his reign.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>Udayin or Udayabhadr</td>
<td>16 years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>Anuruddha</td>
<td>8 years</td>
<td>Believed to have been parricidea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Mūndha</td>
<td>24 years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>Nāgadāsaka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX

*(b)* Ceylonese Chronicles—*(contd.)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Length of reign</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>Siyanāga</td>
<td>18 years</td>
<td>Belonged to a new family. Before seizing power, he was only an Amāya.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>Kālāsoka</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Had a tragic end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX</td>
<td>His ten sons, the most prominent being Nandi-Vardhana</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Ruled simultaneously, perhaps under the guardianship of that adventurer, who became the first Nanda.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total 200 years
CHAPTER VII

CONTACT WITH THE OUTSIDE WORLD

SECTION A

THE PERSIAN CONQUEST

Let us now turn for a while from Magadha and other eastern states to take a peep at what was happening in the north-western part of India. It was divided in the latter half of the sixth century B.C. into a number of petty principalities, and there was no great power to curb their mutual strifes and jealousies. Naturally it provided a strong tempting ground to the Imperialism of the Achaemenian monarchy, which had arisen in Persia about this time under the leadership of Kurush or Cyrus (c. 558-530 B.C.). He extended the bounds of his empire as far west as the Mediterranean, and in the east he conquered Bactria and Gadara (Gandhāra), but it is unlikely he advanced beyond the frontiers of India. His immediate successors, Kāmbujiya I (Cambyses I), Kurush II (Cyrus II), Kāmbujiya II (Cambyses II)—530-22 B.C.—were too busy with affairs in the west to think of the east, but Dāryavavash or Darius I (522-486 B.C.) appears to have annexed a portion of the Indus region, as evidenced by the inscriptions at Persepolis and on his tomb at Naksh-i-Rustam, mentioning the Hidus or the people of Sindhu (Indus) among Persian subjects. This conquest was made probably some time after 518 B.C., the assumed date of the Behistun record, which omits the
Hidus (Indians) from the list of subject peoples, and long before 486 B.C., when Darius I died.

Herodotus tells us how Darius I essayed to achieve his object. He first sent an expedition some time after 517 B.C. under Skylax of Karyanda to explore the possibility of a passage by sea from the mouths of the Indus to Persia. He sailed down the Indus, and in the course of his voyage collected a good deal of information, afterwards utilised with advantage by Darius I. Herodotus also testifies that the conquered Indian territories, which perhaps did not include much of the Punjab, were constituted into the twentieth Satrapy of the Persian Empire; and it yielded the enormous tribute of 360 Euboic talents of gold dust, equal to about one million sterling. Obviously, these tracts were then very fertile, populated, and prosperous.

Xerxes

In the reign of Khshayārshā or Xerxes (486-46 B.C.), the successor of Darius I, Indian mercenaries, "clad in cotton" and bearing "cane bows and arrows tipped with iron," formed a part of his expeditionary force against Hellas, and so it is certain that he maintained Persian authority intact in the north-western part of India. Presumably it continued for some time more, but we do not know with certitude when the connection between Persia and India finally snapped. There is, at any rate, some evidence to show that Indian auxiliaries figured in the army of Darius III Kodomannos in his fight with Alexander.

Results of Contact

The political contact between the two countries was beneficial to both in several respects. Trade received a fillip, and perhaps the spectacle of a unified empire stirred Indian ambition to strive after a similar
end. Persian scribes introduced into India the Aramaic form of writing, which in Indian environments later developed into Kharoṣṭhī, written from right to left like Arabic. Scholars have even traced Persian influences in Candragupta Maurya’s court ceremonial,¹ and in certain words and the preamble of the edicts and in the monuments, particularly the bell-shaped capitals, of Aśoka’s time.

SECTION B
THE INVASION OF ALEXANDER

Alexander’s cautious advance eastward

After the collapse of the Achaemenian power in the battle of Gaugamela or Arbela in the spring of 331 B.C. and the burning of the magnificent palace at Persepolis in 350 B.C., Alexander formed plans to realise his ambition of conquering India, and thus out-rivalling Herakles and Dionysos whose achievements were the subject of many a popular song and legend. Accordingly, unmindful of the rigours of climate and the numerous obstacles presented in his progress by man and nature alike, Alexander set himself with his habitual foresight to the task of subjugating the lands that lay on his route in order to maintain free and uninterrupted communication with his distant base. He first occupied Seistan, and then burst upon southern Afghanistan, where “at a point commanding the roads” he founded a city called Alexandria-among-the-Arachosians, now represented by Kandahar. The following year, he appeared in the Kabul valley with his invincible hosts, but, before he could direct his energies towards India he had to reduce Bactria and other adjacent territories to submission, which upheld

¹ cf. Lipii=dipii; Devānāṁ piyo Piyadasi Rājē evam āha—Thātiy Dārayavaush Kshayāthiya.
the Persian cause under a prince of the blood royal, Alexander succeeded, with some difficulty, in subduing them, and when all opposition was laid low, he recrossed the Hindu-Kush in ten days and arrived at the strategic outpost of Alexandria—under the Caucasus, which he had founded in 329 B.C., two years before his hurricane campaign beyond the mountains. He then advanced towards Nikaia, situated "between Alexandria and the Kabul river";¹ here or somewhere "on the way to the river Kabul,"² Alexander divided his army into two sections. One was placed under the command of his trusted generals, Hephaestion and Perdicas, with instructions to go ahead and construct a bridge over the Indus for the safe passage of his forces; and the other was led by Alexander himself against the warlike tribes and recalcitrant chiefs of the frontier.

The Aspasioi routed

The Aspasioi (cf. Iranian Ἀσπα or Sanskrit ṛṣa – horse) of the Alisang-Kunar valley were the first to be subdued by Alexander, who captured 40,000 men and 2,30,000 oxen transporting the choicest among the latter to Macedonia for being employed in agriculture. Arrian (IV, 25), however, deposes that with these people "the conflict was sharp, not only from the difficult nature of the ground, but also because the Indians were...by far the stoutest warriors in that neighbourhood."²

³ Merivale, Ancient India, Its Invasion by Alexander the Great, p. 65. We have given full references in this chapter, because our account materially differs from the accepted interpretation of the evidence.
Nyia

Alexander next attacked the hill-state of Nyia, which probably occupied a site on the lower spurs and valleys of the Koh-i-Mor. It was governed by a body of aristocracy consisting of 300 members, Akophis being their chief. The Nyias readily submitted to Alexander, and placed at his disposal a contingent of 300 cavalry. They claimed descent from Dionysos, and in proof of it pointed out that the ivy grew in their country and that the mountain near the city was the same as Meiros. This gratified the vanity of Alexander, and he, therefore, allowed his weary troops to take rest and indulge in Bacchanalian revels for a few days with their alleged distant kinsmen.

Defeat of the Assakenoi

Continuing his advance, Alexander defeated the Assakenoi (Sanskrit Aśvakas or Aśmakas, perhaps a branch of, or allied to, the Aspasioi), who opposed him with an army of 20,000 cavalry and more than 50,000 infantry, besides 30 elephants. Their main stronghold Massaga was considered almost impregnable, being protected on the east by "an impetuous mountain stream with steep banks," while to the south and the west nature had "piled up gigantic rocks, at the base of which lay sloughs and yawning chasms." These natural fortifications were reinforced by a deep ditch and a

1 Early History of India, 4th ed., p. 17 note.
2 38,000 infantry, according to Curtius (VIII, 10, M’crindle, Invasion by Alexander, p. 194).
3 Arrian, IV, 26, ibid., p. 66. The siege of Massaga is put before the capitulation of Nyia by Arrian, and after it by Curtius.
4 Identification uncertain. Was it the same as Sanskrit Mala-kayati? Vincent Smith places it "not very far to the north of the Malakand pass" (E.H.I., 4th ed., p. 17).
5 Curtius, VIII, 10, M’crindle’s Invasion by Alexander, p. 193.
thick wall. The citadel appeared to baffle the military ingenuity of Alexander, but it could not hold out long after its Chief, Assakenos, had been killed by a chance shot.\(^1\) Thinking further resistance useless, his wife, Kleopis,\(^2\) surrendered herself to Alexander, and it is said that as a result of their romance she subsequently gave birth to a son bearing the name of the great conqueror.\(^3\) It is interesting to note here the part played by nearly 7,000 Indian mercenary soldiers in the defence of Massaga. We learn that Alexander guaranteed them safe passage if they evacuated the city, but when they had actually retired to a distance they suddenly fell upon them and made “a great slaughter of their ranks”. Diodoros says that the Indian mercenaries at first “loudly protested that they were attacked in violation of sworn obligations, and invoked the gods whom he had desecrated by taking false oaths in their name.”\(^4\) Thereupon, Alexander retorted that “his covenant merely bound him to let them depart from the city, and was by no means a league of perpetual amity between them and the Macedonians”.\(^5\) Undaunted by this unexpected danger, the Indian mercenaries fought with great tenacity and “by their audacity and feats of valour made the conflict, in which they closed, hot work for the enemy.”\(^6\) When many of them had been killed, or were in the agony of deadly wounds, the women took up the arms of the fallen and heroically defended the citadel along with the men. After fighting desperately they were at last overpowered by superior numbers,

\(^1\) Arrian, IV, 27, Ibid., p. 68.
\(^2\) Curtius, however, calls Kleopis the mother of Assanucus, who is said to have died before Alexander invested Massaga (VIII, 10, Ibid., p. 194).
\(^3\) Justin, XII, 7, Ibid., p. 321.
\(^4\) Diodoros, XVII, 84, M’crindle’s Invasion by Alexander, p.269.
\(^5\) Ibid.
\(^6\) Ibid., p. 270.
and in the words of Diodoros “met a glorious death which they would have disdained to exchange for a life with dishonour”.¹ The episode, no doubt, reveals to us that India had her own Joan of Arc in those bygone times, but it does not speak well of Alexander’s chivalry and his sense of respect for agreements, and Plutarch rightly observes that it “rests as a foul blot on his martial fame.”² After the fall of Massaga, Alexander advanced further, and in the course of a few months’ hard fighting captured the important and strategic fortresses of Om, Bazira, Aornos, Peukelaotis (Skr. Puškarāvatī, modern Charsadda in the Yusufzai territory), Embolima and Dyrra.³

Situation in North-western India

Thus, having subjugated the frontier regions and posted adequate Greek garrisons to maintain his authority there,⁴ Alexander felt himself free to press onward. The odds were undoubtedly in his favour. The Punjab and Sind, which were to bear the brunt of his arms, presented the sorry spectacle of a disunited house. There was no towering personality of the type of Candragupta Maurya, who successfully repelled the invasion of Seleukos Nikator two decades after; on the other hand, North-western India was parcelled out into a number of states, monarchies as well as clan oligarchies, engaged in petty internecine

¹ Ibid.,
² Plutarch, Ch. LIX, M’crindle’s Invasion by Alexander, p. 306.
³ The identification of these places is not quite certain. Minor towns of the lower Kopfen (Kabul) valley were occupied with the help of local chiefs, named Kophilos and Assagetes (Aṣvatīṭ?) —Arrian, IV, 28, Ibid., p. 72.
⁴ For instance, Nikanor was appointed satrap of the country to the west of the Indus, and Philippus was put in command of a garrison at Peukelaotis (Ibid).
feuds and jealousies, in which some of them found their opportunity for seeking alliance with an alien aggressor. Indeed, the gates of India were, so to say, unbarred by the Rāja of Taxilā, who lost no time in proffering allegiance to Alexander, and who also rendered every assistance to the advance body of the Macedonians under Perdiccas in bridging the Indus and in securing the submission of the tribes and chieftains, like Astes (Hasti or Aṣṭakarāja ?), whose territories lay on their route.

**Taxilā and Abhisāra**

About the beginning of the spring of 326 B.C. after offering the customary sacrifices and allowing his tired troops a short respite, Alexander crossed the Indus safely somewhere near Ohind (modern Und, a few miles above Attock), and was welcomed at Taxilā by Omphis or Āmbhi, son of the deceased Taxile, with rich and attractive presents consisting of silver and sheep and oxen of a good breed. Gratified at these gifts, Alexander returned them, adding his own, and thus won not only the loyalty of the ruler of Taxila but also a contingent of 5,000 soldiers from him. Similarly, Abhisares, the astute king of Abhisāra (Poonch and Nowshera districts), and other neighbouring princes, like Doxares, surrendered to Alexander of their own accord, thinking that resistance would be of no avail.

---

*The capital of Astes was stormed by Hephaestion in thirty days, and his principality was given to one Sang-gaios (Skt. Sāh-jaya)—Arrian, IV, 22, *Ibid.*, p. 60.*


* Diodorus would, however, have us believe that Euphranoros (Abhisares) had made an alliance with Perdiccas and was preparing*
Poros

However, when the latter reached the Hydaspes (Jhelum) he found the great Poros (Pairava?) on the other side of the river ready, no doubt, to meet him in response to his summons from Taxila, but at the head of a vast army eager for the fray.\(^1\) Alexander finds it difficult to cross the stream, and there ensues a battle of wits between the two august opponents. Ultimately, the invader decided "to steal a passage" (Arrian), which he did with about 11,000 of his picked men near a sharp bend several miles up the river from his camp in the dead of night when a severe storm accompanied with rain and thunder had abated the vigilance of Poros. Further, Alexander camouflaged his intentions and movements by leaving a strong force under Krateros in his camp and another with Meleager midway between it and the place where the river was crossed.\(^2\) Detecting that he had been foiled in his attempt to prevent Alexander from landing his troops on the eastern side of the Hydaspes, Poros despatched his son "at the head of 2,000 men and 120 chariots"\(^3\) to obstruct the advance of his audacious adversary. The young Poros was, however, easily routed and killed by Alexander.

*Alexander and Poros face each other*

At last, Poros himself moved and opposed Alexander with 50,000 foot, 3,000 horse, above 1,000 chariots, and 130 elephants. In the centre, the


\(^2\) Guards were also posted all the way to ensure free communication.

elephants formed a sort of front wall, and behind them stood the foot-soldiers. The cavalry protected the flanks and in front of the horsemen were the chariots. As Alexander viewed the equipment of Indian forces and their disposition in the Karri plain, he was constrained to remark: "I see at last a danger that matches my courage. It is at once with wild beasts and men of uncommon mettle that the contest now lies." In the engagement which opened with the furious charges of Macedonian horsemen, Indians fought with great vigour, and, as Plutarch says, "obstinately maintained" their ground till the eighth hour of the day, but eventually the fates turned against them. The main strength of Poros lay in the chariots, each of which was drawn by four horses and carried six men, of whom two were shield-bearers, two, archers posted on each side of the chariot, and the other two, charioteers, as well as men-at-arms, for when the fighting was at close quarters they dropped the reins and hurled dart after dart against the enemy. On this particular day, however, these chariots were of no use at all, for the violent storm of rain had made the ground slippery, and unfit for horses to ride over, while the chariots kept sticking in the muddy sloughs formed by the rain, and proved almost immovable from their great weight. Besides, owing to the slippery condition of the ground it became difficult for the archers to rest their long and heavy bows on it and discharge arrows quickly and with effect.

2 Curtius, VIII, 14, M’crindle’s Invasion by Alexander, p. 209.
3 Plutarch, Ch. LX, Ibid., p. 508.
4 Ibid., VIII, 14, Ibid., p. 207.
5 Ibid., p. 208.
6 Arrian deposes that the bow "is made of equal length with the man who bears it. This they rest upon the ground, and pressing against it with their left foot thus discharge the arrow" having
DEFEAT OF POROS

Furthermore, the Indian army was far too unwieldy to withstand the masterful manoeuvres of the mobile Macedonian cavalry, or the attacks of the disciplined phalanxes. And, lastly, the elephants, on whom Poros had placed so much reliance, got frightened when the Macedonians began to hack their feet and trunks with axes and choppers. Thus the beasts fled from the field of battle "like a flock of sheep" and they "spread havoc among their own ranks and threw their drivers to the ground, who were then trampled to death." Whatever may have been the causes of this disaster, Poros, a magnificent giant of over six feet in height, did not shrink from the stress of battle, or abandon the field like Darius III K odomannos of Persia, but true to the injunction of Manu शास्त्राःपूर्वनिपर्वत्वम् (VII, 88) he stuck to his post in spite of the "nine wounds" he had received, and continued hurling darts at the enemy with dogged tenacity, perhaps thinking within himself:

"With fame, though I die, I am content,  
Let fame be mine, though life be spent."

When Poros was ultimately captured and brought before Alexander, he was not at all "broken and abashed in spirit" but boldly met him as one brave man would meet another brave man after a trial of strength, and made the proud demand: "Treat me, O Alexander! as befits a king."

drawn the string far backwards: for the shaft they use is little short of being three yards long........." (Indika, Ch. XVI, M'crindle's Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian, p. 215.)

1 Curtius, VIII, 14, M'crindle's Antiquity by Arrian, p. 211.
3 Ibid. In a recent paper (Proceedings of the Second Indian History Congress, Allahabad, 1938, pp. 81-91), Dr. H.C. Seth of the Nagpur University has tried to show on the basis of a dubious passage occurring in the Ethiopic version of the Life and Exploits
Re-instatement of Poros

Justin informs us that Alexander "out of respect for his valour restored him (Poros) in safety to his sovereignty." 1 Perhaps the chivalrous instincts of Alexander were to some extent responsible for the generous treatment he accorded to Poros, but there must have been stronger reasons as well, for politics hardly knows of any such magnanimity. In the first place, the stout resistance of Poros, which is further apparent from the high casualty list, 2 must have conveyed its own lesson to Alexander. The latter also knew that as he was hailing from distant Greece it was impossible for him in the very nature of things to compel all the conquered lands to continue rendering him obedience without enlisting local loyalty, assistance and cooperation. Then, again, his ambition to found a permanent empire in the east largely remained unfulfilled, and it was, therefore, necessary for him to pursue a policy of conciliation, to adopt, so to say, the method of capturing wild elephants by means of tame ones. Accordingly, Alexander extended to Poros

of Alexander (B.A.W. Badge's Translation, p. 125) that the great invader received his first set-back in the battle of Jhelum and he sought peace with Poros. It is difficult to appreciate the force of the learned Professor's observations, for firstly, we do not know with certainty the date of the Ethiopic Text. Secondly, it utterly goes against the uniform testimony of the classical (Greek and Roman) authors, and there is no reason to believe that they deliberately conspired to record what was untrue. Thirdly, if Poros was the victor, as Dr. Seth would have us understand, how could then Alexander advance right up to the bank of the Hyphasis. A consummate general like him would never have done so, if at the very gate of India he had to bow to the arms of Poros.

1 Justin, XII, 8, M'Crindle's Invasions by Alexander, p. 323.
2 Diodorus says that 12,000 men were killed and 9,000 captured (XVII, 89, Ibid, p. 276). According to Arrian, however, the loss in killed was 20,000 infantry and 3,000 cavalry and all the chariots were broken to pieces (V, 18, Ibid, p. 107).
the olive branch of peace and friendship by reinstating him in his dignity and sovereignty. And in doing so, Alexander was not only acting in consonance with the dictates of diplomacy and statecraft, but, strangely enough, he was also following the traditional policy of Hindu conquerors, advocated by Manu and Kautilya, viz., the policy of placing either the vanquished monarch or some scion of his family upon the throne instead of resorting to direct annexation.

Foundation of two towns

Alexander then founded two towns. One was called Boukephala after the name of his faithful charger which died in India. The other, Nikaia, meant to commemorate his victory, arose on the site of the battle with Poros.

Defeat of the Glausai and younger Pores

Next, having propitiated the Greek gods, Alexander marched into the territory of a nation called the Glausai or Glaukanikai (= Sanskrit Glaucukāyanakas(?)) of the Kātka, taking thirty-seven of their cities "the smallest of which contained not fewer than 5,000 inhabitants, while many contained upwards of 10,000". At this stage Alexander heard of revolts against him; Nikanor, Satrap of "India-west of the Indus," was assassinated and Sisikottos, i.e., Saśigupta, too, who

1 cf. Manu:

सम्मितां तु नितितिष्ठां समासेः मिल्लिङ्गां
स्थापितेऽयं तत्रेश्च कुप्पिन्य समयथिङ्गायति (vii, 203).

2 Book VII, Ch. XVI, p. 311.

3 Boukephala stood on the Hydaspes at a point where it was crossed.

4 Arrian, V, 20, M’crindle’s Imitation by Alexander, p. 112.
held the citadel at Aornos on behalf of Alexander, sent urgent messages for help. The neighbouring satrap, Tyriaspes, and Philip, 'Resident' in the kingdom of Taxila, promptly responded and thus averted any immediate danger to Macedonian authority. After the arrival of Thracian reinforcements and the renewed submission of the ruler of Abhisara, Alexander crossed the Akesines (Skt. Asikni or Chenab) and subdued the younger Poros, nephew of the great Poros. His territory, known as Gandaris, as also that of the Glausai, was added by Alexander to the kingdom of his quondam enemy—the senior Poros (Paurava).

Capture of Pimprama

By August, 326 B.C., the Macedonian arms penetrated beyond the Hydroates (Parusni or Iravati i.e., modern Ravi), and Alexander won fresh laurels by capturing Pimprama belonging to the Adraistai (Aristas of Panini?).

Sangala stormed

Soon afterwards Alexander invested Sangala, the stronghold of the Kathaians (Skt. Khatas), who "enjoyed the highest reputation for courage and skill in the art of war." Strabo, quoting Onesikritos, informs us that among the Kathaians beauty was highly valued and "the handsomest man was chosen as king." Every child was examined by public authority two months after its birth to determine "whether it has the beauty of form prescribed by law and whether it deserves to live or not." Men and women among them chose

1 cf. Strabo, M’crindie’s Ancient India, p. 37.
2 Arrian, V, 22, M’crindie’s Invasion by Alexander, p. 115.
3 cf. Strabo, M’crindie’s Ancient India, p. 58.
4 Ibid.
their own partners, and the women burnt themselves along with their deceased husbands. These Kathaians fought with great dash and stubbornness, so much so that even Poros had to come to the aid of Alexander with "a force of 5,000 Indians". At last, when the fortress fell, no less than 17,000 of the defenders gave up their lives and more than 70,000 were captured together with 300 waggons and 500 horsemen. This resolute resistance of the Kathaians incensed Alexander to such an extent that he razed Sangala to the ground. Then with a view to guarding the rear he sent Greek garrisons to the conquered cities, and himself marched towards the Hyphasis (Beas) to realise his cherished dream of planting the Hellenic standards in the easternmost ends of India.

The Greek army refuses to advance

But when Alexander reached the river, a strange thing happened. His ever-victorious troops, which had braved many a danger and privation so far, suddenly laid down arms and refused to go further for the sake either of fame or of plunder.

Its causes

Before we follow the fortunes of Alexander in the course of his return journey, let us pause here to consider and analyse the causes of this unexpected change in the attitude of the Greek soldiers. What was it owing to which the war-drum failed to produce an echo in their hearts, and the impassioned entreaties and eloquent exhortations of their supreme commander and king evoked no response except streaming

1 Ibid.
2 Arrian, V, 24, M‘crindle’s Invasion by Alexander, p. 119.
3 Ibid.
tears and loud lamentations. What was it due to that all their enthusiasm and eagerness to establish Greek supremacy in distant lands at once melted away on reaching the Hyphasis? It is true the Greek soldiers were war-worn, home-sick, disease-stricken, and destitute; and many of them were ill-equipped, for it was now increasingly difficult to transport and supply garments from Greece, and not a few were depressed because their friends had perished by disease or fallen victims to sanguinary battles. But was there any other ground for their conduct which doubtless savoured of mutiny? Plutarch gives us some clue to this mystery, for he indicates that even after the contest with Poros the Macedonian forces were considerably dispirited, and it was with reluctance that they had advanced as far as the Hyphasis at Alexander's bidding. He says: "The battle with Poros depressed the spirits of the Macedonians and made them very unwilling to advance farther into India. For, as it was with the utmost difficulty they had beaten him when the army he led amounted only to 20,000 infantry and 2,000 cavalry, they now most resolutely opposed Alexander when he insisted that they should cross the Ganges." The Greeks had been impressed by the heroism and skill of Indian soldiers. Indeed, according to Arrian, "in the art of war they were far superior to the other nations by which Asia was at that time inhabited." That is perhaps why the Greeks showed even after fighting against Poros that they had "no stomach for

1 Plutarch, Ch. LXII, Mcrindle's Invasion by Alexander, p. 310; Arrian, V, 28, Ibid, p. 127.
2 cf. Koinos: "We have conquered all the world, but are ourselves destitute of all things"—Curtius, IX, 5, Ibid, p. 229.
3 Plutarch, LXII, Ibid., p. 310. Plutarch has here underestimated the strength of the army, and instead of the Hyphasis he has mentioned the Ganges.
4 Arrian, V, 4, Ibid., p. 85.
farther toils in India." But when Alexander egged them on to march forward it was like putting the proverbial last straw on the camel's back. During their progress towards the Hyphasis Alexander's troops had heard all sorts of alarming rumours that beyond it there were extensive and uninviting deserts, impetuous and unfathomable rivers, and what was more disquieting, powerful and wealthy nations maintaining huge armies. Curtius represents Phgeus (Phgeles?), as identified with Bhagala, as giving the following information to Alexander: "The farther bank of the Ganges was inhabited by two nations, the Gangaridae, and the Prasii, whose king Agrammes kept in the field for guarding the approaches to his country 20,000 cavalry and 200,000 infantry besides 2,000 four-horsed chariots, and what was most formidable force of all, a troop of elephants, which ran up to the number of 3,000." Similarly, Plutarch says that "the kings of the Gangaritai and Praisiai were reported to be waiting for him with an army of 80,000 horse and 200,000 foot, 8,000 war-chariots and 6,000 fighting elephants. Nor was this an exaggeration, for not long afterwards Androkottos who had by that time mounted the throne, presented Seleukos with 500 elephants and overran and subdued the whole of India with an army of 600,000 men." The substantial truth of these statements is borne out by indigenous sources also, which tell us of the enormous riches and power of the Nanda monarch holding sway over the Gangaridae and Praisia nations. Arrian's deposition, too, is much to the same effect, but he seems to refer to the country im-

1 Curtius, IX, 2, Ibid., p. 222.
2 Curtius, IX, 2, McCrindle's Invasion by Alexander, pp. 221-22.
3 Plutarch, LXII, Ibid., p. 510.
mediately beyond the Hyphasis. He observes: "It was exceedingly fertile, and the inhabitants were good agriculturists, brave in war, and living under an excellent system of internal government; for the multitude was governed by the aristocracy, who exercised their authority with justice and moderation. It was also reported that the people there had a greater number of elephants than the other Indians, and that those were of superior size and courage." These details spurred the indomitable spirit of Alexander and made him all the more keen to advance into the heart of India. The Macedonians, on the other hand, as affirmed by Arrian, "now began to lose heart when they saw the king raising up without end toils upon toils and dangers upon dangers." Indeed, the army held conferences "at which the more moderate men bewailed their condition, while others positively asserted that they would follow no farther though Alexander himself should lead the way". Alexander made a fervent appeal to his comrades to divest their minds of these false rumours and follow him with "alacrity and confidence." He declared: "I am not ignorant, soldiers, that during these last days the natives of this country have been spreading all sorts of rumours designed expressly to work upon your fears, but the falsehood of those who invent such lies is nothing new in your experience." This assurance was, however, of no avail. The troops persisted in their refusal to enter into further contests with the Indians beyond the Beas, "whose numbers," so answered Koinos, "though purposely exaggerated by the barbarians,

1 Arrian, V, 25, M‘erindie’s Invasion by Alexander, p. 121.
2 Ibid.
3 Ibid.
4 Currian, IX, a, Ibid., p. 223.
must yet, as I can gather from the lying report itself, be very considerable. Alexander made his last desperate attempt to rouse the spirit of his soldiers by threatening to march on even if forsaken by them: "Expose me then to the dangers of rivers, to the rage of elephants, and to those nations whose very names fill you with terror. I shall find men that will follow me though I be deserted by you." But the Macedonian troops were so struck by the energetic resistance and bravery of the Indians, whom they had met on the battlefields, and they were so unnerved and terrified by the reported military strength of the nations beyond the Hyphasis that even this threat, this grim prospect of Alexander plunging headlong into the depths of the enemy's country and, maybe, losing his life there, was simply met by silent tears. This brought the situation home to Alexander, who exclaimed in utter dismay: "I have all along been knocking at deaf ears. I am trying to rouse hearts that are disloyal and craven with fears." He then gave orders for retracing their steps homeward. Thus the cherished dreams of Alexander to found an eastern empire vanished, and that brilliant military leader and the hero of a hundred fights had to give way to the fears of his troops, although such fears were altogether foreign to his own indomitable nature. And when Diodorus Siculus informs us that the greatest nation in India was the Gangaridai, "against whom Alexander did not undertake an expedition, being deterred by the multitude of their elephants," we are not to understand that he himself had any misgivings about his strength, or reluctance to embark upon further

---

¹ Curius, IX, 3, Ibid., p. 229.
² Curius, IX, 2, Ibid., p. 226.
³ Ibid.
⁴ Ancient India as described in Classical Literature, p. 151.
adventures, but it was chiefly due to the pusillanimous attitude of his troops that his progress was arrested and he was forced to retreat.¹

Altars

It is said that with a view to marking the extreme point of his advance eastward Alexander gave directions for the construction of twelve colossal stone altars, dedicated to the chief Greek gods.² When these massive monuments were completed, Alexander offered sacrifices, accompanied with appropriate ceremonies, for a safe return home.

Retreat: Scheme of administration

The Macedonian storm, having swept over the Punjab, receded in September, 326 B.C., and probably beyond hearing its rumblings the peoples of the Gangetic plains knew nothing of its devastating fury. Soon Alexander reached the bank of the Hydaspes (Jhelum), which was the scene of his conflict with Poros. Here Alexander made proper arrangements for keeping the conquered parts of the Punjab under his subjection. He placed his new ally, Poros, in charge of all the tract between the Hydaspes and the Hyphasis, and Omphis or Ambhi of Taxila was given full jurisdiction over the Indus-Hydaspes Doab. Likewise, the ruler of Abhisāra had his authority extended over Kashmir with Arsakes of Uraša (Hazārā district) as his vassal. And as a counterpoise to the rule of these Indian princes, Alexander stationed adequate Greek garrisons in cities founded by himself on Indian soil. These Greek settlers were meant to be the sentinels or guar-

¹ See also J.A.S.B., New Series XIX, 1925, pp. 761-769.
² These altars must have been on the right bank of the Hyphasis and not on its left side, as Pliny would have us believe (VI, 62).
dians of his overlordship, so that no enterprising Indian monarch may be able to rise in revolt in order to shake off the alien yoke.

**Sophytes**

Alexander then made preparations for sailing down the rivers, but before the voyage actually began he cleared the path of all potential enemies by bringing about the subjugation of Sophytes (Saubhūri?), whose kingdom had "a mountain of fossil salt which could supply all India."¹ He was thus the chief of the country of the Salt range.² Incidentally, it may be noted that according to Strabo the land of Sophytes had dogs of "astonishing courage" and mettle, and Alexander witnessed their fight even with a lion.³ Curtius further avers that the people of Sophytes "excelled in wisdom, and lived under good laws and customs."⁴ Like the Karhajans, they held beauty in great esteem and marriages were contracted not on considerations of high birth but of looks. They examined every infant medically, and if they found "anything deformed or defective in the limbs of a child they ordered it to be killed."⁵

**Voyage down the river**

Towards the close of October the signal for departure was given with the sound of the trumpet, and the Macedonian boats glided down the river in grand array, protected on both the banks by troops under

¹ Strabo, M'crindle's *Ancient India*, p. 38.
² According to Curtius, however, the kingdom of Sophytes was on the west of the Hyphasis (IX, 7, M'crindle's *Invasion by Alexander*, p. 219).
³ Ibid., p. 219; Strabo, *Ancient India*, p. 38.
⁴ Curtius, IX, 7, M'crindle's *Invasion by Alexander*, p. 219.
⁵ Ibid.
the command of Hephaestion and Krateros respectively, until they reached the confluence of the Akesines and the Hydaspes.

The Siboi and the Agalassians

Here Alexander disembarked to measure swords with the Siboi (Skt. Sivis), who were preparing to oppose him with an army of 40,000 infantry, and the Agalassians (Agraštenia), who had mustered an equally great force of 40,000 foot and 3,000 horse. The Siboi, who "dressed themselves with the skins of wild beasts, and had clubs for their weapons," were routed; but the Agalassians gallantly defended their capital and at first repulsed Alexander with serious losses. Curtius observes that realising their desperate position the defenders "set fire to their houses, and cast themselves along with their wives and children into the flames." Thus the Agalassians anticipated the medieval Rajput custom of *Jauhar*.

The Malloi and the Oxydrakai

Close upon the heels of the Agalassoi operations followed Alexander's campaign against the Malloi (Mālavas) and the Oxydrakai (Kṣudrakas), the "most numerous and warlike of all the Indian tribes in those parts" who were ready to give him a "hostile reception" after "having conveyed their children and their wives for safety into their strongest cities." Curtius says that these two nations were formerly at enmity with each other, but when the gravity of the peril threatening their liberty dawned upon them, they coalesced together and

---

gathered an army of 90,000 foot-soldiers, besides 10,000 cavalry and 900 war-chariots. The Macedonian soldiers, who had begun to think that they had come to the end of all hazardous tasks, were struck with "an unexpected terror" at the prospect of meeting fresh opposition, and in the words of Curtius "began again to upbraid the king in the language of sedition," saying that he had not ended war, but only shifted its theatre. Fully determined to prevent a repetition of the story of the Hyphasis, Alexander made a moving appeal to them "to permit him to return from India with honour, and not to escape from it like a fugitive." This time it had the desired effect; the troops were galvanised into fresh activity and they rose to such a high pitch of war-frenzy that without giving any warning Alexander suddenly swooped down upon the Malloi, when they were working unarmed in the fields. A large number of them were mercilessly slain, but this did not break the backbone of their resistance. Some of the Malloi shut themselves up within the city, but it was stormed and 2,000 persons lost their lives. Others took shelter in a city of the Brachmans or Brahmans, where Alexander hotly pursued them. Arrian remarks: "As they were men of spirit, a few only were taken prisoners" and most of them perished by the sword. Next, Alexander assailed the main stronghold of the Malloi, situated somewhere near the boundary of the modern Jhang and Montgomery districts. Here Alexander received a serious wound, which spread fury and

1 Curtius, IX, 4, Ibid., p. 254.
2 Ibid., p. 255.
3 Arrian, VI, 6, Ibid., p. 140.
4 Ibid., VI, 7, Ibid., p. 144.
5 E.H.I., 4th ed., p. 100 and note.
6 Arrian distinctly mentions that the accident befell Alexander among the Malloi, and not the Oxydakai (Arrian, VI, 11, M'Cridele's Invasion by Alexander, p. 149).
consternation among his troops, for their safety mostly depended upon his leadership and prowess. Consequently, they perpetrated a ferocious massacre of the Malloi, sparing "neither man, woman, nor child." The indiscriminate slaughter of women and children was undoubtedly an act of wanton cruelty, which casts a slur on the war-code of the Greeks in India. When Alexander recovered, the submission of the Malloi became a fait accompli. The confederacy thus dissolved, the Oxydrakai saw no better alternative than to send ambassadors to negotiate peace with Alexander. They declared that "they were attached more than others to freedom and autonomy," and that it was due to the will of the gods, and not through fear, that they had bowed to his steel. Alexander appreciated their dignified bearing and entertained their leading men with marked courtesy and lavishness, which excited the jealousy of some of his own generals. Next, to impress upon these two nations that Greek authority had come to stay, Alexander appointed Philippos as satrap over them. The invader then moved down the rivers until he reached the junction of the Akesines and the Indus, where he waited for Perdikkas, who during the course of his march had subdued the Abastanoi or Sambastai (Skt. Ambas- theas). Diodoros deposes that they were "inferior to none in India either for numbers or for bravery. They dwelt in cities in which the democratic form of government prevailed." Like the other tribes, they also collected a large force consisting of 60,000 foot-soldiers, 6,000 horse and 300

1 Ibid.
2 Arrian, VI, 14, Ibid., p. 154.
3 Curtius, IX, 7, Ibid., pp. 248-49.
4 The jurisdiction of Philippos was subsequently extended much further southwards.
5 Diodoros, XVII, Ch. CII, Ibid., p. 292.
chariots to oppose Alexander, but fortune was not more favourable to them.

Subjugation of the lower Indus valley

Among other communities which submitted to Alexander during his progress to the Indus delta were the Xathroi (Kaṣṭri of Manu), Ossadioi (= Vasāti of the Mahābhārata), Sodrai (Śūdras?) and the Massanoi; unfortunately we do not get any details about their hostilities. Alexander also subjugated a number of kings, viz., Mousikanos (lord of the Mūsikas?), Oxykanos, and Sambos (Sambhu), who were too proud to acknowledge Alexander's suzerainty, even though they were mutually at war. Mousikanos had his capital at Alor (Sukkur district), and, according to Onesikritos his people were distinguished for their healthy living and longevity—their term of life extending to 130 years. Some of their other characteristics have also been noted: "To have a common meal which they eat in public, their food consisting of the produce of the chase; to use neither gold nor silver though they have mines of those metals; to employ instead of slaves young men in the flower of their age; to study no science with attention except that of medicine; to have no actions at law but for murder and outrage," for if contracts are violated one must pay the penalty for reposing too much trust on the other party.

Brahmanic opposition

One interesting feature of the political situation

1 Diodoros (Ibid.) calls him Portikanos. For the site of his capital, see M'Crindle's Invasion by Alexander, p. 158, note 1.
2 The capital of Sambos was Sindimana or Sihwan.
3 Strobe, M'crindle's Ancient India, p. 41.
4 Ibid.
in this part of the country was the enormous influence wielded by the Brahmans and their active participation in politics. For instance, we are told that they instigated Mousikanos and Oxykanos to revolt and shake off the ignominy of foreign thralldom. They followed their advice and lost their heads along with a large number of Brahmans. The suppression of Brahmanical opposition could not have been an easy task for Alexander, since the Brahmans were not only respected throughout the land, but they were themselves, in the words of Arrian, “men of spirit.” ¹ The taking up of arms by the meek Brahmans must not be regarded as a strange phenomenon or a mere figment of Greek imagination. Apart from the epic examples of such Brahman warriors as Parāśurāma, Droṇācārya, and Aśvathāmā, we know that Kauṭilya actually refers to Brahman armies which were distinguished for their mildness towards the prostrate enemy.² Besides, the Hindu law-givers explicitly permit them to exchange the Śāstra for the Śāstra in evil times and in defence of their country and Dharma. Thus says Manu:

शर्मं हितातितिवाच सं भर्मोसम्भवेः |
हितातिनां च वर्णानां निपतने कालकारिते ³॥

i.e., ‘The Brahmans may take up arms when they are hindered in the fulfilment of their duties, or when destruction threatens the Twice-born in evil times.’ The country was menaced with such a calamity during the Macedonian avalanche, and so the Brahmans valiantly rose to defend their honour and their hearth and home,

¹ Arrian, VI, 7; M‘cindle’s Imision by Alexander, p. 144.
² See Śāraṇāśṭri, Arthashāstra, 3rd ed., p. 373.
³ Manusmriti, VIII, 348.
Pattala

Having overcome the opposition of the Brahmans and of the kings of the lower Indus valley, Alexander reached Tanaula or Pattala, "a city of great note, with a political constitution drawn on the same lines as the Spartan; for in this community the command in war was vested in two hereditary kings of two different houses, while a council of elders ruled the whole state with paramount authority." According to Curtius, one of its kings was named Moeres.¹

Homeward Route

About the beginning of September, 325 B.C., Alexander finally quitted the scene of his memorable exploits. He divided the army into two sections; one was led by Nearchos by sea, and the other marched with Alexander along the southern coast of Gedrosia (Baluchistan). A part of it had, of course, already been sent under the command of Krateros through the Bolan pass. Alexander chose the most difficult and cheerless route for himself through the territories of the Ambitae and the Orithae, and he reached his destination after a good deal of anxiety and suffering.

Conclusion

It should be evident from the foregoing account, which is based entirely on the evidence of the Greek and Roman authors, that the progress of Alexander's arms in India was by no means easy or smooth. No doubt, some of the Indian potentates and autonomous

¹ Diodoros, XVII, Ch. CIV, Mc'Crindle's Invasion by Alexander, p. 296. Pattala has been identified with modern Bahmanahad.
² Curtius, IX, 8, Ibid., p. 256.
CONCLUSION: ALEXANDER'S SCHEME

Communities:

"bowed low before the blast,
And let the legions thunder past."

But others fought bravely and resolutely, and this coupled with the prospect of unending wars in India even created apprehensions in the minds of the Greek veterans, who had blown off the mighty Persian forces almost like chaff. Nor did India "plunge in thought again" after the great meteor had flashed across her political skies,¹ and within a few years of Alexander's departure and death in June 323 B.C. all vestiges of Greek occupation were destroyed and swept away.²

Alexander's Arrangements

Alexander remained in India east of the Indus for a brief period of about nineteen months only from the spring of 326 B.C. to September 323 B.C. He was mostly busy fighting, and he could not, therefore, get time enough to consolidate his conquests. But the steps he took clearly indicate that he intended to annex the Indian provinces permanently to his empire. He posted Greek garrisons at strategic centres; appointed governors, like Philip, over the region above Sind up to the lower Kabul valley, and Peithon in Sind, to exercise control over the native princes; conciliated

¹ While Alexander was on his way home, Satrap Philippos was murdered in India, and the former could do no more than direct Ambhi of Taxila and Budamos, a Thracian Commandant on the Upper Indus, to take over the administration of the province.

² When the Macedonian empire was partitioned for the second time in 321 B.C. at Triparadise, Peithon had already retired to the west of the Indus, and Greek authority had all but disappeared in the Punjab and Sind, although Budamos succeeded in holding his charge until 317 B.C.
his mighty opponent, Poros; constructed docks and harbours at Pattalene (Indus delta); and tried to explore the easiest and quickest route between India and Greece. All his arrangements and aspirations, however, came to nought when Alexander prematurely died in Babylon in June 323 B.C.

Results of the Invasion

One of the important effects of Alexander’s invasion was the establishment of a number of Greek settlements in India. The army of occupation, of course, did not long survive his departure, but the cities founded by him continued to flourish. Another indirect result of this expedition was that it discredited the small state system of the Punjab, and thus helped the cause of Indian unity. It also demonstrated to Indians that there was something inherently wrong with their military organisation and strategy, and that a drilled and disciplined army, though small, could accomplish wonders in the face of odds. Lastly, it brought India into direct touch with the European world. This not only gave an impetus to trade and commerce, but also mutually influenced the development of art, thought, and literature. Some of the tangible relics of Alexander’s invasion of India are imitation Athenian “owl” coins and silver drachms of Attic weight. One remarkable silver decadrachm is supposed by Barclay Head to represent Alexander on the reverse and on the obverse Poros mounted on a retreating elephant, which is being pursued by a horseman.

Society and Religion

The Greek writers yield us some interesting information on the social customs and religious be-
liefs of the people of those times. For instance, we learn that beauty was so highly appreciated in the kingdom of Sophytes that if any child was born defective or deformed he was killed and not allowed to grow. A handsome person was a better passport to marriage than nobility of birth. Among the Kathaians and other tribes women observed the custom of Sati, i.e., widows burnt themselves on their husbands’ funeral pyre. In Taxila the Greeks noted the strange custom of poor parents putting up girls for sale in the market-place, and further we are told that the dead were left to be devoured by vultures. Polygamy was another common practice among the people there.

Despite the prevalence of many queer customs, Brahmanism appears to have been the dominant religion in that part of India, and Alexander’s historians narrate some unusual practices of Brahmanical ascetics like Mandanis and Kalanos (Kalyana). The Brahmins commanded great respect by their learning, lofty conduct, and spirit of self-abnegation; and kings, like Mousikanos, were ready to follow their lead and direction even in political matters. Next, there were the Sarmanes or Sramanas, Buddhist and non-Buddhist recluses, who wore the bark of trees and lived in forests on wild fruits and roots. Indians in general worshipped Zeus Ombrios—the rain-god Indra, and Herakles, perhaps Krishna’s elder brother Balarama. The river Ganges was then also, as now, venerated, and certain trees were held so sacred that their defilement was considered a capital offence.

**Economic Condition**

The most remarkable feature of the economic situation of the times was the abundance of towns, such as Massaga, Aornos, Taxila, 37 Glausai towns,
Pimprama, Sangala, Pattala, etc., which testified to the material prosperity of the country. Their construction, location, and fortifications give us some idea of the system of town-planning too, then in vogue.\(^1\) Besides these towns, the material progress of the people was reflected in the presents received by Alexander in the course of his campaign. Thus, the envoys of the Oxydrakai, clad in purple and gold, are said to have brought for him a large quantity of cotton goods, tortoise shells, bucklers of ox-hide, and “100 talents of steel;” and Ambhi of Taxila presented to Alexander “280 talents of silver and golden crowns.”

North-western India was then, as now, famous for its fine breed of oxen, of which Alexander captured 2,30,000 from the Aspasiens and sent them to Macedonia for use in agriculture. He further welcomed a gift of 3,000 “fat oxen” and 10,000 sheep from Ambhi.\(^2\) Evidently, agriculture and cattle-breeding were important occupations of the people in the Punjab and the North-west.

In conclusion, it may be noted that one of the most flourishing crafts then was that of the carpenter, who supplied chariots for the army and carts and other vehicles for trade and traffic. Judging from the existence of several rivers in the Punjab, boat and shipbuilding was perhaps a prosperous industry. It is known that Alexander used a flotilla of boats for crossing the Hydaspes and a part of his troops sailed down the Indus under the command of Neachos, and one may reasonably suppose that for this fleet the invader must have utilised native labour and materials.

---

\(^1\) On this subject, see B. B. Dutt, *Town Planning in Ancient India* (Thacker Spink & Co., 1925).

\(^2\) See also *Hindu Civilisation*, pp. 310-11.
CHAPTER VIII

SECTION A

CANDRAGUPTA MAURYA

Ancestry

After the departure of Alexander there arose on the political firmament of India a new star that soon eclipsed the rest by its brilliance. Traditions differ regarding the antecedents of Candragupta. One account represents him as the son of the last Nanda monarch from his Sudra concubine, Muru by name, from which was derived the surname Maurya. Another makes Candragupta a scion of the famous Moriya clan, a branch of the Sakya of Pali works, and thus the second part of the name (Maurya) appears to have been a tribal appellative. Further, certain medieval inscriptions and the Divyavadana affirm that he was a Kshatriya, although it is probable, as the Greek writer Justin deposes, Candragupta was born in “humble life.” This expression would suggest that he was not a prince but a mere commoner without any direct title to the crown of Magadha.

Conditions Favourable to his Rise

Northern India was in a state of ferment about

3 cf. कंदगृहं नादव्रीष्य मन्तव्यरथ सुरतंकशय पूर्ण मीरणाः प्रणम्। This is obviously wrong. The derivative from Muru would be Maureya.

4 Mahavamsa, Geiger’s Translation, p. 27. According to the Mahaparinibbana Sutta the Motiyas were Khattiyas or Ksatriyas.
the beginning of the last quarter of the fourth century B.C. In Magadha the Nanda dynasty was tottering because of its base origin and the tyranny, avariciousness, and financial extortions of Dhanañandana; and in the Punjab the people, divided as they were, smarted under the blows of Alexander the Great. So the political situation afforded excellent opportunities for bold spirits, and Candragupta tried his fortune by riding on the crest of the popular wave of discontent. He seems to have served at first in the Nanda army as a general or Senāpati. But somehow he fell out with his master, and raised the standard of revolt with the active support, and under the guidance, of that "Michaevillian Brahman" named Viṣṇugupta or Cāṇakya, who cherished a grudge against the Nanda ruler for some petty breach of social etiquette. The attempt miscarried and both of them had to flee for their life. According to the Mahāvaṭṭa-piṭaka, the story runs that while concealed in an old woman's hut Candragupta overheard her scolding a child, who in the act of eating had burnt its fingers by beginning with the middle of a cake and not with its corners. Candragupta took lesson from this conversation, and accordingly transferred the scene of his activities to the North-west. It is alleged that he sought an interview with Alexander, when he was still in the Punjab, perhaps with a view to inducing him to advance against the Nanda king. But the boldness of his speech offended "Alexandrum," and so Candragupta had to run away for safety. With the invader's departure, the latter again emerged from his obscurity and addressed himself to the task of organising the tribes of the Punjab, which were not yet quite reconciled to the Greek yoke, as would appear from the assassination of Philip,

1 Hemacandra's Sthiravṛtti-carita has a similar story.
2 Sometimes emended into "Nandrum," identified with Nanda or Dhanañandana.
Sarrap of the north-western provinces, soon after Alexander had left India. The precariousness of Greek authority is further evident from the fact that when he received advices of this incident, he could do no more than ask his Indian friends, Poros and Ambhi, to carry on the administration with Eudamos to exercise general supervision over them. The premature death of Alexander in June, 323 B.C., spurred on the ambitions of Candragupta, and within a short time he succeeded in subverting the Greek garrisons, although Eudamos somehow managed to hold his charge until 317 B.C., when he quit India to participate in the struggle between Eumenes and Antigonus.

**Destruction of Nanda power and date of Accession**

Having driven away the Yavanas beyond the Indus, Candragupta collected a strong force to try conclusions with the Nandas of Magadha. According to the *Mudrārākṣasa*, Candragupta’s chief ally was Parvatarka, who has sometimes been identified with Poros. The drama gives us some idea of the complicated intrigues and conflicts of the various parties; but all accounts, Purāṇic, Buddhist, or Jain, agree that Candragupta was able to rout the Nanda army completely. The overthrow of the Yavana power and the defeat of the Nandas may be presumed to have been brought about within two or three years of Alexander’s death, and so we may place

1 Some scholars believe that the conquest of Magadha preceded the ousting of the Greek garrisons in the Punjab.
2 The *Viṣṇu Purāṇa* says:

> सत्यं गुरवलप्रमाणं कौटिल्यो बाह्यं समुद्दिर्घाति ।
> तेषां गजद्रान्व गोणाः, पृथिवीं मोक्षाति । कौटिल्यं एव बलगुणमस्तः सम्मानिश्चितः ।

It may also be noted that the commentator Śrīdhurāraśāmin explains the word thus: तत्वतः नाध्यοऽथ गृहस्माया वर्त्तानात्।
the accession of Candragupta in the year 321 B.C., a date in accord with the Ceylonese evidence also, according to which, as shown above, the Saisunaga dynasty ended in 345 B.C., and the Nandas ruled for 22 years only.

Conquests

Unfortunately, we do not get definite details of Candragupta’s campaigns. The Greek writers, Plutarch and Justin, represent him as having overrun and obtained possession of the whole of India. It is no doubt an exaggeration, if taken literally, but there is ample evidence to show that besides Magadha and the Punjab Candragupta’s jurisdiction extended to distant regions of India. The inclusion of Saurashtra is proved by the Junagadh rock inscription of Rudradaman, which refers to Candragupta’s irrigational projects there and the appointment of a Ráṣṭriya or governor named Puṣyagupta Vaiśya. The Tamil writers, Māmulanār and Paraṇar, even allude to the Mauryan invasion of the Far South up to the Podiyil Hill in the district of Tinnevelly. Jain tradition and certain late inscriptions further testify to Candragupta’s connection with North Mysore. Thus, it appears that the conquest of a large part of India is to be ascribed to him.

War with Selenkos

In the years following the death of Alexander, there was a scramble for power among his generals, and in this clash of arms Seleukos ultimately triumphed. By 305 B.C., he found his position so secure in western Asia that he thought of emulating the exploits of Alexander and of recovering the Indian territories, which

1 Mr. N. K. Bhattasali proposes 313 B.C., on the strength of certain Jain works, as the date of Candragupta’s accession (J.R.A.S., 1932, pp. 173-88).
had practically been abandoned in the second partition at Triparedeisos in 321 B.C. The situation in India had, however, vastly changed since Alexander’s invasion. There ruled now a monarch, whose genius had built up a mighty empire, and he was not unfamiliar with the Greek technique of warfare too. The extant text unfortunately does not make it clear whether Seleukos was worsted in a fight with Candragupta, or the combatants merely made a display of their forces and did not actually come to grips. The call had already come from the West, and so the invader was anxious to get back home and finally reckon with his rival Antigonos. Accordingly, Candragupta extracted the most favourable terms for himself, Seleukos perhaps ceding to him the satrapies of Aria (Herat), Arachosia (Kandahar), Paropamisadas (Kabul valley), and Gedrosia (Baluchistan) in exchange for just 500 elephants which played a conspicuous part in the battle at Ipsos in 301 B.C. The limits of the Mauryan empire were thus extended right up to the Hindukush, “the scientific frontier of India.” Also as a mark of friendship and amity a matrimonial alliance was contracted, and Seleukos deputed an ambassador, named Megasthenes, to the Mauryan court.

**Megasthenes and Kauṭiliya**

Megasthenes and Kauṭiliya are the two most important authors, whose writings throw a flood of light on the people, government and institutions of India under Candragupta Maurya. The *Indika* of Megasthenes is now


2. It is not necessary to suppose that Seleukos gave the hand of his daughter to Candragupta. Any Greek princess may have been meant (see also V.A. Smith, *Aloka*, p. 11, note 1).
lost, but happily it is still preserved in the form of quotations by later writers. Kautilya or Cāṇakya, is reputed to have been the minister of Candragupta. His production, the Arthasastra, is a comprehensive compendium on polity and statecraft, and it would perhaps be no overestimate of its value to say that, despite its theoretical character, it is a unique work in early Indian literature.  

Administration

Military organisation

Candragupta had inherited a vast army from his predecessors, but he further raised its strength to 600,000 infantry, 30,000 horse, 9,000 elephants, besides about 8,000 chariots. This formidable force was efficiently maintained by a war-office, consisting of thirty members, divided into six boards of five each. The several departments assigned to them were as follows:

Board No. I .... Admiralty.
   No. II .... Transport, commissariat, and army service.
   No. III .... Infantry.
   No. IV .... Cavalry.
   No. V .... Chariots.
   No. VI .... Elephants.

The last four represented the traditional divisions of an Indian army, viz., Patti or Padāti, Aśva, Rathā, and Hasti, which were, according to Kautilya, under their

---

4 It is sometimes argued that the Arthasastra is a late work of the third century A.D., and belongs to the school founded by Cāṇakya. Dr. Raychaudhuri believes that though "a comparatively late work," the Arthasastra "probably existed before the second century A.D." (Pol. Hist. Anc. Ind., 4th ed., p. 226).
respective Adhyakṣas or Superintendents.

Imperial Government

At the head of the administration was the king, who was the supreme and final authority in all matters, military, judicial, executive, and legislative. He led in war, and deliberated over plans of offence and defence with his Senāpati or Commander-in-chief. He received petitions from his subjects and meted out prompt justice. He made high appointments, looked into the state-finances, granted audience to envoys, and collected secret information from spies. Lastly, he issued "śāsanas" or orders for the guidance of the people. The king was assisted in the discharge of his duties by a Mantri-Pariṣad. It was an advisory body of Ministers (Mantris or Sācivas), whose devotion to duty, integrity and wisdom had been fully tested. The various branches of administration were controlled and supervised by other high officials, Amāyas, Mahāmātras, and Adhyakṣas, mentioned in the Arthāṣāstra. The traditional list of eighteen Tīrthas or officers consisted of the following: Mantri (Minister), Purola (Priest), Senāpati (Commander-in-chief), Yuvāraja (Crown-prince), Damārika (Door-keeper), Antarvārika (Officer in charge of the harem), Prasātri (Inspector-General of prisons), Samā-

1 Megasthenes deposes that the king was accessible to his people even when his body was being "massaged by ebony rollers." Kauṭilya also exhorts the ruler never to cause "his petitioners to wait at the door," but to hear "all urgent calls at once and never put off" (Arthāṣāstra, Bk. I, Ch. XIX, Shāmaśāstri's Translation, 3rd ed., p. 58).

2 According to the Arthāṣāstra Bk. III, Ch. 1, (Shāmaśāstri's Trans., 3rd ed., pp. 170-71), the king could make new laws, but Gautama, Āpastamba, Bodhāyana, etc., do not recognise him as a source of law. Indeed, Maṇu (VIII, 336) says that a king was liable to be fined, like any other citizen, if he transgressed the established Law.
barē (Collector-General), Sumnīhātā (In charge of Treasury), Pradeṣtri (Divisional Commissioner), Nāyaka (City constable), Panāra (Governor of the capital), Vyanabārika (Officer in charge of transactions or Chief Judge), Karmāntika (Officer in charge of mines or manufactories), Mantri-parisadādhyakṣa (President of the Council), Daṇḍapāla (Police Chief), Durgapāla (Officer in charge of Home Defences), Antaṭapāla (Frontier-Defence Officer). Among the various Adbhūkṣas or Superintendents were those of Kōṣa (Treasury), Ākara (mines) Loha (metal), Lakṣaṇa (mint), Lavaṇa (salt), Swarna (gold), Kośṭhāgāra (store-house), Punya (royal trade), Kupya (forest-produce), Ayudhāgāra (Armoury), Pauṭana (weights and measures of capacity), Māna (measurement of space and time), Sāleka (tolls), Sūdra (spinning and weaving), Sītā (cultivation of Crowslands), Sūwarna (intoxicating liquor), Sāna (slaughter-houses), Mudrā (passports), Viśita (pastures), Dyāva (gambling), Bandabanāgāra (jails), Gān (cattle), Nau (shipping), Pattaṇa (ports), Gaṇikā (courtresses), besides those of the army,\(^1\) trade (Saṁstāhā) and religious institutions (Devatā).

**Provincial Administration**

The empire being vast, it was divided into a number of provinces for administrative convenience. The home-provinces were under the immediate control of the king, and, as we know from the inscriptions of Aśoka, the important provinces were governed by Kumāras or princes of the blood royal. Taxilā, Tośali (Dhauī), Suvāraṅgiri (Songit), and Ujjain were such seats of viceroyalties. Besides, there were feudatory chiefs, who acknowledged the suzerainty of the Emperor,

\(^1\) The army Superintendents were those of Pattī (Infantry) Ațu (Horse), Hastī (Elephant force), and Raīṇa (Chariots).
and rendered him military assistance in times of necessity. The bureaucracy was responsible for running the machinery of government, and its actions and movements were closely watched by overseers and spies (cārāt). This system of espionage and counter-checks must have prevented harassment of the people in outlying parts, and kept the king posted with every kind of information.

Municipal Administration

Megassthenes gives us a detailed account of the municipal administration of Pāraliputra only, but it appears reasonable to infer that other great towns of the empire must have been similarly governed. We learn that the local affairs were under a commission of six boards, each consisting of five members. According to Vincent Smith, these boards were "an official development of the ordinary non-official panaśyāt." 11

The first board was in charge of everything pertaining to industrial arts. Besides enforcing the use of good material and fixing of proper wages, artisans were its special concern. Anybody disabling a craftsman was sentenced to death by the state.

The second board looked to the movements and needs of the foreigners. They were provided lodgings and, when necessary, medical aid also. In case of death, their remains were interred, and their belongings were handed over to the claimants. The existence of this board shows that there must have been a fairly large foreign population in the capital.

The third board was responsible for the registration of births and deaths. The collection of vital statistics was thus regarded as necessary for purposes of taxation and information of the government.

The fourth board was entrusted with trade and

commerce. It regulated the sale of commodities, and checked the use of false weights and measures. Anybody dealing in more than one article had to pay proportionately heavier taxes.

The fifth board supervised the manufacturers, who were by law, under penalty of fine, prevented from mixing old and new articles together.

The sixth board enforced the payment of tithes on goods sold. The evasion of this tax, specially perhaps if the sum involved was considerable, was visited with capital punishment. But honest default must have been treated leniently.

In their corporate capacity the municipal commissioners were expected to manage the affairs of the city, and to maintain temples, harbours, and other works of public utility.

Kautilya does not mention any of these boards. He contemplates a Nāgaraka or Nāgarādhyaśa as Prefect of the town, and under him were the Sthānikas and Gopas, whose jurisdictions extended to one-fourth and to a few families of the city respectively.

Pātaliputra

It may not be out of place here to give a brief description of the Imperial metropolis. Palimbothra, as Megasthenes calls it, situated in the country of the Prasians, was the “largest city in India,” being 9½ miles (80 stadia) long and about 1¾ miles (fifteen stadia) broad. It stood on the tongue of land formed between the two rivers Erannobaos (Sone) and the Ganges. Its defences were further strengthened by a surrounding ditch, over six hundred feet (six plothra) wide and thirty cubits deep. Another protection was the external wall, which had 370 towers and 64 gates. There must have been similar fortifications in other big cities of the empire.
Rural Government

The village (grama) was the lowest unit of administration. It was controlled by a Gramika (headman) with the help of the grama varidhas or village elders. An officer in charge of five or ten villages was called Gopa; and above him was the Sthänika who looked after one-fourth of a district (janapada). These officers worked under the general supervision of the Pradeshti and Samähartä.

Penal Code

Both Megasthenes and Kautilya testify to the severity of the penal laws. Offenders were ordinarily punished with fines, varying in amount, but there were also terrible penalties. For instance, injury to an artisan, or evasion of tithes on sales, led to the award of capital sentence, and perjury was punishable by mutilation of the limbs. Kautilya prescribes death even for a petty theft by a government servant. We further learn that judicial torture, like whipping etc., was authorised and openly used for extracting information from criminals and suspects. These rigorous methods must have gone a long way in the prevention of crime.

Irrigation

Candragupta paid special attention to the problem of irrigation. Megasthenes speaks of officers, whose duty was to "measure the land and to inspect the sluices by which water is distributed into the branch canals, so that every one may enjoy his fair share of the benefit."¹ It was perhaps due to his solicitude for the needs of his subjects that Candragupta ordered Puṣyagupta, his governor in distant Saurāstra, to dam-up

¹ Bk. III, Fragment., 34; see also M'Crindle, Ancient India, Megasthenes and Arrian, p. 86.
a mountain stream, and thus was formed a reservoir of water called Sudarśana, which proved of immense irrigational value.¹

Sources of Income and Expenditure

Land-revenue was the main source of income. Normally the share of the crown (bhāgu) was one-sixth of the gross produce, but the proportion perhaps varied according to place and other circumstances. Heads of income also included dues from mines, forests, customs at the frontiers, tolls and ferry duties, fees from professional experts, taxes and tithes, fines and benevolences exacted in crises. The officer, responsible for the finances and revenue-collection of the state, was the Samāharta.

The money thus derived was largely spent on the maintenance of the king and his court, as well as on the army, defences of the kingdom, salaries of officers, allowances to artisans and some other classes of people, charities, religious provisions, and works of public utility like roads, irrigation, buildings, etc.

Megasthenes on Indian Castes

It is interesting to note that Megasthenes divides Indian society into seven classes or ‘castes’. The first class was that of the ‘philosophers’, and, although numerically small, they were the most honoured. This class denoted the Brahmanas and ascetics in general. The second class was composed of cultivators, who constituted the bulk of the population. The third class comprised hunters and herdsmen. The fourth class included traders, artisans, and boatmen. The fifth was that of the warriors, representing the Kṣatriyas.

¹ cf. the Jūnāgadh Rock Inscription of Rudradāman, Ep. Ind., VIII, pp. 45, 46, l. 8.
The sixth and seventh classes consisted of secret service men and councillors respectively. Evidently, here we have got a clear instance of mal-observation on the part of the Seleucid ambassador, for the last two could in no case have formed social divisions.

The Imperial Palace

Candragupta lived in the midst of pomp and splendour. He had built for himself a magnificent palace, which stood in the centre of an extensive park, and was beautified by gilded pillars, artificial fish-ponds, and shady avenues. There was much to excite admiration, and even the palaces of Susa and Ecbatana could not vie with it. Being chiefly constructed of wood, it was not, of course, able to withstand the ravages of time and nature, but the ruins at Kumrahar, near Patna, discovered by Dr. Spooner, are supposed to represent a hundred-pillared hall of Candragupta’s palace.

His Personal Life

Here the Emperor usually remained under the protection of female body-guards.1 He was in constant dread of assassination, so that, it is said, he could not venture to sleep in the same room for two nights consecutively.2 This is, no doubt, an exaggeration, but it certainly indicates that special pre-

---

1 E.H.I., 4th ed., p. 150 and note. Strabo observes that these women were bought from their parents (XV, 35). Kautilya also says that “on getting up from the bed, the king shall be received by troops of women, armed with bows” (Arthashastra, Bk. I, Ch. 21, Shāmaśūstra’s Translation, 3rd ed. (1929), p. 42). Cf. also Pāṇini शार्यजनपदी मान (Sakuntālā, Act. VI, p. 224; Vikramorvasī, Act V, p. 123).

cautions were taken to ward off danger to the king's person. He left the palace on four occasions, when he had to undertake military expeditions, offer sacrifices, administer justice, and to go hunting. He was keenly devoted to duty, and he received petitions, even though his body was being massaged by ebony rollers. At the time of his hunting excursions the route was marked by ropes, and it was death for any one to cross it. When the king made a public appearance he was borne in a golden palanquin, and was distinguished by his embroidered and shining apparel. He used horses or elephants also for going on journeys. He was fond of sports. He took pleasure in witnessing gladiatorial contests and fights of rams, bulls, elephants, and rhinoceroses. Another favourite amusement was ox-racing, which provided occasion for lively betting.

Candragupta's End

According to certain Jain traditions, Candragupta was a Jain, and he retired to Mysore with the Jain patriarch, Bhadrabahu, when there broke out a severe famine in Magadha towards the close of his reign. Further, Candragupta is said to have starved himself to death in accordance with the Jain rule. How far these traditions are reliable is not known, but some medieval inscriptions also associate him with Mysore. It is likely Candragupta came under Jain influences about the end of his life, and abdicated in favour of his son to practise penances. He passed away about 297 B.C. after a reign of 24 years.

Candragupta's Successor

Candragupta was succeeded by his son, Bindusāra. The Greek writers call him Amitachates (Athenaios) or Allitrochades (Strabo), which appears to be a corruption of the Sanskrit Amitraghata or Amitrakhada.

Did be Conquer the South?

Some scholars believe that the southern regions were conquered by Bindusāra, as, according to Tārānātha, he is said to have "made himself master of all territory between the eastern and western seas."1 It is certain that Aśoka ruled as far as the confines of Mysore, and the one country he is known to have annexed to his empire was Kaliṅga. Hence the conquest of the South must be ascribed either to his father or to his grand-father. But as Candragupta's career was so brilliant, and as traditions aver his connection with Mysore, it would probably be more reasonable to credit him with this achievement also.

Revolt

Bindusāra occupied the throne during a period of stress and storm. There was revolt in Taxilā, and when Susima, his eldest son and viceroy, could not quell the disturbance, Bindusāra transferred Aśoka from Ujjain, and the latter was fortunate in restoring order.

1 According to Tārānātha, Cāṇaka (Cāṇakya) served Bindusāra also as Minister for a few years (Pol. Hist. Am. Ind., 4th ed., p. 245). Subsequently Khaḷilātaka, mentioned in the Divyāvadāna (p. 372), became Bindusāra's Prime Minister.
Foreign Contact.

Bindusāra maintained cordial relations with contemporary Hellenic rulers—a policy initiated by his illustrious father. A curious correspondence between Bindusāra and Aniochos I Soter reveals that the former asked his Greek friend to send him sweet wine, figs, and a philosopher. The latter replied that he was happy to forward the first two articles, but that he could not comply with the last, as the law of the land forbade any transaction of that nature. The Syrian monarch is also known to have sent an ambassador, named Deimachos, to the court of Bindusāra.
CHAPTER IX

SECTION A

ĀŚOKA

Accession

According to the Purāṇas, Bindusāra ruled for 25 years, whereas the Pāli books assign to him a reign of 27 or 28 years. Assuming the correctness of the former, Bindusāra must have died about 272 B.C., when he was succeeded by one of his sons, named Aśokavardhana or Aśoka, who had served his period of apprenticeship as Viceroy both at Taxila and Ujjain.

Disputed Succession

The Ceylonese accounts represent him (Aśoka) as wading through a pool of blood to the throne, for he is said to have made short work of all his brothers, 99 in number, except his uterine brother, Tisya. This story is doubted by many scholars, who detect an allusion to the existence of his brothers in Rock Edict V. But, although the epigraphic evidence is inconclusive, as it simply mentions Aśoka's solicitude for the harems of his brothers, we may well believe that the Southern version is exaggerated. Presumably, the monks were interested in emphasising the dark background of his early career to show how Aśoka, the monster of cruelty, was turned into the most gentle sovereign after

---

1 See Macphail, Aśoka; V. A. Smith, Aśoke; Dr. R. K. Mookerji, Aśoka; Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar, Aśoka. I have consulted all these works with profit.
he had come under the influence of the merciful teachings of the Buddha. This much, however, may be accepted as fact that Aśoka had to reckon against his eldest brother, Susūma or Sumana, before he could establish his claim to the throne. That the succession was disputed is also indicated by the interval of three or four years between Aśoka's accession and coronation, which may, therefore, be dated circa 269 or 268 B.C.

The Kalinga War

The most important event of his reign was the conquest of Kalinga, when he had been anointed eight years. We have ventured the surmise elsewhere that the power of the Nandas extended to this region, and hence it must have asserted its independence in the confusion accompanying their overthrow, or during the disturbed reign of Bindusāra. Thus, the task of recovering it fell to the lot of Aśoka. The Kalinga people offered stubborn resistance, for we learn from R. E. XIII that in the conflict no less than "one hundred and fifty thousand persons were captured, one hundred thousand were slain, and many times that number died," perhaps of privation and pestilence. But nothing availed them, and their country was ruthlessly pillaged and conquered. The indescribable sufferings and atrocities of war smote the victor's conscience, and he made the solemn resolve that never again would he unsheathe the sword to enlarge the bounds of his realm.² The war-drum (bharīghoṇa) was silenced for ever, and thenceforth were heard only the reverberations of the 'Dharinmaghoṇa,' the call to

¹ This appears more probable. The Kalingas must have developed their power, taking advantage of Candragupta's preoccupations in Northern India.

² Thus by his soveiteign will Aśoka had long ago anticipated the Kellogg Pact, renouncing war as a policy of the State. The present World War has, however, torn this Pact to shreds.
non-violence and universal peace.

His Personal Religion

Thus a revolutionary change came over Aśoka's outlook and guiding motives of life. His mind and heart were profoundly moved by the gentle teachings of Buddhism, which he now adopted as his religion. He himself declares in R.E. XIII that "directly after the conquest of the Kalisgas, the Beloved of the gods became zealous in the pursuit of Dhamma, love for Dhamma, and teaching of Dhamma." Sometimes it is doubted if he was a Buddhist, but his attachment to Buddhism is apparent from authentic traditions as well as epigraphic evidence. In the Bhāru edict he professes devotion to the Buddhist Trinity—the Buddha, the Dhamma, and the Saṅgha—and recommends both the Order and the laity certain sections from the Buddhist scriptures for their recitation and meditation. In the minor pillar edict at Sarnath and its variants, Aśoka speaks almost as the Defender of the Faith, prescribing penalties for any attempts to create schisms in the church. He also performed pilgrimages to Buddhist holy places like Bodhgayā (R. E. VIII) and Lumbini (M. P. E.), and abolished sacrifices and amusements which involved the slaughter of innocent animals (R. E. I.). Lastly, we learn from traditions that Aśoka built a large number of Sārpos to enshrine

1 Aśoka himself, however, never renounced the world, nor ever became a monk, as supposed by some scholars on the authority of the Dharmāvatī and of I-sing, who deposes that he saw a representation or image of Aśoka as a monk (J.R.A.S., 1908, p. 496). And that well-known passage in M. R. E. I.—"Samgham upayita"—simply shows that Aśoka was drawn closer to the Saṅgha by his activities.

2 Aśoka's pilgrimages to Sarnath, where the Buddha first "turned the wheel of the Law," and to Kuśināra, the place of Parinibbāna, are not mentioned in his inscriptions.
the relics of the Buddha, originally deposited in eight such structures; and to further the cause of Buddhism and settle the canon the Emperor convoked a council, too, under the leadership of Moggaliputta Tissa.

Asoka’s Toleration

But though Asoka had himself embraced Buddhism, he was by no means an intolerant zealot. On the contrary, he bestowed due honours and patronage on all the sects then prevailing. He granted cave-dwellings to the Ajivikas, and inculcated the virtues of liberality and seemly behaviour towards the votaries of different creeds—Brähmanas, Śramanás, Nirgranthas, etc. He believed that the followers of all sects aimed at “restraint of passions and purity of heart,” and, therefore, he desired that they should reside everywhere in his empire (R. E. VII). Above all, he exhorted his subjects to exercise self-control, be “bahu-ruta,” i.e., have much information about the doctrines of different sects, and avoid disparaging any faith merely from attachment to one’s own, so that there may be a growth in mutual reverence and toleration (R. E. XII). Truly, these are lofty sentiments, which may bring solace even to the modern distracted world.

His “Dhamma”

Owing to this catholicity Asoka did not seek to impose his personal religion upon the people. Indeed, nowhere in his edicts does he mention the chief characteristics of Buddhism, to wit, the Four Noble Truths, the Eightfold Path, and the goal of Nibbāna or Nirvāṇa. The

1 See, however, Arthāśāstra (Bk. II, chs. iv & xxxvi, Shāmasāstrī’s Trans., 3rd ed., pp. 34, 161), where Kautilya appears to restrict the right of the pāṇḍitas to reside in all places.

2 See Appendix I for the English rendering of R. E. XII.
“Dhamma”, which he presents to the world is, so to say, the essence or sāra of all religions. He prescribes a code of conduct with a view to making life happier and purer. He laid great stress on obedience (suśrūṣā) and respect (apacitī) for parents, preceptors, and elders. Liberality (dānam) and proper treatment (sampratipatti) of Brāhmaṇas, Śramaṇas, relations, friends, the aged, and the distressed, were highly commended. Sometimes (P. E. II, R. E. VII) Aśoka defines the “Dhamma” as comprising charity (dāna), compassion (dayā), truthfulness (satya or sātyam), purity (sacchā or sancitum), saintliness (śābdhi), self-control (samāyama), gratitude (kutāmabhātā or kriṣṇātā), steadfastness (dadhābhātātā or dridhabhāktīātā) and so on. Negatively, it is freedom from sin (pāpa), which is the outcome of krodha = krodhaḥ (anger), niṣṭṛṣyā or naiṣṭhūryam (cruelty), mānām (pride), and Iśā = Iśā (jealousy), etc. (P. E. III). These are points common to all religions, and so Aśoka can hardly be accused of utilising his vast resources as sovereign in the interests of any particular creed. To him, therefore, goes the credit of first conceiving the idea of a universal religion, synonymous with Duty in its broadest sense.¹

Peculiarities

Aśoka did not, however, give to all the current religious practices and beliefs the stamp of his recognition. In pursuance of the principle of non-injury to sentient beings (anātanābbo prāpānam, avihisā bhūtānam), he did not hesitate to suppress entirely the performance of sacrifices accompanied with the slaughter of animals (R. E. I). This may have meant a real hardship to some of his people, who believed in their efficacy,

¹ Aśoka was thus much ahead of his times and the “Dhamma” may be regarded as the precursor of some modern reformist movements. See also Dr. R. K. Mookerji, Aśoka, pp. 50-76.
but Aśoka was not prepared to make any compromise on this cardinal doctrine. He also condemned certain ceremonies as trivial, vulgar, and worthless (R. E. IX). Mostly they were performed by womenfolk on occasions of births, deaths, marriages, journeys, etc. According to Aśoka, true ceremonial (Dhamma-maṅgala) consisted of proper conduct in all relations of life. Similarly, he tried to change the popular idea of gifts and conquests. He declares that there is no such gift as Dhamma-dāna, which consists of “proper treatment of slaves and servants, obedience to mother and father, liberality to friends, companions, relations, Brāhmaṇa and Śramaṇa ascetics, and abstention from slaughter of living creatures for sacrifice” (R. E. XI).

Measures for its Promotion

Aśoka propagated the “Dhamma” with the zeal and earnestness of a missionary, and he claims in Minor Rock Edict I that as a result of his strenuous exertions for a year, indeed for more than a year,1 “human beings who were unmixed were caused to be mixed with gods throughout Jambudvīpa.”2 He achieved this extraordinary success on account of his well-planned measures. He exhibited “spectacles” of celestial chariots (vimāna), luminous halls of fire (āgī-khamilbāni), and elephants (batti-dasanā), representing the kinds of bliss, which the virtuous enjoyed in heaven. He believed that these shows would attract people to the path of righteousness. He himself gave up plea-

---

1 Aśoka, however, informs us that “for more than two years and a half that he had been a lay-disciple (upāsaka), he did not exert himself well” (M.R.E. I).
2 cf. Iminā ca kālāma anīta samāni amitā Jambudvīpi māhi deveti. The exact interpretation of this passage is beset with difficulties. What it seems to record is that Aśoka’s efforts bore fruit, and people, who had no gods or were not devoted to religion, became religiously-inclined.
sure-tours (vihāra yātras), consisting of hunting and other diversions, and substituted for them "Dhammayātras" to foster Dhamma and a spirit of liberality in the country by his precept and personal example (R. E. VIII). With the same object in view, as Aśoka tells us in P. E. VII, he "set up Dhammastambhas, appointed Dhamma-Mahāmātras or Dhamma-Mahāmātras, and made Dhamma-sāvanas or Dhamma-sāvanas." The appointment of Dhamma-Mahāmātras was an important step, for they were expected to look after both the material and the spiritual needs of the people.

Humanitarian Work

Aśoka embarked on a programme of benevolent activities to relieve the distress of man and beast. We have already referred to his prohibition of sacrificial slaughter, and R. E. I further says that he gradually eliminated the non-vegetarian items from the royal menu. All Samājas, involving meat-eating, dancing, music, etc., were strictly stopped. Similarly, P. E. V. mentions certain regulations which he prescribed in order to restrict the killing and mutilation of animals. He gave largess to ascetics, the poor, and the oppressed; and he employed superior officers (Mukhas) for supervising his charities as well as those of his queens and the princes. According to R. E. II, Aśoka instituted "medical treatment" of two kinds—one for human beings and the other for the lower creation—in his dominions and in those of his frontier neighbours in the South, the Coḷas, the Pāṇḍyas, the Satiyaputras, the Keralaputras, up to Tāmraparṇi (Ceylon); and also in the kingdoms of the Hellenic rulers (R. E. XIII), Antiyōka or Antiochos II Theos of Syria (261-246 B.C.), Turamāya or Ptolemy II Philadelphos of Egypt (285-247 B. C.), Amtekina or Antigonos Gonatos of Macedonia (278-239 B.C.), Maga or Magas of Cyrene (300-258 B.C.), Alikasudaro or Alex-
ander of Epirus (272–18 B.C.). Wells at every half Kos (=one mile roughly) and rest-houses were constructed; medicinal herbs and roots, wherever they did not exist, were imported and planted. Banyan trees and mango groves were also planted for the enjoyment of man and beast (parihbogya paśumanuṣānam). He thus worked unceasingly for the welfare and happiness of the entire animate world, and his love and sympathy knew no bounds or barriers. He never wanted the Greeks to give up their gods “at the bidding of an alien,” as supposed by Dr. Rhys Davids, but Aśoka certainly felt it his duty to send his message of peace and good-will through envoys or dītas, who were also instructed to undertake philanthropic work on his behalf, so that the Emperor may obtain release from the debt he owed to creatures (bhūtānām āṇāmnāṁ gaccheyanti).

The Third Buddhist Council

One of the notable events, which took place in the 17th year of Aśoka’s coronation, was the convocation of the third Buddhist council to resolve the differences between the various sects of Buddhism. It met at Pataliputra under the presidency of Moggaliputta Tissa (Uparajula, according to Northern texts), and after nine months’ deliberations the issues were decided in favour of the Sthaviras. At the conclusion of the council, the President organised and dispatched evangelical missions to distant lands. For instance, Majjhāntika went to Kashmir and Gandhāra, Majjhima led the party to the Himalaya country, Mahādeva was deputed to Mahiṣamaṇḍala.

1 Alikasudaro does not appear to be identical with Alexander of Corinth (252–244 B.C.), as suggested by Bloch. The reference to the five Hellenic rulers is very important for settling problems of chronology, Asokan as well as general.

2 The first council was called by Mahīkaṭṣapa at Rājasīh, and the second at Vaiśāli to check some unorthodox tendencies in the Licchavi territory.
(Mysore), Sona and Uttara to Suvarṇabhūmi (Burma), Mahādharmaraksita and Mahārakṣita were sent to Mahārāṣtra and the Yavana country respectively, and Aśoka’s son Mahendra, who had become a monk, was sent along with others to Lanka (Ceylon). Subsequently the Emperor’s daughter, Saṁghamitrā, is said to have taken there a branch of the sacred Bodhi Tree. The propagation and promotion of Buddhism in Aśoka’s time must have largely been due to the zeal and perseverance of these indefatigable missionaries.

Extent of Empire

It is well known that Kaliṅga was the only conquest of Aśoka. But he had inherited an enormous empire from his predecessors, and its limits may be fixed with tolerable accuracy. On the north-west, it certainly extended to the Hindukush, for there is every reason to believe that he retained the four satrapies of Aria (Herat), Arachosia (Kandahar), Gedrosia (Baluchistan), and Paropanisadæ (Kabul valley), which were ceded to his grand-father by Seleukos Nikator. That Southern Afghanistan and the frontier regions continued to form part of Aśoka’s vast realm is clear from the find-spots of his rock-edicts in Shahbazgarhi (Peshawar district) and Manshāra (Hazārā district), as also from the evidence of Yuan Chwang who refers to the existence of Aśokan Stūpas in Kafrīstān (Kapiṣa) and Jalalābad.

Further, the inclusion of Kashmir is depoised by the Chinese pilgrim, Yuan Chwang, and by Kalhaṇa’s Rājatarangini. It may be interesting to add here that the foundation of Śrīnagar is ascribed to Aśoka, who is also credited with having built numerous Stūpas and Cāityās in the valley.

1 According to Yuan Chwang and Buddhist works in Sanskrit, Mahendra was Aśoka’s brother.
EXTENT OF EMPIRE

The inscriptions of Aśoka at Girnar and Sopārā (Thānā district) definitively point to his jurisdiction over Saurāṣṭra and the south-western regions. Besides, we also know from the Junāgadh rock inscription of Rudradāman that Yavanarāja Tuṣāspa was Aśoka's Viceroy in Saurāṣṭra.

In the north, Aśoka's authority extended up to the Himalaya mountains. This is apparent from his edicts, which have been found at Kalsi (Dehradun district), Ramnindrei and Niglīva (Nepalese Tarai). Tradition also attributes to Aśoka the foundation of Lalitapatan in Nepal, where he went with his daughter Cārumati and her husband Devapāla Kṣatirya.

Eastwards, Bengal was comprised within his empire. Yung Chwang noticed several Aśokan Stūpas in the different parts of Bengal, and according to legends Aśoka went as far as Tāmralipi (Tamluk) to see his son and daughter off to Ceylon. Kaliṅga, which was the only conquest of the Emperor, was, of course, included. Here he got two edicts inscribed—one at Dhauli (Puri district) and the other at Junagādh (Ganjam district).

Towards the south, Aśoka's rock inscriptions have been discovered in Maski and Irāgūḍi in the Nizam's dominions, and Chitaldroog district in Mysore. Beyond this, there were the independent kingdoms of the Coḷas, the Pāṇḍyas, the Satyaputras, and the Kerala-pūtras (R. E. II).

R. E. V and XIII mention certain subject peoples, that lived in the outlying provinces. They were the Yonas, Kambojas, Gandhāras, Raṣṭika-Petenikas, Bho-

1 Ep. Ind., VIII, p. 46. Tuṣāspa sounds an Iranian name, although he has been called a Yavana.

2 The inclusion of Bengal in the Mauryan Empire further receives some confirmation from the Mahāsthān (Bogra district) Pillar Inscription, engraved in Brāhmī characters of the Mauryan period (see Ep. Ind., XXI, April, 1931, pp. 83 f).
EMPIRE: ADMINISTRATION

jat, Nābhaka-Nābhapaṃtis, Andhras and Pārīmadas or Pāladas.4

Lastly, the edicts contain references to some of the
towns of the empire, viz., Bodhgayā, Takṣaśilā (Taxilā),
Tosali, Samāpā, Ujjayini, Suvarṇagiri (Śongir or Kanākagiri),
Isilā, Kauśāmbi, Pātaliputra.

All these evidences indicate that the empire ex-
tended from the Hindu-Kush in the north-west to
Bengal in the east; and from the foot of the mountains
in the north to the Chitraldroog district in the south.
It also comprised the two extremities of Kaliṅga and
Saurāstra. Indeed, it was of such imposing dimen-
sions that Aśoka was fully justified in saying "mahālakе
hi vijitaṁ", i.e., "vast is my empire" (R. E. XIV).2
No king in ancient India was ever master of such exten-
sive territories.

Administration

The administrative system remained more or less
the same as in the time of Candragupta Maurya. It
was an absolute benevolent monarchy, and Aśoka
laid special stress upon the paternal principle of govern-
ment. In the second Kaliṅga Edict he says; "All
men are my children, and just as I desire for my children
that they may enjoy every kind of prosperity and happi-
ness both in this world and in the next, so also do I
desire the same for all men." As before, there was a
council of Ministers (Parīṣad) to advise and help the
Emperor in the business of the state (R. E. III and VI).
He continued also the system of Provincial Adminis-
tration. The important provinces were each under a

1 Rapson takes them to be "border peoples" to the north-
west and to the south "beyond the king’s dominions" but "coming
within his sphere of influence" (Cam. Hist. Ind., Vol. I, p.
514).
2 In R. E. V, Aśoka calls his Empire "Svam poṣṭha-piyam."
prince of the blood royal (Kumāra). We learn from the edicts that Takṣaśilā (Taxilā), Ujjainī, Tosali (Dhauli), and Suṣvarṇagiri (Songir) were such seats of viceroyalty during Asoka’s reign. Sometimes, however, trusted feudatory chiefs were appointed to the exalted viceregal offices, as is proved by the case of Rājā Tuṣāspa, the Yavana, who had his capital at Gimar. Presumably, the Viceroys had their own ministers (Amātyas). At any rate, it was against the latter that the people of Taxilā revolted in the time of Bindusāra. The minor provinces were under governors, perhaps the Rājukas of the edicts, whereas the Pradeśikas probably corresponded to modern divisional commissioners. The departmental chiefs were known by the generic term Mukhas (P.E. VII) or Mahāmātatas, i.e., Mahāmātras—the particular department being indicated by the prefix. For instance, the Mahāmātras in charge of harems, cities, and frontier administration were respectively called Strjadhyakṣa-Mahāmātras, Nāgaravasūva-bāraṇaka-Mahāmātras, and Anta-Mahāmātras. The officers of the civil service were called Purusas, and they were of high, low or middle rank. The subordinate officials in general were designated Yuktas.

Reforms

Asoka introduced a number of administrative innovations for good governance. He created the new office of Dharmimahāmātatas for the temporal and spiritual well of his subjects. They were to look after the interests of the different religious groups and the distribution of charities, and also to mitigate the rigours of justice by securing reduction in penalties or release from imprisonment on the ground of age or numerous progeny, and by preventing any undue harassment (R.E.V).

Further, Asoka ordered his officers from the Rājukas and Pradeśikas down to the Yuktas to go on quin-
quennial or sometimes triennial tours (anusamayana), so that they may come into direct touch with people in the countryside (R.E. III and K.R.E.I). Thirdly, he allowed the Pativedakas (Reporters) to inform him about urgent public matters at all times wherever he may be (R.E. VI). Fourthly, Ashoka granted to the Rājukas, “set over many hundred thousands of people”, independence in the award of honours (abhikale) and punishments (damād) in order that they might discharge their duties confidently and fearlessly. They were, however, expected to maintain uniformity in penalties (damada-samata) as well as in judicial procedure (nyavahāra-samata) (P.E. IV). Lastly, the Emperor released prisoners on the anniversary of his coronation (P.E. V), and gave three days’ respite to those sentenced to death (P.E. IV).

Society

We get some glimpses of society as constituted in Ashoka’s time. It comprised religious orders like the Brahmans, Stamanas, and other Pāṇandas, among which the Ājīvikas and the Nirgranthas (Jains) were the most prominent. These monks and ascetics spread the truth as they conceived it, and promoted the cause of learning by instruction and discussion. Besides, there were the householders (grihasthas), and curiously the edicts mention all the four divisions, viz., Brahmans; soldiers and their chiefs (bhutaṁyā), corresponding to Ksatriyas; Ikhya or Vaiśyas (R.E.V); and slaves and servants (vásabhatakas), i.e., Śudras. The people were wont to perform many ceremonies to bring

1 The Pativedakas were allowed by Ashoka to report on state matters at all times and places whether he was eating (bhunjamāna-sa), or in the hazem (capanamahini), or in the ante-chamber (gabā-gana), or in the royal ranch (tamantri), or on horse-back (vātanin; religious study?), or in the pleasure gardens (nyāvān).
them good luck, and they believed in the hereafter (paraloka or svarga). Meat-eating must have undoubtedly been a common feature of society, as appears from the comprehensive regulations laid down by Aśoka for preventing slaughter of animals (P.E. V). The “upper ten” perhaps practised polygamy, if the case of Aśoka himself furnishes any analogy. The references to harems (avarodhana) in R.E. V would show that the segregation and restrictions upon the freedom of women-folk were then not unknown.

Monuments

Aśoka’s claim to the remembrance of posterity rests not merely on his victories of “Dharmma”, but also on his achievements in the domain of art and architecture. Tradition credits him with the foundation of two cities, Srinagara in Kashmir and Lailitapatan in Nepal. He also made, as noted by Fa-hian, considerable additions to the grandeur of his palace and the metropolis. He built a large number of Stūpas throughout his far-flung empire to enshrine the corporeal relics of the Buddha. Besides, Aśoka undertook the construction of Vihāras or monasteries and cave-dwellings for the residence of monks. Unfortunately, however, the extant evidence of his building activities is very scanty. Far more important than the above are his monoliths, which are huge tapering shafts of Chunar sandstone, weighing about fifty tons, with an average height of 40 to 50 feet. They are surmounted by what is known as the Persepolitan Bell-capital, but what, in the opinion of Havell, is an inverted lotus. Other parts of these

1 After the cremation of the Buddha’s remains his ashes were shared by eight claimants, who each raised a Stūpa over them. These were opened by Aśoka, and, as the legend goes, he re-distributed the relics among 84,000 Stūpas, which he himself built for the purpose.
columns are the necking, the abacus adorned with figures, and the sculpture in the round representing any of the following animals: the lion, the bull, the elephant, or the horse. The treatment of these crowning pieces is so naturalistic, exquisite, and spirited that some scholars have stoutly maintained that it was inspired by foreign art, either Greek or Persian. The excellence of these sculptures, if compared with the earlier crude pieces like the Parkham statue, is no doubt an enigma, and it cannot be satisfactorily explained unless we assume alien influences, or that there was a sudden artistic outburst in India. Another remarkable feature of the pillars is the fine polish of their surface, which misled some observers even into the belief that they were metallic. Curiously enough, this sort of polish is not to be found in later monuments, as if the art of imparting it was lost after the time of Asoka. On the whole, as Vincent Smith rightly remarks, "their fabrication, conveyance, and erection bear eloquent testimony to the skill and resource of the stone-cutters and engineers of the Maurya age."

Edicts

The inscriptions of Asoka are a unique collection of documents. They give us insight into his inner feelings and ideals, and transmit across the centuries almost the very words of the great Emperor. These edicts, "rugged, uncouth, involved, full of repetitions" (Rhys Davits), may be divided into several classes as follows:

2 In the Edicts Asoka uniformly calls himself Devānam-piya Piyadāsi Rāja. It is only in the Maski version of M.R.E.I. that the name Asoka occurs. Other records, in which it is mentioned, are the Junāgadh inscription of Rudrādama dated year 72=150 A.D. (Ét. Ind. VIII, pp. 36-49), and the Sarnath inscription of Kumārādevi (Ibid., IX, pp. 319-23).
The two Minor Rock Edicts: No. II appears at Siddapur, Jatinga Rameshwar, Brahmagiri—all in the Chitaldroog district (Mysore). No. I is found at the above-mentioned places, and also at Rupnath (Jubbulpur district), Sahastram in Arrah district, Bairat, near Jaipur; and Maski, Gavimath, Palkigundu, Irugudi in the Nizam’s dominions.

The Bhojrau Edict.

The Fourteen Rock Edicts, discovered at Shahnazargarhi (Peshawar district) and Manserha (Hazari district); Girnar, near Junagadh; Sopara (Than district); Kalsi (Dehra-Dun district); Dhauli (Puri district); Jaunga (Ganjam district); Irugudi (Nizam’s State).

The two Kalinda Separate Edicts at Dhauli and Jaunga in lieu of R.E. XI, XII, XIII.

The three Cave Inscriptions at Barahar.

The Seven Pillar Edicts, viz., Topra-Delhi; Meerut-Delhi; Kausambi-Allahabad; Rampurwa, Lauriyia-Araraj, Lauriyia-Nandangarh (the last three being in Champaran district, Bihar).

The two Tatuli Edicts at Rummindei and Nigliva.

The Minor Pillar Edicts at Sanchi, Kausambi—Allahabad and Sarnath.

Excepting those at Shahnazargarhi and Manserha, which are inscribed in the Kharoshthi script running, like Arabic, from right to left, the rest are all engraved in the Brahmi lipi, which is the parent of modern Indian alphabets and is written from left to right.

**Estimate of Asoka**

Asoka is undoubtedly one of the most striking personalities of the ancient world. He has often been likened to such great figures of history as Constantine, Marcus Aurelius, Akbar, Omar Khalif and
others. The comparisons are, however, not altogether opposite. Aśoka was flowing with the milk of human kindness, and his love and sympathy embraced the whole of animate creation. He had a high sense of duty, which urged him to scorn delights incidental to his position, and live laborious days. He was ready to transact state business at all hours and places, and he directed all his resources and energies to the alleviation of the sufferings of humanity and the dissemination of the "Dharma", as he understood it. Indeed, the welfare and happiness of his subjects in particular and men and beings in general was such a dominating passion of his life that he could never feel satisfied with his exertions or despatch of work. During his momentous reign, Art received a tremendous impetus, and Pāli or Māgadhī, in which dialect the edicts are couched, became almost the lingua franca of India. But its political greatness suffered a severe setback. After the conquest of Kalinga, he suddenly brought the steam-roller of Mauryan aggression to a halt, and thus arrested the expansion of Magadha by his policy of "Dhammavijaya." The military ardour of the people having cooled down, the country fell an easy prey to the onslaughters of the Indo-Bactrian invaders, who not long after descended into the plains of India.

SECTION B

Aśoka's Successors

Aśoka died about 232 B.C. after a long reign of forty years. When the sceptre dropped from his

1 If it be permissible to coin an expression, it may be called lingua Indica.
2 Vincent Smith notes that, according to a Tibetan tradition, Aśoka passed away at Taxila (The Oxford History of India, p. 116). The story, however, lacks corroboration.
mighty hands, the fortunes of the Maurya dynasty began to suffer decline. Traditions regarding his successors are discrepant, but one thing seems to be certain, that none of them rose to the stature of Aśoka. Of his sons, Tivaśa alone is named in the edicts, and perhaps he predeceased his father as he is not heard of subsequently. Another, Jāluka, who was a Saiva, appears from the Rājatarangini to have become independent in Kashmir after Aśoka’s death. The third, Kunāla (Suyaśas?), ruled for eight years according to the Vaiṣṇa Purāṇa, but in the Southern works he is passed over as a blind man. Thus our information about the sons of Aśoka is extremely vague. The Aśokāvanadāna, on the other hand, would have us believe that on account of his lavish benefactions to the Sāmgha Aśoka was compelled by the ministers to abdicate in favour of his grandson Samprati (son of the blinded Kunāla). Legends aver that Sampadī or Samprati was a great patron of Jainism who had his seat of government at Ujjain. The Vaiṣṇa and the Matsya Purāṇa, however, testify that he was preceded by another grandson of Aśoka, named Daśaratha. That the latter was an historical reality is also proved by the Nāgārjunī cave inscriptions, which record his dedications to the Aśvīkas. Vincent Smith tries to reconcile this divergent testimony by suggesting that after Aśoka there was a partition of the empire—Daśaratha getting the eastern part and Samprati the western. But this view is not borne out by the evidence available, for in some Jain versions Samprati is described as the sovereign of all India, having his court at Pārśvputra and not at Ujjain. What, therefore, appears to us a fact is that both Daśaratha and Samprati had an historical existence, and that

1 It is said that Kunāla, so called because of the beauty of his eyes, was blinded as a result of the jealousy and machinations of his step-mother, Tiyārakṣa.

2 E.H.I., 4th ed. p. 103.
the former came before the latter. The successors of Samprati were mere nonentities, and during their time the Maurya power steadily waned until Brihadratha met with a tragic end at the hands of his own commander-in-chief, Puṣyamitra Suṅga.

**Causes of the downfall of the Mauryas**

When one stands by the grave of the Mauryan rule, it is inevitable to enquire what were the causes which led to its dismemberment so soon after Aśoka. Mahāmohopādhyāya H. P. Sastri thought that it was entirely due to the reaction of the Brahmans against the policy of Aśoka, who had alienated them by his prohibition of sacrifices, appointment of Dhamma-mahāmātas to supervise morals, and his introduction of uniformity of judicial procedure and punishment, which they regarded with special aversion inasmuch as they considered it a calculated infringement of their privileged position or of the immunities they had hitherto enjoyed. These measures may have to some extent contributed to Brahmanic dissatisfaction, and it is significant that the last Maurya ruler was assassinated by a Brahman general, but there were other causes also at work. The successors of Aśoka were weaklings, and there were perhaps fissiparous tendencies in the provinces, for we know that Jālauka (Rājatvṛangipī) and Virascna (Ṭārānātha) became independent in Kashmir and Gandhāra respectively after Aśoka had passed away. The officers, who were placed in charge of outlying territories, also took full advantage of the weakness of the central government and gave loose rein to their rapacity. There was no Aśoka to check their oppression sternly, and thus discontent grew apace among the people. The vitality of the

1 Vide Appendix II.
2 *J.A.S.B.*, 1910, pp. 159 f.
empire was gone and when the storm burst, it was soon overwhelmed.1

APPENDIX I

TRANSLATION OF R.E. XII—TOLERATION EDICT

"His Sacred and Gracious Majesty the king is honouring all sects, both ascetics, and house-holders; by gifts and offerings of various kinds is he honouring them. But His Sacred Majesty does not value such gifts or honours as that how should there be a growth of the essential elements of all religious sects. The growth of this genuine matter, is, however, of many kinds. But the root of it is restraint of speech, that is, that there should not be honour of one's own sect and condemnation of others' sects without any ground. Such slighting should be for specified grounds only. On the other hand, the sects of others should be honoured for this ground and that. Thus doing, one helps his own sect to grow, and benefits the sects of others, too. Doing otherwise, one hurts his own sect and injures the sects of others. For whosoever honours his own sect and condemns the sects of others wholly from devotion to his own sect, i.e., the thought, "How I may glorify my own sect",—one acting thus injures more gravely his own sect on the contrary. Hence concord alone is commendable, in this sense that all should listen and be willing to listen to the doctrines professed by others. This, is, in fact, the desire of His Sacred Majesty, viz., that all sects should be possessed of wide learning and good doctrines. And those who are content in their respective faiths, should all be told that His Sacred Majesty does not value so much gift or external honour as that there should be the growth of the essential elements, and breadth, of all sects.2

2 See Dr. R. K. Mookerji, Allah, pp. 158-60, 252.
GENEALOGICAL TABLE

APPENDIX II

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE MAURYAS

Candragupta Maurya (circa 321-297 B.C.)

Bindusāra (297-272 B.C.)

Suśima or Sumana

Aśoka (272-232 B.C.)

Tissa Other sons

(Aśoka's wives: Vidiśa Devi, Padmāvatī, Asandimūtri, Kāruvāki, Tāyurakṣītā)

Kunila or Suyaśas (?)

(232-224 B.C.)

Jālauka

Tivara

Dutaratha (Bandhapālita ?)

(224-216 B.C.)

Samprati (Indrapālita ?)

(216-207 B.C.)

(Śāliśāka or Brihaspati ?)

(Some Purānas assign him a reign of 13 years, but others ignore him altogether. Perhaps his reign was very brief and we may well suppose that it lasted a year or two only, i.e., 207-206 B.C.)

Devavarman or Somāśarman (circa 206-199 B.C.),

Saradhanus or Satadhanvan (circa 199-191 B.C.)

Brihadratha (circa 191-184 B.C.)
CHAPTER X

I. THE BRAHMAN RULERS

SECTION A

THE ŚUŃGAS

Subversion of the Maurya Dynasty

According to the Purāṇas, the Maurya dynasty was subverted about 184 B.C. by Puṣyāmira Śuṅga, who then usurped the throne.1 The circumstances of Brihadratha's assassination are mentioned in the Harṣacarita, which informs us that, while reviewing the army, he was killed by his commander-in-chief.2 Probably Brihadratha was a very weak ruler (prayāna durbulani) and Puṣyāmira had the full support of the forces, otherwise he could not have struck down his master on the parade ground itself.

Who were the Śuṅgas?

The Śuṅgas appear to have been Brahmins. The celebrated grammarian, Pāṇini, connects them with the Bhāradvāja family, and in the Āśvalāyana Srautasūtra the Śuṅgas are known as teachers.3 Further, Tārānātha

1 cf. पुष्यमित्रस्य सनातनी समुंद्रव बुधवरम् ......

2 cf. Harṣacarita:

प्रवाहम्याय च बलदर्शनमिव शक्तिशालस्यस्य: सनातनीरस्य मीरायम्

पुष्यमित्रो गिरीश प्रुष्यमित्र: स्वामिनिमिद् (see also Ht. C.T., p. 193; Ht., vi, p. 199, Bombay ed., 1935).

3 XII, 13, 5; cf. शर्माज्ञे पुष्ये क्षत्रीय: श्रीशिरम्; see also Political
represents Puṣyamitra as a Brahman, the family priest (purohita) of a certain monarch; and at one place he expressly calls him a “Brahman king.” There was nothing incongruous in the meek and contemplative Brahmins changing the Śāstras for the Sāstras, for they are permitted to adopt the arms in times of necessity (cf. Manu, VIII, 348). Besides the well-known epic instances of Drona and Aśvatthāma, we have the testimony of Greek writers that the Brahmins came forward to oppose Alexander when he was in the lower Indus valley. During the first quarter of the second century B.C. India was similarly threatened with foreign invasions, and Puṣyamitra arose to avert this danger.

Events

(a) War with Vidarbha: The first event of Puṣyamitra’s reign was his conflict with Vidarbha. According to the Mālavikāgnimitra, the kingdom had been newly established, and its ruler Yajñasena, who was related to the minister of the fallen Maurya, is described as a “natural enemy” of the Śunghas. Perhaps the former had made himself independent in Vidarbha in the confusion following Brihadratha’s murder, and


1 Trans. Schiefner, ch. xvi.

2 See Angr. cf. also तेनान्तरं च राज्यं च वस्तुनीतिभावं च।

शवेलोकानिधिः च वेदवाचालविभिः॥

(Manusvritti, XII, 108).

2 Illustrating Pāṇini’s rule about राज्य (VI, 2, 130), Patañjali mentions वात्सल्यराज्य as the example par excellence. Should this not be taken to indicate that Patañjali was living under the rule of a Brahman?
as soon as Puṣyamitra felt his position secure on the throne he demanded the allegiance of Yajñasena. The course of the tussle is obscure, but it seems Agnimitra, who was Puṣyamitra's son and Viceroy at Vidiśā, carried on hostilities with great vigour and consummate diplomacy. He won over to his side Yajñasena's cousin, Mādhavasena, and, at last, when the struggle ended, Vidarbha was apportioned between the two cousins.

(b) The Yavana incursions: During the time of Puṣyamitra, India was in the grips of serious Yavana inroads. The great grammarian Pāṇaṇjali, who was a contemporary of Puṣyamitra, as we shall show presently, alludes to their operations against Madhyānikā (Nāgari, near Chitor) and Sāketa (Ayodhyā), for he gives the following illustrations of the use of the imperfect tense to indicate events not seen by the speaker and yet recent enough to have been witnessed by him: *Arunaḥ Yavanaḥ Sāketam* (the Greek was besieging Sāketa); *Arunaḥ Yavanaḥ Madhyānikāṃ* (the Greek was besieging Madhyānikā). The *Gārgī-Sambitā* also testifies that the "viciously valiant Greeks" reduced Mathurā, the Pāṇcāla country (Gangetic Doab), and Sāketa, and even reached Kusumadīvāja (Pāṭaliputra). Similarly, the *Mālavikāgnimitra* refers to the defeat of the Yavanas—perhaps their advance body—on the banks of the river Sindhu by Vasumitra. We do not know exactly who was the Yavana general to attack India at this time. Some scholars identify him with Demetrios and others with Menander. According to Strabo, they were both great conquerors, and carried the Greek standards to distant lands.

1. *Mābhāṣya*, 3.2.111
(c) The Avamadha sacrifice: The performance of the Avamadha was one of the notable events of Puṣyamitra’s reign. It is referred to in the Mālavikāgnimitra, and by Patañjali. Indeed, the latter officiated as priest in this sacrifice, as would appear from the passage—“iha Puṣyamitram yājayāmah” (here we are sacrificing for Puṣyamitra)—which Patañjali mentions as an instance of the use of the present tense to denote an incomplete action. The Ayodhyā inscription further informs us that Puṣyamitra performed not one but two horse-sacrifices. In the opinion of Jayasval, the second Avamadha was celebrated because Puṣyamitra suffered a reverse at the hands of king Kharavela of Kalīnga. We shall, however, show below that the contemporaneity of these two rulers is extremely doubtful.

Extent of Kingdom

Puṣyamitra’s jurisdiction extended to Jalandhar and Sākala (Sialkot) in the Punjab, if we accept the testimony of the Tibetan historian, Tārānātha, and the Divyāvatānā. The latter also indicates that Pātaliputra continued to be the royal residence. Puṣyamitra’s sway over Ayodhyā is proved by an inscription found there, whereas according to the Mālavikāgnimitra his dominions comprised Vidiśā and the southern regions as far as the Namadā. Puṣyamitra appears to have made virtually a feudal division of his extensive territories, for one version of the Vaiṣṇavapurāṇa states:

1 Ep. Ind., XX, (April, 1919), pp. 34-58. cf. कोकस्यायिन्न
बिन्दूवणमयोगिन; भद्रपति; पुष्यमिन्नय, ...

2 Ayodhyā appears to have been a viceroyalty under Kālakālā
dhipa Dhana (deva or bhūti?), whose coins are also known. He is described in the inscription as "पुष्यमिन्नय कवि", i.e., the sixth son of Puṣyamitra. Some scholars, however, take the expression to mean the sixth brother or descendant of Puṣyamitra.
i.e., all the eight sons of Puṣyamitra will rule simultaneously.¹

Puṣyamitra’s Persecutions?

According to the Divyāvadāna, Puṣyamitra was a persecutor of Buddhism and he is represented to have made the notorious declaration at Sākala setting a price of one hundred gold dināras on the head of every Buddhist monk.² Tārānātha also affirms that Puṣyamitra was the ally of unbelievers and himself burnt monasteries and slew monks. Puṣyamitra was no doubt a zealous champion of Brahmanism, but the Buddhist stūpas and railings erected at Bhāhrut (Nagod State) “during the sovereignty of the Sūgas”³ would hardly corroborate the literary evidence regarding his ebullitions of sectarian rancour. Of course, this conclusion will have to be modified, if the above expression is not taken to refer to the time of Puṣyamitra.

Puṣyamitra’s Successors

Puṣyamitra passed away in about 148 B. C. after a reign of 36 years. He was succeeded by his son, Agnimitra, who as Viceroy at Vidiśā had ample experience of the methods of government. He ruled for a brief period of eight years only, and was followed by Sujyēṣṭha or Jethamitra (Jyeṣthamitra) of the coins, perhaps his brother. After him came Agnimitra’s son, Vasumitra. In his earlier days he defeated the Yavanas, who had tried to obstruct the progress of the sacrificial

¹ cf. also Puṣyamitra, sena-nirakāra-bhikṣu bā ṛajya
² Divyāvadāna, ed. Cowell and Neill, pp. 433-34.
³ cf. घे मे भूमिष्ठरी वास्तव तत्स्यास्य दीनार्थकां वास्तवम्
⁴ Cunningham, Stūpas of Bhrūhat, plate XII, p. 128. cf. “Sa- ganam rje...” Although no name is given, it is probable Puṣyamitra is intended.
horse let loose by his grandfather. The Śuṅga dynasty consisted of ten rulers, but history has not condescended to record anything of note about the rest. One of them, the fifth named Odraka, or, as some think, the last but one called Bhāgavata, was identical with king Kāśiputra Bhāgabhadrā of the Besnagar pillar inscription. It was to his court that king Antialkidas (Aṃtalikita) of Taxillā sent his ambassador Heliodorus (Heliodora), son of Dion (Diya), who calls himself a Bhāgavata.¹

Śuṅga Religion, Art, and Literature

This piece of information from the Besnagar pillar inscription is important, for it proves that the Greeks were not only hurled back, but also that they thought it a wise policy to maintain friendly relations with the Śuṅgas. We further learn that Hinduism was then not so narrow and parochial in outlook, as now, and that even foreigners could find a place within its roomy fold. The Bhāgavata form of religion was then prevalent and was gaining new adherents.

Art also received an impetus, as is clear from the railings of the Bhārhat śūpta erected during the Śuṅga sovereignty. Besides, it is suggested that the ivory-workers of Vidiśā were responsible for one of the exquisite gateways of Sāñchi (Foucher).

Literature must have flourished during the time of the Śuṅgas. Patanājali, a native of Gonarda, wrote his Mahābhārata, the great commentary on Pāṇini’s grammar; and perhaps there were other literary celebrities, but their names have not yet been rescued from the limbo of oblivion.

THE KANVAS

SECTION B

THE KANVAS

Date and Circumstances of their Rise

It appears from the Purānas that the Śrūṇga dynasty lasted for 112 years, and we may, therefore, believe that the Kāṇvāyanas or Kāṇvas, also Brahmans, seized power about 72 B.C. The above works and the Harṣacarita testify that the first Kāṇva, Vasudeva, became ruler after successfully carrying out the plot to assassinate the "over-libidinous" Devabhūti.1

A Minor Family

This dynasty comprised four kings only, and the total duration of their reigns is 45 years only.2 They did not distinguish themselves in any manner whatever.

---

1 cf. "In a frenzy of passion the over-libidinous Śrūṇga was at the instance of his minister Vasudeva rent of his life by a daughter of Devabhūti’s slave woman disguised as his queen" (Hr. C.T., p. 193). cf. Harṣacarita (VI, p. 199, Bombay, 1925):

पतितवीणां सृष्टान्तनाब्जापन्नः शुचिमातो भुदेवो इवमूलिदासीदुहिता
देवीर्जनमात्र वीरजीवितांकारयत्। See also Pargiter, Dynasties of the Kali Age, p. 71.


देवभूति शुचिराजानं आसनन्ति तदत्वागात्: कणो भुदेवनामा
ते निहल्व समयमनीभोक्तिः।

*cf. Viṣṇu Purāṇa,

तत्वां शुचिमातो तुषा: काथायात् भिन्नः।
APPENDIX I & II

APPENDIX I

Genealogical Tables

The Śuṅgas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serial No.</th>
<th>Name of king</th>
<th>Length of reign</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Puṣyamitra</td>
<td>36 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Agnimitra</td>
<td>3 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Vasuḷyaśṭha or Suiyaśṭha</td>
<td>7 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Vasiṣṭha</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Ādrika or Odraka</td>
<td>2 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Pulindaka</td>
<td>3 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Ghoṣa</td>
<td>3 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Vajramitra</td>
<td>9 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Bhāgavata</td>
<td>32 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Devabhūti or Devabhūmi</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>120 years</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:—The Purāṇas say: “These ten Śuṅga kings will enjoy this earth full 112 years.” Curiously, however, the details of the length of their reigns amount to 120 years.

APPENDIX II

The Kāṇṣas or Kāṇṭāyanas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serial No.</th>
<th>Name of king</th>
<th>Length of reign</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Vasudeva</td>
<td>9 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Bhūmimitra</td>
<td>14 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Nārāyaṇa</td>
<td>12 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Sūfarman</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>45 years</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE SATAVAHANAS

SECTION C
THE SATAVAHANAS

Date of Their Rise

The date of the rise of the Satavahana has been a frequent source of controversy. Some scholars, relying on the Paurânic (Mâtya) testimony that the Andhras ruled for about four centuries and a half, assign the beginnings of their power to the last quarter of the third century B.C. Much stress should not, however, be laid on this date, for another tradition preserved in the Vâyu Purâna mentions 300 years only as the duration of their rule. Dr. Bhandarkar, on the other hand, believes that the Satavahana dynasty was founded about 72-73 B.C. In his opinion the statement of the Purânas that Simuka or Sišuka, the first Satavahana, "will obtain the earth after uprooting Sûrâman Kannâyana and what was left of the Sûnga power," proves that the "Sûngabhritya" Kanva ruled, like the Peshwas, simultaneously with their masters. But if this view is accepted, how are we to reconcile it with the other Paurânic reference that Vasudeva Kanva killed the last Sûnga Devahûti? The above passage, as Dr. Raychaudhuri points out, simply signifies that Simuka destroyed even those chiefs of Sûnga blood, who had survived the Kanva coup d'état. Hence the fall of the Kanvas was brought about by the Satavahanas in 29 B.C. (i.e., 72 B.C. - 45 years). This does not, of course, exclude the possibility that Simuka, who is said to have ruled for 23 years, ascended the throne

1 cf. Vâyu Purâna.
2 Dr. Raychaudhuri, The Satavahanas, 4th ed., p.333, to which I owe a number of suggestions.
earlier—say some time about the middle of the first century B. C.

Which Name to Apply—Andhra or Sātavāhana?

The Sātavāhanas are called Andhras in the Purāṇas. The latter were an ancient people, occupying the Telugu country between the Godāvari and the Krīṣṇā. They are mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa as beyond the pale of Aryanism, and Megasthenes gives some details of their power and wealth.¹ In the edicts of Aśoka they are included among the peoples within his sphere of influence. What happened to them after the decline of the Mauryan Empire is not known, but presumably they asserted their independence. Let us now examine the relation between the Sātavāhanaś and the Andhras. The former uniformly call themselves Sātavāhana or Sātakaṁi in their epigraphic documents,² and the name Andhra is conspicuous by its absence. Besides, their earliest inscriptions are found in Nānāghat (Poona district) and Sāñchī (Central India). This raises a strong suspicion that the Andhras and the Sātavāhanas did not belong to the same stock. Indeed, it appears that the Sātavāhanas started from the Deccan,³ and after a short time conquered Andhradesa. But when they lost their western and northern territories on account of the Saka and Ābhira invasions, their

¹ According to Pliny, who probably quotes from the Indika of Megasthenes, the king of Kalinga maintained an army of 60,000 foot soldiers, 1,000 horsemen, and 700 elephants.
² The name Sālivāhana is sometimes found in literature.
³ The homeland of the Sātavāhanas is uncertain. Dr. V.S. Sukthankar suggests the Bellary district (Ann. Bhand. Inst., 1918-19, p. 27), whereas Dr. H. C. Raychaudhuri is in favour of "the territory immediately south of Madhyadesa (Pol. Hist. Asst. Ind., 4th ed., p. 342). MM.V.V. Mirashi, on the other hand, thinks that Berar or the region on both banks of the Wainganga was their home-province (J.N.S.I., Vol. II, p. 94).
power was limited to the regions of the Godāvari and the Kṛṣṇa, and then they became known as the Andhras.

**Origin of the Sātavāhanas**

The origin of the Sātavāhanas is obscure. Some scholars connect them with the Satyapurāṇas of Aśokan edicts, and the Setai mentioned by Pliny. Others give fanciful derivations of the name.\(^1\) Whatever the exact significance of the terms Sātakarni or Sātavāhana, the inscriptions of the dynasty suggest a Brahmanical ancestry. For in the Nasik inscription Gautamiputra is described as “the unique Brahman (eka Bhātāhāna) in prowess equal to Rāma (Paraśurāma).”\(^2\) This obtains further confirmation from the fact that he is called “the destroyer of the pride and conceit of the Kṣatriyas.”\(^3\) The author of the inscription thus regarded Gautamiputra as a great Brahman, a veritable Paraśurāma.\(^4\)

**Rulers of the Dynasty**

Not much is known about Simuka, the founder of the line, except that he subverted the Kanyas and the remnants of the Sūṅga power. He was succeeded by his brother Kanha (Kṛṣṇa), and a Nasik inscription informs us that during his reign an inhabitant of the place had a cave made there. This clearly indicates that Kṛṣṇa’s authority was recognised in the Nasik region. The third king, Sātakarni, son of Simuka, appears to have been a considerable figure. According

---

\(^1\) *Kathāsaritśāgaras*, VI, 87 ff; *Jinaprabhāśūri*’s *Tīrthakalpa*.

\(^2\) *Ep. Ind.*, VIII, pp. 60, 61, l. 7.

\(^3\) Ibid., l. 3, cf. “Khuṭiyadapamāṇamadana.”

to the Nānāghat inscription,\(^1\) he made extensive conquests and performed two Āśvamedha sacrifices. If he is identical with Sātakarnī mentioned in an inscription on the gateway of the Sānchi Stūpa, we have got epigraphic proof that Central India was an early possession of the Sātavāhanas. Next, the similarity in the scripts of the Nānāghat and Hāthigumpha inscriptions\(^2\) shows that it was perhaps this Sātakarnī, whom Khāravela of Kālīṅga defied in the second year of his reign. The former’s wife was Nāyanikā or Nāganikā, daughter of the Mahāraṭhī Trānakayiro of the Aṇgilīya family, and she acted as regent during the minority of the princes Sakti-Sri and Veda-Sri. Then follows a period of darkness until the curtain is lifted by Gautamiputra Sātakarnī. No doubt, the Purāṇas give a string of names, but unfortunately no coins or inscriptions have been discovered to corroborate them. One of these rulers, Hāla, is credited with having composed a Prakrit anthology called Sātusāi (Sātusātaka). Towards the end of the first century A. D. the fortunes of the Sātavāhanas suffered an eclipse, as the Saka Kṣatrapas wrested Mahārāṣṭra from them.

**Gautamiputra Sātakarnī**

\(^1\) The conquerors did not, however, long enjoy the fruits of their victory, for the Dekkan was soon recovered by Gautamiputra Sātakarnī, whose exploits are detailed in a Nasik inscription of the queen-mother, Gautami Balaśri.\(^3\) He is said to have crushed the pride and conceit of the Kṣatriyas, and to have restored the observance of caste rules. He overthrew the Sakas, Yavanas, and the Pahlavas; destroyed the Kṣaharātas; and re-established

---

\(^1\) *Jaff., Arch. Surv. West. Ind., V.,* pp. 60 ff.
\(^3\) *Ep. Ind.,* VIII, pp. 19-64.
the glory of the Sātavāhana race. The above claims obtain some confirmation from the names of the various countries that were under his domination; they correspond roughly to modern Gujarat, Saurāstra, Malwa, Berar, North Konkan, and the region around Poona and Nasik. That he deprived the Kṣaharatias of their possessions is also apparent from the large Jogalthambi (Nasik) hoard containing silver coins of Naha-pāna and his other pieces restruck by Gautamiputra Satakarni. He dedicated a cave at Pāṇḍu-lepa, near Nasik, in the 18th year of his reign; and he issued another inscription in the 24th year, granting a field to certain ascetics. The latter record proves that he ruled for at least 24 years.

Gautamiputra was succeeded by his son Vāsiṣṭhiputra Śrī Pulamāvī in about A.D. 130. He extended the Sātavāhana sway over Andhradesa; and he has been rightly identified with Siropolemaion, whom Ptolemy calls king of Baithan or Pāṭhān (Pratiṭhāna), which may have been the capital of the later Sātavāhanas. It is further believed that Pulamāvī is the Sātakarni, lord of Dākinsāpatha, mentioned in the Junagadh Rock inscription as having been twice defeated by Rudradāman. We also learn that the rival's mutual relation was "not remote." Probably Pulamāvī was the victor's

1 cf. वशिष्ठपुत्रसातावहः सतावहाकुलममविद्वेद्यार्थम्। जातिरत्नसङ्ग्रहसङ्ग्रहम्।—सतावहानसङ्ग्रहसङ्ग्रहसङ्ग्रहम्।

2 Their names are as follows: Asika, Asaka, Mulaka, Saratha, Kukum, Aparāna, Anūpa, Vidabha (Vidarbla), Ākavānti.

3 Ep. Ind., VIII, no. 1, pp. 73-74.


5 cf. शशिकालिकोति सातावहकुलमानिको निबंधितमभागिनिनिबंधितमसम्बन्धः। विकृतान्तफलालान्तप्रवचनात्।
son-in-law, if Rapson is correct in identifying him with Vāsiṣṭhiputra Śri Śātakarni, represented in a Kanheri (Thānā district) inscription to have married the daughter of Mahākṣatrapa Rudra (Rudradāman). But though the latter spared the Śātavāhana ruler, he annexed a good deal of his territories, as would appear from the list of countries, over which, according to the Junāgadh inscription, the Saka Mahākṣatrapa ruled. Śrī Pulamāvi died about 155 A. D.

Yajña Śrī Śātakarni

Yajña Śrī Śātakarni or Śrī Yajña Śātakarni was the last great monarch of the dynasty. He ruled from circa A. D. 165 to 195—an inscription discovered at Chinna in the Kṛṣṇā district being dated in the 27th year of his reign. This record as well as those found in Kanheri and Pāṇḍu-leṇa (Nasik), and the provenance of his coins, prove that his dominions extended east to west from the Bay of Bengal to the Arabian sea. Thus he regained much of the land, which the Sākas had conquered earlier; and presumably the pieces he issued in imitation of the Western Kṣatrapa coinage were meant for circulation in these regions. Further, the maritime power and activity of Śrī Yajña Śātakarni are indicated by a coin having a two-masted ship with a fish and a conch and the legend (Ra) pa Samata sar (i) Yaña Sātakanata i.e., Raja Sānita Śrī Yaña Sātakanita on the obverse and the Ujjaini symbol on the reverse.1

Yajña Śrī’s successors were mere nonentities. During their time the Śātavāhana power rapidly declined, and it collapsed when the Ābhīras seized Mahārāṣṭra, and the Ikṣvākus and the Pāllavas appropriated the eastern provinces.

The Dekkan under the Sātavāhanas

The political data that we gather from the inscriptions of the Sātavāhanas are disappointingly meagre, but, as shown by Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar, they yield us valuable information regarding the social, religious, and economic conditions of the Dekkan during their sway.  

Society

There were at least four classes of social divisions, the Mahābbojas, the Mahārathis, and the Mahāśrēṣṭhis, who controlled the rāstras or districts, comprised the highest rank of society. The second class included officials like the Amāryas, Mahāmātras, and the Bhāṇḍāgārikas; such non-officials as the Naigama (merchant), Sārthavāla (head of the traders), and the Śraṭhin (chief of the trade-guild). The third class consisted of the Vaidya (physician), Lekhaka (scribe), Swarṇabukha (goldsmith), Gāndhika (perfumer), Hālakīya (cultivator), etc. The fourth class comprehend the Mālakara (gardener), Vardhakī (carpenter), Dāsaka (fisherman), Lohavānija (blacksmith), etc. The head of a family (kula) was called Kuṭumbin or Grihāpati; his position was certainly one of authority.

Religion

Both Brahmanism and Buddhism prospered under the tolerant rule of the Sātavāhanas. Pious donors excavated Caitya-griharas (temples) or caused caves to be made for the residence (jayanat) of the Bhikṣus, and also adequately provided for their maintenance by depositing money on interest with guilds. Brahmanism

1Ind. Ant., XLVIII (1919), pp. 77 f. See also Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar’s article, "Dekkan of the Sātavāhana Period," Ind. Ant., XLVII (1918), pp. 149 f.
was showing signs of vigour. Āsvamedha, Rajasūya, Āptoryāma, and other sacrifices were performed by the Royalty, and Brahmans got decent Dakṣinās or fees. The worship of Śiva and Kṛṣṇa was popular, and votaries of the different faiths lived in harmony. Sometimes they even gave grants to one another. Foreigners adopted either religion—Brahmanism or Buddhism—and were being assimilated into the Hindu society. Indeed, their names had become thoroughly Hinduised. Thus, in a Karle inscription two Yavanas are called Sīhadaya (Śimhadvaja) and Dharma respectively. Similarly, the Saka Uśavadāra is represented as a staunch Brahmanist.

**Economic Conditions**

Guilds (*srenis*) were a normal feature of the age. We learn of such organisations of corn-dealers (*dharmānikas*), potters, weavers (*kolika-nikāyas*), oil-pressers (*tilapīṣikas*), braziers (*kāśākaras*), bamboo-workers (*mahānakaras*), etc. Besides bringing members of the same craft together, they served as banks, in which money (*okoṣaya niṅa*) could be invested on interest. The currency consisted of Kārsāpānas, both silver and copper, and gold *Svārṇas*. Each *Svārṇa* was equivalent to 35 silver Kārsāpāna pieces.

Trade flourished; and ships from the West, laden with merchandise, visited the ports of Broach, Sopārā, and Kalyān. The two important inland marts were Tagara and Paithān. Communications were generally good, and people freely went from one part of the Dekkan to another on business.

**Literature**

The Sātavāhana kings were great patrons of Prakrit,

1 The Nāṇāghat inscription refers to other gods like Dharma,
which is used in all their documents. One of them, Hāla, was even the author of a Prakrit anthology called the Sattasai (Saptalatarka). About the same time Gūnādhya is said to have written his original Brīhat-kathā in Prakrit. Further, Mr. Allan points out that Sarvavarman produced the Kātantra for the benefit of an Andhra king who was "ashamed of his ignorance of Sanskrit and found Pāṇini too difficult." One need not unduly emphasise these traditions. It appears rather strange, however, that the Brahman Sātavāhanas neglected Sanskrit in favour of Prakrit literature.

II. King Khāravela of Kālīṅga

Chronological Position

We do not know with certitude what happened to Kālīṅga after the death of Aśoka. When darkness is dispelled, we see a colossus strutting on the political stage. The Hāṭhigumpha inscription on the Udayagiri hills, near Bhuvaneśvar (Puri), describes the achievements of Khāravela, the third ruler of the Ceta dynasty, till the 13th year of his reign, but being undated it does not throw any definite light on his chronological setting. Some scholars think that in the 16th line the record contains a reference to the 165th year of the Maurya era; others emphatically deny this interpretation. Perhaps a clue to Khāravela’s date is furnished by the similarity in the scripts of the Nānāghat and Hāṭhigumpha inscriptions, and by the expression "ti-vasasata," which, as Dr. Raychaudhuri has rightly

Indra, and guardians of the four quarters—Yama, Varuna, Kubera, and Vāsūva.

1 Com. Sh. Hitt. Ind., p. 61.
pointed out, is used in line 6 of the latter epigraph in the sense of 300 and not 103 years from the time of Nandarāja, identified with Mahāpadma. It would thus appear that Khāravela flourished some time about the third quarter of the first century B.C.

**Events**

Having received training in writing, mathematics, law, and finance, necessary for a crown-prince, Khāravela ascended the throne in his 24th year. He spent the first year of his reign in completing certain works of public utility. In the second year he defied the might of Śatākarni, and attacked the city of Muṣika. The Raṭhikas and Bhojakas submitted to him in the fourth year, and in the fifth Khāravela extended a canal that had not been used for “ti-vasa-satā” since Nandarāja had brought it into the capital. The Kaliṅga monarch invaded Magadha twice—in the 8th and 11th years of his reign. The people of Magadha were terrified, and Bahasatimitra, who is said to have been then ruling at Rājagrīha, was compelled to sue for peace. Nothing is known about the latter, but his name as well as the location of his capital militates against identifying him with Pusyaṃitra. The successes of Khāravela overthrew the Yavana general, whose name and identity are, however, not quite clear. The Pāṇḍyas were sub-


2 In place of Muṣikansaga, Dr. D.C. Sirkar reads Asikansaga, city of the Asikas (= Raṣikas of the Parśnas), which he locates on the left bank of the Kriṣṇa (or Kaṭabhasa) — *J.N.S.I.*, Vol. III, pt. 1 (June, 1941), p. 62.

3 The reading D(i)mi(n) at or Dimitά (Demetrios), proposed by the late Prof. R. D. Banerji and Dr. K. P. Jayaswal, is by no means certain (cf. line 8, Häthisgūpā inscription, *Ep. Ind.*, XX, p. 71 f). See also Tarn, *The Greeks in Bactria and India*, Appendix pp. 417-19.
dued in the 13th year after which the inscription does not tell us more about the meteoric career of Khāravela. He gave largess to the needy, and was himself a devout Jain. He excavated caves for Jain monks, and brought back from Magadha a celebrated image of the Jain Tirthankara, carried away earlier by Nandarāja.
CHAPTER XI

I. THE EPOCH OF FOREIGN INVADERS

SECTION A

THE INDO-GREEKS

Revolt of Parthia and Bactria

About the middle of the third century B.C. there occurred in Central Asia two events, which were destined to have far-reaching effects on the course of Indian history. These were the defections of Parthia and Bactria from the Seleucid empire. The revolt of the former province, comprising the inhospitable regions of Khurasan and the South-East Caspian coast, which had never adopted the Greek culture, was a sort of a popular uprising headed by an enterprising chief named Arsakes. The dynasty he founded about 248 B.C. lasted nearly five centuries. The rebellion of Bactria, on the other hand, was largely due to the ambitions of its own governor Diodotus, who about the same time formed designs of breaking away from the Seleucids. The land of Balkh, lying between the Hindu-Kush and the Oxus, was rich, fertile, and thickly populated; and it was regarded as an important out-post of Hellenism in the East. We do not know how far the disturbed condi-

tion of the Syrian monarchy after the death of Antiochus II Theos in 246 B.C. helped Diodotus in his undertakings, but his son, who had come to terms with his Parthian contemporary, appears to have achieved full independence. Probably Diodotus II ruled from c. 245 to 230 B.C. He met a violent death at the hands of an adventurer from Magnesia (under-Sipylos?) named Euthydemos, who seized the throne for himself. He was, however, involved in a protracted struggle with Antiochos III (c. 223-185 B.C.), when the latter made determined efforts about 212 B.C. to recover the lost provinces. After a long siege of Balkh the contending parties concluded peace mainly through the good offices of a certain Teleas. The Seleucid monarch recognised the independence of Bactria, and as a mark of friendship gave the hand of his daughter to Demetrios, son of Euthydemos, with whose diplomacy and dignified bearing during the course of the peace negotiations he was greatly impressed. Antiochos III then crossed the Hindu-kush in 207 or 206 B.C., and received the submission of king Sophagasenos (Subhāgasena), perhaps the successor of Virasena, who, according to Tārinātha, soon after Aśoka’s death established his sway over Gandhāra. Antiochos the Great did not, however, proceed beyond the frontiers of India, and he hastily returned homeward to attend to urgent affairs in the West. His departure thus left the Bactrian Greeks free to pursue their schemes of expansion and aggrandisement.

1 See, however, Tarn, who says: “It is quite certain that whomever Demetrios married it was not a daughter of Antiochos” (The Greeks in Bactria and India, pp. 82, 201, n. 2).
2 See also Tarn, The Greeks in Bactria and India, p. 130 and note 2; J.A.S.B., 1920, pp. 303, 310.
Conquests of the Bactrian Greeks

The kingdom of Bactria rapidly grew in power under Euthydemos who appears to have subjugated a large part of Afghanistan. When he died about 190 B.C., his son Demetrios undertook foreign expeditions of greater magnitude. Crossing the Hindu-Kush about 183 B.C. he conquered a considerable portion of the Punjab; and if he is the Yavana general mentioned in the Mahābhārata and the Yuga-purāṇa of the Gārgi-Sambita, he over-ran the Pañcāla country, besieged Madhyāmikā (Nāgarī, Chitor) and Sāketa (Ayodhyā), and even threatened Pāṭaliputra, perhaps in the time of Pusyamitra. It is noteworthy that Strabo partly gives to Demetrios and partly to Menander the credit for the extension of Greek dominion in Ariana and India. While Demetrios was busy with his Indian adventure, a certain Eukratides, who, according to Tarn, was a general and first cousin of Antiochos IV, successfully raised the standard of revolt in Bactria with the help of the disgruntled Greek settlers, and seated himself on the throne (c. 173 B.C.). Demetrios could not dislodge his rival from this position, and it seems, therefore, his authority remained confined to the Greek conquests in the Punjab and Sind. For Demetrios is known in traditions as

1 cf. Strabo: "The Greeks who occasioned the revolt (i.e., Euthydemos and his family), owing to the fertility and advantages of Bactria, became masters of Ariana and India...These conquests were achieved partly by Menander and partly by Demetrios, son of Euthydemos. They overran not only Pattalene, but the kingdoms of Sarcoestos and Sigerdis, which constitute the remainder of the coast. They extended their empire as far as the Seres and Phrynoi." Tarn believes that Demetrios and Menander were "acting in concert," and that the latter went farther than the former (G.B.I., p. 144).

Rex Indorum, "king of the Indians"; and we also learn that he founded a town, Euthydemia, in memory of his father. Further, the town of Dattāmitra among the Sauviras perhaps owes its origin to Dattāmitra or Demetrios, as pointed out by Tarn on the strength of a scholion to Patañjali.1 Demetrios was the first Greek ruler to issue bilingual coins, having legends in Greek along with the Indian language in the Kharoṣṭhī script.2 Sometime afterwards (c. 165-60 B.C.) Eukratides, who had founded the city of Eukratidica, bearing his own name, in Bactria, "conquered India and became lord of a thousand cities" (Justin). Thus arose two separate Greek principalities in the East, ruled by the rival houses of Euthydemos and Eukratides. The former held eastern Punjab, with its capital at Euthydemia or Sākala (Sialkot), Sind, and the adjoining regions; and the latter was in possession of Bactria, Kabul valley, Gandhāra, and western Punjab. Coins are almost our sole evidence about these numerous princelings, and due to the meagreness of the data their ancestry, chronology and territory are often a matter of extreme doubt and difficulty. Among the descendants or successors of Euthydemos mention may be made of Agathocles, Pantaleon, and Antimachus. Perhaps Apollodotus and Menander also belong to this line.3 The latter is by far the most interesting figure in Indo-Greek history. Strabo says that he conquered "more nations

1 G.B.I., p. 142 and note.
2 Some scholars, however, attribute these coins to Demetrios II (see Allan, Carn. Sh. Hist. Ind., p. 64).
than Alexander." No doubt, this claim is to some extent confirmed by the wide distribution of his coins, which have been found from Kabul to Mathura and even in places further eastwards like Bandelkhand. According to the anonymous author of the Periplus Maris Erythraei, Menander's coins were current along with those of Apollodotus in the markets of Barygaza (Broach) in his time (about the third quarter of the 1st century A.D.). Some scholars have identified Menander with the Yavana invader, who carried his arms as far as Madhyamikā, Sāketa, and Pātaliputra during the reign of Pusyamitra.¹ Milinda or Menander was a Buddhist, and he has survived in Indian traditions. Thus, the Milinda-pañha preserves some of his puzzling questions on religion put to Theru Nāgasena. Indeed, according to a Siamese legend Menander even attained to Arhatship.² Some of his coins bear the Buddhist symbol dharmā-sakra and the epithet "Dhramikasa," which may be regarded as an additional proof of his faith in Buddhism. The Milinda-pañha also contains a glowing account of the capital, Sākala, which abounded with parks, gardens, tanks, beautiful buildings, well-laid out streets, and strong defences. It had shops for the sale of Benares muslin, jewels, and other costly articles indicating the wealth and prosperity of the kingdom. Menander was noted for his justice, and Plutarch informs us that on his death in camp³ there were disputes among his subjects for the possession of his ashes, over which they wanted to raise Stūpas. Coins yield us the names of Menander's successors—Strato I, Strato II, and others—, but nothing definite is known about them.

¹ See Supra.
² H.G. Rawlinson, Bactria, p. 111. See, however, Tarn, G.B.J., pp. 262-68.
House of Eukratides

To turn to Eukratides; it appears he did not enjoy his conquests long. While he was returning home after his Indian expedition he was assassinated, as Justin deposes, by his son and colleague (?) who has been rightly identified with Heliocles.¹ This event happened about 155 B.C., and the unnatural youth is alleged to have gloried so much in his heinous crime that he even refused to give a burial to the dead body. Tarn, however, does not accept the tradition of parricide, or that Heliocles insulted his father’s corpse.² He was the last Greek king of Bactria, for after Heliocles it was overwhelmed by the Sakas deluge from the steppes of Central Asia. Of the many members of his line, whose authority was confined to the valleys of Afghanistan and the Indian border-lands, history has not condescended to record anything except their names. One of them, Antialkidas, however, is known from the Besnagar pillar inscription to have sent his ambassador Heliodora or Heliodorus, son of Diya (Dion), to the court of Kāśiputra Bhāgabhadra, identified with the fifth Śungrā monarch, Odraka, or with the last but one, Bhāgavata.³ It is noteworthy Antalikhira or Antialkidas is described as king of Taxila, and his ambassador calls himself a Bhāgavata—worshipper of Viṣṇu. Most of the coinage of Antialkidas,

¹ According to Vincent Smith, the parricide was Apollodotus (E.H.I., 4th ed., p. 238). According to another story given by Justin, Eukratides was killed by the Parthians; Tarn disbelieves the version of parricide. He thinks that Eukratides was killed by “a son of one of the dead Euthydemid princes. Was he Demetrios II?” (G.B.I., pp. 210, 222).

² G.B.I., p. 220. The parricide is alleged to have driven “his chariot wheels through the blood of his father” (E.H.I., 4th ed., p. 238; Justin, xii, 6).

³ See Supra.
like that of other Greek rulers in India, is bilingual but there is one silver issue on the Attic standard bearing his Greek legend only, "Of king Antialkidas the Victorious," which may indicate some of his military successes. The last Greek ruler of the frontier regions and the Kabul valley was Hermæus, who flourished about the second quarter of the first century A.D.¹ Hemmed in by enemies on all sides, he succumbed to the pressure of the advancing Kushans under Kujula Kadphises. The Greek power had already been weakened by internal feuds, and so it could not withstand the inroads of these "barbarian" hordes.

Results of the Greek contact

Let us now consider the effects of the Greek occupation of the north-western parts of India. Did these foreign rulers influence the subsequent development of Indian institutions and polity, or were they regarded merely as brilliant commanders of armies, to be dreaded rather than imitated? Questions like these have evoked widely different answers; some emphasise the debt India owes to Hellenism, and others deny its impress altogether. As is often the case, the truth lies somewhere midway. The Greeks first came into touch with India at the time of Alexander's invasion, and whatever his intentions may have been, he could not in the midst of nineteen months' hard fighting act as a pioneer of Greek civilisation, or materially change the course of Hindu society. Indeed, the Indian revolt, following closely upon his premature death, soon obliterated all traces of Greek conquest. Then came Seleukos Nikator about 306 B.C., but he got no chance to disseminate the seeds of Greek culture on Indian soil. His arms were effectively checked on the frontiers by Candra-

RESULTS OF THE GREEK CONTACT

gupta Maurya, who is said to have wrested from his adversary four important satrapies corresponding to modern Baluchistan and southern Afghanistan. Neither Megasthenes nor Kautilya bears out that there were any Hellenic signs in the Maurya court. For the next one hundred years India enjoyed immunity from Greek incursions. In 206 B.C. Antiochos III appeared on her border-lands, but he, too, had to hurry back home after receiving the homage of a prince named Sophagasenos (Subhāgasena). The later expeditions of Demetrios, Eukratides, and Menander, which covered with intervals a period of about four decades (c. 190-155 B.C.), penetrated far into the interior of the country. These were not wholly transitory raids, for in the Punjab and adjacent territories they led to the establishment of Greek rule, which lasted over a century and a half. It is, however, surprising that traces of Hellenism are even here very scanty.

It appears that in the matter of coinage Indians learnt much from the Greeks. Prior to their advent rude punch-marked coins were current in India, but they introduced the practice of using regular coins, properly shaped and stamped. The Greek word Drachma was even adopted by Indians as Dramma.¹

Further, the Greek language on coins is supposed to indicate that it was understood in the Indo-Greek dominions, but this view is not borne out by the evidence available. The introduction of the Indian legends and the use of the Kharosthi on coins would, on the other hand, prove that the masses in general did not know the Greek language at all. That this was the case is also clear from the fact that no Greek inscription has so far been discovered in India.

Turning to literature, it is alleged by St. Chrysostom (A.D. 117) that “the poetry of Homer is sung by the

¹ Is the Hindi word द्रम्म derived from the term Drachma?
Indians, who had translated it into their own language and modes of expression." This is further corroborated by Plutarch and Ælian, but there is hardly any basis for such assertions except some superficial similarities between the legends of Greece and those of India. For instance, the main theme of the Rāmāyana curiously offers a parallel to the story of the Iliad. Similarly, although Greek plays may have been staged in places like Sākala and other centres of Greek power, we have really no evidence to warrant the assumption that Indian drama owes much to the Greek. The term Yavaniḻa merely denoted a curtain of Greek fabric, and other resemblances also are doubtless mostly fortuitous.

In the realm of astronomy Indians were certainly indebted to the Greeks. Thus says the Gārgi-Sanhitā: "The Yavanas are barbarians yet the science of astronomy originated with them, and for this they must be reverenced like gods." Indian astronomy preserves a number of Greek terms; and, of course, the Romaka and Paučita Siddhāntas bear obvious traces of Greek influences. As to astrology, Indians had some knowledge of it, but they are said to have borrowed from Babylon the art of divining the future by means of the stars.

It is difficult to say how far these Indo-Greeks affected the development of Indian art and architecture. Not one notable piece of sculpture belonging to the period of Demetrius and Menander has so far been unearthed, but the later Gandhāra school, depicting on stone scenes from the life of the Buddha, is beyond doubt inspired by Hellenic ideals. Similarly, no Greek building in India has come to light, save the unembellished walls of some houses and a temple at Taxilā with

1 Some pieces of Greek sculpture that have come to light are "the head of a DIONYSOS and the child with its finger to its lips" (see also A.S.I., 1914-15, pp. 13 f).
Ionic pillars and classical mouldings, dating from about the first quarter of the first century B.C. The Hellenic style preponderated in the decorative arts for a long time. It was then modified by the addition of Indian motifs.

The contact of diverse civilisations gave an impetus to trade and commerce, and there began a constant flow of ideas, which produced far-reaching results in different directions. Such instances as the conversion of Heliodorus to Vaishnavism, and of Menander or of Theodhors of the Swat Vase inscription to Buddhism, show that the Greeks were gradually succumbing to the subtle influence of Indian faiths. Thus, when “the legions had thundered past,” India “plunged in thought again” in a manner which slowly converted her military conquerors into her moral and spiritual captives. The Indianisation of the Greeks must have been, to some extent, brought about by mixed marriages also.

SECTION B

THE SAKAS AND THE PAHLAVAS

Saka Migrations

About 165-160 B.C. there were momentous movements of nomadic tribes in Central Asia. The Yueh-chis were dislodged from their position in North-western China, and were forced to migrate westwards. In the course of their wandering they encountered the Sakas or Ssc, who occupied the lands to the north of

1 cf. e.g., the display of huge quantities of Indian ivory and spices by Antiochos IV at Daphne in 166 B.C. (Tarn, G.B.I., pp. 361-62). Similarly, Ptolemy II exhibited Indian dogs and cattle “in his triumph” (Ibid., p. 366). Among the Greek exports to India were perhaps parchment and “good-looking virgins for concubines,” as the Ptolemy attests (see Ibid., p. 373).


3 They were called Sakas by Greek authors. See Sten Konow, Introd., C.I.I., vol. II, pt. I, pp. xvi f....; K.P. Jayas-
the Jaxartes (Syr Daryă). The latter, having been pushed south, swooped down on Bactria and the Partian kingdom in the period between 140 and 120 B.C. Weakened by foreign wars and internal dissensions, the Bactrian monarchy fell an easy prey to the invasion of these hordes. Then the Sakas pressed towards the south-west, and in the struggle, which followed with Parthia, Phraates II was killed in 128 B.C., and Artabanus I lost his life a few years later in 123 B.C. Mithridates II (123-88 B.C.), however, reasserted the Parthian power, which naturally diverted the Sakas eastwards. As their expansion was impeded in the Kabul valley, where the attenuated Greek kingdom lay like a wedge, they spread themselves in the territory, afterwards called Seistan or Sakastan. Sometime later, they moved through Arachosia (Kandahar) and Baluchistan into the lower Indus country, which consequently became known as Saka-dvipa to Hindu writers and Indo-Scythia to Greek geographers. From this base the Sakas established their settlements in several parts of India.

Maues

The earliest Saka ruler of India appears to have been Maues, who is probably identical with Moa (cf. “Moasa”) of the Maira (Salt Range) well inscription,¹ and with Moga of the Taxilā plate of Satrap Patika.² Vincent


¹ The Maira inscription appears to be dated in the year 38 (C.I.I., II, no. VIII, pp. 12-13).
Smith, on the other hand, regards him as an Indo-Parthian king. These two ethnic types—the Sakas and the Pahlavas (Parthians)—are no doubt constantly associated with each other in Indian literature and inscriptions, and sometimes it is even difficult to distinguish between them. The same family includes both Pahlava and Saka names, and similarities are also found in their coinages and their systems of satrapal government. Rapson, therefore, rightly remarks that to label Maues and his successors as Sakas is “little more than a convenient nomenclature.”

Maues (Mauakes?) was certainly a great ruler. A copper-plate, found at Taxila, which calls him “Mahārāya,” proves that this region was included in his dominions. He subsequently adopted the title “great king of kings” on his coins; and their provenance and types also show that Gandhara and other adjacent lands, formerly under the Yavanas, came under his possession. But Maues does not appear to have carried his arms far into the Punjab, and thus his kingdom lay between the remnants of the two Yavana houses in the upper Kabul valley and in eastern Punjab. The date of Maues is uncertain, as we do not know definitely to which era the year 78 of the Taxila copper-plate is to be assigned. Dr. Raychaudhuri thinks that he ruled “after 33 B.C., but before the latter half of the first century A.D.” Sten Konow, on the other hand, believes that Maues began to rule in about 90 B.C.  

His successors

Maues was followed by Azes, who maintained his

---

2 Cam. Hist. Ind., 1, p. 568.
6 Is he identical with Aya or Aja (Azes?) of the Kalawân
predecessor’s conquests intact, as is clear from the continuance of his coin-types. He also restruck the coins of Hippostratus, thereby indicating that Azes extended the Saka rule over eastern Punjab. Some believe that he was the originator of the era commencing from B.C. 58. This view is, however, not at all convincing.

According to numismatic evidence Azilises came after Azes I, although there was a period in which both were associated in the government. The former was in turn succeeded by another Azes, designated Azes II. Some scholars identify the two Azes, but better opinion takes them as separate rulers. As we shall see below, after Azes II the Saka territories passed under the sway of Gondophernes.

II

Satraps of the North-West

In the government by Satraps, it was the usual practice of the Mahākṣatrapa to rule in association with a Kṣatrapa, generally his son, who in due course succeeded to the higher position. The Taxilā copperplate of the year 78 gives us two such names—Liaka Kusulaka and his son Parika. They were Satraps, under Mahārāya Moga, of the districts of Chhahara and Chuksha, perhaps near Taxilā.

III

Satraps of Mathura

The earliest known members of this family were
Hagāna and Hagāmasa, who appear to have for some time ruled conjointly. Their successor was probably Raṇjubula or Raṇjwula, called Mahākṣātrapa in the Mora (near Mathura) inscription. He copied the coins of Strato I and Strato II, and it may, therefore, be reasonable to suppose that Raṇjubula put an end to Greek rule in eastern Punjab. After him, his Kṣatrapa son, Soḍāsa, succeeded to the dignity of Mahākṣātrapa. According to the Mathura Lion Capital inscription he was satrap when Paḍika, or Patika, identified with Patika of the Taxila record, was great Satrap or Mahākṣātrapa. So we may regard them as contemporaries. In the Amohini votive tablet inscription, Soḍāsa is called a Mahākṣātrapa, and if its date 42 (Rapson) is to be referred to the Vikrama era, he must have flourished about 17-16 B.C. Not much is known about his successors.

IV

The Kṣaharātās of Mahārāṣṭra

The first known Kṣatrapa of Western India was Bhūmaka, who belonged to the Kṣaharāta family. He held sway in Saurāstra. The type and fabric of his coins as well as the legends on them clearly indicate that Bhūmaka preceded Nāhāpāṇa; and their insignia "arrow, discus, and thunderbolt" may be com-


2 Some scholars propose the reading 72, in which case Soḍāsa's date would fall about 15 A.D. Sten Konow refers the date to the Vikrama era (Ep. Ind., XIV, pp. 139-141). Others, however, believe that Soḍāsa dated the inscription in the Saka era. Bühler originally took the date in the Amohini record to be 42 (Ep. Ind., II, p. 195), but subsequently corrected it to 72 (Ibid, IV, p. 33, n. 2). Rapson prefers the former reading (Cas. Hiss. Ind., I, p. 576, n. 1).

3 Is the name Kṣaharāta identical with Ptolemy's Karstial? Is it derived from the district of Chuhara?
pared with certain pieces having "discus, bow and arrow" on the reverse, issued "conjointly by Spalirises and Azes."1

Nahapāna

The next Kṣaharātā ruler was Nahapāna whose precise relation with Bhūmaka is uncertain. There can, however, be no doubt about the former’s Saka nationality. For his daughter bearing a Hindu name, Dakṣamitṛā, was married to Uṣavadāta (Riṣabhadatta), who is expressly called a Saka in one of his inscriptions. The records of the latter, discovered at Pāṇḍu-leṇa (near Nasik), Junnar and Karle (Poona district), show that Nahapāna was master of a large part of Mahārāṣṭra. He must have wrested this region from the Sātavāhanas. He also sent his son-in-law to help the Uttamabhadras in repelling the aggressions of the Mālayas or Mālavas. After his victory, Uṣavadāta made certain benefactions in the Puskaṇa tīrtha (Pokhara), which may indicate the extension of Nahapāna’s influence as far as Ajmer. The inscriptions of his reign are dated in the years 41 to 46 of an unspecified era. On the assumption that these dates refer to the Saka era, although Dubreuil would assign them to the Vikrama era,2 Nahapāna was ruling in 119-124 A.D. But if he is identical with Mamburus or Mambanos of the Periplus,3 as has sometimes been supposed, he must have flourished about the third quarter of the first century A.D. It appears from the evidence of the Nasik inscription and the Jogalthambī (near Nasik) hoard of coins that the power of Nahapāna, or perhaps

2 Ibid., p. 22.
3 The capital Minnagarā has been variously identified with Jūnāgadh (B. Indrājī), Mandasor or modern Dacor (Dr. Bhandarkar), Junnar, or Dohad (Fleet); but Jayasval believed that Nahapāna ruled at Broach.
one of his successors, was crushed by Gautamiputra Satakarni.1

IV

THE SATRAPS OF UJJAIN

Caśṭana

The founder of this line, which exercised sway in western India for several centuries, was Caśṭana, son of Ysāmotika. Some scholars regard him as the originator of the Saka era beginning from 78 A.D.2 Others deny this, but they admit that the year 52 of the Andhau (Cutch) inscriptions is to be referred to this reckoning—a theory which would fix the year 130 A.D. as a date in Caśṭana’s reign.3 He has been identified with Ptolemy’s Tiastenes of Ozené, and his coins were copied from those of Nahapāna. Caśṭana first ruled as a Kṣatrapa, and subsequently as a Mahākṣatrapa. Was he then “a vassal of Gautamiputra,” as G. Jouveau Dubreuil believed,4 or of the Kushans?

Rudradāman

Caśṭana’s son, Jayadāman, was only a Kṣatrapa, and he died without achieving any distinction. The latter’s son, Rudradāman, was, however, a great figure. His exploits are described in the Junāgadhī Rock ins-

1 See Ante. Did Gautamiputra fight Nahapāna personally, or were they separated by “a very long time”? (See also Ant. Hist. Dev., pp. 24-25).
3 Caśṭana is sometimes supposed to have ruled conjointly with Rudradāman according to the Andhau epigraphs (Dr. D.R. Bhandarkar, Ind. Ant., XLVII (1918), p. 154). Dubreuil disagrees with this view, and he takes the Andhau (Cutch) inscriptions to be dated in the reign of Rudradāman (Ant. Hist. Dev., p. 27).
4 Ibid., p. 37.
cription dated year 72 or 150 A.D.\(^1\) It represents him as having won for himself the title of Mahākṣatrapa;\(^2\) conquered the "proud" Yaudheyas; and twice vanquished Sātakarni, lord of Dakṣināpatha, to whom his relation was "not remote."\(^3\) That these claims were not mere boasts is also evident from the names of lands, where his authority was recognised. They included northern Gujarat, Saurāstra, Cutch, the lower Indus valley, north Konkan, Māndhātā region, eastern and western Malwa, Kukura and Maru i.e., parts of Rajputana, etc.\(^4\) Some of these territories, as we have elsewhere noted, were under Gautamiputra Sātakarni. Thus the power of Rudradāman grew at the cost of the Sātavāhanas. Another important event of his reign was the bursting of the embankment of the Sudarśana lake. But it was rebuilt three times stronger mainly by the efforts of his Pahlava governor of "the whole of Anarta and Sūrāstra," named Suviśākha, son of Kulaipa. We further learn that Rudradāman himself bore the entire expenses of its repairs, and did not resort to the usual royal device of imposing additional taxation. How solicitous he was indeed for the welfare of his people!

Rudradāman's successors

Several members of the dynasty ruled after Rudradāman, but nothing of moment is known about them.\(^5\) About the fourth decade of the third century

---

\(^1\) Ep. Ind., VIII, pp. 36-49.

\(^2\) cf. स्वयमबिगितमब्राह्मणानामा।

\(^3\) See Ante.

\(^4\) cf. पुरोक्षाराजाकल्याणेवैधी कृतान्तकुलदास (स) सक्तदेविसुद्धीरवेक्षुद्धरसासनानादित्य ग्रासप्रासादमिश्रायावित्य रत्नभाष्य—।

\(^5\) See Rapson, Catalogue of the Coins of the Andhra Dynasty, the Western Kṣatrapas, etc., (London, 1908).
A.D. the fortunes of the Kṣatrapas suffered a temporary eclipse owing to the irruption of the Abhīnas under perhaps Iśvaradatta, who usurped a portion of their dominions. The family, however, soon reasserted itself, and carried on its existence amidst vicissitudes till Saka 31x (=A.D. 31x + 78), a date occurring on the coins of Rudrasimha III, who is perhaps identical with the Saka sovereign, mentioned in the Harasaṭharīta as having been killed by Candragupta Vikramāditya. The Guptas then annexed the Saka territories, and issued silver coins of the Kṣatrapa type, substituting the Garuḍa emblem on the reverse for the Kṣatrapa symbols.

V

The Pahlavas

Vonones

The history of the Indo-Parthians or Pahlavas is still obscure. But a few facts may be gleaned from coins and inscriptions. The earliest known prince of the dynasty was Vonones, who attained power in Arachosia and Seistan, and adopted the title of "great king of kings." On his coins, imitated from the issues of the house of Eukratides, Vonones is associated with his brothers, Spalirises and Spalahores, and his nephew, Spalagadames. Perhaps they were his Viceroyes in the conquered regions. Vonones was succeeded by Spalirises, who appears to have been the suzerain of Azes II, for on certain coins the former's name is given in Greek on the obverse and that of Azes in Kharoṣṭhī on the reverse.

1 The sign x stands for the third digit, which is not clear on coins.
3 Rapson calls Vonones "suzerain over the kingdoms of eastern Iran," and he is believed to have flourished later than the reign of Mithradates II (C.H.I., Vol. I, pp. 572-73).
Gondophernes

Gondophernes (Vindapharna) was the next and the greatest Indo-Parthian monarch. The period of his reign has been almost definitely fixed with the help of the Takhti-i-Bahi inscription, which is dated in the year 105. Referring to it the Vikrama era, Fleet placed the record in 45 A.D. This date represents the 26th year of Mahārāya Guduvhara's (?) rule. Hence he came to the throne in 19 A.D., and remained king at least till 45 A.D. The epigraph further proves that the Peshawar district then owned his sway. His coin-types indicate that he became master of the Saka-Pahlava dominions both in Eastern Iran and Northwestern India. That he supplanted Azes II in some territories seems evident from the coins of Aspavarma, who was at first the latter's Strategos, but afterwards acknowledged the overlordship of Gondophernes. In Christian traditions he is called "king of India," and is connected with St. Thomas. One can hardly rely on such legends, but this much appears to be based on fact that the Apostle visited the court of Gondophares or Gondophernes and that he met there with some success in his missionary labours. When the Pahlava sovereign died, his kingdom broke up and was appropriated by various princes. One of these, Pakorees, probably ruled over Western Punjab and portions of Southern Afgha-

1 Other variants of the name are Guduphara or Guduvhara, Gondophares, Gudana (coins), etc.
3 This attribution is doubted by some scholars. The late R. D. Banerji assigns the year 105 of the Takhti-i-Bahi inscription to the Saka era (Ind. Ant., 1908, pp. 47, 62). Dr. Vincent Smith, however, does not accept such a late date for Gondophernes. He (Smith) believes that "the stratification at Taxila shows that Gondophares preceded Kadphises I" (E.H.I., 4th ed., p. 248, note 1).
4 For the legend of St. Thomas, see Smith, E.H.I., 4th ed., pp. 245-250.
nistan. The family was overthrown by the advance of the Kushans.

**Section C**

**The Kushans**

*Yueh-chi Movements*

About the fourth decade of the second century B.C.—the year commonly accepted being 163—the Hsiung-nu, a tribe of Turki nomads, won a decided victory over the Yueh-chi, their neighbours in Kan-su in North-western China, and forced them to quit their pasture-grounds. In the course of their westward migrations, the Yueh-chi encountered in the basin of the Ili river another horde called the Wu-sun, whose chief Nan-Teou-mi was killed in defending his country. Here the Yueh-chi were split into two sections. One division, deflecting southwards, settled on the Tibetan border, and came to be known as the Little Yueh-chi (Siao Yueh-chi). The main body (Ta Yueh-chi) marched onward until they came into conflict with the Sakas, who, as already noticed, were dispossessed of their lands north of the Jaxartes. But the Yueh-chi did not long remain in the usurped territory, for they were expelled by Kwen-mo, the son of the dead Wu-sun chieftain, with the help of the Hsiung-

---

1 See V. A. Smith, "The Kushan or Indo-Scythian Period of Indian History" (J.R.A.S., 1903, pp. 1-64); R. D. Banerji, *Ind-Ant.*, XXXVII (1908), pp. 33 ff.; Sten Konow, *C.I.I.*, II, Intro., pp. xlix-lxxxii. The usual form of the name is Kushana, but sometimes Kushana is also used. Dr. F. W. Thomas took it as "a family or dynastic title" (J.R.A.S., 1906, p. 203). In the Panjtar record of the year 132, however, Guisha is used as the name of a Mahārāja (C.I.I., II, no. XXVI, p. 79). Similarly, in the Takšī silver scroll inscription of the year 136 (Ibid., no. XXVII, p. 77) Kushana is simply used for the name of the sovereign, perhaps Kadphises I or Wema Kadphises (cf. "The Great King, the King of Kings, the Son of Heaven, the Kushāνa").
nu about 140 B.C. The Yueh-chi then made their way into the Oxus valley, subjugating a prosperous and peaceful people called the Ta-hia (Bactrians) by the Chinese. The Yueh-chi gradually occupied Bactria and Sogdiana, and by the beginning of the first century B.C. they gave up their nomadic habits of life. They became divided into five principalities: Hieu-mi, Chouang-mo, Koui-Chouang, Hi-thun, Kao-fu. Nearly a century after this division, the Yahgu or Yaunga (Jahgou) of the Koui-Chouang (Kushan) defeated the other four, and thus all were united in one kingdom under the former, named K'ieou-tsieouk'io. This king (Wang) has been identified with the Kujula Kadphises of coins, which afford testimony to the gradual extinction of the Greek power in the Kabul valley. For some coins have the name Kujula Kasa in Kharoshti and Kozoulo Kadaphes in Greek along with that of Hermæus, whereas others do not bear the latter name at all. It may, therefore, be reasonable to conclude that at first the two monarchs were allied together, perhaps to resist the expanding Pahlava power, but subsequently the Kushan rule superseded the Greeks in the Kabul region. Kujula Kadphises attacked Parthia, conquered Kipin (probably Gandhāra) and southern Afghanistan. He must have achieved these victories late in his reign after the death of Gondophernes, who ruled Peshawar in 43 A.D. according to the Takht-i-Bahi inscription. Chinese writers state that Kujula Kadphises lived up to the age of eighty, and accordingly his end may be placed in or about the middle of the third quarter of the first century A.D.

**Vima Kadphises**

We learn from Chinese historians that Kujula Kadphises was succeeded by his son, Yen-kao-chen,
identified with the "Great King Uviama Kavthisa" or Očmo or Wema or Vima Kadhphises of the coins. He is credited with the conquest of India (Tien-tchéou). This may not be true, if taken literally, but the wide distribution of his coins and the assumption of high-sounding titles like "the great king, king of kings, the lord of all people..." show that his authority extended east of the Indus to the Punjab and possibly also to the United Provinces. He governed his Indian possessions through a Viceroy, to whom has been attributed the large number of copper coins, usually known as the issues of the "Nameless King", which are quite common in various parts of Northern India. Lastly, it appears from the epithet, Māheśvara, on his coins as also from Nandi and the figure of Siva on their reverse, that Vima Kadhphises was probably a devotee of the Hindu god, Siva. Needless to comment on how soon the Kushans succumbed to their Hindu environments.

**Kaniška**

**His date**

Kaniška is indubitably the most striking figure among the Kushan kings of India. A great conqueror and a patron of Buddhism, he combined in himself the military ability of Candragupeta Maurya and the religious zeal of Ašoka. Our knowledge of Kaniška is, however, meagre, and his chronological position unhappily still remains a puzzle to us. It is not known what his connection was with Vima Kadhphises.

---

3 Also identified with Mahārāya Gushana, mentioned in the Panjūr record of the year 122 (C.I.I., II, no. XXVI, pp. 67-70). Sir John Marshall, on the other hand, hesitatingly identifies this king with Kadphises I (J.R.A.S., 1914, p. 977). The name Uviama Kavthisa or Vima Kadhphises, however, occurs, if the reading is correct, in the Khaltāse (Ladakh) inscription of the year 184 (?), or 187 (?), C.I.I., II, no. XXIX, pp. 79-81.
es. Though the possibility of a brief gap between the two sovereigns cannot be entirely ruled out, their sequence may be regarded as almost certain. The coins of both Kaniška and Vima Kadphises have been found together at several places (e.g., Benares, Gopālpur stūpa in Gorakhpur district, Begram near Kabul), and they often display “in the field the same four-pronged symbol, and agree accurately in weight and fineness, besides exhibiting a close relationship in the obverse devices.” Thus the numismatic evidence and the stratification of the remains of Taxila indicate that Kaniška was very close in time to Vima Kadphises, and indeed succeeded him. With regard to the precise year of the former’s accession, the choice really lies between 78 A.D., and 125 A.D., although other improbable dates, ranging from 58 B.C. (Fleet) to 248 A.D. (Dr. R.C. Majumdar), or even 278 A.D. (R.G. Bhandarkar), have been suggested for the event. Without entering here into the details of these intricate and interminable controversies, it appears to us a fairly plausible theory that Kaniška was the originator of the era of 78 A.D. There can be no doubt that he founded an era, since his reckoning was continued by his successors; and we do not know of any samvat, current in Northern India, which began at the end of the first quarter of the second century A.D., the other date usually proposed for Kaniška’s assumption of the crown. Besides, if Kujula Kadphises died about the middle of the third quarter of the first century

1 Fleet, however, was of opinion that the two Kadphises ruled after Kaniška and his “immediate successors” (J.R. A.S., 1903, 1901, 1906, 1913). This view was also held by Kennedy and Otto Francke.


3 The era was afterwards called the Śaka era “in consequence of its long use by the Śaka princes of Western India.”

Kaniṣka's Conquests

A.D., Kaniṣka cannot be far removed from this date, as Vima Kadphises, having come after an octogenerian, must have ruled for a short time only.

Conquests

Kaniṣka was a doughy warrior and he won many successes in war. He annexed Kashmir to the Kushan empire, and was extremely fond of that pleasant valley. If any credence is to be given to traditions preserved in Chinese and Tibetan works, his arms penetrated as far as Sāketa and Magadha, whence he carried off a celebrated Buddhist monk named Āśvaghoṣa. Kaniṣka is also said to have successfully repulsed the attack of the Parthian king. But his most important engagements were with the Chinese; they resulted ultimately in the conquest of Kashgar, Khotan, and Yarkand. The Chinese, whose influence in Central Asia had ceased by the end of the first Han dynasty in 23 A.D., reasserted their power half a century later, and made a steady advance westward under General Pan-choa. This was naturally viewed with some concern by the Kushan monarch, who, as a mark of his equality with the Chinese Emperor, demanded the hand of a Chinese princess and adopted the title of Devaputra (“the son of Heaven”). Pan-choa considered it an affront to his master, and accordingly arrested the Kushan envoy. Kaniṣka then crossed the Pamir to fight against him, but suffered a severe reverse, and bought peace by paying tribute to China. A few years afterwards Kaniṣka led another expedition across the Pamirs; victory favoured him this time against Pan-yang, the son of Pan-choa. The Kushan ruler thus avenged his previous defeat, and compelled a feudatory state of China to surrender hostages to him.

Hostages

The belief that they included a son of the Han Emperor does not, however, appear to be
well founded. We learn that these hostages were treated with the utmost consideration, and adequate arrangements were made for their stay in the She-lo-ka monastery in Kapiśa (Kafiristan), Gandhāra, and at a place called Chinabhuṅki in eastern Punjab, during the various seasons of the year. Here, it is said, they introduced the peach and the pear, and their memory continued to be cherished in Yuan Chwang's time in the Kapiśa monastery, where according to his biographer, Hwui-li, they had made endowments for the repairs and maintenance of the She-lo-ka shrine. The treasure was deposited under the foot of the image of the Great Spirit King (Vaiśravana), and once a certain covetous king tried to open it, but was foiled in his attempt by portents. Yuan Chwang, however, is alleged to have succeeded in doing so after propitiating the "guardian spirit," and a part of the jewels and gold was then utilised in making necessary repairs in the building of the Vihāra. The remainder of the treasure was left to meet future requirements.  

Extent of Kaniska’s Dominions

Kaniska ruled a vast empire. Outside India it certainly comprised Afghanistan, Bactria, Kashgar, Khotan, and Yarkand. Its limits in India are, however, hard to determine with precision. The inscriptions of Kaniska’s reign have been discovered in Peshawar, Mān̄ikyāla (near Rawalpindi), Sui Vihār (Bahawalpur State), Zeda (near Uṇḍ), Mathurā, Śrāvasti, Kosambī, Samath; and his coins are found all over Northern India including Bihar and Bengal. Thus, it appears from these finds spots and the traditions of his conquests that Kaniska’s Indian
possessions consisted of the Punjab, Kashmir, Sind, United Provinces, and perhaps the country still further to the east and the south.

His Capital

The capital of these far-flung territories was Purusapura or Peshawar. It controlled the main route from Afghanistan to the Indus plains, and was, therefore, of considerable strategic importance.

His Satraps

Scarcely anything is known about Kaniska's administration. The Samath inscription dated in the year 3 or 81 A.D. (?), however, gives us just a glimpse of his Satrapal system in the provinces. We learn that Kharapallana was his Mahakshatrapa, presumably at Mathura, and Vanastra was governing the eastern regions of Benares as Ksatrapa. It seems reasonable to suppose that the government of other outlying parts of the realm was organised on similar lines.

Kaniska's Public Works

Like Asoka, Kaniska was a great builder of Stupas and cities. He erected in his capital a monastery and a huge wooden tower, in which he placed some relics of the Buddha. a Several years ago, a casket containing

---

a Formerly this was considered to be the earliest known inscription of Kaniska, but a few years ago another record, dated in the year 2 of his reign, was discovered, probably at Kosambi. It is now preserved in the Allahabad Museum.

b The Chinese pilgrim Sung-yun refers to the pagoda (Feou-thau) of Ka-ni-si-ka i.e., Kaniska (Beal, pp. clii-cliv). See also Fa-hian's Fo-kou-ki, ch. XII, Beal, p. xxxii; and Yuan Chwang's Si-yu-ki, Bk. II, Beal, I, p. 99; Watters, I, p. 204, for the Stupa of Ki-ni-kia or Kla-ni-se-kia (Kaniska). Alberuni also mentions that the Vibaha of Purushahar was built by Kanik. It was called after him Kanika-Caitya (Sachau, Trans., Vol. II, p.11).
some fragments of bones was unearthed here. The inscription\(^1\) on it furnishes us the interesting information that the Stūpa was constructed under the supervision of a Greek architect, named Agišala or Agesilaos. Kaniška built a town near Taxila,\(^2\) and Kanisāpōr (Kaniškapura), mentioned in the Rājatarangīpi, may also have owed its foundation to him.\(^3\)

**His Religion**

Coins do not afford any clear testimony regarding the religious beliefs of Kaniška. If they prove anything, it is his eclecticism,\(^4\) the tendency to honour a strange medley of Greek, Mithraic, Zoroastrian, and Hindu gods. On his coins, which, it may be incidentally noted, always bear legends in the Greek alphabet only, there figure Herakles, Serapis, the Sun and the Moon under their Greek names Helios and Selene, Mīro (Sun), Athro (Fire), Nanaia, Sīva, etc. Some rare pieces also depict the Buddha (Boddha), seated in the Indian fashion, or standing clad probably in Greek costume. On the other hand, Buddhist authors strongly affirm Kaniška’s faith in the Buddha. They aver that in his unregenerate days Kaniška revelled, like Aśoka, in cruel and impious acts, and he embraced the religion of the Sākyamuni owing to feelings of profound remorse for his past misdeeds. No doubt, the main purpose of such stories is to emphasise the ennobling influence of Buddhism, which could turn base metal into shining gold, but that is no argument for disbelieving the fact of Kaniška’s conversion. His enshrinement of the Buddha’s relics

---


\(^2\) Its remains are represented by Sir-Sukh.

\(^3\) Some scholars think that it was founded by another Kaniška of the Ārā inscription (see Infra).

\(^4\) Or, are we to conclude that these deities on coins only indicate the various forms of faiths prevailing in Kaniška’s vast empire?
in an exquisite edifice and the convocation of a grand Buddhist Assembly further point in this same direction.

The Buddhist Council

The reign of Kaniska is specially important in the history of the Buddhist church, for we learn that, being perplexed in his theological studies, he convened with the permission of his teacher, Pârśvika or Pârśva, a council of 300 monks (mabhasangha), belonging to the Sarvastivâdin school, to settle the disputed doctrines. The conference was held at Kundalavana in the delightful vale of Kashmir; its deliberations were guided by Vasumitra, and in his absence Âväghośa acted as President. Their labours resulted in the compilation of the Vibhâpa Sâstra and other comprehensive commentaries on the canon, which, after being engraved on “sheets of red copper” were sealed and deposited in a Stûpa. Who knows these invaluable documents may still lie buried there, and a lucky spade may one day bring them to light?

Rise of the Mahâyâna

The appearance of the Buddha along with other deities on Kaniska’s coins clearly indicates that Buddhism had by this time moved far away from its original moorings. While the early Buddhists regarded the Master merely as a human being, a great guide in the journey of life, he was now elevated to the position of a god, accessible to the supplications of his devotees, and

4 cf. Yuan Chwang, Si-ya-kî (Beal, I, pp. 251-256; Watters, I, pp. 270-278). According to another Chinese account, the meeting place of the assembly was Gandhâra. Still another authority locates it at Jalandhar. We hear of the conference from Northern traditions only; the Ceylonese chronicles make no mention of it.
attended by "a hierarchy of Bodhisattvas" and other divinities. This led to the inculcation of the doctrine of salvation by faith in the Buddha. Of course, the old ideal of an individual seeking release for himself from the evils of transmigration still persisted, but alongside of it there emerged the conception that every one might aim at, or even rise to, Buddhahood for the deliverance of the world from tribulation. The rituals were also elaborated to satisfy the popular tastes for ceremonial. This modified Buddhism was known as the Mahāyāna, "the great Vehicle," in contradistinction to the Hinayāna, "the little Vehicle," the name used for the primitive teaching. Although definite proof is lacking, there are reasons to believe that the former was nascent, much earlier than the time of Kanishka. It may have owed its origin to the "penetration of Buddhism by Bhakti," or to the spread of Buddhism among the masses, for they required a more catholic religion in place of the icy idealism of the Hinayāna, which could hardly kindle the flame of their devotion. Besides, the introduction of foreign racial elements into the body politic of India, and the interaction of their civilisations, must have quickened the development of this newer Buddhism.

The new school found expression in a distinctive style of art. The earlier Buddhist sculptures, as known from their remains at Sārāchi and Bhārhūt, portrayed scenes from the Jātakas and other stories connected with the Buddha, but he himself was never carved in stone. His presence was merely indicated by symbols, such as footprints, the Bo-tree, a vacant seat, or the umbrella. Henceforward, the Enlightened One is the most favourite subject for the sculptor’s chisel. As most of these specimens have been
found in Gandhāra, of which Puruṣapura (Peshawar) was the centre, the art has been called Gandhāran after the name of the country. Sometimes, however, it is labelled Graeco-Buddhist or Indo-Hellenic, as Greek forms and technique are applied to subjects drawn from the newer Buddhism. Thus, the arrangement of the drapery follows Hellenistic examples, and in showing the Buddha artists take such liberty that his images often bear a close resemblance to Apollo. Later on, the great Teacher’s figure was standardised, and it became the accepted pattern everywhere. The Gandhāra sculptures do not, of course, possess the grace and vigour of the work of the Gupta period, but they are surely not devoid of interest and charm. It is a moot point how far the art of Mathūṭa and Amarāvati derived its inspiration from Gandhāra.

Kaniśka’s Court

According to traditions, Kaniśka’s court was adorned by a brilliant galaxy of intellectual celebrities and Buddhist leaders like Pārśva, Vasumitra, Aśvaghoṣa, Nāgārjuna, Caraka, Māтриceṭa, and others. These stories appear almost on a par with the legends associated with Vikramādiṭya. The first three are spoken of in connection with the Buddhist Council of Kaniśka, but it is doubtful if the rest also were his contemporaries.

His death

Kaniśka is said to have met a violent death somewhere in the north at the hands of his own people, who were tired of his incessant hard campaigns. He ruled for at least 25 years, but, if he is identical with Kaniśka of the Ārā inscription, his last known date

2 See Sten Konow, C.I.F., II. pt. I, no. XXXLV, pp. 126-63, cf. “Mahārājaśa Rajatirajāsa Devaputrasa (Ka) i (sa) rasa Viśheṣka-
would be the year 41. A headless statue of the king, discovered at Māṭ in the Mathurā district, is one of his tangible relics.

Vāsiśka

Our knowledge regarding the successors of Kaniśka is very scanty. It appears, however, from two inscriptions, found in Mathurā and Sāñchi, that Vāsiśka was governing these regions in the years 24 and 28. None of his coins has so far come to light, and perhaps he did not issue any.

Huvīśka

The dates of Huvīśka range from the year 31 to 60 of the era founded by Kaniśka. Some scholars believe that the latter was followed by Vāsiśka and Huvīśka. But this view is doubted, because an inscription, unearthed at Ārā (Peshawar district), mentions a Kaniśka, son of Vājheśka or Vājheśpa, as flourishing in the year 41. Now, who was this personage? He was either different from, or identical with, the great Kaniśka. In case the former hypothesis is correct, he must have been an independent contemporary of Huvīśka, or more probably his Viceroy. If, on the other hand, the two Kaniśkas are identified, then we shall have to suppose that: Vāsiśka and Huvīśka were at first Viceroyals of the great Kaniśka; that Vāsiśka predeceased him; and that Huvīśka assumed full sovereign powers after the year 41. Whichever theory is accepted, coins and inscriptions testify that Huvīśka was a powerful prince, and that he maintained the empire intact.

putrasa Kaniśkasā Sambatārae ekacapari (l) (8a) i sam 20 20 21......

I.e., "During the reign of the Maharāja, Rājātra Devaputra, Kaisara Kaniśka, the son of Vājheśka, in the forty-first year."

HUVIŠKA: VĀSUDEVA

His authority was doubtless recognised in Kabul, Kashmir, the Punjab, Mathurā, perhaps eastern United Provinces, but there is nothing to prove the continuance of the Kushan rule in the lower Indus valley and eastern Malwa. Huvīška’s coinage is very artistic, having excellent portraits of the king, and it is also extensive. The types include representations of Heracles, Sarapis (Sarapo), Mithra and Mao, Pharro; Skandha and Viśākha, and other gods, but both the name and the figure of the Buddha are absent. Huvīška was, however, not altogether indifferent to Buddhism, for he is said to have built a Buddhist monastery and a temple at Mathurā. He also founded a town in Kashmir, called Juskapura or Huvīškapura or modern Huṣkpur or Uṣkūr (Zukur).

Vāsudeva

The exact date of Huvīška’s death is uncertain, but an inscription records that in the year 74 of Kaniska’s reckoning the ruling authority was Vāsudeva (Bazodeo of the coins). According to another epigraph, his last known date is 98; so that he may be credited with having reigned for 25 to 30 years. His inscriptions have been found in the Mathurā region only, and his coins mostly come from the Punjab and the United Provinces. We may, therefore, reasonably infer that the territories in the northwest and beyond, ruled by his predecessors, had slipped away from the hands of Vāsudeva. That he held sway over an attenuated kingdom appears also from the reduction in the number of his coin-types. The coins with the goddess Nanaia are extremely rare, whereas many of them bear on the reverse the figure of

Siva with Nandi (bull). The latter class of coins has generally been taken to prove that Vāsudeva belonged to the Saiva faith. At any rate, his Sanskritised Hindu name, synonymous with Viṣṇu, attests that the Kushans were by no means averse or impervious to Brahmanical influences.

*Decline of the Kushan Empire*

The downfall of the Kushans began during the reign of Vāsudeva, and in course of time the empire, reared by the genius of Kaniska, broke up into petty principalities under princelings, some of whom bore the name Vāsudeva. They are known entirely from their coins on which are written their initials or monograms perpendicularly. According to Dr. Vincent Smith, the "Persianising of the Kushan coinage of Northern India" in the early third century A.D. indicates that the decay of the Kushan power must have been hastened by Persian invasions like the one recorded by Firishta as having been undertaken by the first Sassanian king.¹ The overthrow of these Kushan chieftains must have, however, been largely due to the rise of the Nāgas and other native dynasties, which prepared the way for the Guptas for welding Northern India eventually into one mighty empire. But the Kidārā Kushans, a branch race, established themselves in the Kabul valley and adjacent lands, and despite the fierce onsloughts of the Hūnas in the fifth century A.D., there are traces of their survival until about the middle of the ninth century A.D.

*II. The "Dark" Interval*

After the dismemberment of the Kushan empire the history of India is mostly enveloped in darkness,

¹ E.H.I., 4th ed., pp. 288-89. Ardashir Babagan (r. 225-247 A.D.) is represented as having advanced up to Sirhind from where
which hides from our view the course of events, until we
emerge into the light of the Gupta epoch. Occasion-
ally, however, a glimmer reveals the principal
scenes and actors during the third and the early part of
the fourth century A.D. This was a period when
the Nāgas or their Bhāraśivas branch dominated a large
part of Northern India.¹ According to the Purāṇas,
their chief seats of power were Vidiśā, Padmāvaṭi (Pad-
ampawāyā), Kāntipurī (Kanitī, Mirzapur district), and
Mathurā. One of the earliest Nāga rulers was Virasena,
who “re-established Hindu sovereignty” at Mathurā,
formerly a strong Kushan centre in India. The authori-
ty and influence of the Bhāraśiva Nāgas may also be
judged from the fact that the marriage of the daughter
of the Bhāraśiva king, Bhavanāga, with the son of Prā-
varasena Vākāṭaka was considered so important as to be
repeated in all the official records of the Vākāṭakas. We
further learn from them that prior to this matrimonial
alliance the Bhāraśivas had been “anointed to sovereign-
ty with the holy water of the Bhāgirathī (Ganges), which
they had acquired with their valour,” and they had
performed no less than ten Āvamedha sacrifices.²
They were thus mighty princes, who flourished after the
Kushans and maintained their influence for a long
time. Later traces of Nāga rule may be found
in the Allahabad Pillar inscription,³ which men-
tions the defeat of Ganapatināga and other Nāga
kings at the hands of Samudragupta. This epigi-
OGRAPH gives us, as we shall see below, an idea

he retired after exacting a huge tribute from Jūnāh (Elliot, History
of India, VI, (Introdt. to Firisha’s History), pp. 357-358; E.H.I., 4th
ed., p. 289, n. 3).
¹ See K. P. Jayaswal, J. B. O. R. 55, March—June, 1932,
मार्गीतां मन्मुन्नामविवस्तानां वाल्कमेतायाम्बुलानानां मार्कविवानाम्.
of the political condition of India about the middle of the fourth century A.D. It may, therefore, be reasonably supposed that some of the royal houses and autonomous clans, mentioned therein, must have risen into prominence considerably earlier. Indeed, they may have sprung up on the ruins of the Kushan power.
PART III

CHAPTER XII

I. THE IMPERIAL GUPTAS

Origin of the Guptas

When we enter upon the Gupta period, we find ourselves on firmer ground owing to the discovery of a series of contemporary inscriptions, and the history of India regains interest and unity to a large extent. The origin of the Guptas is shrouded in mystery, but on a consideration of the termination of their names it has been contended with some plausibility that they belonged to the Vaisya caste.¹ Much stress should not, however, be laid on this argument, and to give just one example to the contrary we may cite Brahmagupta as the name of a celebrated Brahman astronomer. Dr. Jayasval, on the other hand, suggested that the Guptas were Kāraskara Jāts—originally from the Punjab.² But the evidence he relied on is hardly conclusive, as its very basis, the identification of Candragupta I with Candasena of the Kaumudimabotsava, is far from certain.

Beginnings of the Gupta power

According to the genealogical lists, the founder

¹ cf. शमाविश्व विप्रस्य वर्ष जाता च स भूमुखः।
मूलिकुलिस्य वैवशस्य दाता: बृम्हस्य कारकवेदु॥

Vīṣṇu Purāṇa, Bk. III, Chap. 10, v. 9.

² J.B.O.R.S., XIX (March-June, 1953), pp. 115-16. According to Jayasval, the Kakkar Jāts are "the modern representatives of the original community of the Guptas."
his successors; and its initial year ran from February 26, 320 A.D. to March 15, 321 A.D.

Samudragupta

Candragupta I was followed by his son Samudragupta. As the latter seems to have been nominated by his father to succeed him, he may not have been his eldest son. Whatever his earlier position, Samudragupta turned out to be one of the ablest Gupta sovereigns, and by his exploits more than justified his father's selection. With his ideal of war and aggrandisment, Samudragupta is the very antithesis of Aśoka, who stood for peace and piety. The Allahabad Pillar Inscription composed by the court poet, Hariśena, and, strangely enough, Samudragupta chose to leave a permanent record of his sanguinary conquests by the side of the ethical exhortations of Aśoka on one of his pillars, now inside the fort at Allahabad. The inscription is unhappily undated, but it is surely not a posthumous document, as supposed by Fleet. It must have

and the Gayā plate of Samudragupta, dated years 1 and 9 respectively, are genuine, and if they refer to the Gupta era, the reign of Candragupta I must have been briefer still.

¹ Some gold coins of Kāra, closely resembling the issues of Samudragupta, have been found. Vincent Smith regards the former as a rival brother of the latter (E.H.I., 4th ed., p. 297, n. 1). But in our opinion the expression "Satva-tājocchattī" on the reverse argues in favour of their identification. Perhaps Kāra was the original or personal name, and the appellation Samudragupta was adopted in allusion to his conquests. Dr. D.R. Bhandarkar, on the other hand, takes the Kāra (Rāma?) coins to be issues of Rāmagupta (Mālavīyaji Commemoration Volume, 1932, pp. 104-06).

² Fleet, C.I.I., III, no. 1, pp. 3-17.

³ Ibid., pp. 4, 10 and note 2. The passage (lines 29-30), however, only refers to Samudragupta's fama "having gone to the abode of (Indra) the lord of the gods."
been engraved—say about 560 A.D.—after the comple-
tion of Samudragupta’s “digvijaya” and before the per-
formance of the Atharvavedha, which is not mentioned in it.

Conquests: Although the account seems to follow a geographical and not a chronol-

gical order,1 we may reasonably assume that Samudragupta must have first tried conclusions with his neighbors, the kings of Áryavarta. Here he followed a policy of ruthless annexation, for he is said to have “violently exterminated” the following nine monarchs:

(i) Rudradeva (Rudrasena I Vākāśa ?).
(ii) Matila: identified with Mattera of a seal found at Bulandshahr.
(iii) Nāga-datta: perhaps a Nāga king.
(iv) Candravarman: The identification is not cer-
tain. Sometimes he is considered the same as his namesake of Pokharana, mentioned in the Susunia Rock inscription.2 It is further believed that Candravarman is identical with king Candras of the Mehranl Iron Pillar inscription (Fleet’s no. 32), but this view has been doubted and appears improbable.
(vi) Nāgasena): Presumably both belonged to the Nāga lineage.
(vii) Nandin :
(viii) Acyuta: identical with “Acyu” of the coins discovered at Ahicchatra (Rannagat) in the

1 For the identification of names, see Fleet, Ibid., notes; Allan, C.C.G.D., Introd., pp. xxi-xxx; Smith, J.R.A.S., 1897, pp. 839-
June, 1913, pp. 144 ff.

Bareilly district.

(ix) Balavarman: not yet satisfactorily identified.

Samudragupta next turned his arms against the "kings of the forest countries," whom he compelled "to become his servants." Their territories probably lay in Central India.

Samudragupta then undertook the difficult task of subjugating the monarchs of Dakšināpatha. They were defeated and captured, but the victor released and re-instated them, and thus won their allegiance by his magnanimity. These rulers were:

(i) Mahendra of Kośala (Mahākośala or the districts of Bilaspur, Raipur, and Sambhalpur).
(ii) Vyāghrāja of Mahākāntāra (perhaps the wild tracts of Gondwana?).
(iii) Mantarāja of Korāla (Korāda in South India; or the Sonpur region, its capital being Yayātina-gari on the Mahānadi).
(iv) Mahendra of Piṣṭapura (modern Piṭhāpuram in the Godāvari district).
(v) Svāmīdatta of Koṭṭūra on the hill (Kothoor in the Ganjam district). According to another interpretation, the passage "Piṣṭapuraka-Mahendra-giri-Kauṭṭuraka-Svāmīdatta" signifies "Svāmīdatta who had his seat at Pīṭapur and at

3 Dr. Jayaswal regarded Balavarman as "the second or abhīṣaka (coronation) name of Kalyāṇavarman," ruler of Pāṭaliputra, who is mentioned in the Kauṭṭaka-Mahottava, but is "left unnamed in verse 7" of the Allahabad Pillar inscription (J. B. O. R. S., March-June, 1933, p. 121). Mr. K. N. Dikshit (Proc. 11th Or. Conf., 1940, Vol. I, p. cxxiv), however, identifies Balavarman with an ancestor of Bāskaravarman of Assam, mentioned in a Nidhanpur inscription (Ep. Ind., XII, pp. 73, 76).

Koṭṭūra near Mahendragiri." But it may be questioned, as not more than one stronghold has been mentioned in case of each king in the inscription.

(vi) Damana of Erāṇḍapalla (Erāṇḍapalli, near Chickle in the Ganjam district).

(vii) Viṣṇugopa of Kāṇcī (Conjeeveram, near Madras).

(viii) Nilarāja of Avamukta: The Hāthigumpha inscription indicates that Pithūnda, near Godāvari, was the capital of the Āva country or people.

(ix) Hastivarman of Venji (Peḍḍa-vegi in Ellore).

(x) Ugrasena of Pālakka (Nellore district).

(xi) Kubera of Devarāṣṭra (Yellamaṇcili in the Vizagapatam district).

(xii) Dhananājaya of Kusthalapura (Kuṭṭalur in North Arcot).

According to the identifications, given above, Samudragupta’s campaigns were limited to the eastern coast of the Dekkan. There is, however, nothing to support Prof. Jouveau-Dubreuil’s suggestion that the invader was defeated by a confederacy of the southern kings under the leadership of Viṣṇugopa of Kāṇcī, and that Samudragupta was forced to retreat homeward posthaste. On the other hand, if we accept the identifications, proposed by Fleet and Smith, of Korāla, Erāṇḍapalla, Pālakka, and Devarāṣṭra with Kerala (Malabar coast), Erandol in Khandesh, Pālghat or Pālakkadu, and Mahārāṣṭra respectively, Samudragupta must have advanced as far as the Cēra kingdom in the extreme south and returned to his capital by way of Mahārāṣṭra and Khāndesh.

The military activities of Samudragupta overawed the tribes and the frontier kings, who accordingly "gratified his imperious commands by paying all kinds of taxes, obeying his orders and coming to do homage."

1 Ancient History of the Deccan (1920), p. 61.
2 cf. "सूबेकर्मशाक्तिप्रशासनमनस्तिदीनित्वमप्रशास्तिकर्मशास्त्र"
Among the frontier (pratyanta) states were:

(i) Śamata (south-eastern Bengal; its capital was Karmānta or Bād-Kama, near Comillā).
(ii) Davāka (Paśca; or the hill tracts of Chittagong and Tipper... Vincent Smith, however, identifies it with the modern districts of Bogra, Dinajpur and Rajshahi; and Mr. K. L. Barua with the Kopili valley in Assam).
(iii) Kāmarūpa (Assam).
(iv) Nepāla (Nepal).
(v) Kartripura (compare Katuriāraj of Kumaon, Garhwal, and Rohilkhand; or Kartarpur in the Jalandhar district, as suggested by Fleet and Allān).

The tribes, which submitted to Samudragupta of their own accord, are named as follows:

(i) Mālavas: They are identical with the Malloi of the classical writers. By the end of the first century A.D. they migrated from the Punjab to Rajputana, and ultimately settled in the region called Malwa after them.
(ii) Ārjunāyanas: They were probably settled in the eastern part of Jaipur and Alwar states.
(iii) Yaudheyas: They lived in northern Rajputana. Their name still survives in Johiāwār—a tract on the confines of the Bahawalpur State.8
(iv) Madrakas: They were to the north of the Yaudheyas, and their capital was Śākala or Sialkot.
(v) Abhiras: Their territory (Ahirwāda) was between the Pārvatī and Betwā rivers in Central

2 The Yaudheyas are mentioned in an inscription discovered at Bijayagadh, near Bayānā, in the Bharatpur State (C.I.I., III, no. 18, pp. 251-12). The author of the Brihat-Samhita places both the Ārjunāyana and the Yaudheya in the northern division of India.
CONQUESTS : FOREIGN RELATIONS

India.1 

(vi) Prājūnas: Their seat of power was either Narsingpur or Narsingarh in C.P.

(vii) Sanakānikas: They were near Bhilsa. A Sanakānika feudatory of Candragupta II is mentioned in an Udayagiri inscription (Fleet's no. 3).

(viii) Kākas: They were the neighbours of the Sanakānikas.

(ix) Kharapārikas: Perhaps they occupied the Damoh district, C.P., and were identical with the Kharparas of the Batihagarh inscription,2 as pointed out by Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar.3

Degrees of conquests.

The foregoing account shows that Samudragupta's conquests were of varying degrees. He forcibly extirpated certain kings, and annexed their dominions; others were vanquished, taken prisoners, and set free after an acknowledgement of suzerainty; and, lastly, the frontier monarchs and the tribes, being impressed by his victories, paid him homage of their own accord.

Relations with foreign powers

Thus, Samudragupta made himself master of an extensive empire, but beyond the sphere of his direct authority were the foreign potentates, who were no less anxious to be on good terms with him. We learn from a Chinese source4 that his Ceylonese contemporary, Meghavanna or Meghavarna (352-79 A.D.), sent two monks to Bodhgaya on a religious mission. Meeting

---

1 Some, however, locate the Abhiras in Saurāstra and Guja-
2 Ep. Ind., XII, pp. 46, 47, v. 3.
with little or no hospitality there, they complained to the king on their return home that they could not obtain even a suitable accommodation. Meghavarna then sent a formal embassy with rich gifts to Samudragupta seeking his permission to build a monastery at that sacred site for the use of Ceylonese pilgrims. The request was, of course, granted, and soon there grew up a magnificent structure, which was known as the Mahabodhi Sangharama in the time of Yuan Chwang. The Allahabad pillar inscription further informs us that the Daivaputra-Sahi-Sahanausahi, the Saka-Murudos as well as the people of Sinhala and other islands, “purchased peace by self-surrender, bringing presents of maidens, the application of charters, stamped with the Garuda seal, confirming them in the enjoyment of their territories.”1 Although such claims savour of rhodomontade, it appears nevertheless that the above mentioned powers were profoundly struck with the expanding fame and influence of Samudragupta, and, therefore, they thought it prudent to enlist his friendship and favour. They were evidently the representatives of the Kushans and the Sakas, who had formerly held sway over a large portion of India. It is, however, difficult to identify them definitely, or even to analyse the Sanskrit compound words. The title Daivaputra-Sahi-Sahanausahi was originally adopted by the great Kushan emperors and after the disintegration of the empire it was divided among the princes of the smaller states according to their status. Thus, the Devaputra was perhaps located in the Punjab, and the Sahi or Sahasaunausahi ruled Afghanistan and the adjoining lands. Similarly, the term

1 cf. “प्राचीनवासाहित्यावली तथासाहित्यावली: रेणुकाननननारण्यनामस्वरूपसुन्दरपुस्तिकानामनाथप्रसादस्वरूपनाथस्वरूपसुन्दरपुस्तिकानामनाथप्रसादस्वरूपनाथस्वरूपनाथस्वरूपनाथस्वरूप...”

Were the people of the Malay Archipelago meant by the “dwellers of other islands”?
Saka-Muruṇḍaś denotes either two separate ethnic types, or simply “lords of the Sakas,” if taken as one word.

The Aṣṭamedha sacrifice

Samudragupta is represented in the inscriptions of his successors to have revived the horse-sacrifice, which had long been in abeyance (“cīrotannāṭsvamedhā-śartuḥ”). It must have been performed at the conclusion of his fighting days, and after the incision of the Allahabad pillar inscription, as it is not mentioned therein. He distributed large sums in charity during this ceremony, and to commemorate it he issued gold coins, showing a horse standing before a sacrificial post (yūpa) on the obverse, and on the reverse the queen and the legend “Aṣṭamedhāparākramaḥ.”

His personal accomplishments

Samudragupta was a versatile genius. He was proficient not only in war, but also in the sacred lore (Sāstras). Himself highly cultured, he was fond of the company of the learned. He is called “kaviṛāja”, which shows that he was a poet of no mean order. Besides, he cultivated the sister art of music, and his attainments in this direction are confirmed by certain coins depicting him sitting on a high-backed couch and playing on the lute (vina). The Allahabad pillar inscription also says that Samudragupta “put to shame


2 We may, however, recall here that the Bhāṣāśivas, Pravarasena I Vākṣaṇa, and other kings had celebrated the Aṣṭamedha not very long before Samudragupta. Does the expression signify that it was restored by the latter as a full detailed Imperial rite? (see Dr. S. K. Aiyangar, Studies in Gupta History, pp. 44-45).

the preceptor of the lord of the gods (i.e., Brihaspati) by his sharp and polished intellect and. Tumburu and Narada by lovely performances of music."\(^1\)

His Religion

We learn from the Allahabad pillar inscription that the kings of the north-west asked for Samudragupta's charters, stamped with the Garuḍa seal. As Garuḍa is the bearer (vāhana) of Viṣṇu, it is clear that Samudragupta was specially devoted to this god. But his Viṣṇavism was by no means inconsistent with militarism—the true ideal of a Kṣatriya.

Date of his death

The exact year of Samudragupta's death is nowhere recorded, but there is no doubt he had a long reign. The earliest known date of Candragupta II being 380 A.D. according to a newly discovered inscription at Mathurā,\(^2\) we may tentatively assume that Samudragupta ruled until about 375 A.D.

Rāmagupta

Samudragupta had several sons (cf. bahu-putra-pautra, C.I.I., III, no. 2, pp. 20-21), and one of them named Rāma (Sarma?) gupta is believed to have succeeded him. The latter is mentioned in a lost drama by Viśākhadatta, entitled Devī-Candraguptam, fragments of which are preserved in the Nāṭya-darpana, a work on dramaturgy by Rāmacandra and Gunacandra. Rāmagupta was a cowardly ruler, and it is alleged that in response to the Śaka king's demand he agreed to surrender even his wife, Dhruvadevi. But her honour was saved

---

\(^1\) cf. "विसिदकौदित्याज्ञानिकृतसत्तातितैतेजिनिदित्याज्ञानिकृतिस्मृतिगुणमयोत्तमार्यादाः" विज्ञानविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽविद्वानोपाध्यायेऽवि

\(^2\) See Infra.
owing to the intervention of her husband’s brother, Candragupta, who in the guise of a woman killed the Saka ruler. Candragupta then did away with Rāmagupta too, and ascended the throne of Pātāliputra with Dhruvadevi as his queen amidst the plaudits of the people. Echoes of this story also come from Bāna’s Harsacarita, the commentary on it by Saṅkarārya, and some other later authorities like the Śrīnāra-Prahaṣa of Bhoja, the Sanījan Plates of Amoghavarṣa, and the Mujmalut-Tauvarīkh. Despite these evidences, the historicity of Rāmagupta is still a matter of controversy among scholars. It is argued that the above traditions are late and have hardly any air of reality; and the absence of Rāmagupta’s coins as well as the complete silence of the Gupta records about him, no doubt, lend further weight to this scepticism.

Candragupta II Vikramādiya (c. 375-414 A.D.)

Accession

Candragupta, usually designated Candragupta II Vikramādiya to distinguish him from his grand-father, was Samudragupta’s son by Dattadevi. Whether we take him as the immediate successor of his craven brother Rāmagupta, or of his father, as the expression “tapari-grihitah,” suggests, Candragupta must have been a man of mature years, when he ascended the throne some time between 375 and 380 A.D.

2 Elliot and Dowson, History of India, I, pp. 110-11.
3 Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar’s attempt (Mādhavī Comp. Commemoration Volume, 1934, pp. 204-66) to attribute the Kāca coins to Rāmagupta is not at all convincing. See ibid., pp. 206-11 for citations of original passages. On Rāmagupta, see also J.B.O.R.S., June, 1928, pp. 223-35; March-June, 1929, pp. 114-141; March, 1932, pp. 17-36, etc.
5 The earliest known date of Candragupta II is G.E. 6t
Position of the empire

Candragupta II was spared the difficult task of building up an empire. It had already been successfully accomplished by the military genius of his father, Samudragupta, who had annexed many territories in Aryavarta, overawed the frontier kings and tribes into submission, and made the independent powers of the North-west seek his friendship. But the Western satraps were still holding their own, and, except for a temporary eclipse by the Vakātakas, continued to be an important factor in contemporary politics.

The Vakātaka alliance

With a view to pursuing his schemes vigorously against the Sakas, Candragupta II gave the hand of his daughter, Prabhāvatī, born of Kuberanāgā, a Nāga princess, to Rudrasena II Vakātaka. This matrimonial alliance was a masterstroke of diplomacy as the Vakātaka Mahārāja “occupied a geographical position in which he could be of much service or disservice to the northern invader of the dominions of the Saka satraps.”

The Saka campaign

Having organised a strong force, Candragupta II himself advanced against the Saka ruler of Western India. An inscription at Udayagiri, near Bhilsa, recording the dedication of a cave to Sambhu (Śiva) by his minister for peace and war, named Sāba-Virasena, gives us a clue to Candragupta’s line of march, as the former is said to have gone there “accompanied by the king in person, who was seeking to conquer the whole world.”

1 J.R.A.S., 1914, p. 325.
Unhappily the epigraph is undated, otherwise we should have known the actual year of Candragupta's conflict with the Sakas. But we can fix it approximately with the help of the coins. The latest issues of the Western Kṣatrapas are those of Rudrasimha III, dated in the year 319 = 388-97 A.D. Now, Candragupta II started a silver currency in close imitation of that of the Kṣatrapas after the occupation of their territory. The earliest date on these coins is 90 or 90x = 409 or 409-413 A.D. We may, therefore, reasonably suppose that the conquest took place some time between 395 and 400 A.D. An allusion to this event occurs in Bana's Harṣacarita, although according to its testimony Candragupta II killed his adversary by stratagem and not in an open fight. For it transmits the "scandalous tradition" that "in his enemy's city the king of the Sakas, while courting another man's wife, was butchered by Candragupta concealed in his mistress' dress."

Results of the war

The defeat of Rudrasimha III not only resulted in the annexation of the fertile and rich regions of Malwa, Gujarat, and Saurashtra (Kathiawad) by the victor, but it also brought the Gupta empire into direct touch with the western sea-ports. This gave a tremendous impetus to overseas commerce, and along with it there was a free flow of ideas, to and from, foreign lands. Inland trade, too, grew with the establishment of a supreme government over the greater part of Northern India, as merchants could now transport goods right across the country without having to pay customs duties at the

---

3 Candragupta II died about this year.
4 See also J. Allan, Con. Sh. Hist. Ind., p. 95.
5 Ht.C.T., p.194. cf. श्रीमपुरुष ब परकल्नकर्मके कामिनीविषयस्वत्सन गुप्त: सकलसिस्मतविषयम् ॥
frontiers of each petty state on the way. Previously, these levies hampered business a good deal; they raised the prices of articles and left little margin for profits to manufacturers and tradesmen. The most important entrepot at that time was Ujjain, where converged trade routes from different directions. It also enjoyed pre-eminence as a religious and political centre, and was indeed made the second capital of the Gupta empire after Candragupta’s western conquests.

Who was king Candra?

An inscription on the Iron Pillar, which stands near Kurub-Minar (Delhi), not far from the village of Mehrauli, records the exploits of a king named Candra. He is said to have vanquished a combination of his enemies in Vanga (Bengal); perfumed the Southern ocean by “the breezes of his prowess;” and overcome the Vahlkas, traversing the seven mouths, i.e., tributaries of the river Indus (i.e., the Punjab). Thus having “acquired supreme sovereignty in the world” (aikādhībhāja), he ruled “for a long time” (sastrat). The identification of this Candra has unfortunately been a frequent source of controversy among scholars. But if he is identical with

1 According to Varihamihira, the Vahlkas were a northern people. Some scholars identify them with the Bahlkas of the Punjab (Basak, History of North-Eastern India, p. 14, n. 12), and others with the people of Balkh. It has sometimes even been suggested that the term Vahlka was used in a general sense to signify a body of foreign invaders, like the Pahlavas, Yavanas, etc. (see Allan, C.C.G.D., Introd., p. xxi).  

2 cf. “सङ्कराटेजः श्रीधरमसा शनानमेलोभाष्या-  
स्नृथाध्यायवतिन्द्रविषितिला ब्रजेन कैतितुये।  
धिङ्गी संसोवानि नेन सनरे शिक्षित्विता शालिका  
स्नायायायणवस्ते अल्लिनिश्चयवाणिन्द्रादितिः।”  

3 R. G. Basak (History of North-Eastern India, pp. 13-18) and Fleet (C.I.I., III, Introd., p. 12) identify Candra with Candragupta I;
Candragupta II, as seems quite probable, we have then definite evidence that the Gupta monarch firmly established his supremacy in Bengal, and destroyed the remnants of the Saka and the Kushan power in the northwest, a task which Samudragupta could accomplish only partially.

**Fa-hian's itinerary (399-414 A.D.)**

During the reign of Candragupta II, the celebrated pilgrim, Fa-hian, came overland from China to India, enduring the hardships and dangers of the Gobi Desert and the mountainous tracts of Khotan, the Pamirs, Swat, and Gandhāra. Reaching Peshawar, he made a detour across the hills to the north and the west, entered the Punjab, passed on to places like Mathurā, Sāmāqāla, Kānauj, Śrāvasti, Kapilavastu, Kuśinagara, Vaiśālī, Pātaliputra, Kāśi, etc. He then proceeded to Tāmralipti (Tamluk, Midnapur district), where he embarked for Ceylon and Java on his voyage homeward.¹ Fa-hian was, no doubt, so engrossed in his quest for Buddhist manuscripts and relics that he did not even care to note the name of the emperor, in whose dominions he spent several happy years. But occasionally the pilgrim persuaded himself to write about the life of the people and the general condition of the country. Let us now consider what information we obtain from these incidental observations.

**Pātaliputra**

Fa-hian stayed in the Imperial city of Pātaliputra

Vincent Smith believes Candra is the same as Candragupta II (J. R. A. S., 1897, pp. 1-38); R. D. Banerji (Ep. Ind., XIV, pp. 367-71) and H. F. Sāstri (Ibid., XII, pp. 315-22; XIII, p. 133) equate Candra with Candravārman; whereas Dr. Raychandhuri takes Candra to be identical with either Sadā-Candra or Candrāthā, "preferably the latter" (Pol. Hist. Arm. Ind., 4th ed., p. 449, n. 1).

¹ See Fo-kwe-ki (The Travels of Fa-hian), Beal, *Buddhist Records of the Western World*, pp. xxiii-xxv.
for three years, learning Sanskrit. He mentions that it had two "imposing and elegant" monasteries—one of the Hinayāna and the other of the Mahāyāna—tenanted by six or seven hundred monks, whose learned expositions of the Law and disciplined life attracted seekers after knowledge from all parts of India. He felt amazed to see the splendour of Aśoka’s palace, which was extant at the time of his visit to Pātaliputra, and was reputed to have been the work of superhuman agency. The wealth and prosperity of Magadha deeply impressed the pilgrim, and he says with admiration that its inhabitants "vied with one another in the practice of benevolence and righteousness." They organised a grand procession of richly adorned images of the Buddha and Bodhisattvas every year on the eighth day of the second month. These figures were carried on "perhaps twenty cars," all constructed according to a certain pattern, but differently painted and decorated. Fa-hian also testifies that "the heads of the Vaiśya families establish houses for dispensing charity and medicines." There was an excellent hospital, endowed by nobles and householders, in the capital where the poor and destitute patients were supplied food and medicine free according to their needs. Besides, rest-houses existed in large towns as well as on highways for the comforts of travellers.¹

**State of Society**

The pilgrim’s account gives us some glimpses of the social conditions in Madhyadeśa. It appears the bulk of the people were vegetarian, and followed the principle of *Ahimsā*. They had "no shambles or wine-shops in their market-places." They do not keep’ pigs and fowls, nor do they eat onions and

garlic, nor drank wine—a feature which may hearten modern temperance reformers. The Čaṇḍālas were regarded as social outcasts, being the only persons "to go hunting and deal in flesh." They lived away from the people, and when they approached a city or market they had to strike a piece of wood, so that other folk might avoid coming in contact with them. Truly, this savours of untouchability, which is still an ugly blot on Hinduism.

Religious condition

Fa-hian came to India with the set purpose of collecting Buddhist manuscripts, and of visiting the sites hallowed by the memory of the Buddha. Naturally, therefore, he speaks more enthusiastically about Buddhism and the ramifications of the Saṁgha. It appears from his description that the faith was "flourishing" in the Punjab and Bengal, and that it was gradually gaining ground in Mathurā, where he noticed twenty establishments. But it was by no means popular in Madhyadesa, for in each of its principal towns the pilgrim saw just one or two monasteries only, and sometimes even none. Here Brahmanism predominated, and the king was himself a devout Vaishnava (Paramabhiṣṇavan). The relations between the "Brahman heretics" and the Buddhists were generally cordial, and nowhere is there any hint of persecution of any religion. Indeed, we learn from inscriptions that some of the high officers of Candragupta II, like Śāka-Virasena and Āmra-kārāda, were Śaiva and Buddhist in their persuasions.8

1 This is, however, to be taken with a grain of salt.

8 Ibid., ch. xvi, p. xxxvii.

* An Udayagiri inscription records that Candragupta II's minister of peace and war, named Śāka-Virasena, excavated a cave to serve as a sanctuary of the deity Śiva (C.I.I., III, no. 6, pp. 34-36). Similarly, another inscription at Śāñchī says that Āmrama-kārāda, a general in Candragupta II's army, made a gift of 25 akṣaras
Administration

Fa-hian refers favourably to the temperate climate and administration of the Middle kingdom, i.e., the territories of Candragupta II. The people were prosperous and free from poll-tax or from the shackles of overgovernment. They "had not to register their households or attend to any magistrates and their rules." The king did not impose any restrictions on the movements of his subjects. "If they desire to go, they go: if they like to stop they stop."\(^1\) The criminal law was mild as compared to the Chinese system of the day. Offenders were fined, lightly or heavily, according to the nature of their crimes, and corporal punishments were not inflicted. It is interesting to learn that capital penalty was not awarded then, and even persons guilty of treason suffered only amputation of the right hand. The picture, however, appears to be more idealistic than realistic.

The mainstay of finance was the land revenue, amounting to a certain portion of the produce or its cash value. The royal officers were regularly paid fixed salaries. Cowrie shells formed the ordinary currency for smaller transactions, but gold "suvarnas" and "dināras", mentioned in inscriptions, were also in free circulation.

It is thus clear from the above remarks of the pilgrim that the government of Candragupta II was efficient and well organised. The people enjoyed the blessings of peace, and Fa-hian travelled through Northern India without meeting with any mishap. While the conditions in general were so satisfactory, decay and desolation had overtaken some localities, like Gayā Kuśinagara, Kapilavastu, Srāvasti, which were once

\(^1\) Fa-hsien's, Bell's Trans., ch. xvi, p. xxxvii.
busy centres of life.

Epigraphic evidence

We must also glean a few facts from the Basārīh seals\(^1\) and other inscriptions about the working of Candragupta’s empire. The king ruled with the advice and assistance of his ministers (mantris), whose office was often hereditary.\(^2\) Some of them combined both civil and military functions, and they accompanied the sovereign to the battle-field. The empire was divided for the sake of administrative convenience into several provinces (detas or bhūkśitas) under governors (Uparika Mahārājas or Gopatās), often princes of the blood royal; and next, there were the districts (vīsāyas) and their subdivisions. The provincial and local governments were carried on by a regular bureaucracy, and the Basārīh seals give us the designations of a number of such offices, e.g., Kumārāmātāya (counsellor of a prince; or literally, one who was a minister since boyhood); Mahādanda-nāyaka (chief commandant); Vinaya-yatīthi-sīhāpaka (censor?); Mahā-pratīhāra (chamberlain); Bhapāṭāvapaṭi (lord of the infantry and the cavalry); Danda-pratīdhibhārā (office of the police chief), etc. It appears from the Damodarapura copper-plates that the head of a district (vīsayapati) was directly responsible to the provincial governor, and was described as “tāmiyuktaka.” “He had his headquarters in an “Adhikārāna,” where the office (“Adhikārāna”) was located. He was assisted by a council comprising representitives of the principal local interests of the times, viz., the chief Sēth or

---

2 The Udayagiri inscription (C.I.L., III, no. 6, pp. 54-56) describes Śāba-Virasena, Candragupta II’s minister of peace and war, as “anvayaprāpta-Sācīyo vyāpta-Sandhi-Vigrahah.” Similarly, the Kārāmānta inscription (Ep. Ind., X, pp. 70 ff) refers to Kumāragupta I’s minister, Prithivisenā, whose father, Śikhara-
svāmin, was himself a minister under Candragupta II.
banker (nagara-streṣṭhin), chief merchant (sārthavāha), chief artisan (prathama kulīka), and the chief scribe (prathama kājastha). But we do not know if they formed merely an advisory body, or any specific duties were entrusted to them. Among other important functionaries were the record-keepers (puttapāla), who were kept informed of the title to all lands. Indeed, the authorities sanctioned "land sales only after these record-keepers had, on receipt of application from purchasers, determined the title to the land under proposal of transfer and sent in their report to the Government." As before, the lowest unit of administration was the village (grāma), which was under the headman (grāmika). With the help of the pañcamandali or pañciyat consisting of the village elders (grāmaviddhas), he maintained peace and security within his jurisdiction.

Family

Besides Kuveranāgā, referred to already, Candragupta had another wife named Dhruvadevi or Dhruvasvāmini. He had at least two sons—Kumāragupta I and Govindagupta; the latter was Candragupta II's Viceroy at Vaisālī.

Titles

The inscriptions apply to Candragupta II the epithets of Parama-bhāgavata and Mahārājādhirāja-Sri-Bhaṭṭāraka. On the coins he assumes the high-sounding titles of Vikramāditya, Vikramānka, Narendra-candra, Simha-Vikrama, Simha-Candra, etc. He bore the name Devarāja also. In some of the Vākāṭaka inscriptions he is called Devagupta.

1 Ep. Ind., XV, p. 128.
Kumāragupta I Mahendrāditya (414-35 A.D.)

Date of Accession

According to the Sāñchi inscription (no. 5) Candragupta II was ruling in the Gupta year 93 = 412-13 A.D., whereas the Bilsad inscription (no. 10), dated G.E. 96 = 415 A.D., belongs to the time of his son and successor Kumāragupta (I) whose mother was queen Dhruvadevi. We may, therefore, suppose that the sceptre changed hands about 414 A.D.

His power

Not much is known of Kumāragupta’s career, but the number and variety of his coins, as well as the wide distribution of the inscriptions of his reign, indicate that he maintained the strength and unity of the empire, which extended from Bengal to Saurāstra and from the Himālayas to the Narmadā. Bandhuvarman then ruled Daśapura (Mandasor, Western Malwa) as Kumāragupta’s feudatory; Cirātadatta was governor of North Bengal (Paundravardhānā-bhukti); and Ghaṭotkacagupta held charge of the Atrikīna or Eran region (Saugor district, C. P.)

The Aśvamedha sacrifice

Certain gold coins of Kumāragupta I prove that he performed the Aśvamedha sacrifice. Unhappily, inscriptions do not throw any light on his conquests, but it may be safely said that he could not have indulged in this Imperial celebration without having won some successes in war.

The Puyamitra war

We learn from the Bhitari pillar inscription that

1 The numbers refer to Fleet’s C.I.I., Vol. III.
the last years of Kumāragupta I were seriously disturbed owing to the invasion of the Puṣyamitrās, who had "developed great power and wealth."1 Kumāragupta I himself could not take up arms against them—perhaps on account of old age or illness, and he, therefore, sent his crown-prince, Skandagupta, to avert the danger. The latter rose equal to the occasion, and after a hard struggle, in which he had to spend a whole night "on a couch that was the bare earth", he retrieved the fallen fortunes of his family.2

Religious condition

Like his predecessors, Kumāragupta I was a tolerant ruler. During his protracted reign numerous endowments for the maintenance of alms-houses (sattras) and temples were made. We also hear of the installation of the images of the Buddha and Pārśva; and among Brahmanical gods the most popularly venerated were the Sun, Śiva, Viṣṇu, and Kārtikeya, whose worship was now growing into special favour. Indeed, it appears from certain gold and silver coins of Kumāragupta I that his object of adoration was Kārtikeya rather than Viṣṇu.3

1 C.I.I., III, pp. 34, 35. cf. “समृद्धिवस्तुकृष्णा...”. Fleet placed the Puṣyamitrās somewhere along the banks of the Narmadā (Ind. Ant., 1889, p. 228). The Viṣṇu Purāṇa associates the Puṣyamitrās with the region of Mekala, near the source of the Narmadā (IV, 24, 17; Pol. Hist. Anc. Ind., 4th ed., p. 479). Mr. Divekar, on the other hand, suggests the reading: “Yuddhayamitrāṁśca” (A. B. R. I., 1919—20, pp. 99-103). If this is accepted, do the amitrās, then, refer to Skandagupta’s internal enemies?

2 cf. "विष्णुपुराणानि..." "समृद्धिवस्तुकृष्णांश्च..."


SKANDAGUPTA KRAMĀDITYYA

Skandagupta Kramāditya (435-67 A.D.)

Initial troubles

It appears that during the progress of the Puṣya-
mitra war Kumāragupta I died, for when Skandagupta
gained victory over his enemies he went to announce it
to his living mother "just as Kṛṣṇa did to Devaki."
Indeed, the Bhūtari pillar inscription explicitly says
that soon after this conflict Skandagupta "placed his left
foot on the royal foot-stool", i.e., ascended the throne.
But the course of his reign was not destined to run
smooth.

Hūṇa Invasions

Close upon the heels of the engagement with the
Puṣyamitrās followed a greater menace to the safety
of the empire; this was the onrush of the nomadic
Hūṇas, who at this time began to pour down the
north-western passes like an irresistible torrent. At first,
Skandagupta succeeded in stemming the tide of their ad-
vance into the interior in a sanguinary contest, but the
repeated attacks of these savage hordes eventually under-
mind the stability of the Gupta dynasty. If the Hūṇas
of the Bhūtari pillar inscription are identified with the
Mlecchas of the Junāgadh rock inscription, Skandagupta
must have defeated them before the Gupta year 138=

* cf. "नितानान् दिव्यभृते विस्तुताः वंशलक्षणम्
"नवनलविविष्ठारियाः प्रविठाय मयः"
*"निजरूपति परिरोधान् गात्मा सार्वजनिकायम्
हिन्दुशक्रिया इत्योऽद्वैतकमस्यपश्च"
* "नितानान्तरं निरूपस्तेयवंस्मितो नामगः"
My translation materially differs from Fleet's.
* "हृषिकेश संभवतस्मि समरे बीमारिः परा कृषिता भीमावर्तक्रमम्
(C.J.I., III, pp. 34, 35)
457-58 A.D., the last date mentioned in the latter record. Saurashtra seems to have been the weakest point of his empire, and he was hard put to it in ensuring its protection against the attacks of his enemies. We learn that he had to deliberate for “days and nights” in order to select the proper person to govern those regions. The choice, at last, fell on Parānadalatā, whose appointment made the king “easy at heart.”

The Sudarśana lake

Another great event of Skandagupta’s reign was the restoration of the embankment of the Sudarśana lake, which had burst with excessive rain-fall. It had a long history behind. Candragupta Maurya first built a reservoir of water by damming a mountain stream, and the irrigational sluices were supplied during the time of Aśoka. In the year (Saka) 72 = 130 A.D., Rudradāman repaired the damages caused by a severe storm. Breaches again occurred in the embankment in G.E. 136 = 456 A.D. and Parānadalatā’s son, Cakrapālita, who was governor of Gimar, rebuilt it of solid masonry at an “immeasurable cost.” To commemorate the successful completion of the work, a temple of the god Cakrabhrīt or Viṣṇu was constructed in G.E. 138 = 458 A.D. No traces of the lake or of the temple are found now.

Religion

Skandagupta was himself a devout Vaiṣṇava, but he continued the tolerant policy of his predecessors.

1 Junagadh inscription of Rudradāman, Ep. Ind., VIII, pp. 36-49.
The people followed the noble example of their sovereign. The Kahaum inscription (no. 15),\(^1\) for instance, records the erection of five stone images of the Jain Tirthanikarata by one Madra, who is described as "full of affection for Brahmans, religious preceptors, and ascetics." Similarly, the Indor plate (no. 16)\(^2\) registers a gift by a certain Brahman for the maintenance of a lamp in a Sun temple built by two Kṣatriyas at Indrapura (Indor, Bulandshahr district). The donor made a permanent deposit with the local guild of oil-men (tayika-śrenil), who were to provide oil for the lamp daily out of its interest "without diminishing its original value."

**Titles**

Skandagupta's usual title was "Kramāditya". On some of his silver coins he bears the more famous title of "Vikramāditya" as well. It may incidentally be noted here that in the Kahaum inscription he is called "kṣiitipasaṭapatiḥ" or "lord of a hundred kings."

**Date**

According to the silver coins, the last known dates of Kumāragupta I and Skandagupta are respectively 455 and 467 A.D. Presumably, therefore, these two limits represent the duration of Skandagupta's reign.

**The Later Emperors**

The Gupta dynasty, no doubt, continued its existence after the death of Skandagupta, but its greatness appears to have departed. He was succeeded in about 467 A.D. by his brother or half-brother, Puragupta, born of Anantadevi. The latter's name has been recovered

\(^1\) C.I.I., III, pp. 67-68.
\(^2\) Ibid., pp. 68-72.
from the Bhilari seal inscription, which, curiously enough, omits to mention Skandagupta in the genealogical list. This has led some scholars to believe that the two brothers were on terms of enmity, and that there was a partition of the empire between them after a fratricidal fight. The theory is, however, altogether untenable, since such omissions are by no means rare in ancient Indian epigraphic documents, and the available evidence conclusively proves that Skandagupta was a powerful monarch ruling over the entire Gupta dominions. On his coins Puragupta assumes the title, “Sri-Vikramah”, and in the opinion of Hoernle those pieces, which have the legend “Prakasadiya” on the reverse, are also to be attributed to him. It is difficult to determine with precision the extent of his kingdom or the duration of his reign.

Narasiṃhagupta

Puragupta’s successor was his son, Narasiṃhagupta, by Vatsadevi. He bore the epithet, Bālāditya, but he was not identical with the famous conqueror of the Hūnas, as is commonly supposed. Narasiṃhagupta’s rule was probably very brief.

Kumāragupta II

Narasiṃhagupta was followed by Kumāragupta, his son by Mahālakṣmīdevi. He is called Kumāragupta II to distinguish him from his great-grandfather. He was “protecting the earth” in G.E. 154=473-74 A.D., if we identify him with Kumāragupta of the Sarnath inscription. It was in his time (Mālava

1 J.A.S.B., 1889, pp. 84-103.
BUDHAGUPTA: BHĂNUGUPTA

Sāvant 529—472-73 A.D.) that a guild of silk-weavers repaired the temple of the Sun at Daśapura, originally constructed in Mālava Era 493—436-37 A.D. during the reign of Kumāragupta I.¹

Budhagupta

According to another epigraph from Sarnath, Budhagupta was on the throne in G. E. 157—476-77 A.D.² His accession may, therefore, be dated a year or so earlier. This shows that all the three rulers, whose names have been revealed to us by the Bhutari seal inscription, had very short reigns covering a period of about eight years only. What Budhagupta’s relation was to this group is not clear. Yuan Chwang states that he was a son to Sakrāditya, and as in Sanskrit Sakra and Mahendra are synonyms of Indra, Budhagupta may have been a son of Kumāragupta I, who adopted the epithet Mahendrāditya. The inscriptions, discovered at Damodarapur (Dinajpur district),³ Sarnath (Benares district), and Eran (Saugar district, C.P.)⁴ demonstrate that Budhagupta’s authority was acknowledged all over the country from Bengal to Central India. At that time North Bengal was under his Viceroy, Brahmadatta and Jayadatta; Eastern Malwa was governed by Mahārāja Mātrivisnu; and a feudatory Mahārāja, Surasenicandra, was in charge of the territory between the Kālindi (Yamunā) and the Narmādā.

Bhānu Gupta

Budhagupta must have ceased ruling shortly after G.E. 195=494-95 A.D., which is his last date known from the coins (silver). He was perhaps succeeded by

² Ibid., no. XVI, pp. 125-26.
³ Ep. Ind., XV, pl. no. 3 and 4, pp. 134-141.
Bhānugupta, although their relation is uncertain. During the latter’s reign, the Hūnas wrested Malwa from the Guptas, for whereas Mātriviṣṇu was a vassal of Budhagupta, his younger brother, Dhīnayāviṣṇu, acknowledged the sovereignty of Toramāṇa. The Eran inscription, dated G. E. 191-510 A.D., also testifies that Bhānugupta’s general, Gopārāja, died in a “very famous battle”, evidently while fighting against the Hūnas. Henceforward the Gupta power steadily declined, and except a few names from coins we know nothing about the later members of the dynasty. They ruled over a small territory, comprising parts of Bihar and Bengal only. The Imperial ties were torn asunder by the provinces, which now pursued their own devices and destinies.

The Imperial Gupta Line

Gupta (*circa* 275-300 A.D.)

Ghatotkac (c. 300-519 A.D.)

Candragupta I = Kumāradevi (319-333 A.D.)

Rāmagupta (?) Candragupta II = Dhruvadevi (c. 375-414 A.D.)

Kumāragupta I (c. 414-455 A.D.)

Skandagupta, Purugupta = Vatsadevi (c. 455-467 A.D.)

Narśihagupta = Mahālakṣmīdevi

Kumāragupta II

Budhagupta (c. 475-95 A.D.)

Bhānugupta (c. 495-510 A.D.)

Later coins give us the names of Viṣṇugupta Candrāditya,1 Vainyagupta Dvādaśāditya and others. Absolutely nothing is recorded about them or their interrelation.

1 A seal, recently discovered at Nālandā, describes Viṣṇugupta as the son of Kumāra, probably Kumāragupta II. But it is not clear when and where he ruled. I am thankful to Dr. Altckar for having drawn my attention to this seal.
CHAPTER XIII

CIVILISATION UNDER THE GUPTAS AND RISE OF NEW POWERS

SECTION A

A Glorious epoch

The period of the Imperial Guptas has often been described as the golden age of Hindu history. It comprised the reigns of a number of able, versatile and mighty monarchs, who brought about the consolidation of a large part of Northern India under "one political umbrella," and ushered in an era of orderly government and progress. Both inland and foreign trade flourished under their vigorous rule, and the wealth of the country multiplied. It was, therefore, natural that this internal security and material prosperity should find expression in the development and promotion of religion, literature, art, and science.

Religion—Brahmanism

During this epoch Brahmanism gradually came into ascendancy. This was to a large extent due to the patronage of the Gupta kings, who were staunch Brahmanists with special predilections for the worship of Vişṇu. But the wonderful elasticity and assimilative power of Brahmanism were not less important factors in its ultimate triumph. It won over the masses by giving common beliefs, practices, and aboriginal superstitions the stamp of its recognition; it strengthened its position by admitting the casteless foreign invaders within its roomy fold; and
above all, it cut the ground—so to say—from under the feet of its great rival, Buddhism, by including the Buddha among the ten Avatāras and absorbing some of his noble teachings. Thus with all these new features the aspect of Brahmanism changed into what is now called Hinduism. It was characterised by the worship of a variety of deities, the most prominent then being Viṣṇu, also known as Cakrabhūta, Gadādhara, Janārdana, Nārāyaṇa, Vasudeva, Govinda, etc. The other gods in popular favour were Śiva or Śambhu;¹ Kārtikeya;² Śūrya; and among the goddesses may be mentioned Lakṣmī, Durgā or Bhagavati, Pārvatī, etc. Brahmanism encouraged the performance of sacrifices, and the inscriptions refer to some of them, such as Āśvamedha, Vaiṣāpeya, Agniṣṭoma, Āptoryāma, Atirātra, Pañcamahāyajña, and so on.

**Buddhism**

Buddhism was beyond doubt on the downward path in Mādhyadeśa during the Gupta period, although to Fa-hian, who saw everything through Buddhist glasses, no signs of its decline were visible in the course of his wanderings. The Gupta rulers never resorted to persecution. Themselves devout Vaiśṇavas, they followed the wise policy of holding the scales even between the competing faiths. Their subjects enjoyed full liberty of conscience, and if the case of Candra-gupta’s Buddhist general, Amrakārādava, is a typical instance, the high offices of the realm were open to all irrespective of creed. Without digressing into a discussion of the causes of the decay of Buddhism, it may be pertinent to observe that its vitality was considerably sapped

¹ Śiva was also called Bhūrapati, Śūlapāni, Mahādeva, Pīnakīn, Hara, etc.
² Other names are Skanda, Svāmī-Mahāsena.
by schisms and subsequent corruptions in the Samgha. Besides, the worship of the images of the Buddha and Bodhisattvas, the growth of its pantheon, the introduction of ceremonial solemnities and religious processions, carried Buddhism so far away from its pristine purity that to the ordinary man it became almost indistinguishable from the popular phase of Hinduism. Thus the stage was well set for its eventual absorption by the latter. Even in modern times we see a striking illustration of this process of assimilation in Nepal, where, as Dr. Vincent Smith points out, “the octopus of Hinduism is slowly strangling its Buddhist victim.”

Jainism

The inscriptions testify also to the prevalence of Jainism, though it did not rise into prominence on account of its severe discipline and lack of royal patronage. There appears to have been a commendable concord between it and other religions. For a certain Madra, who dedicated five statues of the Jain Tirthankaras, describes himself as “full of affection for Brahmans and religious preceptors.”

Religious benefactions

With a view to gaining happiness and merit both in this world and the next, the pious generously endowed free boarding-houses (vattras), and gave gifts of gold or village lands (agrahārac) to Brahmans. They evinced their religious spirit also in the construction of images and temples where out of the interest on permanent deposits (aksaya-nivṛ) lights were maintained all the year round as

2 cf. the Kahaun Stone Pillar Inscription, C.I.I., III, no. 13, pp. 64-68. cf. “हिन्दुपुरुषलिपु प्रापत: प्रतिहारान्या”
a necessary part of worship. Similarly, the Buddhist and Jain benefactions took the form of installations of the statues of the Buddha and the Tirthankaras respectively. The Buddhists built monasteries also (sīhāras) for the residence of monks, who were provided with proper food and clothing.

Revival of Sanskrit

Side by side with the renovation of Brahmanism the use and influence of Sanskrit grew apace. An early stage in its revival was marked by the long Junāgadh rock inscription of Rudradāman, dated 72 (Saka?) =150 A.D., but now it was uniformly given the place of honour as the official language of epigraphic documents and coin legends.1 Even Buddhist writers of the day, like Vasubandhu and Dignāga, preferred Sanskrit to Pāli, the earlier vehicle of expression.2

Development of Literature

The Gupta period has generally been compared to the Periclean age in the history of Greece, or to the Elizabethan epoch in that of England. It was distinguished by a number of intellectual celebrities, whose contributions vastly enriched the different branches of Indian literature. The Gupta monarchs encouraged learning, and were themselves highly cultured. We have already noted the evidence of the Allahabad pillar inscription about Samudragupta’s poetical attainments and proficiency in music. Besides, the universal tradition which associates the nine gems (nava-ratnas) with the legendary Vikramāditya, shows what a profound

---

1 It is noteworthy that the short Ayodhyā inscription (Ep. Ind., XX, pp. 54-58) of the time of Pusyamitra (c. 184 B.C.-148 B.C.) is entirely in Sanskrit. It is one of the earliest known inscriptions in that language.
2 The Buddha himself did not use Sanskrit, but gave his discourses in the popular speech then current.
impression the brilliant literary coterie of Candragupta II Vikramāditya’s court created in the popular mind. Its most shining light was, of course, Kālidāsa, the famous poet and dramatist, who was perhaps a native of Malwa. Unfortunately, his date is still open to doubt, and some scholars persist in the view that he was living in 37 B.C. But there are strong grounds to believe that he flourished in the Gupta age, and that he was a contemporary of Candragupta II or Kumāragupta I. Indeed, an allusion to the conquests of the former may be detected in the exaggerated description of Raghuv’s "digvijaya" in the Raghunātha. Another epic poem by Kālidāsa is the Kumāra-sambhava, while the Ritusamīha and the Meghadūta present two excellent examples of lyrical poetry. Of his plays, we know the Mālavikāṅγumītra, Vikramorvasī and Sakuntalā, the last being so superb as to win the appreciation of the greatest literary critics of the world. Although eclipsed by the genius of Kālidāsa, there were many other poets of repute during the Gupta times. Hariśena and Vatsabhattī, contemporaries of Samudragupta and Kumāragupta II respectively, have left to us their compositions permanently incised on stone. Presumably to the same period belong Viśākha-datta, author of the Mūḍrā-rājaśa; the lexicographer Amarasimha, who wrote the Amarkosa; the celebrated physician Dhanvantari; and the great Buddhist scholars whom we have mentioned in the preceding para. Furthermore, the Brahmins now retouched and rearranged their literature in order to bring it into harmony with the feelings of their growing followers, and strengthen their hold over them. The Purānas, which

1 Nagpur University Journal, no. 1, Dec., 1939, pp. 1-22. Mr. T. J. Kedar in a learned paper on "Kālidāsa—his birthplace and date" argues that the poet flourished in the Sunga times and was perhaps a protégé of Bhāgabhada or Bhāgavata. Mr. Kedar further believes that Kālidāsa was "a resident of Malwa" and was born at Devagiri.
refer to the Gupta dynasty last of all, were recast into their present form; so also was the Manusmṛti. Other Smṛritis, like the Yājñavalkya-smṛti, and the Bhāgavas or commentaries on the Sūtras were written to give canonical sanction to the new changes that had taken place. Astronomy and Mathematics were assiduously cultivated; and Āryabhata (born in 476 A.D.), Varāhamihira (505-87 A.D.), and Brahmagupta (born in 598 A.D.) made remarkable contributions to the development of these branches of scientific literature. They appear to have been acquainted with Greek astronomy, for their works contain many Greek technical names.

Education

The intellectual output of the age shows that the system of education, then in vogue, must have been sound. Unhappily, however, our information on this topic is disappointingly meagre. According to inscriptions, the teachers were then known as Ācāryas and Āpādhyāyas, but sometimes the title of Bhaṭṭa was also applied to the learned Brahmans. They were supported by the grant of villages and the charities of the generous public. The religious disciples, called Siśyas of Brahmacārins, were grouped round Sākhās and Caranas, i.e., Vedic schools following a particular recension of any one of the Vedas. Among these recensions the inscriptions mention Maitrāyaṇīya, Taṅtirīya, Vājasneya, and several others. Regarding the subjects of study, we learn of the fourteen sections of science (caturdaśavidyā), comprising the four Vedas, six Vedāṅgas, the Purāṇas, the Mīmāṁsā, Nyāya, and Dharma or Law. There are also references to the Vyākaraṇa (Āstādhyāyī) of Sālāturīya (Pāṇini) and the Sastābhrī-sambhātā or the

1 It is, however, contended that Sākhās and Caranas were now defunct.
Mahābhārata. In addition to these, instruction must have been imparted in the large mass of secular literature.

The catholicy of the age may further be judged from the fact that Nālandā, the great centre of Buddhist learning, was founded about the middle of the fifth century A.D. by Śakrāditya, probably Kumāragupta I, who endowed a monastery there. Additional grants to the establishment were made by Budhagupta, Tathāgatagupta, Bālāditya, and other Gupta monarchs. Nālandā followed a very comprehensive curriculum of studies, and in due course it rose to such eminence that students from all parts of India, and even from beyond its frontiers, flocked here in order to satisfy their mental and spiritual thirst.

Gupta currency

The earliest gold coins of Samudragupta (or of Candragupta I?), weighing 118-122 grains, closely follow the Kushan standard and types. The influence of foreign coinage is also proved by the use in the Gupta inscriptions of the Kushan name of Dināra, derived from Latin Denarius. However, in the time of Candragupta II, whose coins are of 124 to 132 grains there began a deviation from the Kushan (Roman) weight until it was given up by Skandagupta in favour of the Hindu standard of Savarga (146 grains). After the conquest of the Kṣatrapa territories, the Guptas too issued silver coins on the Saka standard of 32 grains, which was subsequently raised by Skandagupta to that of the Kārśāpāna. It may be added that the copper coinage of the Guptas is very scarce, perhaps because small transactions were then made in cowrie-shells, as observed by Fa-hian.

Architecture

The Gupta rule gave a great impetus to architecture, although owing to a combination of causes the extant
remains of this age are not many. Most of the Gupta edifices perished owing to the ravages of nature; some of them later provided materials for the building needs of the people; others that lay in the track of the Moslem armies fell a prey to their iconoclastic fury. Our knowledge is, therefore, limited to a few-survivals only, and they too are not secular structures, but were all consecrated to religion. Dr. Vincent Smith refers to two such temples—the one at Deogarh (Jhansi district) contains fine pieces of sculpture on the panels of the walls, and the other of brick at Bhitargaon (Cawnpore district) is noted for its well-designed figures in terra-cotta.\(^1\) We may add here that the achievements of the Gupta art are further illustrated by the Ajantā caves. No doubt, they were mostly hewn and carved out of solid rock in different periods, but there are some which were perhaps excavated during the centuries under survey, and they certainly bear eloquent testimony to the skill of Gupta engineers.

**Sculpture**

The discoveries at Sarnath and other places show that the plastic art reached a high level of perfection during the Gupta age. It gradually liberates itself from Gandhāran influences, and the statues of the Buddha are now characterised by decorated haloes, close-fitting transparent garments, and peculiar arrangement of the hair. Among the numerous Gupta sculptures, found at Sarnath, the most pleasing and graceful perhaps is the seated Buddha in the preaching attitude (*dāharma-cakra-m̐r̥ṭa*). Besides depicting scenes from the Master's life, incidents from Paurānic mythology are treated with remarkable freshness. On the whole, the work of the Gupta artists is distinguished by vitality, freedom from extravagance, and exquisite technique.

Painting

In the realm of painting also a high degree of proficiency was attained, as appears from the Ajantā (Hyderabad State) caves, whose interiors were freely decorated with frescoes. They range in date from the first to the seventh century A.D., and thus some of them fall within the scope of this period. In the opinion of a learned connoisseur the work of Ajantā is "so accomplished in execution, so consistent in convention, so vivacious and varied in design, and full of such evident delight in beautiful form and colour," that one cannot help ranking it with the best art of the ancient world. The Ajantā school further extended its operations to the caves at Bāgh in the Gwalior State, and these paintings also display high merit and infinite variety.

Metal-working

The craftsmen of the Gupta age were experts in working metals. This is evident from the discovery of several colossal copper statues of the Buddha and an iron pillar at Mehrauli near Delhi. It represents the triumph of Gupta metallurgical skill, and the wonder is that in spite of exposure for centuries to sun and rain the column has not yet rusted.

Causes of activity

We have now finished our review of the civilisation of the Gupta age. Naturally, the question arises: What were the causes of this outburst of intellectual and artistic activity? According to Dr. Vincent Smith, it was "mainly due to contact with foreign civilisations."

1 See Griffiths, The Paintings of the Buddhist Caves of Ajantā, p. 7.
2 E.H.I., 4th ed., p. 324. Besides China and the Western countries, India then came into intimate touch with the Malay peninsula and islands owing to the commercial and colonising
The fact that India was then in constant communication with China and the Western world may, of course, be readily accepted. For devout pilgrims, like Fa-hian, came to the land of the Buddha in almost a regular stream; and India on her part sent out eminent sages of the type of Kumārajīva (383 A.D.) to the celestial empire on Buddhist missions. Moreover, with the extension of the Gupta dominions to the seaports of Saurāstra and Gujarāt India’s foreign trade with the West increased; and this led, it is believed, to a flow of ideas, which produced important reactions on the Indian mind. But the most potent stimulus to progress must have been the beneficent rule of Gupta Emperors who were men of catholic culture. It was largely due to their liberal patronage of art and learning that such brilliant and fruitful results followed.

**SECTION B**

**THE VĀKĀṬAKAS**

*Their importance*

One of the most powerful dynasties, ruling contemporaneously with the Guptas, was that of the Vākāṭakas. Their inscriptions and the Purāṇas testify that in the hey-day of their glory they dominated the entire country of Bundelkhand, Central Provinces, Berars, Northern Dekkan up to the sea, besides exercising suzerainty over their weaker neighbours.

*Origin and derivation of the name*

According to Dr. Jayasval, the Vākāṭakas took their rise in Bundelkhand, and they were so called from Vākāṭa, the name of a place now represented by Bāgāt in the Orcha State. It has further been suggested activities of her adventurous sons. The remains in Java, Cambodia, Sumatra and other lands bear the impress of Gupta style and architecture.

that they were Brahmans, but the evidence on this point is hardly conclusive, for the term "dvija" applied to the founder of the line in an inscription at Ajantā may as well mean that he was a Kṣatriya.

Prominent rulers of the dynasty

The first king of the house, which appears to have established its power about the last quarter of the third century A.D., was Vindhyavāsakti. His son, Pravarasena I (Pravīra of the Purāṇas), was a considerable figure, as his assumption of the title Śrīśīvīśīvīśi clearly indicates. He performed four Alvamedhas and other sacrifices like the Vaijayetaka and Bhraspati-tavā. His son, Gautamiputra, married the daughter of the Bhārasīva king, Bhavanāga, but he did not ascend the throne. The next ruler was Pravarasena I's grandson, Rudrasena I, who has been identified with Rudradēva mentioned in the Allahābad pillar inscription as having suffered defeat at the hands of Samudragupta. Henceforth the Guptas became masters of Central India, and the Vākātaka centre of gravity shifted to the Dekkan. Rudrasena I's son and successor, Prithvisena I, subjugated Kumāra (Northern Kanarese districts). The latter's son, Rudrasena II, signalised his reign by marrying Prabhāvatiguptā, daughter of Candragupta II by Kuberanāga. Thus, the two families became allied together—a factor which must have materially helped the Gupta monarch in his designs against the Sakas of Western India. This matrimonial alliance is one of the fixed points in the Vākātaka chronology. After the death of her husband, Prabhāvari ruled on behalf of her minor son. Then fol-

1 Several Vākātaka inscriptions have been found at Ajantā and they help us much in settling the dates of certain caves. See also V. A. Smith, J.R.A.S., 1914, pp. 317-38, on the Vākātakas of Berar; Govinda Pai, "Genealogy and Chronology of the Vākātakas," Jour. Ind. Hist., XIV (1931), pp. 1-26, 165-204.
owed several other kings until we come to the reign of Harīśeṇa Vākāṭaka about the close of the fifth century A.D. He is represented to have made extensive conquests in Kuntala, Āvanti (Malwa), Kaliṅga (the country between the Mahānadi and the Godāvari), Kośala (Mahā-Kośala or eastern C.P.), Trikūṭa (perhaps Konkan), Lāṭa (southern Gujarāt), and Andhra (lying between the Godāvari and the Krisnā). If these claims have any substance, Harīśeṇa Vākāṭaka carried his arms right across the centre of India from the western coast to the eastern Ghats. But it does not appear probable that these campaigns led to any permanent results. The Vākāṭaka power was ultimately shattered some time in the second quarter of the sixth century A.D. by the Kalacuris of the South.

SECTION C

THE HŪNAS AND YAŚODHARMAN

Hūna movements

The Hiung-nu or the Hūnas of Sanskrit literature and inscriptions first come into view about 165 B.C., when they defeated the Yueh-chi and compelled them to quit their lands in North-western China. In course of time the Hūnas also moved westwards in search of 'fresh fields and pastures new'. One branch proceeded towards the Oxus valley, and became known as the Ye-tha-i-li or Ephthalites (White Huns of Roman writers). The other section gradually reached Europe, where they earned undying notoriety for their savage cruelties. From the Oxus the Hūnas turned towards the south about the second decade of the fifth century A.D., and, crossing Afghanistan and the north-western passes, eventually entered India. As shown in the last chapter, they attacked the western parts of the Gupta dominions prior to 458 A.D., but were hurled

Attack on the Guptas
back by the military ability and prowess of Skandagupta. To use the actual expression of the Bhitari pillar inscription, he “by his two arms shook the earth, when he... joined in close conflict with the Hūṇas.”¹ For the next few years the country was spared the horrors of their inroads. In A.D. 484, however, they defeated and killed king Firoz, and with the collapse of Persian resistance ominous clouds again began to gather on the Indian horizon. The Hūṇa hordes now poured into India like swarms of locusts in terrific numbers, and caused the downfall of the Gupta empire. The leader of these renewed incursions was perhaps Toramāṇa, known from the Rañatarangini, inscriptions, and coins. It is clear from their evidence that he wrested large slices of the western territories of the Guptas and established his authority as far as Central India. The conquest of this region must have been made some time after G.E. 165 = 484-85 A.D., when Mahārāja Mātrivishu was ruling there as a vassal of Budhagupta,² but it was certainly a fait accompli within the same generation, for the former’s younger brother, Dhanaviṣu, dedicated an image of the Varāha incarnation of Viṣṇu in the first regnal year of Toramāṇa, and thus acknowledged his overlordship.³ Indeed, it is likely that the “very famous battle,” in which Bhānugupta’s general Goparaja lost his life according to an Eran inscription dated G.E. 191 = 510 A.D., ⁴ was fought against the Hūṇa conqueror himself. The loss of Malwa was a tremendous blow to the fortunes of the Guptas, whose direct sway did not now extend much beyond Magadha and Northern Bengal.

² Ibid., no. 19, pp. 88-90.
³ Ibid., no. 36, pp. 158-61.
⁴ Ibid., no. 20, pp. 91-93.
Mihirakula

Toramāna was succeeded by his son, Mihirakula (-gula), who is represented in traditions as a great tyrant, taking fiendish delight in acts of brutality. According to Yuan Chwang, he (Mo-bi-lo-ki-lo) persecuted the peaceful Buddhists and mercilessly destroyed and plundered their stūpas and monasteries. He attacked king Bālāditya of Magadha, but was defeated, taken prisoner, and subsequently released. Mihirakula then sought safety in Kashmir and received a very generous treatment at the hands of its ruler. The refugee, however, misused the kindness shown to him, and by his machinations soon seized the throne of his benefactor. Mihirakula could not long enjoy the fruits of his usurpation, and within a year his death took place, heralded by portents. It is difficult to disentangle the kernel of fact from the husk of legend in the Chinese pilgrim's testimony. We do not even know with certitude who this Bālāditya was, except that he was not identical with Narasimhagupta Bālāditya. The latter ruled before 473 A.D. (G.E. 154), the date recorded for his successor Kumārāgupta II. In that age Bālāditya was a common royal epithet and both the Deo-Baranārīk inscription of Jivitagupta III and the Sarnath inscription of Prakāṣāditya refer to a king or kings of this name. Indeed, R. D. Banerji may be right in identifying the Bālāditya of these inscriptions with the one mentioned by Yuan Chwang. Whatever his other achievements, Bālāditya was certainly successful in repelling the invasion of Mihirakula.

Yatoddharman

Here we must pause to consider the information

2 Ibid., no. 79, pp. 284-86.
3 Prehistoric, Ancient and Hindu India, p. 194.
we get from an inscription engraved on a pillar at Mandasor in western Malwa. It immortalises the exploits of the Janendra Yasodharman who “spurning the limits of his own kingdom . . . conquered countries not enjoyed before even by the Guptas; . . . and invaded lands, which the chiefs of the Huna could not penetrate.”

Further, homage was tendered to him by chiefyains from the river Lauhitya (Brahmaputra) to Mt. Mahendrea, and from the Himalayas to the Western ocean. Still more important than this is the statement that the famous Mihirakula paid him obeisance “by touching his feet with the forehead.” The Huna king must have suffered discomfiture shortly after 532-33 A.D., since another Mandasor inscription, dated in the Vikrama year 539, eulogises Yasodharman in general terms only, and does not mention anything about Mihirakula. Now the question is: How are we to reconcile the epigraphic evidence with that of Yuan Chwang? Vincent Smith’s theory that Yasodharman and Baladitya formed a confederacy to oppose the Huna invader may be original, but it is purely conjectural and cannot be relied upon. A better suggestion is that Mihirakula was routed on two separate occasions—in the direction of Magadha by Baladitya, and in Central India by Yasodharman, to whom should be given the credit for finally breaking the power of Mihirakula. Of course, Yuan Chwang did not wilfully distort facts. He was either misinformed, or, owing to his Buddhist prepossessions, he emphasised the achievement only of his brother-in-faith, king Baladitya.

---

2 Cf. वे भुज्या गुप्तानाथः समकलनशाहकान्तिक्युहस्तःप्रतारः—
   गोष्ठा हुमाशिपालि मितिपतिमुत्काम्यान्ती गामपथिः।
3 Ibid.
4 Cf. चुदापुराणमारिवंतकुतुंपेन्द्रिभं पावयुमम्।
Death of Mihirakula

The exact year of Mihirakula’s death is not known, but if he is identical with Gollas, “the lord of India”, mentioned by the Alexandrian monk, Cosmas Indicopleustes, in 547 A.D., he may have continued to exercise authority over a limited territory by that date. After Mihirakula no great leader arose among the Hūnas to reassert their hegemony. But inscriptions and literary works amply prove that for many centuries afterwards they remained a potent factor in the political situation of Northern India until they were gradually absorbed into the Hindu social polity.

SECTION D

THE KINGS OF VALABHĪ

Foundation of the dynasty

The irruption of the Hūnas, although at first checkeds by Skandagupta, appears to have brought to the surface the latent disruptive forces, which readily operate in India when the central power weakens, or its grip upon the remote provinces slackens. One of the earliest defections from the Gupta empire was Sauṉastra, where Senāpati Bhaṭṭāraka founded a new dynasty at Valabhi (Wala, near Bhāvnagar) about the last decades of the fifth century A.D.

Origin

His ancestry is still a matter of controversy, but whether he belonged to the Maitraka tribe (modern Mers or Mehers), or the latter were the enemies of his

family, there is hardly any doubt that Bhaṭṭāraka was a native of the soil, and was not Iranian in origin, as believed by Vincent Smith.

_Growth of power_

Numerous inscriptions of the dynasty have been discovered, and they are all dated in the Gupta or Gupta-Valabhi era. They do not, however, supply us much political information of value beyond yielding a string of names. The first few rulers were not absolutely independent, since the founder of the line and his successor, Dharasena I, are called merely Simhapatra, and Bhaṭṭāraka’s three other sons, named Dronasimha, Dhrusasena I, and Dharapatta, who ruled successively, assume the title of Mahārāja only. But it is not clear whose suzerainty they acknowledged. Did they for some time nominally keep alive the tradition of Gupta paramountcy? Or, did they owe allegiance to the Hūnas, who gradually overwhelmed the western and central parts of India? Step by step the power of the house grew until we come to the reign of Dhrusasena II. It was during his time that Yuan Chwang visited Valabhi, and he records about it: “The reigning sovereign was of Kṣatriya birth, a nephew of Silāditya, the former king of Mo-la-po (Mālava) and a son-in-law of the Silāditya reigning at Kānyakubja; his name was Tu-la-po-po-ta (i.e., Dhruvabhaṭa); he was of a basty temper, and of shallow views, but he was a sincere

---

1 The difference of opinion is due to the difficulty in the analysis of the Sanskrit compound words.
2 *Ox. Hist. Ind.*, p. 164. Curiously enough, the Maitrakas come into prominence almost contemporaneously with the Hūnas. Were they an allied tribe with the latter?
3 For instance, the Māliva copperplate records that Mahārāja Dronasimha was installed as king “by the paramount master in person” (*C. I. I.*, III, no. 38, pp. 165, 166).
believer in Buddhism." If the Silāditya of this passage is identical with Silāditya Dharmādiya of Valabhi (circa 595-612 A.D.), as seems almost certain, it may then be reasonably inferred that Mālava or its western portion was added to his ancestral kingdom by conquest during his reign. We also learn that king Harṣavardhana of Kanauj attacked Dhruvasena II or Dhruvabhaṭa, who suffered some reverses in the beginning and was driven to seek the shelter of Dadda II of Broach. Ultimately the Valabhi monarch regained his power with the latter's help; it is, at any rate, certain that he occupied the throne when Yuan Chwang visited him. Having married the daughter of his quondam adversary, Dhruvabhaṭa subsequently attended Harṣa’s assembly at Prayāga in the capacity of his ally and son-in-law. The next ruler of Valabhi was Dhruvasena II's son, Dharasena IV. He appears to have been a mighty figure, as he assumes the full Imperial titles of Paramabhataṭaraka, Mahārajadhīrāja, Parameśvara, and Cakravartin. One of his grants was issued in G.E. 330 = 649 A.D. from “the camp of victory” (vijayakundabhaṭa), located at Bharukaccha or Broach, which may show that he aggrandised himself at the cost of the Gurjaras, and became their overlord. It was perhaps during his time that the poet Bhāṭṭi wrote his celebrated Kārṣṭa. The family continued to rule for more than a century after Dharasena IV, the known date of the last king, Silāditya VII, being G.E. 447 = 766 A.D. But hardly anything substantial is recorded about these later monarchs. Valabhi, of course, did not lose its importance, and in the fourth quarter of the seventh

---

3 Watters, II, p. 246; Beal, II, p. 267; Lijt, p. 149
4 See Infra.
5 See the Khedā (Kaira) grant: Ind. Ant., XV (1896), pp. 333.
century A.D. I-tsing found it, like Nālandā, a great centre of learning in Western India. Never extending beyond Saurāstra, parts of Gujarat and Mālava at the height of its glory, the kingdom thus existed for nearly three centuries, and in the end fell a prey to Arab raids from the side of Sind.

SECTION E

THE LATTI GUPTAS OF MAGADHA

The Aphiṣad (Gayā district) inscription of Āditya-sena¹ and the Deo-Baranārk (Shahabad district) inscription of Jīvitagupta II² disclosed the existence of a line of Gupta princes, called the Later Guptas by modern historians. The founder of this dynasty was Krisṇagupta, but unfortunately his exact connection with the Imperial Guptas is nowhere mentioned. He and his two successors, Harṣagupta and Jīvitagupta I, must have ruled Magadha in the interval between the death of Bhānu-gupta and 617 (?Mālava) = 554 A.D., when Kumāragupta III was reigning. We get this date from the Haraha inscription³ for Iṣānavarman Maukhari, who is represented in the Aphiṣad inscription as having been defeated by Kumāragupta III. After this victory, the latter perhaps extended his jurisdiction as far as Prayāga, for there are indications that his funeral rites took place there.⁴ The next ruler, Dāmodaragupta, was routed and killed by his Maukhari contemporary,⁵ who annexed Magadha or

¹ C. I. I., III, no. 42, pp. 200-08.
² Ibid., no. 46, pp. 213-18.
⁴ C. I. I., III, p. 206, n. 3. Of course, this argument by itself has not much force.
⁵ We learn from the Aphiṣad inscription that Dāmodaragupta, "breaking up the proudly-stepping array of mighty elephants, belonging to the Maukhari, became unconscious (and expired in the fight)" (C. I. I., III, pp. 203, 206, l. 8). No doubt, the
a large part of it. Dāmodaranagaśa’s son, Mahāsenagagaśa, appears from the Harṣavuḍita to have then retired to eastern Māgalavā, which, as the records of the Parivṛṣajakā Mahārājas show, still acknowledged the supremacy of the Guptas. Here Mahāsenagagaśa strengthened his position, and even carried his arms against Sushitavarman as far as Lauhitya (Brahmaputtra). His son, Devagagaśa, formed an alliance with Saśāṅka of Bengal, and advanced against Graha-varman Maukhari of Kanauj, whom he killed. The murder was, however, soon avenged by Rājyavardhana, for he in turn vanquished and perhaps slew Devagagaśa. A scion of this family, named Mādhavagagaśa, was subsequently placed by Harṣavardhana in Māgadha as his feudatory or Viceroys, so that he might be a bulwark against the aggressions of Saśāṅka. Mādhavagagaśa’s son, Adityasena, known from the Shahpur stone image inscription to have been alive in H.E. 66–672 A.D., gave a good account of himself after the death of Harṣa, and raised the dynasty to independence and importance. He adopted the full Imperial titles, and performed the Aśvamedha sacrifice. He even boastfully claims to have ruled “the earth up to the shores of the oceans.” He was followed by several weak kings, and with the death of Jīvitagagaśa II, the last ruler, the fortunes of Māgadha became obscure for a short time.

conventional claim for Dāmodaranagaśa’s victory is made here, but the outcome of the conflict was certainly against him, as he is represented to have been killed in the battle.

1 See e.g., Khoh plates of Mahārāja Saṃkṣopba, dated in the Gupta year 209 (C. I. I., III, no. 25, pp. 112-116); Khoh plates of the Uchakalpa Mahārāja Sarvanātha of the Gupta year 214 (Ibid., no. 31, pp. 155-157; Ep. Ind., XV, p. 125).


4 An inscription of one of these kings, Mahārājadhīrāja-Para-
mesvāra-Srī-Viṣṇugagaśa, has recently been found at Mangrāson (Būxar, Shahabad district). It is dated in the 17th year of his reign. The inscription is being edited by Dr. Altekar.
THE MAUKHARIS

SECTION F

THE MAUKHARIS

Antiquity

The Maukharis came into prominence after the decline of the Imperial Guptas, but there are indications that the name Maukhari was "possibly known to Pāṇini and also Patañjali." Their antiquity is further borne out by a clay seal, on which the legend "Mokhalīnam", i.e., "of the Mokhalis (Maukharis)", is written in Mauryan Brāhmi characters.2

Origin

The origin of the Maukharis is uncertain. The Harṣacarita derives them from Mukhara,3 but according to the Haraha inscription they were the "descendants of the hundred sons, whom king Āśvapati got from Vaivasvata (Manu)."4 Whoever was their progenitor, this much appears from the evidence of the Haraha inscription and the determination varman in all the Maukharī names that they were Kṣatriyas.5

Their branches

The Maukharis occupied an important place in the politics of Northern India for a long time. A line of Maukhari chiefs with the title of Mahāśenāpati is known from three short inscriptions, recently discovered in

---

2 See my History of Kanauj, Ch. II, pp. 50-60.
4 Hr. C.T., p. 128.
5 Ep. Ind., XIV, p. 119, verse 5.
6 If, however, the Mauharis of the Gaya district, who are Vašvas, are the modern representatives of the Maukharis, as Jayasval believed (see The Kaveri, the Maukharis and the Sangam Age, p. 80, n. 1), they must have in after times gone down in the social scale probably owing to loss of sovereignty or change of occupation.
the Kotah State. They are dated in the *Krita* (Mālava?) year 294 = 238 A.D. (?) A set of three Maukhari feudatories, perhaps of the Guptas, are mentioned in the Barābar and Nāgarjuni hill inscriptions, which are inscribed in the characters of the fifth century A.D. But the most important family was that of Kanauj. The first three rulers of this branch were matrimonially allied with, and presumably in political subordination to, the Later Guptas. In the reigns of Iśānavarman and Sarvavarman there was a tug of war between the two houses with the results noted above. Iśānavarman was the first to bring the family into eminence; he "conquered the Andhras...........; vanquished the Sūlikas (not satisfactorily identified)...........; and caused the Gaudas to remain within their proper realm." His son, Sarvavarman, defeated the Hūnas of the north-west as well as Dāmodaragupta. Not much is known about Avantivarman. His son and successor, Grahavarman, who married Rājyaśri, daughter of Prabhākaravar-dhana of Thānesvar, was assassinated by Devagupta of Malwa. Thus ended the Kanauj line, although the Maukharis did not entirely disappear, and in the time of Ādityasena we learn of one Bhogavarman, "the crest-jewel......of the valorous Maukhari race."

The Maukharis of Kanauj were staunch Brahmanists; and the rise of this new centre of political power was due to their achievements, which welded almost the

---

1 See *Ep. Ind.*, XXIII, no. 7, pp. 42-52.
4 cf. निधानायेष्पति वाहस्यमणिनांशः काँवराणामायायः
7 यावल्लभुदृढ़तिविवेकाधृतसुभवस्तः
5 कुत्ता नाशितमित्सवविदेशो नोंदासुमुहारमायाः
6 नण्यात्स्यं नवविशिष्यत्यर्थम् निधानसं वा जित्ताः
7 *C. I. I.*, III no. 42, pp. 203, 206, II. 8-9
whole of modern U. P. and a large part of Magadha into one mighty state.

The fixed points in Maukharí chronology are 611 (? Málava—Vikrama year) = 554 A.D., mentioned in the Haraha inscription,¹ and 606 A.D., the date of Graha-varman’s murder.

CHAPTER XIV

HARŚAVARDHANA OF THĀNESVAR AND KANAUJ

Importance emphasised by ample materials

The seventh century A.D. begins with the appearance of a remarkable figure on the political stage, and although Harśavardhana had neither the lofty idealism of Aśoka nor the military skill of Candragupta Maurya, yet he has succeeded in arresting the attention of the historian like both those great rulers. This has, indeed, been largely due to the existence of two contemporary works, viz., Bāna’s Harśacarita and Yuan Chwang’s Si-yu-ki or the Records of his travels, which are here and there supplemented by epigraphic documents\(^2\) and the Life of Yuan Chwang written by Hwui-li.

Ancestors of Harṣa

According to the Harśacarita, the predecessors of Harṣa were all rulers of the land of Śrīkanṭha (Thānesvar). It traces the genealogy to the remote Puśpadhūrī, a devout Śaiva, but the inscriptions of Harṣa mention the names of only four of his immediate ancestors. The kingdom was founded by Naravardhana about the close of the fifth or the beginning of the sixth

\(^1\) See my History of Kanauj, (Benares, 1927), pp. 61-187.
\(^2\) See the Bānśkhēra copper-plate (Ep. Ind., IV, pp. 208-11); Madhūban C. P. (Ibid., I, pp. 67-71); Sonpat copper seal (C. I. I., III, no. 32, pp. 251-32), besides the Nālandā seal (Ep. Ind., XXI, April 1931, pp. 74-76), and the Aihole-Meguṭī inscription of Polakeśin II (Ep. Ind., VI, pp. 1-12.)
century A.D.—the period of the Hūna disturbances. His grandson, Ādityavardhana, is chiefly known for having married Mahāsenaguptā, who was probably a sister of the Later Gupta monarch, Mahāsenagupta. Under Prabhākara-vardhana, the kingdom grew both in territory and influence, as he is the first to be styled Mahārājādhirāja and Paramabhaṭṭāraka in the family inscriptions. The Harṣacarita calls him “a lion to the Hūna deer, a burning fever to the king of the Indus land, a trouble of the sleep of Gujarāt (Gurjaras?), a bilious plague to that scent-elephant the lord of Gandhāra, a looter to the lawlessness of the Lātās, an axe to the creeper of Malwa’s glory.” But we must not at once jump to the conclusion that all these states named in the above passage were actually annexed by Prabhākara-vardhana. In our opinion, it is merely a poetical description of Prabhākara’s greatness and might as compared with the other contemporary rulers. At the time of Yuen Chwang’s visit the kingdom of Thāneśvar was not more than 7,000 li or 1,200 miles in circuit. Its north-western frontiers appear to have been limited by the Hūna territories in the Punjab, and in the north it probably extended up to the hills. In the east it was conterminous with the Maukhari state of Kanauj, and on the west and south it just covered portions of the Punjab and the Rajputana desert. Harṣa, not only inherited these paternal dominions, but also got the Maukhari throne of Kanauj owing to a combination of tragic circumstances, which we now proceed to narrate.

**Early position**

When the death of Prabhākara-vardhana took place

---

in 604 A.D., the crown of Thāneśvar devolved on Rājya-
vardhana, who after fulfilling his father's commission of
subduing the Hūnas hurried back to the capital.
But before he and his younger brother, Harṣa, could
recover from the shock of their bereavement, they were
struck by another bolt from the blue. For they received
the sad news that the king of Malwa, who is identical
with Devagupta of the Madhuban and Banskhera
charters had attacked and killed their brother-in-law,
Grahavarman, and that their sister, Rājyaśri, had been
thrown into a dungeon in Kānyakubja. The courier,
named Samvādaka, apprised the royal brothers of the
Malwa king's reported designs against Thāneśvar as
well.\(^1\) Hearing this, Rājyavardhana immediately started
with his troops to repress the "unmannerly foe," and
asked Harṣa to remain behind probably with a view to
guarding the rear. Ill-luck was, however, dogging
both the princes at every step, and soon it was young
Harṣa's turn to take a plunge into the troubled waters
of the political storm. After some time he learned that
though Rājyavardhana had routed the Mālava army
with "ridiculous ease", he was treacherously assassinated
by the king of Gauda,\(^2\) identified with Yuan Chwang's
She-saṅg-kia (Saśāṅka), who had come all the way from
his distant kingdom to assist his ally, Devagupta.
Having thus avenged the latter's defeat, Saśāṅka occupi-
ed Kanauj, and in order to divert the attention of the
Vardhana army, now under the command of Bhāndi, the
Gauda monarch released the widowed Maukhari queen,

\(^1\) Hr. C.T., p. 175.

\(^2\) It is said that Saśāṅka threw Rājyavardhana off his guard by
offering to marry his daughter to him "as a token of submission
and friendship," and when he was "weaponless, confiding, and
alone," the Gauda king "despatched him (Rājyavardhana) in his own
quarters" (Hr. C.T., p. 178). Cf. तस्मात श हेलानिन्जीमालवानीकमपि
गौडाशिवम निर्त्यदाेवरकरपानिविद्वासु मुक्तवास्य एकाकि निवाश्य स्वभवन
एव भातर अपारितमशीः (Hr., Cal. ed., p. 436).
Rājyaśri, from detention in her own capital. After this unexpected turn in the wheel of Destiny Harṣa was “the only lega left to support the earth”, and he, therefore, ascended the paternal throne of Thāneśvar. His immediate and pressing duties were to rescue his distressed sister, relieve Kanauj from the control of Saśāṅka, and punish him for his foul deed. To realise these objectives Harṣa advanced with a strong force, and in the course of his march concluded a perpetual treaty of friendship with his Assam contemporary, Bhāskara-varman, through the latter’s messenger, Harisa-vega. Soon Harṣa met Bhaṇḍi, and learned of Rājyaśri’s release and her flight to the Vindhya forests. He made a vigorous search for her, and at last found her just when she was about to immolate herself. Harṣa then returned to his camp with his sister, and unhappily our source of information, the Harṣaratīla, abruptly comes to an end at this stage. But, in the meantime, it seems that on the approach of Harṣa’s hosts Saśāṅka thought discretion was the better part of valour, and instead of facing an open conflict he withdrew from Kanauj, as after the Thāneśvar-Kāmarūpa (Assam) alliance he was exposed to serious danger both from the front and the rear. Bhaṇḍi had already cut off the support of the Malwa army after the defeat, and perhaps death, of Devagupta, and in the face of the new odds arrayed against Saśāṅka strategy certainly demanded that he should beat a masterly retreat. Thus, Kanauj was left in a hopeless state of confusion, deprived as it was of its young Maukhari monarch. Should Rājyaśri then be asked to assume the reins of government? But probably owing to her afflictions and her inclinations towards the quietist teachings of Buddhism she was herself unwilling to undertake the onerous responsibilities of rulership. In the absence of any other rightful Maukhari claimant, the ministers and statesmen of Kanauj, led by Poni, invited Harṣa to accept the
crown. He hesitated to agree to this tempting offer, presumably because he was not sure of the feelings and support of the people in the matter. Accordingly, he consulted the omens and the oracle Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara, who directed him not to ascend the throne or adopt the style Maharāja. In conformity with these instructions he assumed the royal office with the sobriquet Silāditya, and called himself "Kumāra". Now, this unostentatious title definitely suggests that although, according to Bāṇa, Harṣa was already king of Thānesvar, in Kanauj he was merely charged with the duty of keeping the machinery of the government running, and that his political status there was originally no better than that of a guardian or regent. But it would appear that with the lapse of time, when he had consolidated his position and laid opposition, if any, to rest, he transferred his capital from Thānesvar to Kanauj and became the sovereign ruler of the latter kingdom also by assuming the full Imperial titles. Thus was brought about the amalgamation of both the kingdoms, which helped Harṣa greatly in extending the sphere of his influence and authority over the numerous warring states that continually disturbed the political equilibrium of the North.

**Campaigns of Harṣa**

Regarding the conquests of Harṣa, we do not get any definite details. There are, of course, some vague generalities in the accounts of the admiring Yuan Chwang, e.g., "Proceeding eastward, he invaded the states which had refused allegiance; and waged incessant warfare until in six years he fought the 'Five Indias' (according to another reading; 'had brought the Five Indias under allegiance'). Again, the Chinese pilgrim says: "He (Harṣa) was soon able to avenge

1 Beal, I, pp. 210-211; Watters, I, p. 343.
2 Watters, I, p. 342; Beal, I, p. 213.
the injuries received by his brother, and to make himself *Master of India.*" Further, Yuan Chwang adds: "At the present time Silāditya Mahārāja had conquered the nations from east to west and carried his arms to remote districts." But nowhere does the worthy pilgrim mention how, when, and what kingdoms were conquered by Harṣa. It is, however, certain that the king of Valabhi, Dhruvabhaṭa or Dhruvasena II, had to bear the brunt of Harṣa’s aggression. The latter won some successes in the beginning and his adversary had to seek the protection of Dadda II of Broach. With his help Dhruvabhaṭa regained his power, being on the throne at the time of Yuan Chwang’s visit. This conflict could not have been a matter of indifference to Pulakeśin II, who considered himself “lord of the whole region of the south.” Accordingly, a trial of strength between the two great monarchs was inevitable. The *Life* deposes that Harṣa personally took the command against Pu-la-ki-sha (Pulakeśin II) of Ma-ha-la-sha (Mahārāṣṭra), but nothing availed him, and he was repulsed with severe losses by his southern rival. The clash must have occurred prior to A.D. 634, the date of the Athole-Meguti inscription, in which it is mentioned with a sense of legitimate pride.

The evidence of Bāna, too, does not throw any clear light on the military achievements of Harṣa. Indeed, the court poet does not even inform us how his patron proceeded against the Gauḍa king, who was the immediate object of his wrath. There is hardly any doubt that Saśānka evaded Harṣa’s grasp, and was flourishing in all glory as late as G.E. 500=619 A.D. according to a Ganjam inscription. We further learn that Harṣa, “having pounded the king of Sind, made

---

1 *Life*, p. 81.
2 Watters, II, p. 219; Beal, II, pp. 256-57.
3 *Life*, p. 147.
4 Ep. Ind., VI, pp. 144, 146.
his wealth his own"\(^1\), which signifies that both came into collision, and the former not only got the upper hand, but also succeeded in exacting a war tribute.

**Chronology of Harṣa’s campaigns**

Yuan Chwung’s remark that “Harṣa waged incessant warfare until in six years he had brought the five Indias under allegiance”\(^2\) has been interpreted by some scholars to mean that all his wars were over between 606 A.D., the date of his accession, and 612 A.D. It is, however, an altogether gratuitous assumption that Yuan Chwung’s six years began the very year Harṣa ascended the throne. Besides, we know that Saśāṅka continued to hold power until A.D. 619, and so Harṣa must have conquered the eastern regions some time after—say between 620 and 625 A.D. Further, it appears from the testimony of Yuan Chwung that the engagement with Pulakesin II took place when Harṣa had already carried his arms to “remote districts from east to west.” Thus, the earliest and the latest limits may be fixed between *circa* A.D. 625 and 634 (the date of the Aihoôle record), and we may, therefore, take roughly the year 630 A.D. as the date of the event.\(^3\) At this point we must explain also the other

---

\(^1\) *Hr. C. T.*, p. 76.


There is another oft-quoted passage, "तत्र गर्तमक्षरमं हुपारकैन बैतलबुऽृह गुप्तम् गहलतः करः", which has been taken to mean that Harṣa "exactd tribute from an inaccessible land of the snowy mountains"—perhaps Nepal or Kashmir. It may, however, be interpreted as "here the overlord has obtained the hand of Durgā born in the snowy mountains", which may refer to Harṣa’s marriage with some hill-princess of a powerful family.

\(^3\) Watters, I, p. 345; Beal, I, p. 213.

\(^3\) See, however, Mr. K. G. Chattopādhyāya, *Proc. Ind. Hist. Cong.*, 1939, 3rd session, Calcutta, pp. 186-604. He places the Harṣa-Pulakesin war between 610 and 612 A.D.
statement by Yuan Chwang that Harṣa "reigned in peace for thirty years without raising a weapon."1 Accepting the correctness of this translation—although Beal renders it: "After thirty years his arms repose, and he governed everywhere in peace"—we may at once say it only shows that Harṣa soon established internal security and stability of government after the earlier confusion due to the Gupta-Gauda incursions. But in his foreign policy Harṣa remained an Imperialist, and the Kongoda (Ganjam district) campaign of A.D. 643 proves beyond doubt that he had to undertake military expeditions almost till the close of his momentous reign.

Extent of the Empire

It has generally been supposed from the epithet "Sakalottarāpathanātha" that Harṣa made himself master of the whole of Northern India. There are, however, grounds for believing that it was often used in a vague and loose way, and did not necessarily connote the whole of the region from the Himalayas to the Vindhya ranges.2 A careful analysis of Yuan Chwang’s account also shows that the dominions of Harṣa were much more limited in extent. The pilgrim explicitly mentions the existence of a number of states, along with their dependencies, at the time of his visit. Among them were: Kapilā, Kashmir, Jalandhar, Bairat, Mathurā, Matipura (Mandawar, Bijnor district), Suvarṇagotra country, Kapilavastu, Nepal, Kāmarūpa (Assam), Mahārāṣṭra, Broach,

1 Watters, I, p. 343.
2 Beal, I, p. 213.
3 There is mention of a "Sakalottarāpathanātha" in the inscriptions of Cāluṅga Vīnayāditya (Ind. Ant., VII, pp. 107, 111; Ibid., IX, p. 129), and if he is identical with one of the successors of Adityasena in the Later Gupta line, as has been suggested, it is certain that this "Sakalottarāpathanātha" was far from being the ruler of the whole of Northern India.
Valabhi, Gurjara country, Ujjain, Bundelkhand, Maheshvarapura (Gwalior region), and Sind. These were evidently outside the pale of Harṣa’s jurisdiction. On the other hand, Yuan Chwang is silent about the governments of the following territories in Northern India: Kullu, Satadru country (Sirhind), Thanesvar, Srugna (Sugh), Brahmapura (British Garhwal and Kumaon), Govisana (modern districts of Kashipur, Rampur, and Pilibhit), Ahicchatra (eastern Rohilkhand), Bilsad (Etah district), Kapittha (Sankissa), A-yu-ti (Ayodhya, or Aphui in the Fatehpur district), Hayamukha (Rae-Bareli and Parmgarhi districts), Prayoga, Kosambi, Vishoka (?), Sravasti, Rama-grama, Kusinagara, Varanasi (Benares), Ghazipur district, Vaisali, Vrij country, Magadha, Monghyr, Bhagalpur, Rajmahal, Paundavardhana, Samata, Tamralipti, Kamasuvarna, Orissa including modern Ganjam.1

Yuan Chwang’s silence about the political status of all these territories perhaps indicates that they were included in the kingdom of Kanaui. That some of them were actually within the empire of Harṣa can be proved by means of independent evidence. We have already discussed that his ancestral dominions comprised Thanesvar, the valley of the Saraswati river, and parts of eastern Rajputana, to which he afterwards added the Maukhari kingdom of Kanauj covering almost the whole of modern U.P. and a portion of Magadha. Harṣa’s authority over Magadha is also proved by his title, “King of Magadha”, found in the Chinese documents bearing on his embassy. The Banskhetra and Madhuban charters, recording grants of land, show that Ahicchatra and Sravasti formed bhukti or divisions of his empire. His sovereignty

1 For the sake of brevity I have omitted the Chinese form of names. I have critically analysed here Yuan Chwang’s testimony to make my theory on this knotty and controversial topic more explicit.
over Orissa is clear from the Life; and the fact that in his progress in East India Harṣa held his court at Kajāṅgala (Rajmahal district) furnishes another proof of the extension of his jurisdiction so far. We may, therefore, on the strength of Yuan Chwang’s testimony and other epigraphic and literary records roughly define the kingdom of Harṣa in modern geographical terminology as consisting of portions of eastern Punjab, almost the whole of the present U.P. (excepting Mathūrā and Matipura,), Bihar, Bengal, and Orissa including Kongoda or the Ganjam region. That this was the view of Yuan Chwang also appears from the expression “lord of the five Indias”, which has been explained as comprising Svarāstra or the Punjab (eastern parts of the Punjab in this case), Kānyakūṭa, Mithilā or Bihar, Gauda or Bengal, Jūkala or Orissa. Thus the whole evidence harmonises remarkably well, and it is high time to abandon every exaggerated notion of Harṣa’s sovereignty extending up to Kashmir and Sind, Saurāstra and even the far South, Kāmarūpa (Assam) and Nepal. Such a view is flagrantly opposed to the unimpeachable contemporary accounts of Yuan Chwang. These territories themselves were of sufficiently imposing dimensions, being much larger than any other individual state in Northern India; and this was the reason why the power of Harṣa made such a

1 Life, p. 154. Śilādiriyarāja is represented as having assigned to Jayasena, a noted Buddhist scholar, the revenue of eighty large towns of Orissa.

2 The phenomenon of small states, almost adjacent to Kanaunj, may be explained by their alliance with Harṣa at the very start of his career to escape his war-frenzy. And Harṣa, who stood in dire need of allies then, astutely tolerated their continued existence. The powers, which lay on his southern route, maintained their autonomy either by giving a passage to Harṣa’s forces, or, if they had to submit to his yoke, by re-asserting themselves afterwards at his discomfiture when warring against Pulkāśin II.
deep impression upon the Master of the Law.¹

Administration

The foregoing discussion shows that Harṣa’s empire mostly extended towards the east, and naturally he could not but aspire to the control of the territories lying on this side, since the southern routes were already blocked by the mighty arms of Pulakeshin II. In those early times the Ganges was the highway of traffic linking up all the country from Bengal to “Mid India”, and the supremacy of Kanaúj over this vast Gangetic region was, therefore, essential for its commerce and prosperity. Harṣa succeeded in bringing nearly the whole of it under his yoke and, the kingdom having thus developed into comparatively gigantic proportions, the task of its successful governance became more difficult. The first thing that Harṣa did was to increase his military strength, both to keep the unsubordinated states overawed and to fortify his own position against internal upheavals and foreign aggressions. Yuan Chwang writes: “Then having enlarged his territory he increased his army bringing the elephant corps up to 60,000 and the cavalry to 100,000.”² It was thus on this large force that the empire ultimately rested. But the army is merely an arm of policy.

Alliances

Harṣa secured his position by other means as well. He concluded an “undying alliance” with Bhāskaravarman, king of Assam, when he started on his initial campaign. Next, Harṣa gave the hand of his daughter to Dhrusvasega II or Dhruvakṛṣṭha of Valabhi after measuring swords with him. Thereby he not only gained a valued ally, but also an

¹ See my History of Kanaúj, pp. 78-119.
² Watters, I, p. 343; Beal, I, p. 233.
access to the southern routes. Lastly, he sent a Brahman envoy to Tai-Tsung, the Tang Emperor of China, in 641 A.D., and a Chinese mission subsequently visited Harṣa. His diplomatic relations with China were probably meant as a counterpoise to the friendship that Pulakesin II, his southern rival, cultivated with the king of Persia about which we are told by the Arab historian Tabari.  

In an oriental despotism, the sovereign being the centre of the state, much of the success in administration necessarily depends on his benevolent example. Accordingly, Harṣa essayed the trying task of supervising personally the affairs of his wide dominions. He divided his day between state business and religious work. "He was indefatigable and the day was too short for him." He was not content to rule from the luxurious surroundings of the palace only. He insisted on going about from place to place "to punish the evil-doers and reward the good." During his "visits of inspection" he came into close contact with the country and the people, who must have had ample opportunities for ventilating their grievances to him.

Unfortunately our data for the then existing system of government are very meagre. Probably Harṣa was assisted in the administration by an advisory council (mantri-parīṣad). According to Yuan Chwang, Harṣa was invited to accept the crown of Kanauj by the statesmen and ministers of that kingdom led by Poni, and it is reasonable to believe that they may have continued to wield some sort of control even during the palmy days of Harṣa's power. The pilgrim even goes so far as

---

3 Watters, I, p. 344; Beal, I, p. 215.
4 Beal, I, pp. 210-11; Watters, I, p. 343.
to assert that "a commission of officers held the land". 

Further, owing to the large extent of territory and the scanty and slow means of communication, it was necessary to establish strong centres of government in order to keep the loosely knit parts of the empire together. The out-lying provinces were, therefore, put in charge of viceroys (Rājasthāniya?) or governors (Lokapāla or Uparika Mahārāja) or feudatories (Sāmantas or Mahāsāmantus). Among those of the last class was Mādhavagupta of Māgadhā. Besides, it appears from the Harṣarāṣṭra and inscriptions that the bureaucracy was very efficiently organised. Among some of these state functionaries, civil and military, may be mentioned Mahāsandhivigrabhādikrita (supreme minister of peace and war); Mahābhalodikrita (officer in supreme command of the army); Senāpati (general); Brihadasvatāra (head cavalry officer); Kāṭuka (commandant of the elephant forces); Cāṭa-bhṛata (irregular and regular soldiers); Dāta (envoy or ambassador); Rājasthāniya (foreign secretary or viceroy); Uparika Mahārāja (provincial governor); Viṣayapati (district officer); Ayuktaka (subordinate officials in general); Mimāṅsaka (Justice?), Mahāpratihāra (chief warder or usher); Bhogika or Bhogapati (collector of the state share of the produce); Dirghadvara (express courier); Akṣapataika (keeper of records); Adhyakṣas (superintendents of the various departments); Lekhaka (writer); Karunika (clerk); Sevaka (menial servants in general), etc.

The inscriptions of Harṣa testify that the old administrative divisions continued, viz., Būnikta or provinces, which were further sub-divided into Viṣayas (districts). A still smaller territorial term, perhaps of the size of the present day Tahsil or Tahuka, was Pathaka; and the Grāma was, as usual, the lowest unit of

1 Beal, I, p. 110.
administration.

Yuan Chwang was favourably impressed by the government, which was founded on benign principles. Families were not registered and individuals were not subject to forced labour contributions. The people were thus left free to grow in their own surroundings unfettered by the shackles of overgovernment. Taxation was light; the main sources of revenue were the traditional one-sixth of the produce and "duties at ferries and barrier stations", paid by tradesmen, who went to and fro bartering their merchandise. The enlightened nature of Harṣa's administration is also evident from the liberal provision he made for charity to various religious communities and for rewarding men of intellectual eminence.¹

Owing to the well-organised character of the government the people generally lived together on good terms, and there were few instances of violent crime.² But the roads and river-routes were by no means immune from bands of brigands, Yuan Chwang himself having been stripped by them more than once. Indeed, on one occasion he was even on the point of being offered up as sacrifice by desperate characters. The law against crime was exceptionally severe. Imprisonment for life was the ordinary penalty for transgressions of the statute law and conspiracy against the sovereign, and we are informed that, though the offenders did not suffer any corporal punishment, they were not at all treated as members of the community.³ The Harṣacarita, however, refers to the custom of releasing prisoners on joyous and festive occasions ⁴

¹ Watters, I, p. 176.
² Watters, I, p. 176.
³ Watters, I, p. 171.
⁴ Ibid., p. 173.
The other punishments were more sanguinary than in the Gupta period: "For offences against social morality and disloyal and unfilial conduct, the punishment is to cut off the nose, or an ear, or a hand, or a foot, or to banish the offender to another country or into the wilderness." Minor offences could be "atoned for by a money payment". Ordeals by fire, water, weighing or poison were also recognised instruments for determining the innocence or guilt of a person. The severity of the criminal administration was, no doubt, largely responsible for the infrequency of violations of law, but it must also have been due to the character of the Indian people who are described as of "pure moral principles".

Glories of Kanauj

The prosperity and importance of Kanauj, so well begun during the time of the Maukharis, grew tremendously under Harṣa; and it now easily became the premier city of Northern India supplanting Pātaliputra, the older centre, through which the main currents of political life had flowed since the days of the Buddha. To the observant eyes of a foreigner it must have appeared a great cosmopolitan town whose inhabitants were almost equally divided between orthodoxy and heterodoxy. There were one hundred Buddhist monasteries with more than 10,000 brethren belonging to both the "Vehicles". The "Deva temples" amounted to about two hundred, and the non-Buddhists were several thousands in number. The city itself (twenty ⅔ or about ¾ miles in length and five ⅔ or 1¼ mile in breadth)

---

2 Yuan Chwang adds: "They will not take anything wrongfully, and they yield more than fairness requires. They fear the retribution for sins in other lives, and make light of what conduct produces in this life. They do not practise deceit and they keep their sworn obligations" (Watters, I, p. 171; Beal, I, p. 83).
was strongly defended by both nature and art. It was well planned, and had beautiful gardens and tanks of clear water. The houses were, on the whole, clean, comfortable and simple, or, in the words of Yuan Chwang, "sumptuous inside and economical outside". The people wore "a refined appearance", and the rich were "dressed in glossy silk attire". Praising the citizens Yuan Chwang says: "They are pre-eminently explicit and correct in speech, their expressions being harmonious and elegant, like those of the Devas, and their intonation clear and distinct, serving as rule and pattern for others."

Assembly at Kanauj

Great as was Harṣa as a ruler and conqueror, he was greater still in the arts of Peace that "hath her victories no less renowned than War". One of them was the convocation of a grand assembly at Kanauj to give the utmost publicity to the doctrines of the Mahāyāna. Harṣa marched from his camp with accustomed pomp and pageantry along the southern bank of the Ganges, accompanied by Yuan Chwang and Bhāskarāvarman, king of Kāmarūpa, and in the course of ninety days reached his destination. Here Harṣa was received by the "kings of eighteen countries" of the Five Indies and several thousand priests belonging to the various sects, who had gathered together in response to the royal summons to join in the deliberations. Harṣa had previously ordered the construction of two thatched halls, each to accommodate one thousand persons, and a huge tower, in the middle of which was placed a golden statue of the Buddha, "of the same

1 Watters, I, p. 133; Beal, I, p. 77.
2 Life, p. 177. According to the Si-yu-ki, there were kings of twenty countries present (Beal, I, p. 218). The account of Harṣa's assemblies is mainly based on the Life and the Si-yu-ki.
height as the king himself." The proceedings of the assembly started with a solemn procession, and the main object of attraction was a golden statue of the Buddha, three feet high, which was carried on a gorgeously caparisoned elephant. Both Harṣa and Bhāskarāvarman attended it, dressed in the guise of Sakra and Brahmā respectively. They were followed on elephants by a brilliant train of princes, priests, and prominent state officials. After the termination of the procession Harṣa performed a ceremonial worship of the image, and gave a public dinner. This being over, the conference opened with Yuan Chwang as "lord of the discussion". He dwelt on the merits of the Mahāyāna, and challenged those present to assail his arguments. But none came forward, and he remained in undisputed possession of the field for five days, when his theological rivals entered into a conspiracy to take the pilgrim's life. Getting a scent of it, Harṣa at once issued a stern proclamation threatening to behead anybody causing the least hurt to his celebrated guest. The announcement had the desired effect, and for eighteen days there was none to oppose him in debate. Thus, though according to the Life the programme was gone through successfully to the utter confusion of all heretics and the joy of the Mahāyānists, the account preserved in the Si-yu-ki avers that the convocation concluded with startling incidents. The great tower suddenly caught fire, and there was an attempt to assassinate Harṣa on account of his indifferent treatment of the assembled "heretics". He then got five hundred Brahmans arrested, and deported them. To the rest he extended mercy.

Whichever of the two accounts may be true, it is

2 Beal, *1*, p. 219.
certain that the victory of Yuan Chwang in this assembly of public disputation considerably enhanced his prestige and influence over Harsa, who honoured and revered him more than ever by precious gifts, but the pilgrim in a rare religious spirit respectfully declined to accept any of them.

*Quinquennial distributions at Prayāga*¹

When the special assembly at Kanauj broke up, Harsa invited Yuan Chwang to witness his sixth quinquennial distribution of alms (*Maha-moksha Parisad*) at Prayāga at the sacred confluence of the Ganges and the Jumna. The latter, although homesick, agreed to be present at that unique function, which was attended by Dhruvabhaṭa, “king of South India”, Kumārarāja (Bhāskaravarman) of Assam and other royalties, besides a vast concourse of people amounting to about 500,000—Sramaṇas, heretics, Nirgranthas, the poor, the orphans and the bereaved of the Five Indias, who had been summoned by an Imperial decree. The “Great distribution Arena” was the immense sandy plain between the rivers, and the proceedings lasted for seventy-five days, commencing with an impressive procession. The religious services were of the curiously eclectic kind, so characteristic of Hindu society and worship. On the first day the statue of the Buddha was set up in one of the temporary shrines built upon the sands, and was honoured by costly offerings and lavish distributions. On the second day the image of Adityadeva (Sun) was worshipped and on the third day the idol of Isvara-deva (Siva) was offered adoration, but in each case the gifts bestowed were only half the value of those consecrated to the Buddha on the opening day. On the fourth day generous gifts were given to Buddhist monks. During the next twenty days Brahmans were the recipients of

¹ See *Life*, pp. 185-87.
Harṣa’s bounty. Then ten days were spent in bestowing largess on the “heretics”, i.e., Jains and members of other sects. The same number of days was reserved for giving alms to the mendicants, while it took a month to distribute charity to the poor, the orphans, and the destitute. By this time the accumulated treasures were exhausted, and then Harṣa gave away even his personal “gems and goods”. Thus, he established a record in individual liberality hardly equalled in history.¹

Yuan Chwang’s departure

After the conclusion of the Prayāga assembly, Yuan Chwang took leave of Harṣa, who saw him off a long distance, and provided him with a military escort of “a king of North India called Udhita” to carry the books and images on horseback. Subsequently, Harṣa again met the pilgrim, and sent some money for the necessary expenses of his arduous journey over-land to China.²

Harṣa’s Religion

We now pass on to a consideration of Harṣa’s faith, which urged him to scorn delights incidental to his position, and work untiringly for the moral and material progress of his subjects. It may at the outset be mentioned that he did not inherit Buddhism. His three immediate ancestors were votaries of the Sun (Aditya). According to the inscriptions found at Banskhera (Shahjahanpur district) and Madhuban (Azamgarh district), Harṣa himself was a “Paramā-nāheśvara” or a

¹But this sort of munificence must have been a heavy drain on the treasury. Was it, therefore, in any way responsible for the sudden collapse of the kingdom after Harṣa’s death?
²Fa-hian, on the other hand, had preferred the southern sea-route, and returned home by way of Java or Sumatra.
devout Saiva until at least the 25th regnal year—631 A.D. In his latter days, however, he appears to have inclined more and more towards Buddhism, perhaps due to its brilliant exposition by Yuan Chwang and the influence of his Buddhist sister Rājaśri. In the Kanauj assembly Harṣa even showed some partiality for the Mahāyāna by stifling free discussion and by representing Sakra and Brahma as mere attendants on the Buddha. But it must not be understood that Harṣa ever became anything like a royal missionary of Buddhism. On the contrary, he maintained the eclectic character of his public worship, and officially honoured the Brahmanical deities of Aditya and Siva in the Prayāga assembly. He fed the Brahmans, and gave them alms without stint. Some of the activities of Harṣa, of course, bear a distinctly Buddhist flavour, e.g., his "forcible appropriation" of the tooth relic of the Buddha from Kashmir and its subsequent enshrinement in a Sanghārāma in Kanauj; his annual summoning of the Buddhist monks together for examination and discussion; his construction of Buddhist monasteries and stūpas; and his prohibition of slaughter and the use of animal food under severe penalties. His humanitarian services by the erection of hospices (pūnyastālas) for the free supply of food and medicine to the poor and the afflicted may also have been inspired by his Buddhist ideals. Thus, as a result of Harṣa's patronage there was a marked growth of Buddhism in Kanauj, though it was visibly on the wane in other countries.

General religious conditions:

It is evident from Yuan Chwang's Records and the

3. Watters, I, p. 344.
5. Ibid.
Harsatara that Buddhism, Brahmanism, and Jainism were the principal religions in Harsha's empire. Of these, the last was not so popular except in certain parts, viz., Vaisali, Paundravardhana, and Sama-ta, where the Digambaras were numerous. The Svetambaras constituted its other important section. To Yuan Chwang, of course, Buddhism appeared to be in quite a flourishing condition, but it had suffered decline in several localities like Kosambi, Sravasti, and Vaisali. The monastic establishments, whose very existence depended upon the support and charity of the laity, were the centres of Buddhist life and activity. Of the two broad divisions of Buddhism, Mahayana and Hinayana, the former seems to have considerably gained ground. The pilgrim also speaks of its eighteen schools, which differed widely in their practices and claimed intellectual superiority over one another.1 Such unseemly controversies must have weakened the cause of Buddhism and reacted in favour of Brahmanism, which had been showing signs of revival and vigour since the glorious epoch of the Guptas. Its main strongholds in Harsha's empire were Prayaga and Varanasi. Like Jainism and Buddhism, which in its Mahayana form encouraged the worship of the Buddha and the Bodhisattvas, Brahmanism was frankly given to idolatry. The most popular Brahmanical deities were Aditya, Siva, and Vishnu, and their idols were installed in temples where they were worshipped with elaborate ceremonial.2 The Brahmins kindled the sacrificial fire (Agni), held the cow sacred, and performed various rites to bring good luck and prosperity.3 Another feature of Brahmanism was the multiplicity of philosophical schools and ascetic orders. Bana

1 Watters, I, p. 165.
2 Hs., C.T., p. 44.
3 Ibid., pp. 44-45; see also pp. 71, 90, 130.
mentions the followers of Kapila, Kaṇāda, Upaniṣad: (Vedantins), believers in God as a creator (Aिśvarakaraṇikas), and even atheists like the Lokāyatikas. Similarly, there were different classes of recluses, such as those pulling out their hair (Keśaluṇcakas), Pāśupatas, Pañcarātrikas, Bhāgavatas, etc. The *Līf* also mentions Bhūtas, Kāpālikas, Jutikas, Sāṅkhyaś, Vaiśeṣikas, etc. They differed widely in their garbs, observances, and beliefs. They got their food by begging, and paid no attention whatsoever to their personal needs and comforts in the pursuit of what they considered Truth.

**Harṣa's patronage of Learning**

One of the claims of Harṣa to remembrance rests on his liberal patronage of learning. Yuan Chwang says that Harṣa used to earmark a fourth of the revenue from the crown lands for rewarding men of intellectual distinction. According to the *Līf*, he generously assigned “the revenue of eighty large towns of Orissa” to a noted Buddhist scholar, named Jayasena, who, however, thankfully declined even this tempting offer. Harṣa also made munificent endowments to Nālandā, the great centre of Buddhist learning. Its lofty structures, its inspiring instruction imparted through discussion, its comprehensive curriculum, its large assemblage of students from far and near, and above all, the noble character and deep scholarship of its teachers and alumni, were then matters of pride to the entire

---

1 *Har. C. T.*, p. 236.
4 Watters, I., pp. 160-61
6 *Līf*, p. 134.
7 According to one account, there were 10,000 students at Nālandā (*Līf*, p. 112).
Buddhist world; and kings vied with one another in their liberality to equip and endow this great institution.\(^1\) Harṣa's interest in literature is further evident from his patronage of authors like Bāṇabhaṭṭa, who wrote the Harṣacarita, first part of the Kādambari, Cāpadīṣatoka, etc.; Mayūra, whose chief contribution was the Sūryatoka; and also Māṭanga-Dīvākara, a shadowy bard.

**Harṣa as author**

But Harṣa was not a mere detached patron of letters. He himself appears to have wielded the pen with no less dexterity than the sword. Scholars generally ascribe to him the composition of three plays, viz., the Priyadarśikā, the Raināvalī, and the Nāgānanda. Bāṇa credits him with poetical skill of a high order;\(^2\) moreover, several ancient writers, like Sūdharma (11th century A.D.)\(^3\) and Jayadeva (12th century A.D.),\(^4\) rank Harṣa along with other literary monarchs and even with Bhāsa, Kālidāsa, etc. Notwithstanding such references, the authorship of these plays has been a matter of doubt since quite early times. Manimaṭa, a Kashmiri writer of the 11th century, and several scholiasts of the 17th century A.D.,\(^5\) thought that they were composed by one Dhāvaka in the name of Harṣadeva for some monetary consideration. In the face of these conflicting traditions it is difficult to be dogmatic, but as royal literati are not an unusual phenomenon in Indian history, there is nothing intrinsically improbable in regarding Harṣa as an author. This does not, however, preclude the possibility that some literary protégé of Harṣa may

---

5. *e.g.*, Nāgoji in the Kavyapradīpodyote, and Paramānanda.
have lent an obliging hand in polishing his patron's dramas, for as the proverb has it, royal authors are only half authors.

Harsha's death and its effects

After a momentous reign lasting for about four decades, Harsha passed away in the year 647 or 648 A.D.¹ The withdrawal of his strong arm let loose all the pent-up forces of anarchy, and the throne itself was seized by one of his ministers, O-la-na-shun (i.e., Arunāśva or Arjuna). He opposed the entry of the Chinese mission sent before the death of Shē-lo-ye-to of Śilāditya, and massacred its small armed escort in cold blood. But its leader, Wang-heuen-tse, was lucky enough to escape, and with the help of the famous Srong-btsan-Gampo, king of Tibet, and a Nepalese contingent he avenged the previous disaster. Arjuna or Arunāśva was captured in the course of two campaigns, and was taken to China to be presented to the Emperor as a vanquished foe. The authority of the usurper was thus subverted, and with it the last vestiges of Harsha's power also disappeared.²

What followed next was only a general scramble to feast on the carcass of the empire. Bhāskaravarman of Assam appears to have annexed Kārṇāsuvarṇa and the adjacent territories, formerly under Harsha, and issued a grant from his camp there to a Brahman of the locality.³ In Magadha Ādityasena, the son of Mādhavagupta, who was a feudatory of Harsha, declared his independence, and as a mark of it assumed full Imperial

¹ According to the Life (p. 136), however, Śilāditya died at the end of the Yung Hwei period (i.e., about 654-55 A.D.).
² See J. A. S. B., VI (1837), pp. 69-70; J. R. A. S., 1869-70 (N. S. IV), pp. 85, 86; Asiatic Journal and Monthly Register for British and Foreign India, China, and Australia, 1846, pp. 220-21, etc.
³ Ep. Ind., XII, p. 66.
HARṢA'S DEATH : ITS EFFECTS

titles and performed the Śākamedha sacrifice.¹ In the west and north-west those powers, that had lived in dread of Harṣa, asserted themselves with greater vigour. Among them were the Gurjaras of Rajpusana (afterwards Avanti) and the Karakoṭakas of Kashmir, who during the course of the next century became a formidable factor in the politics of Northern India.

CHAPTER XV
POST-HARSHA AND PRE-MOSLEM NORTHERN INDIA—(FROM A.D. 647 TO C. 1200)

SECTION A
THE KINGDOM OF KANAUJ

I—Yaśovarman

After the fall of the usurper, the earliest monarch, about whom we know anything definite, is Yaśovarman. Unfortunately, his ancestry is still a mystery. The alleged connection with the Mauryas, according to certain Jain works, altogether lacks confirmation. Nor is there any proof, excepting the termination Varman, in support of the suggestion that he was a scion of the Maukhari house. Yaśovarman appears to have ruled from circa 725 to 732 A.D. He was a contemporary of Lalitāditya Muktāpiṭa of Kashmir, and has rightly been identified with I-cha-fo-mo, “King of Central India”, who sent his minister Seng-po-ta to China in 731 A.D. The Gaudavaho, a contemporary composition, credits Yaśovarman with extensive conquests as far as the South, but though the truth of these campaigns may be doubted, his war with the “Magahanāha” (lord of Māgadha) seems to be founded on fact. The latter, who was most probably identical with Jīvita-gupta II, was defeated in a hard-fought battle. Subsequently, in the year 733 A.D., Yaśovarman himself suffered a reverse at the hands of Lalitāditya of Kashmir.

1 See the author’s History of Kanauj, pp. 192-212.
The former's reign is memorable for the works of two great poets, viz., Bhavabhūti, author of the \textit{Mālatī-mādhuśīla}, \textit{Mahāvīracarita}, and the \textit{Uttararāmacarita}; and Vākpati, who wrote the Prakrit \textit{Gandavaka}. The three successors of Yasovarman are mere names, buried in the limbo of oblivion.

\textbf{II—The \textit{Ayuḍhas}}

This dynasty comprised three kings, who ruled for a short period only. It is, however, not known how they rose to power, or what their lineage was. The first, Vajrāyudha, is casually referred to in the \textit{Kutpūrana}, and his accession may be placed about 770 A.D. He was probably defeated by Jayā-piḍa Vinayāditya of Kashmir (779-810 A.D.). But, if the latter undertook this campaign late in his career, the vanquished Kanauj sovereign must have been Vajrāyudha's successor, Indrāyudha, who was reigning in the Saka year 705-783-84 A.D., according to the Jain \textit{Harivamsa}.

Indrāyuddha was afterwards defeated and dethroned by Dharmapāla of Bengal, who raised his protégé Cakrāyudha to the throne of Kanauj. This political arrangement was approved by nearly all the principal states then existing. But the Rāṣṭrākūṭas could not tolerate the

\footnote{1} III, 3\textsuperscript{a}, pp. 74, 166 (Konow and Lanman's edition). \footnote{2} \textit{Bom. Gaz.}, 1896, Vol. II, p. 197, n. 2; \textit{Ind. Ant.}, XV, pp. 141-44.
Bengal king's assumption of the supreme status in Northern India, and accordingly a trial of strength between the two powers became inevitable. The result of the conflict is preserved in the Sanjan plates of Amogha-Varsha I, which depose that both "Dharma and Cakrāyudha surrendered of themselves" to Govinda III (circa 794—914 A.D.), the son and successor of Dhruvā. These depredations considerably harassed the populace and created confusion in the Doab. Nāgabhata II Pratihāra took advantage of the situation, and defeated Cakrāyudha, "whose lowly demeanour was manifest from his dependence on others." After this victory Nāgabhata boldly annexed Kanauj, and initiated a new line of rulers there.

III. The Imperial Pratihāras

Origin

The Pratihāra family, to which Nāgabhata II belonged, appears to have been of foreign extraction. Indeed, the phrase "Gurjara-Pratihārānvyayaḥ", i.e., "Pratihāra clan of the Gurjaras", occurring in line 4 of the Rajor (Alwar) inscription, indicates that they were a branch of the famous Gurjaras—one of those Central Asian tribes that poured into India through the north-western passes along with or soon after, the Hūnas during the period of political unrest following the disruption of the Gupta Empire. That the Pratihāras belonged to the Gurjara stock is also confirmed by the Raṣṭrakūṭa records, and the Arab writers, like Abu Zaid and Al Mas'udi, who allude to their fights with the Jujr or Gurjaras of the North. Besides, it is important to re-

1 Ep. Ind., XVIII, pp. 245, 253, v. 25.
3 Ep. Ind., III, pp. 265-67. The inscription bears the Vikrama date 1016=919 A.D., and records a grant of Mathanadeva, feudatory of P. M. P. Vijayaśāladeva.
member that the Kanarese poet, Pampa, describes Mahipāla as "Ghūrjararāja." The inscriptions of the Pratihāras, on the other hand, trace their origin to Laksmanā, who acted as the door-keeper (Pratihāra) of his brother Rāma.1 This claim is further supported by Rajaśekhara, the dramatist, who calls his patron Mahendrapāla "Raghukulatilaka" (ornament of Raghuv's race) or "Raghugrāmanī" (leader of Raghuv's family). But we need not attach any special significance to these traditions or derivations, for such legendary connections are often ascribed in order to give the ruling families noble and well-known pedigrees.

**Original Territories**

The earliest known settlement of the Pratihāras was at Mandra (Jodhpur) in Central Rajputana, where ruled the family of Haricandra. Then a branch advanced southwards, and established its power at Ujjain. That it was a Gurjara seat is evidenced by the Sanjan plates of Amoghavarsa I, which refer to the Rāṣṭraṇa Dantidurga's subjugation of its Gurjara chief.2 Moreover, the Jain Harināma expressly calls Vatsarāja king of Avanti.3 As he has been identified on all hands with the father of Nāgabhaṭa II, we may reasonably infer that prior to the northern conquest the Pratihāras of Kanauj were masters of Avanti.

**Beginnings of Power**

The dynasty began well under Nāgāvaloka or Nāga-

1 *Ibid.*, XVIII, pp. 93, 97, v. 4. According to the Gwalior inscription (*Ibid.*, pp. 107, 110, v. 3), however, Laksmanā came to be known as Pratihāra owing to his act of repelling (*nirāśraya*) displayed against his enemies, like 'Meghanāda' in battle.


3 *Bor., Gaz.,* 1896, Vol. I, pt. II, p. 197, fn. 4; see also *Ep.*
bhāta I, who repelled the "armies of the powerful Mleccha king," i.e., the Arab raiders of the western borders of India, and carried his arms to Broach. The next two rulers were nonentities. The fourth, Vatsarāja, rose to great prominence by his achievements. He defeated the Bhandī clan, perhaps Bhaṭṭis of Central Rājputana, over which his supremacy was recognised. He won a victory also against the Gauda monarch, Dharmapāla, according to the Wani-Dindori and Radhanpur grants. But eventually Vatsarāja was routed by Dhrūva, and was compelled to take shelter "in the centre of (the deserts of) Maru".

Nāgabhāṭa II (circa 805-33 A.D.)

Vatsarāja was succeeded by his son Nāgabhāṭa (II) about 805 A.D. In the beginning, the latter tried to retrieve the fallen fortunes of his family, but the stars were as unfavourable to him as to his predecessor, and he suffered a crushing defeat at the hands of Govinda III. Nāgabhāṭa II's preliminary attempts having thus proved abortive, he turned his attention towards Kauaj with the results noted above. The internal dissensions among the Rāṣṭracūṭas after the death of Govinda III early in 814 A.D., no doubt, made Nāgabhāṭa II immune from the southern danger, but Dharmapāla of Bengal soon took the field against him for deposing his protegé, Cakrāyudha, and annexing the kingdom of Kanauj. The Pratihāra monarch vanquished his adversary in a sanguinary contest at Modgagiri (Monghyr), and grew so strong that even the kings of Andhra, Sindhu, Vidarbha and Kaliṅga sought his aid or alliance.

1 cf. Hansot Grant, Ep. Ind., XII, pp. 203, 204, l. 34.
MIHIRA BHOJA

The Gwalior inscription further represents Nāgabhaṭa II as having won victories against Ānartta (Northern Kāthiāwād), Mālava or Central India, the Matsyas (of eastern Rajputāṇa), Kirātas (of the Himālayan regions), Turuśkas (Arab settlers of Western India), and the Vatsas (of Kosambī)².

Mihira Bhoja (c. 836-85 A.D.)

At the very start of his career Mihira Bhoja attempted the consolidation of the Pratihāra power, which had received a rude shock during the feeble government of his father, Rāmabhadra. First, Mihira Bhoja re-established the supremacy of his family in Bundelkhand soon after his accession, and renewed a grant, made by Nāgabhaṭa II, which had fallen into desuetude in the reign of Rāmabhadra.³ Similarly, Mihira Bhoja revived another in 843 A.D. in Gurjaratā-bhūmi (Marwar) originally sanctioned by Vatsarāja and confirmed by Nāgabhaṭa II, but which had fallen into abeyance probably during the time of Rāmabhadra, and remained as such in the earlier years of Mihira Bhoja’s reign even.⁴ In the north, his suzerainty was certainly acknowledged up to the foot of the Himālayas, as is clear from the gift of some land to Kalacuri Guṇāṁbodhideva in the Gorakhpur district.⁵ Having thus made himself the dominant power in Maḍhyadēta, Mihira Bhoja turned to measure swords with the Pālas of Bengal, who under the vigorous rule of king Devapāla (circa 815-55 A.D.) had once again launched upon their Imperial schemes. The latter was a foemen worthy of his steel, and it is alleged he “brought low the arrogance

² Ibid., XIX, pp. 17-19 (Barah copper-plate).
³ Ibid., V, pp. 208-13 (Daulatpura C. P.).
⁴ Ep. Ind., VII, pp. 81-93 (Kaḫla plate).
of the lord of the Gurjaras. 1 Undaunted by this effective check to his advance eastward, Bhoja next directed his energies towards the south from which side the Rāśtrakūtas had so often emerged to despoil the smiling fields of Kanauj. He overran southern Rajputana and the tracts round Ujjayani up to the Narmadā river. Then he tried his strength against the avowed enemies of his house, but was defeated some time before 867 A.D. by Dhrupa II Dhārāvarṣa of the Guja-rat Rāśtrakūta branch. 2 Subsequently, Mihira Bhoja even came into conflict with Krīṣṇa II (873-911 A.D.) of the main line; their wars were, however, inconclusive. There are also grounds to believe that Mihira Bhoja’s arms had penetrated as far as Pehoa (Karnal district) 3 and even beyond it 4 in the west and Saurāṣ-tra in the south-west. 5

The Arab traveller, Sulaimān, writing in 851 A.D. pays a tribute to the efficiency of Bhoja’s administration and the strength of his forces, specially cavalry. He was “unfriendly to the Arabs” and was regarded as “the greatest foe of the Muhammadan faith.” 6 The country was prosperous, safe from robbers, and rich in natural resources. 7

Mahendrapāla I (circa 883-910 A.D.)

Mihira Bhoja’s successor was his son, Mahendrapāla I or Nirbhayarāja, 8 who came to the throne about

---

1 Ibid., II, pp. 163, 165, v. 13. cf. सर्वोदय अक्षरात्मक शब्दप्रयोगः
2 Ind. Ant., XII, pp. 184, 189, v. 38.
3 The Pehoa inscription records certain transactions at the local fair by certain horse-dealers “in the victorious reign of Bhoja-deva” (Ep. Ind., I, pp. 184-190).
4 See Infra.
7 Other variants of his name were Mahendra-yudha, Mahipā-la-deva, Nirbhayanarendra, etc.
883 A.D. Inscriptions prove that his most noteworthy achievement was the conquest of the greater part of Magadha and North Bengal just in the beginning of his reign. We further learn from two inscriptions found at Unā (Junāgadhi State) that in the years 893 and 899 his authority was recognised so far away as Saurāstra, where his feudatories, Balavarman and Avanivarman II Yoga, were ruling. But the glory of Mahendrapāla’s reign is partially dimmed by the diminution his kingdom suffered in the north-west, for a verse in the Rājatarangini informs us that the territories, seized by “Adhirāja” Bhoja, were afterwards restored to the Thakkiya family during the course of Saṅkaravarman’s expeditions abroad. Perhaps the pre-occupation of Mahendrapāla I in the east enabled the Kashmiri monarch (883-902 A.D.) to achieve his purpose. Whatever possessions the former might have thus lost in the Punjab, it is certain from a Pehoa inscription that the district of Karnal continued to remain under him, as it had been in the reign of his predecessor.

Mahendrapāla I was a liberal patron of polite letters. The greatest literary ornament of his court was Rājaśekhara, who has left a number of works of varying merit, like the Karṇāmaṇi, Bāla-Rāmāyaṇa, Bālabhārata, Kavyamimāṃsā, etc.

Mahipāla (circa 912-944 A.D.)

After the death of Mahendrapāla I about 910 A.D. there were some disturbances in the kingdom. At first, his son Bhoja II came to the throne with the help of Kokalla Cedi, but he was soon displaced by his half-brother, Mahipāla, who got the support of Hārṣadeva

1 Ep. Ind., IX, pp. 1-10.
Candella. It appears that Mahipāla was also known as Kṣitipāla, Vināyakapāla, and Heramkapāla. At the very commencement of his career, he had to bear the brunt of the Rāṣṭrakūṭa aggressions, since we are told in the Cambay plates of Govinda IV that Indra III “completely devastated” the hostile city of Mahodaya (Kanauj). Accompanied by his feudatory, Narasimha Cālukya, he plundered the land as far east as Prayāga. The Pālas took advantage of this attack, which must have occurred about 916-17 A.D., and recovered some of their ancestral dominions up to the eastern banks of the river Sone.

Thus, though there were some secessions in the outlying parts of the realm, Mahipāla soon tided over his initial troubles and resumed his father’s schemes of conquest. For a magnificent verse in the introduction to the Pravataspāṇḍava shows that his influence was felt by the Muralas (inhabitants of the Narmadā regions), Mekhalas (of the Amarakanṭak hills), Kalingas, Keralas, Kulūtās, Kuntalas, and the Ramaṭhas (dwelling beyond Prithūdaka). There are, however, indications that the closing years of Mahipāla were again seriously disturbed owing to the northern invasions of Kṛṣṇa III Rāṣṭrakūṭa. Al Mas‘ūdi, who visited the valley of the Indus in Hijrī 303-04 = 915-16 A.D. and wrote an account of his travels in H. 332 = 943-44 A.D., bears eloquent testimony to the strength of the forces

1 Ibid., I, p. 122, l. 10.
4 See History of Kanauj, pp. 267-68.
of Bāũra, evidently an Arabic corruption of the term Pratihāra or Pañdhāra. The Arab chronicler also refers to the Rāṣṭrakūṭa-Pratihāra enmity that was the characteristic feature of this epoch.¹

**Mahipāla's successors (A.D. 944-1036?)**

Mahendrapāla II, son and successor of Vinaya-kapāla (Mahipāla), appears to have maintained the Pratihāra authority intact, but the reign of Devapāla, who ascended the throne shortly before 948 A.D., was marked by the rise of the Candellas.² This was the signal for the decline and disruption of the empire, which continued during the time of Vijayapāla until it became divided into several powers, viz., (a) the Cālukyas of Anhilwāda (b) the Candellas of Jejakabhukti (c) the Kacchapaghātās of Gwalior (d) the Cedis of Dāhala (e) the Paramāras of Malwa (f) the Guhilas of southern Rajputana (g) the Cāhanānas of Sākaribhārī. The greatness and prestige of the Pratihāra family was thus already gone when Rājyapāla succeeded to the throne about the last decade of the tenth century A.D. During his reign the Moslems of the North-west turned longing eyes towards the fertile plains of India. Along with other contemporary Hindu rulers, Rājyapāla took his share in the attempts of the Sāhis of Udabhāndapur (afterwards Bhatinda) to stem the tide of their advance into the interior of the country.³ He first sent a contingent in 991 A.D. to help Jayapāla against Sultān Sabuktigin, and another was despatched in H. 339=1008 A.D., when the former’s son and suc-

² cf. the Khajurāho inscription, *Ep. Ind.*, I, pp. 126-28, 132-133, verses 23 and 31. Yaṣovarman Candella is described here as “a scorching fire to the Gurjara” and as having “conquered the fort of Kālaṇjarī.”
cessor, Anandapāla, was threatened by the aggressions of Mahmūd. On both the occasions the confederate armies were defeated. At last, the turn of Rājayapāla came in December 1018 A.D., but he fled across the Ganges to Bari, not being able to muster sufficient courage for a contest with Mahmūd. This pusillanimous submission of the Pratihāra monarch enraged the Candella chief, Gaṇḍa, and he sent a force under the command of the crown-prince, Vidyādharadeva, who killed Rājayapāla and placed his son, Trilocanapāla, on the throne. When Mahmūd received advices of the event he marched towards Kanauj in the autumn of H. 410=1019 A.D., and utterly routed Trilocanapāla in the engagement that followed. The latter, however, escaped death, and is known to have been alive in 1027 A.D. The last ruler of the line was perhaps Yaśahpāla, referred to in an inscription of the year 1036 A.D.  

IV. The Gāhadaṉālas

Chaotic conditions

After the dismemberment of the Pratihāra empire, there were repeated incursions in the Gangetic Doab. In H. 424=1033 A.D. it was overrun by Ahmad Nialtin, governor of the Punjab, who led his army right up to Benares, then in possession of Gaṇḍa or Gaṅgeyadeva Cedi. Ample evidence exists to show

2. With the decline of the Pratihāra family of Kanauj, the Pratihāras did not entirely fade into oblivion. We hear of Pratihāra chiefs ruling in different localities long afterwards. cf. e.g., Kureṣṭha (Gwallor State) plates of Malavaranman, dated V. E. 1307, and of his brother Nyivarman, dated V. E. 1304 (Prog. Rep. A. S. W. C., 1935-16, p. 39; Bhandarkar’s list, Nos. 473 and 14). Dr. A. S. Atlekar of the Benares Hindu University has also recently discovered a fragmentary inscription of Malavaranman in the Kotah State. He is editing it for the *Epigraphia Indica*.
that the latter and his son, Karna (c. 1041-72 A.D.), also aggrandised themselves in the North. An important verse in the Basahi plate further indicates that Bhoja Paramâra (circa 1000-1050 A.D.) made depredations in the Kanauj territory. When the “earth” was thus sorely troubled by destructive raids, a bold adventurer of the Gâhadâvâla sept, named Candradeva, arose, and by his “noble prowess” put an end to “all distress of the people.”

Origin

The Gâhadâvâlas emerge into the light of history so suddenly that it is difficult to determine precisely who they were. Some scholars think that they were a branch of the famous Râstrakûtas or Rathors. But it is significant that none of their numerous charters connects the Gâhadâvâlas with any of the well-known houses of Sûrya (Sun) and Candra (Moon), and their traditions trace them back merely to an obscure descendant of Yayâti. They are nowhere linked up with any hero of popular mythology. Does this show that they were originally an unimportant autochthonous tribe, which came into prominence as Kshatriyas after seizing political power and championing the cause of Brahmanism?

Candradeva

It appears Candradeva founded the Gâhadâvâla dynasty at Kânyakubja some time between 1080 and 1085 A.D. after defeating a chief named Gopâla. In the inscriptions Candradeva assumes the full Imperial

1 Ind. Ant., XIV, p. 103, l. 4.
2 Ibid., XVIII, pp. 16, 18, line 4.
3 cf. Sahel-Maheth inscription of “Gadhipurâdhina” Gopâla (Ind. Ant., XVII, pp. 61-64; Ibid., XXIV, p. 176; J. A. S. B., LXI, extra no. 1, pp. 60f.).
titles of P. M. P., and calls himself “the protector of the holy places” of Kāśi (Benares), Uttarakośala (Fyzabad district), Kuśika (Kanauj), and Indrashilāna (Delhi). Thus his jurisdiction extended almost over the whole length of the present United Provinces. There are also reasons to believe that in the east he took part in repressing the aggressive activities of Vijayasena of Bengal. Candradeva died about 1100 A.D., his last known date being 1099 A.D.

**Govindacandra**

Hardly anything useful to the historian is known about Candradeva’s son and successor, Madanapāla. Shortly before 1114 A.D. the latter was followed by his son, Govindacandra, who wielded substantial power even during his father’s lifetime. As crown-prince, prior to 1109 A.D. he repulsed the Moslem expedition sent by the Ghaznavide king, Mas‘ūd III (1098-1115 A.D.), under Hajib Tughāūgin.

We further learn that Govindacandra made encroachments at the expense of the decadent Pāla monarchy, and annexed portions of Magadha. This is evident from two of his grants—one sanctioning the gift of a village in the Patna district in 1126 A.D., and the second that of another village when in residence at Mudgagiri (Monghyr) in 1146 A.D. He also conquered Daśārna or eastern Malwa. In fine, he became a considerable power, and his fame spread to distant lands. He was on terms of friendship with Jayasimha of Kashmir (1128-49 A.D.) and Siddharāja Jayasimha of Gujarat (c. 1095-1143 A.D.), and perhaps even with the Coḷas of the South. Govinda-
candra's reign was marked by the literary efforts of his minister for peace and war, Lakṣmīdhara, who produced the Kṛtya-Kalpataru (Kalpadruma), one of the most important works on law, procedure, and other interesting topics.

Vijayacandra

Govindacandra was succeeded by his son, Vijayacandra, shortly after 1134 A.D. The Prithvirāja-Rāsa credits him with extensive victories, but not much reliance can be placed on these bardic tales. Like his father, Vijayacandra also stood as a bulwark against the aggressions of the Moslems. He drove back the forces of Amir Khusrau or his son Khusrau Malik, who had occupied Lahore after their expulsion from Ghazni by Alāuddin Gholī. In the east Vijayacandra maintained the Gāhādavāla authority intact over South Bihar, but it appears from an inscription that in the west he must have come into conflict with Vigrāharāja Visaladeva, who wrested Delhi from his hands.

Jayacandra

Vijayacandra's successor was his son, Jayacandra, whose accession took place on Sunday, the 21st of June, 1170 A.D. He is said to have attacked Yāḍavanāja of Devagiri, twice defeated Siddharāja of Anhilwāḍa, made eight tributary kings prisoners, and vanquished the Yavana (Moslem) ruler Sīhābuddin several times. All these bardic traditions lack corroboration, literary

---

1 *Ind. Ant.*, XV, pp. 7, 9, verse 9.

2 *J. A. S. B.*, 1886 (Vol. LV, pt. I), p. 42, v. 22. Thus the traditional belief that Delhi came in the possession of the Gāhāmānas in the time of Prithvirāja III is baseless. Anaṅgapāla Tomara is represented in popular stories as the founder of Dhillikas or Delhi. These Tomaras were probably feudatories of the kings of Kanauj.
or epigraphic, and so they may be summarily rejected. Jayacandra’s territories must have been comparatively limited in extent, as is evident from the contemporaneous existence of several strong principalities like those of the Cauhāns and the Candelas. In the east, it is, of course, clear from an inscription\(^1\) that his authority was recognised up to the Gayā region, and Benares continued to be the second capital of the Gāhaḍavālas. Jayacandra celebrated the \(Śvayamivarā\) of his daughter Sārīnyogitā, who was, however, carried away in the midst of the ceremonies by Prithvirāja.

By far the most important event of Jayacandra’s reign was the invasion of Sihābuddin Ghorī. In 1191 A.D. the latter was defeated by Prithvirāja at Taraori, and this debacle ranked in the Sultān’s mind so much that the very next year he returned and completely routed and killed the Cauhān king. Jayacandra kept himself in proud isolation, thinking that the annihilation of his great rival would clear the way for his own supremacy over Northern India.\(^2\) Little did he know that his own doom was awaiting him. In H. 590 (=1194 A.D.) Sihābuddin marched towards Kanauj and met Jayacandra on the plain between Candawar and Etawah. The latter was defeated and slain, but the kingdom was not annexed. His son, Hariścandra, was allowed by Sihābuddin to rule on his behalf. We do not know when and how Hariścandra met his end. This is, however, certain that by H. 623 (=1226 A.D.) the Ganges-Januma Doab had completely passed into the hands of the Moslems. Before concluding, it may be mentioned that Jayacandra’s name is memorable in the

---


\(^{2}\) The common view that Jayacandra invited Sihābuddin Ghorī to invade India is, however, erroneous.
history of Sanskrit literature for the patronage he extended to Śrīharṣa, who wrote the well-known Nāisadbacarita, Khandanakanda-khādyā, and other works.

SECTION B

NEPAL

Area

The present kingdom of Nepal comprises an extensive territory along the southern slopes of the Himalayas. It is roughly 500 miles in length from Almora district on the west to Darjeeling hills on the east. But in ancient times the name Nepal was limited to the undulating plain, twenty miles long and fifteen broad, between the Gandak and Kosi rivers. Within this small area, where Kāthmāṇḍu and other towns are situated, the people led an isolated life, and if they had any connections with the outside world, they were mostly with Tibet and China. It was only on rare occasions that Nepal was brought into contact with India. In the middle of the third century B.C., Aśoka may have exercised control over the valley, for he is said to have gone there with his daughter, Cārumā, and his son-in-law, Devapāla Ḍuddhiya (Kṣatriya), and built a number of stūpas and monasteries, besides founding the town of Lalitapatan. Again, in the middle of the fourth century A.D. the Allahabad pillar inscription represents Nepal as an autonomous frontier state, which, along with others, paid tribute to Samudragupta.² Our information regarding its history in the interval

¹ See Sylvain Lévi, Le Nepal (Paris, 1903); Pereival Landon, Nepal (London, 1928); D. Wright, History of Nepal (Cambridge, 1877); Ind. Ant., IX, XIV, etc.; Dy. Hist. North. Ind., I, Ch. IV, pp. 185-234.
² See Ante.
between Aśoka and Samudragupta is very scanty. The Vamśāvalīs or the local chronicles testify to the rule of the Ābhīrās, Kīrātas, Sōmavāṁśīs, and the Suryavāṁśīs but their chronology is altogether unreliable. We are on firmer ground when we come to the close of the sixth and the first four decades of the seventh century A.D.—the period of the Thākuri Amśuvarman, who has been identified with Ang-shu-fa-na of Yuan Chwang’s Records. He was the minister of the Licchavi king, Śvadeva, but after some time the former himself became the real master of the valley, as all power was concentrated in his hands. He ruled for at least forty-five years, and originated an era, which is generally believed to have begun in 595 A.D.

Some scholars arc of opinion that Nepal came under the suzerainty of Hārśavardhana, but a critical examination of the available evidence does not confirm this view. On the other hand, at this time Tibet wielded supreme influence over Nepal, whose king Amśuvarman married his daughter to the mighty Srong-btson-Gampo (r. 629-30 A.D.).

The history of Nepal is obscure for the next two centuries, except that there was probably a restoration of the Licchavi rule and the country continued to acknowledge the supremacy of Tibet. In 879-80 A.D. a new era was started, perhaps to mark its liberation from foreign yoke. Darkness again descends upon the affairs of Nepal for another century and a quarter, but from the commencement of the 11th century the colophons of a large number of manuscripts preserved in the Durbar Library and elsewhere yield us the

1 The Vamśāvalīs, however, “antedate” Amśuvarman by about seven centuries (Ind. Ant., XIII, p. 413).

names of a regular series of kings. They are, however, not credited with any notable achievements. Nepal’s trade with India, Tibet, and China then flourished, and the people grew wealthy and prosperous. We further learn that Nānyadeva, the Karnātaka chief of Tirhut, established his hegemony over Nepal some time in the first half of the twelfth century. Its subsequent history until the conquest of the Gurkhas in A.D. 1768 is devoid of any interest to the general reader.

Buddhism

Buddhism was perhaps introduced into Nepal during the visit of Aśoka, but nothing is known of the stages of its progress, or how Tāntric Mahāyāna became prevalent there. In the course of ages, however, degeneration set in, and laxity in the rules of discipline increased to such an extent that monkhood was with a good conscience reconciled with married life and pursuit of worldly avocations. The main importance of Nepalese Buddhism at present is that we see before our eyes the process by which Hinduism is gradually strangulating it. The principal Hindu deity of the land is Paśupati (Śiva).

SECTION C

THE CĀHAMĀNAS OF SĀKAMBHARĪ

Origin

According to the Hanumira-mahākāvyā and the Prithvirāja-viṣaya, the Cāhamānas (Cauhāns) were descended from an eponymous Cāhamāna, born of the Sun. Bardic tradition, on the other hand, regards them as one of the four “Agnikulas,” which probably indicates that, like the Pratihāras, they were also of foreign extraction, and
found a high place in the Hindu social polity after purification through a fire ceremony.¹

Principal Rulers

The Cāhamānas played a prominent part on the Indian political stage for many hundred years. Of the several branches of the clan, the most important was that of Śākambhari or Śambhar. The Harṣa stone inscription, dated the Vikrama year 1030=973 A.D., which is the first known record of the family,² takes us back to Gāvaka I, a contemporary of Nāgabhata II Pratihāra, but the literary works trace the genealogy to a still earlier Vāsudeva. With regard to the kings of this line, only a few need detain us here. About the beginning of the twelfth century A.D., Ajayārāja founded the city of Ajayameru or Ajmer, and beautified it with palaces and temples. Another famous member of the dynasty was Vigrāharāja IV Visalādeva (1153-64 A.D.). He is said to have made tributary the land between the Himālayas and the Vindhyas.³ This is, no doubt, an exaggeration if taken literally, but an inscription found at Bijoliā (Mewar) specially credits him with the conquest of Delhi,⁴ and in our opinion he must have wrested it from Vijayacandra Gāhadavāla.⁵ Besides a successful military leader, Vigrāharāja Visalādeva was also an accomplished poet and a patron of letters. The

¹ This interpretation of the 'Agnikula' legend is doubted by some scholars. They do not take it to indicate a rite of purgation, which the foreign tribes had to undergo.


³ Ind. Ant., XIX, p. 219.


⁵ See Sutra.
Harakeli-nātaka, portions of which were recovered some time ago from an inscribed stone slab on the wall of a mosque named Adhāi-dīn-kā-Jhoprā, professes to be his composition; while another play, the Lalitā-Vigrabharāja, similarly discovered, was written in his honour by Mahākavi Somadeva. The greatest monarch of this house was Rai Pithaurā of the Moslem historians or Prithvirāja III (1179-92 A.D.).

Prithvirāja III There is a strange halo of romance round his personality, which has made him the hero of many a popular song in Northern India. He was not on friendly terms with Jayacandra of Kanauj, and traditions affirm that when the latter held a svayamvara (selection of bridegroom) for his daughter Sanyogitā, Prithvirāja appeared just in the midst of the ceremonies and daringly carried her away. He also attacked the Candella king, Paramārdi or Paramala (1165-1203 A.D.), and occupied Mahobā and other fortresses in Bundelkhand. Another contemporary, with whom Prithvirāja probably came into warlike collision, was Bhima II Cālukya of Gujarat (circa 1179-1240 A.D.). Prithvirāja was next called upon—being lord of the territories of Sāmbhar and Delhi—to resist the attacks of Sihābuddin Ghori, who was gradually advancing into the alluring plains of Hind. In the first engagement at Taroari in H. 587—1191 A.D. fortune favoured him, and the Moslem hosts were so completely overwhelmed that even Sihābuddin was rescued with difficulty from the furious charges of the Cauhāns. This rout constantly troubled the Sultan, and accordingly the very next year, in H. 588—1192 A.D., he returned to Hindustan with a re-organised force to avenge it. Prithvirāja

1 It is said to have been formerly a college founded by Vigrāharāja.
appealed for succour to the neighbouring potentates, who responded enthusiastically to the call of their compatriot.1 Jayacandra, however, kept himself aloof from this supreme effort against a danger that was soon to engulf him as well. In the battle that ensued, the Moslems carried "death and destruction" so desperately that by sunset there was complete confusion in the Hindu ranks. Prithviraja fled from the field for dear life, but was captured near the Sarsuti (Saraswati) and killed. Ajmer was taken, and shortly after Delhi too fell into the hands of the victors. The family was not exterminated and the foresight of Sihabuddin "delivered" the country of Ajmer to a son of Prithviraja "on a promise of punctual payment of a large tribute."2 But owing to the activities of his uncle, Hariraja, this prince had to retire to Ranthambhor where a branch of the Cahasanas ruled till its capture by Alauddin Khilji in 1301 A.D. Qutb-ud-din, however, defeated the refractory Hariraja, and annexed the Cauhan territories.

SECTION D

SIND

Area

Sind roughly denoted the lower Indus valley from Multan down to the sea; in the west it sometimes included large portions of Baluchistan, and in the east it was bounded by the Indian desert. Our knowledge of its early history is extremely scanty, almost limited to what the Arab historians have written about it. We learn that at the time of the Arab invasions

2 Ibid., pp. 177-78; see also Tah-ul-Ma‘Ir : Elliot, History of India, II, pp. 214, 215, 219. This son of Prithviraja is called Gola or Kola.
Sind was under the dynasty founded by the Brahman Chach. It was preceded by the Rāi dynasty Rāi family comprising five kings, who are said to have held power for 137 years with Alor (near modern Rohri) as their capital. When Yuan Chwang was travelling in India (629-45 A.D.), Sind was ruled by a Buddhist monarch of the Südram (Shu-ta-lo) caste,¹ and if he was identical with Siharas Rāi, as is most probable, we get welcome light on the origin of the Rāis. Presumably it was this ruler, who came into conflict with the great Harṣavar-dhana.² After the death of the last Rāi, Sāhasi, his Brahman minister, Chach, married the widowed queen, and himself assumed the crown. During his long reign of forty years the kingdom grew in extent and authority, and is described to have abutted upon the confines of Kash-mir. His son, Dāhir, who succeeded Moslems Advent of the Candar or Candra (Chach’s brother), had to face a serious Arab invasion because he did not chastise the people of Debul for having seized a vessel carrying rich presents from the king of Ceylon to Hajjāj, governor of Iran. Muhammad ibn Kāsim led the expedition; he stormed Debul in H. 93 = A.D. 712, captured Bahmanabad, and reduced Multan in 723 A.D., thus completing the conquest of Sind. This was the culmination of the Arab plundering raids, which began as early as H. 15 = 636-37 A.D. during the Khilāfat of Omar. Having got control of Sind, the Arabs initiated a vigorous policy of expansion, and Junaid, who was its governor under Khalifā Hishām (724-43 A.D.), was particularly active. He conquered Al Bailaman

¹ Watters, II, p. 252.
(Bhinmal?), Jurtz (Gurjara kingdom of Western India), and other territories, but against Ujjain he could merely make an incursion. In this direction he was perhaps repulsed by Nāgabhaṭa I. From this time onwards the Pratihāra kings continued to be the greatest foes of the Moslems and their faith, and this compelled the latter to seek the alliance of the Balhāras (Vallabharājas), i.e., the Rāṣṭrakūṭas of Mānyakhet. It is likely the Arabs might have achieved more successes in the interior of India, if the Pratihāras had not offered them a determined opposition. In Sind the conquerors followed a farsighted policy of toleration. ¹ No doubt, Islam spread, but Hindu temples were considered “inviolable like the churches of the Christians, the synagogues of the Jews, and the altars of the Magians.” The Brahmins were even permitted to build or repair dilapidated temples. While the Arab garrisons were stationed at strategic centres, the internal administration was mostly left in the hands of the natives, who paid the land-tax (khirāj) and the poll-tax (jizya). The Arabs also in certain respects yielded to the subtle influences of their Indian environments. For instance, they learnt Astronomy and Mathematics from the Hindus, and translated into Arabic the work of Caraka and the fables of the Pañca-tantra. ²

Later History

The later history of Sind is mainly of local interest.

¹ The Arab invaders evidently adopted this policy to conciliate the people and establish their authority in Sind on a firm footing. Besides, their outlook must have, to some extent, been affected by admixture of blood, which was inevitable as the conquerors did not bring women with them.

² Dy, Hist. North. Ind., Vol. I, pp. 20-24. I have carefully and profitably utilised both the volumes, so full of useful suggestions and information, for the history of medieval Hindu dynasties.
We learn of internecine struggles, and the rise and fall of Arab principalities like Múltán and Mansúrah. In the eleventh century the Ghaznavides gradually displaced the Arabs in Sind, but it appears that the conquests of Múhammúd of Ghaznúf were not so thorough in lower as in upper Sind. Accordingly, soon after his death the former region virtually asserted its independence under the Hindu Sumras, who ruled there for about three centuries, and were followed by the Sammas in the middle of the fourteenth century.

SECTION E

THE SÁHÍS OF KÁBUL AND THE PUNJÁB

Turki Sáhíb

After the disintegration of their empire, the Kus- hans did not entirely disappear from the stage of Indian history. The reference to the “Daivaputra-Šáhi-Šáhá- nuisáhi” in the Allahabad pillar inscription of Samudra- gupta has rightly been interpreted to suggest that princes of the Kushan race survived in the Punjab and the Kabul valley until about the middle of the fourth century A.D. The great Moslem scholar, Álberuni,¹ gives us a little more information. According to him, the descendants of Barhatakín, one of them being Kanik (Kaníśka), whom he calls Hindu Turks, ruled Kábul for sixty generations under the style Šáhiya, evidently a variant of the Sanskrit Šáhi or of the Kushan Šáh. Álberuni may or may not be correct in stating that all these monarchs belonged to one family, or

¹ Álberuni’s Indiá, Eng. Trans. by Sachau, Vol. II, pp. 10-11. Ábu-Ríhán Muhammad, as his full name was, studied Sanskrit thoroughly, and his work contains an excellent account of the achievements of the Hindus in literature and science. He lived from A. D. 973 to 1048.
that their number was exactly sixty, but it seems probable
that they were of the Kushan stock, and used the title
Shahiya (Sahi). Scholars generally suppose that one
of them was identical with the Buddhist Kṣatriya
king of Kin-pi-shi (Kapiša), mentioned by Yuan
Chwang. The pilgrim’s description of the royal caste
does not in any way militate against this view; it only
shows that by the time of his visit the foreign Kushans
had become completely merged into Hindu society.
We may recall here the tendency of even some of the
great Kushans to adopt Hindu gods and names.
Hardly anything is known of the Turki Sahis except that
they carried on intermittent wars with the Arab invaders
from the seventh to the middle of the ninth century
A.D.\(^1\) The last member of the house, Lagatürmân,
is said to have been deposed by his Brahman minister,
Kallar.\(^2\)

**Hindu Sahis**

Having usurped the throne, Kallar became the
founder of a new dynasty, which Alberuni calls "Hindu
Shahiya". Then came in succession Sāmānd
(Samanta), Kamalū, Bhiṃ (Bhima), Jayapāla, Anandapāla,
Tarojanapāla (Tilokanapāla), and Bhimapāla.\(^3\)
Coins partially confirm this list of Alberuni, but Kalhāna
mentions some other names in connection with the wars
between the Sahis and the kings of Kashmir. Thus, his
Lalliya, who helped the Gurjara adversary of Śaṅkaravarman (883-902 A.D.), was perhaps identical with Kallar
of the above group. We are further told that Prabhā-

\(^1\) The Arab historians call these rulers Rathill, the connotation of which is not clear (*Dj. Hist. North. Ind.*, Vol. 1, p. 71).


karadeva, minister of Gopālavārman (c. 902-04 A.D.), inflicted a crushing defeat on an unnamed “rebelloius Sāhi,” who has rightly been identified with Sāmand or Sāmanta. He is described as the “Sāhi of Udbhāṇḍapura,” for the capital was transferred there after the capture of Kābul in H. 236 = 870-71 A.D. by the Saffarid Ya’qub ibn Laith. The coins of Sāmanta have been found in large numbers in Afghanistan and the Punjab; they are of the bull and horseman type, and have got the legend “Sri-Sāmanadeva” on the obverse. It is claimed in the Rajatarangini that after his victory the Kashmiri minister gave the Sāhi kingdom to Toramaṇa, who was probably the same as Alberuni’s Kamalū. The next ruler, Bhīma, was the maternal grandfather of queen Diddā of Kashmir, where he built a temple called Bhīmakeśava in the reign of Kṣemagupta (910-18 A.D.). Bhīma is known from his coins too.

From the time of Jayapāla onwards the Moslems exerted a continuous pressure on the Sāhis. The latter gradually lost their territories in Afghanistan, and were even compelled to shift the capital to Bhatinda (now in the Patiala State). When Jayapāla was driven to desperation by the ever-recurring depredations of Sabuktigin, he organised a counter-attack on the enemy’s dominions. The Hindu hosts were repelled, and Jayapāla had to conclude a humiliating treaty. In the safety of his capital, however, he repudiated the terms of the agreement, and even went to the length of imprisoning the officers of the Sultān, who was thus naturally provoked to chastise him. Jayapāla invited the prominent Hindu states, like those of Delhi, Ajmer,

1 Coins of this type continued to be issued for some centuries afterwards.
2 Elliot, History of India, II, p. 22; Briggs, Firishta, I, p. 17.
Kālañjara, and Kanauj, to help him with men and money, but despite their response he suffered a severe reverse on the confines of Lāmghān (Jalālābād district). The next attack was made by Mahmūd in H. 392=1001 A.D., and the issues were again unfavourable to the Sāhī monarch. Then he felt so mortified that he handed over the cares of the kingdom to his son, Ānandapāla, and immolated himself by fire. The ambitions of Ānandapāla Mahmūd did not, however, leave the new ruler in peace, and both came face to face in H. 399=1008 A.D. Like his father, Ānandapāla sought the support of contemporary Hindu kings, but nothing availed the confederates, and the arms of Mahmūd triumphed as usual. Six years later Ānandapāla was succeeded by Trilocanapāla, who lost against the Hāmīra (Mahmūd) mainly because of the bad military tactics of his Kashmir ally. At last, Trilocanapāla was killed in H. 412=1021 A.D. and his son and successor, Bhūmapāla, met the same fate. Five years afterwards in 1026 A.D. Thus fighting valiantly at the gates of India against the foreign invaders, the Sāhīs vanished into nothingness, and were soon completely forgotten.

SECTION F

KASHMIR

Geographical Application of the name

The name Kashmir denoted a much more restrict-

1 Raverty, on the other hand, thinks that the scene of the battle was the Kurram valley (Notes on Afghanistan, p. 321). Pirishta refers to this confederacy of Hindu states (Briggs, Vol. I, p. 18), but Al Utab makes no mention of it in the Tariḥ-i-Yamīn (Elliott, II, p. 21).

2 Pirishta alludes to a custom among the Hindus that “whatever Rājā was twice overpowerd by strangers, became disqualified
ed area in ancient times than is covered by the present State, which stretches from the Punjab in the south to the Pamirs in the north, and from the Tibetan border in the east to the Yarkhun river in the west. It was then, strictly speaking, applied to the upper valley of the Vītastā (Jhelum) and the tracts watered by its tributaries, although these territories were occasionally enlarged by the conquests of some of the monarchs. Being isolated from the rest of the country by huge mountain walls, Kashmir was rarely affected by the general currents of Indian history, and thus developed distinctive institutions and a culture of her own.

**Early History**

Our knowledge of the affairs of the valley is mainly based on Kalhana’s *Rājatarāṅgini* and later supplementary chronicles.¹ But even Kalhana, who completed his great work in 1130 A.D., is of little help for the period preceding the seventh century. It is certain that in the time of Aśoka Kashmir formed part of the Maurya empire, for he is credited with having built there numerous stūpas and monasteries, and founded the city of Srinagara. Indeed, Yuan Chwang goes so far as to assert that Aśoka “gave up all Kashmir for the benefit of the Buddhist church.”² After Aśoka’s death, probably it became independent under one of his sons, Jālauka. Several centuries later, Kashmir was ruled by the Kushan kings, Kaniska and Huviṣka, but it was to reign” (Briggs, I, p. 38). Al Uthbi gives a slightly different explanation (see Elliot, II, p. 17).


² See e.g., Jonarāja’s *Deviśya Rājatarāṅgini*, ed. by Peterson (Bombay, 1896).

³ Beal, I, p. 151; Watters, I, p. 267.
outside the sway of the Guptas. Next, Mihirakula is said to have carved out a kingdom there after his expulsion from the Indian interior.

The Karkotaka Dynasty

Durlabhavardhana

The connected history of Kashmir begins with the extinction of the mythical Gonanda dynasty early in the seventh century, when Durlabhavardhana ascended the throne. He claimed descent from Nāga Karkotaka, and accordingly the family is called after the latter. Durlabhavardhana had a long reign of 36 years. He won the friendship of Harṣavardhana by giving him a prized tooth-relic of the Buddha for enshrinement in Kanauj. If the former is identical, as seems highly probable, with the prince at whose court Yuan Chwang spent two pleasant years from 651 to 653 A.D., Kashmir was then already an important state having dependencies like Simhapura (Ketas), Uraśā (Hazārā), Punch and Rājapura (Rajorī).

Lalitāditya Muktapīda

The most powerful ruler of the line was Lalitāditya Muktapīda (circa 724-760 A.D.), the third son of Durlabhaka. Though the account of Lalitāditya’s digvijaya may be exaggerated, his victory against Yaśovarman of Kanauj in 733 A.D.,¹ the conquest of a portion of the Punjab and his campaigns in Tukhāristan (the upper Oxus valley) and Daradādesa (Dardistan, north of Kashmir) are certainly founded on fact. Lalitāditya is further represented to have defeated an unnamed king of Gauda, and carried his arms to the land of the Bhauṭṭas (Tibetans). Lalitāditya Muktapīda or Mu-topi of the Chinese historians also sent an embassy to the

¹ See History of Kanauj, pp. 204-05.
Emperor Hiuen Tsung (713-55 A.D.). It is noteworthy that at this time China wielded supreme influence in Kashmir, since according to the annals of the Tang dynasty Tchen-t’o-lo-pi-li or Candrapida, the second predecessor of Mukrapida, received investiture as king from the Emperor of China in 720 A.D. Lalitaditya built Buddhist Vibaras at Huskapura and other places, and temples for Brahmanical gods—Bhutesa (Siva) and Parihasa Kesava (Visnu). His most famous construction was the Martanda temple of the Sun, whose ruins still testify to its former grandeur.

Jayapida Vinayaditya

Lalitaditya’s grandson, Jayapida Vinayaditya (779-810 A.D.), was another illustrious member of the house. He defeated and dethroned a king of Kanauj who was identical either with Vajrayudha or with Indrayudha. But Kalhana’s description of the Kashmiri monarch’s expeditions against Nepal and an otherwise unknown king of Paundravardhana (North Bengal), named Jayanta, reads more like fiction than sober history. Jayapida was a great patron of letters, and his court was adorned by such geniuses as Udbhata, Vamana, and Damodaragupta (author of the Kuttanimita). In his later years, however, Jayapida leaned towards avarice and tyranny owing perhaps to his wars and depletion of the treasury. He was followed by a number of weak rulers under whom the power of the Karkotakas steadily declined until about the middle of the ninth century they were supplanted by the Utpalas.

The Utpala Dynasty

Avantivarman

Avantivarman, who founded the Utpala dynasty in 855 A.D., was not in a position to embark upon
any schemes of conquest, as the kingdom had suffered greatly both from economic and from political troubles during the reigns of the later Karkoṭakas. Avantivarman, therefore, took vigorous steps to improve the administration, establish internal security, and rehabilitate the state resources. The first thing that he did was to curb effectively the power of the Dāmaras, a turbulent class of rural aristocrats. We may next mention the vast engineering projects of his minister for public works, Śuyya, whose name is preserved in the modern town of Sopur (Suyyapura). He constructed channels for irrigation, and even changed the course of the river Vitastā (Jhelum) to prevent floods, thus reclaiming extensive marshy areas for cultivation. These beneficent activities increased the prosperity of the land, so that a Khārī of rice could be bought for 36 dināras, whereas previously the price of the same was 200 dināras.

Avantivarman constructed and endowed temples, and gave liberal sums in charity to Brahmans. He also extended his patronage to literary men, amongst whom the most prominent was Ānandavardhana, author of the Dhvanyāloka. The name of Avantivarman survives in the present town of Vantpor or Avantipura.

Śaṅkaravarman

After the death of Avantivarman in 883 A.D., the kingdom was convulsed by a civil turmoil, which eventually ended in favour of his son, Śaṅkaravarman. The latter reversed the peaceful policy of his father, and plunged headlong in foreign wars. He invaded Darvābhisāra (the region between the Vitastā and the Candrabhāgā), made his influence felt in Trigarta (Kangrā), and defeated the Gurjara lord, Alakhāna, who was helped by Lallīya Sāhi. Śaṅkaravarman also seized certain territories, conquered earlier by Mihira Bhoja, from Mahendrapāla I Pratihāra, and transferred them
to the hakkiya Ėchief. Saṅkaravarman died in 902 A.D. while returning from an expedition through the Hazārā country (Uraśā).

Saṅkaravarman's military operations were a heavy drain on the treasury, which he tried to replenish by adopting strange methods of fiscal extortion. He even plundered the temples and levied fees on religious ceremonies. The result of this oppressive taxation was the gradual impoverishment of the people. Learning also languished under his rule for want of patronage.

Later Utpalas

The reign of Saṅkaravarman's son, Gopālavarman, is chiefly remembered for the defeat his minister Prabhākaradeva inflicted on a Sāhi king, identified with Alberuni's Sāmand (Sāmantadeva). We further learn that the victor deposed his opponent, and placed Toramāṇa-Kamaluka (Kamalū) on the Sāhi throne. The period from the death of Gopālavarman in 904 A.D. to the end of the Utpala dynasty in 939 A.D. is largely dominated by the Tantrins, a close corporation of foot-soldiers, who, notwithstanding the rivalry of the Ekāṅgas (a kind of military police), had become so powerful as to assume the role of king-makers. This state of affairs was in no small measure due to the incapacity and avarice of the rulers themselves. For instance, the government did nothing to relieve the distress of the subjects when there occurred a severe famine in Kashmir in 917-18 A.D. in the time of the child-monarch, Pārtha. Kalhana laments that while innumerable persons died of starvation and misery, the royal family cared only for its own comforts, and the ministers and Tantrins callously "amassed riches by selling their stores of rice at high prices." The last king but one, Unmattāvanti (937-939 A.D.), was indeed "worse than wicked". He slew his father, Pārtha, in
his retreat at Jayendravihāra, and starved all his half-
brothers to death. Unmattāvanti took fiendish delight
in cruel and loathsome acts like getting the wombs of
pregnant women cut open. Fortunately, he died soon,
and with the brief reign of his supposed son, Sūra-
varman II, the Utpala house came to an end in 939
A.D.

The line of Parvagupta

After Sūravarman II, the Brahmans elected Yaś-
ahkara, son of Gopālavarman’s minister, Prabhākara-
deva, as king. During his benevolent reign of nine
years (939-48 A.D.), peace and prosperity returned to
the country. His son and successor, Saṅgrāma, was
killed in 949 A.D. by the minister, Parvagupta, who
usurped the throne himself. The most interesting
figure in this line was Diddā, grand-daughter of
Bhima Sāhī and daughter of the Lohara (in the Punch
State) chief, Simharāja. She was an ambitious and
energetic woman, and for nearly half a century—first
as queen-consort of king Kṣemagupta (950-958 A.D.),
then as regent, and lastly as ruler (980-1005 A.D.)—she
was the dominant personality in the politics of Kashmir.
During this period there were constant court-intrigues,
but in spite of the opposition of the Dāmaras (land-
owning nobles) and the Brahmans she maintained her
authority with the assistance of Tuṅga, a Khasa of low
origin, for whom she displayed excessive fondness.

The Loharas

Before her death in 1005 A.D., Diddā was success-
ful in settling the succession on her nephew, Saṅgrāma-
rāja, brother of the Lohara prince, Vīgaṭaharīja. Saṅ-
grāmarāja (1005-28 A.D.) proved a weak king, and
during the earlier part of his reign Tuṅga continued to
be the real power in the state. The latter went to the help of Trilocanapāla Sāhī in 1014 A.D. against the aggression of Mahmūd, who, however, utterly routed the combined Hindu army. The Sultān made an attempt to conquer the valley in H. 412=1021 A.D. He advanced up to the foot of the hills but being unable to storm the fort of Lohkot he withdrew to Lahore. Barring brief intervals of good government, the subsequent history of Kashmir is mainly a long tale of lust, tyranny, misrule, and fiscal oppression. A land so fair was never perhaps so unfortunate in its early monarchs. One of them, Harṣa (1089-1101 A.D.), who began well as an administrator, military leader, and liberal patron of the softer arts of music and poetry, later degenerated into a profligate, cruel-hearted, and irreligious man. His extravagant expenditure and unbounded immorality soon led him into deep waters. He employed “Turuṣka” (Moslem) generals in the army, and devised a systematic policy of plundering the temples and defiling the images. He tried to squeeze money out of the people in other ways also. At last, the powerful Dāmagāra raised the standard of revolt, and for a time anarchy prevailed in the kingdom. Ultimately Ucchala seized the throne of Kashmir. The sceptre, however, continued to change hands quickly with the result that the people almost began to groan under the weight of civil wars, misgovernment, and machinations of the aristocracy. Thus, Hindu rule dragged on in the valley till 1339 A.D., when a Moslem adventurer, Shāh Mir, established his dynasty under the title Śrī-Saṁsādina or Shams-ad-dīn. It is worth remembering that during the time of the early Moslem kings the Brahmans maintained their political importance, and Sanskrit was the principal language of the realm.
CHAPTER XVI

MEDIEVAL HINDU DYNASTIES OF NORTHERN INDIA (continued)

SECTION A

ASSAM

Extent of Kāmarūpa

The name Kāmrup (Kāmarūpa) is now applied to the central region of Assam—the district extending from Goalpāra to Gauhāṭi. In ancient times, however, it denoted the whole of the province of Assam as well as portions of North and East Bengal and Bhutan. The capital of this kingdom was Prājapatiśapura, perhaps not far from the site of modern Gauhāṭi.

Legendary Rulers

Inscriptions and literature uniformly affirm that the kings of Kāmarūpa were descended from the mythical Naraka, whose son, Bhagadatta, figured prominently on the side of the Kauravas in the Mahābhārata war. Whatever the value of such traditions, there is no doubt that the people regarded the ruling family as existing from high antiquity. Even Yuan Chwang states about the middle of the seventh century that between his royal contemporary of Assam and the founder of the dynasty no less than one thousand gene-

rations had elapsed.¹

**Early epigraphic notices**

The earliest historically important reference to Kāmarūpa occurs in the Allahabad pillar inscription, which describes it as a frontier state yielding allegiance to Samudragupta. We next learn from the Apsād inscription that the Later Gupta monarch, Mahāsenagupta, carried his arms up to the banks of the river Lohitya or Lauhiya (Brahmaputra) and defeated Susthitavarman,² who has rightly been identified with his Kāmarūpa namesake mentioned in the Nidhanpur plates.³

**Bhāskararvarman**

The reign of Susthitavarman's son, Bhāskaravarman, has been rendered memorable by the visit of Yuan Chwang to Kāmarūpa early in 643 A.D. The former was in constant dread of his neighbour, Šaśāṅka, king of Karnasuvarga, and so he (Bhāskararvarman) formed an "unending alliance" with Harṣa at the very start of his career. Bhāskararvarman or Kumārarāja, as his second name was, attended both the assemblies of his great ally at Kanauj and Prayāga. This fact and the honour he extended to the Buddhist Yuan Chwang indicate how wide were the sympathies of Bhāskararvarman, who himself perhaps belonged to the Brahman caste. Some scholars, however, think that the pilgrim's testimony merely signifies the Brahmanical religion of the Kāmarūpa king. He is also said to have helped the Chinese mission under Wang-hieun-tse, against whom O-la-nashun or Arjuna, the usurper of Harṣa's throne, took the field in 648 A.D. The Nidhanpur plates represent

¹ This is to be taken with a certain amount of caution.
³ *Ep. Ind.,* XII, pp. 74, 77. According to the Nidhanpur plates, the founder of the line was Puṣyavarman (*Ibid.*, pp. 73, 76).
Bhāskaravarman as a vanquisher of "hundreds of kings," and record a grant made from his camp at the capital of Kāṃsauvarṇa, which he must have annexed in the confusion following the death of Harṣa. Thus Bhāskaravarman continued to rule from almost the beginning of the seventh century to about its middle.

Later History

Nothing is known of the successors, if any, of Bhāskaravarman. It appears that his family was not long after overthrown by a local adventurer, named Saśastambha, who founded a new dynasty which was in turn supplanted by another early in the ninth century A.D. Barring one or two exceptions, none of these rulers exercised influence outside the limits of Assam. In the middle of the eighth century one of its monarchs named Śrī-Harṣa, father-in-law of the Nepalese Jayadeva, is said to have conquered Gauḍa, Odra (Orissa), Kaliṅga, Kośala, and other lands. Similarly, in the first half of the eleventh century another king, Ratnapāla, son of Brahmāpāla, wielded considerable power. He claims to have struck awe into the hearts of the lord of the Gūrjaras, the Gauḍa (Pāla) monarch, the Dāksinārya ruler (i.e., Vikramādiyā VI Čālukya, who invaded Kāmarūpa in the reign of his father Someśvara I), the Keralas (perhaps Rājendra I Cola?), the Bābikas and the Taikes (Tājakas?).

Pāla Aggressions

Kāmarūpa did not escape the arms of the ambitious

1 Ibid., also pp. 65-66.
2 Ind. Ant., Vol. IX, p. 179, l. 15.
3 See Jfrn.
4 J. A. S. B., 1898, pp. 175-18. Do these Taikes refer to the Moslem raiders of Northern India under Mahmūd of Ghaznī and Ma'sūd? They did not, however, proceed farther eastward than Benares.
Pāla monarchs. According to the Bhagalpur inscription,¹ Devapāla (c. 815-55 A.D.) sent an expedition under his cousin, Jayapāla, who achieved some successes against the king of Prāgjyotisa (verse 6). Ample evidence exists to show that about the third decade of the twelfth century Assam recognised Kumārapāla’s authority, and his minister Vaidyadeva enjoyed substantial power there.

Foreign incursions

One remarkable feature of the history of Kāmarūpa is that it did not succumb to the onslaughts of the Moslems in spite of their repeated attempts to subdue it, beginning with the ill-fated invasion of Tibet by Muhammad ibn Bakhtyār in H. 601=1205 A.D., in which he lost practically all his troops owing to the destruction of a strategic bridge by the Assamese, and ending with the attack of Aurangzeb’s famous general, Mīr Jumlā, in 1662 A.D. Assam was, however, subjugated early in the thirteenth century by the Ahoms, a branch of the Shan tribe. They were masters of the land until 1825 A.D., when the British occupied it. The name Assam is probably derived from these Ahom conquerors.

Religion

Assam is the centre of both Buddhist and Hindu Tantricism, and in popular imagination it is associated with magic and witchcraft. Its most sacred shrine is that of Kāmākhya, near Gauhati, where Sākta Hindus worship the female form of the Deity. The country presents an interesting example of the gradual spread of Hinduism among the aborigines and the Mongolian tribes that settled down there in the course of ages.

THE PĀLAS : EARLY HISTORY OF BENGAL

SECTION B

THE PĀLAS

Early History of Bengal

In ancient times the fortunes of Bengal were closely linked up with Magadha. The Nandas, who are described as rulers of the Prasiil and the Gangaridai nations, probably extended their authority to the Lower Ganges valley, and so also did the Mauryas. The Kushans do not seem to have held sway over it, but the Guptas were certainly masters of Bengal. After the disintegration of the Gupta empire petty principalities grew up there, and the Harāhā inscription of the Maukhari Isānavarman even refers to the warlike activities of the “Gauḍas living on the seashore” about the middle of the sixth century A.D. In the beginning of the seventh century, Bengal was ruled by Saśāṅka, who killed Rājyavardhana of Thāneśvar and for a time occupied the Maukhari capital, Kanauj. Yuan Chwang calls Saśāṅka king of Kānaṣuvarna, whereas according to an inscription dated G.E. 300–619 A. D. his suzerainty was acknowledged by the Sailodbhavas of the Ganjam region. “Mahārajaḥ Mahāraja” Saśāṅka was thus the sovereign of fairly extensive territories. Himself a Saiva, he is said to have persecuted the Buddhists. After his decline or death, Bengal comprising Paundravardhana, Samaraṭa, Tamralipti (Tamluk), and Kānaṣuvarna passed into the hands of Hariśvaradha. His

2 See Ants.
3 Ep. Ind., VI, pp. 143 f. The exact findspot of this inscription is unknown, but it remained lying in the office of the Collector, Ganjam, for some time.
death in 647 A.D. was followed by a period of chaos and foreign incursions. Bhāskarāvarman of Assam appears to have then annexed Karnasuvra; and some time in the second quarter of the eighth century Yasuvarman of Karnaµj defeated the king of Magadhā and Gaudā. It was also overrun by Lalitāditya of Kashmir, Śri-Harša of Kāmarūpa and other invaders. When anarchy was thus rampant in the land, the people assembled together and chose Gopāla as their monarch.

Who were the Pālas?

It is significant that the Pālas do not trace their descent from any ancient hero. We merely learn from an inscription discovered at Khalimpur that the Pāla dynasty, so called because the names of all its members had the termination—Pāla, sprang from one Dayatāvīṣṇu, whose son was Vāpyara. Probably this shows that the family rose from humble beginnings, and had no illustrious ancestry. Later on, however, attempts were made to connect it with the Sea or the Sun.

Gopāla

Although the details of Gopāla’s career are not known, there is no doubt that he introduced peace in the kingdom, and laid the foundations of the future greatness of his family. According to the Tibetan Lāmā, Tārānātha, Gopāla built the celebrated monastery at Otantapura, (modern town of Bihar), and reigned for forty-five years. We agree, however, with Mr. Allan who remarks that “this can hardly refer to the period of his full power. His dates are probably c. A.D. 765-78.”

Dharmapāla

Gopāla’s son and successor, Dharmapāla, was an

---

1 Cam. Sh. Hist. Ind., p. 142.
energetic personality, and the task of internal consolidation having already been accomplished by his father, he found himself in a position to undertake foreign expeditions. His most notable achievement was the defeat of Indraraja (Indrâyudha), whom he deposed, raising Cakrayudha to the throne of Kanauj. The settlement, thus made by the Gauda monarch, was "readily accepted" by the leading contemporary states of Northern India, viz., Bhoja, Matsya, Madra Kuru, Yadu, Yavana, Avanti, Gandhara, and Kirti. Dharmapala's wars with other contemporaries, however, appear to have been disastrous to his arms. Inscriptions record that both Vatsaraja Pratihara and Dhrupa Rastakuta (c. 779-94 A.D.), who could not tolerate the Imperial pretensions of Dharmapala, routed him separately. The engagement with Dhrupa perhaps took place in the Gangetic Doab, for we are told that he vanquished the Gauda ruler "as he was fleeing between the Ganges and the Jumna." The Sanjan plates further testify that "Dharma (Dharmapala) and Cakrayudha surrendered of themselves" to Govinda III Rastakuta (c. 794-814 A.D.). Finally, Dharmapala's dreams of supremacy in the North came to nought when Nagabhaña II Pratihara seized Kanauj from Cakrayudha. Dharmapala was furious at the dethronement of his protégé, but all was in vain and he suffered a reverse in a sanguinary contest with the Pratihara conqueror at Mudagiri (Monghyr).

Dharmapala was a Buddhist, and he is said to have founded the famous establishment at Vikramashila (Patharghata, Bhagalpur district). Its splendid temples and monasteries bore eloquent testimony to his liberality as well as to that of the other donors.

1 Ep. Ind., IV, pp. 248, 252.
2 Ibid., XVIII, pp. 244, 252, l. 14.
**Devapāla**

After a long reign, Dharmapāla was succeeded by his son, Devapāla, who is rightly reckoned the most mighty Pāla potentate. Epigraphic records credit him with extensive conquests. It is stated that he “made tributary the earth” between Revā’s parent (Vindhyas) and Gaurī’s father (Himālayas), and “enjoyed” it even as far as Rāma’s bridge in the south. These are, no doubt, vain hyperboles, but the Badal pillar inscription specifically claims that, owing to the sagacious advice of the ministers, Darbhapāni and Ke-dāra Miśra, Devapāla “eradicated the race of the Utkalas, humbled the pride of the Hūṇas, and scattered the conceit of the rulers of Dravida and Gurjara.” We learn from the Bhagalpur inscription (verse 6) that Devapāla’s cousin, Jayapāla, was responsible for securing the submission of Utkala (Orissa) and also Prāgjyotiśa (Assam). The Gurjara adversary of Devapāla may be identified with Mihira Bhoja (836-85 A.D.), who attempted to extend his power eastward. He met with some initial successes, but his further advance was effectively checked by the Gauḍa monarch. It appears from a copper-plate, discovered at Nālandā, that Devapāla granted five villages—four in the Rājagriha-viśaya and the fifth in the Gaya viṣaya (district)—for “various comforts” of the Bhikṣus as well as for writing the Dharmaratnas and for the upkeep of a Buddhist monastery built there by Bālaputra-deva, king of Suvarṇadvipa

---

1. According to the Khalimpur plate, it lasted for 52 years, whereas Tārānātha ascribes to Dharmapāla a reign of 64 years. We may, therefore, take the mean number forty-five as a rough approximation to truth.


and Yava-bhūmi. If the last two names are identical with Sumātrā and Jávā, as has been suggested, we get definite evidence that the Pāla kingdom was in touch with these far-eastern islands.¹

Besides a great conqueror, Devapāla was a patron of Buddhism, and he constructed temples and monasteries in Magadha. Thus, art and architecture received a fresh impetus, and Nālandā continued to flourish as the chief seat of Buddhist learning. The limits of Devapāla’s reign may be fixed between c. 815 and 835 A.D.

Nārāyaṇapāla

The next monarch of note was Nārāyaṇapāla, who ruled for at least fifty-four years (c. 818-912 A.D.). He was born of Lajjā, a princess of the Haihaya (Cedi) race. The Bhagalpur inscription² records that in the 17th year of his reign he granted from Mudgagiri (Monghyr) a village in Tīrā-bhukti (Tirhut) to the shrine of Śiva, and built one thousand temples in honour of the same deity. During the earlier part of Nārāyaṇapāla’s reign Magadha remained under the Pālas, but several inscriptions, dated in the regnal years of Mahendrapāla I, prove that later it passed along with Northern Bengal into the hands of the Pratihāras.³ The occupation of these regions must have taken place soon after the latter’s accession, for neither the alleged victories of his predecessor, Mihira Bhoja, nor the findspots of his inscriptions, support the view that he won any appreciable success in his eastern ventures. Thus, Magadha and Northern Bengal having come under the sway of the Pratihāras, and with Eastern

¹ Ep. Ind., XVII, pp. 310-27 (see the Nālandā copper-plate of Devapāladeva).
² Ind. Ant., XV, pp. 394-10.
³ See History of Kānāra, pp. 248-50
Bengal under the Candas, the Pala authority was limited to Western and Southern Bengal. But towards the close of his reign Narayapala took advantage of the fratricidal struggle between Bhoja II and Mahipala, and re-occupied Uddanapura (modern town of Bihar). When the Pratiharas again received a shock owing to the invasion of the Rastakuta Indra III in 916-17 A.D., Rajapala (c. 912-936 A.D.) probably further recovered his ancestral possessions up to the eastern banks of the river Sone.

Mahipala I

Mahipala, son of Vignarapala II, was another powerful prince of the line. From the findspots of his inscriptions it is clear that the Pala power had once more revived, and that his dominions included places so widely apart as Dinajpur and Muzaffarpur; Parna, Gaya and Tippera. Mahipala I reconquered Northern Bengal from a "Gauda king" of the Kamboja family (i.e., of Mongolian origin), who had "snatched it away", presumably about the end of Gopala II’s reign. The Kamboja intruder, whose name is unknown, built a temple of Siva in Bangad (Dinajpur district). An inscription of Mahipala furnishes us the Vikrama samvat date 1083–1026 A.D., one of the fixed points in Pala chronology. Its discovery at Sarnath should not, however, be taken to indicate that this region was included in the Pala realm. It simply records the construction of the Gandhakuti, and the repairs Mahipala caused to be made through the brothers, Sthirapala and Vasantapala, in the Dharmarajika Stupa and the Dharmaakra. These were purely religious acts, and no political significance could be attached to them. There are also vague references in literary works to his

9 Sarnath Stone inscription, Jot. Ant., XIV (1834), pp. 139-140; see also J. ASB., 1908, pp. 445-47; Gandalekhamala, pp. 104-09.
conflicts with the Karnātras and to the loss of Tirisbhukti (Tirhut), where Gāṅgeyadeva, identified with his Kalacuri namesake, was ruling in the Vikrama year 1076 = 1019 A.D. But the most important event of Mahipāla’s reign was the northern incursion of Rājendra I Coḷa some time between 1021 and 1025 A.D.

Passing through Orissa, Southern Kośala, Danda-bhukti (Balasore and Midnapore districts), he is said to have conquered Ranaśūra of Takkana-lāḍām (Southern Rāḍha, Howrah and Hooghly districts) and Govinda-candra of Vangāla-deśa (Eastern Bengal). The invader then turned northwards, and came to grips with Mahipāla, whom he defeated. The Pāla king was, however, successful in checking the victor’s advance beyond the Ganges. If, as the Tirumalai (North Arcot district) Rock inscription testifies, separate principalities existed in Eastern and Western Bengal, the territories of Mahipāla must have suffered diminution during the latter part of his reign.

Nayapāla

Mahipāla was succeeded by his son, Nayapāla, who is chiefly remembered because in his fifteenth year Viśvarūpa, his governor at Gayā, built the famous temple of Gādādhara and other smaller shrines. It appears from Tibetan sources that Nayapāla was at war with Lakṣmī-Karna (c. 1041-72 A.D.) some time during his reign. They carried on the contest with varying fortunes, but when the forces of “Karnya of the West” were being mown down the celebrated monk Dipaṅkara Srijāna or Atiśa, then residing at Mahābodhi Vibhāra, intervened and unmindful of personal risks negotiated a peace treaty between the contending parties. Although

2 Ibid., pp. 318-324.
it did not mean victory to any side, the Cedi records, strangely enough, boast of the submission of the Gaṇḍa monarch to Karna. There are, on the contrary, indications that the latter even suffered a reverse at the hands of Nayapāla’s son, Vighrahapāla III, who married his adversary’s daughter, Yauvanaṣṭi, probably after the cessation of hostilities and the restoration of friendly relations. But a disaster soon overtook the Pāla prince, for Vikramaditya, son of Somesvara I Cālukya (r. 1042-68 A.D.), is said to have vanquished the kings of Gaṇḍa and Kāmarūpa in the course of his northern incursions. The death of Vighrahapāla III was followed by troubulous times owing to the rivalry of his three sons, who aspired to the throne and in fact did rule successively. While they were fighting among themselves, the Varmans rose to power in eastern Bengal and the Pāla territories, which were already reduced to portions of Bihar and Northern Bengal, diminished still further. In Varendra, a chief of the aboriginal Kaivarta tribe, named Divya or Divvoka, revolted and Mahipāla was killed in the attempt to suppress him. The rebel leader was thus successful in establishing an independent kingdom in Northern Bengal.

Rāmapāla

When Rāmapāla came to the throne after the brief reign of his second brother, Śurapāla II, he found himself in a desperate plight. Besides the Kaivarta menace, he had to reckon with the recalcitrant feudatories, who had taken advantage of the misfortunes of the Pālas. According to the Rāmacarita of Sandhyākaranandi, Rāmapāla visited them personally and by his tact and magnanimity won them over. With the help of

1 See Infra.
these vassals and his maternal uncle, Rāṣṭrakūṭa Mathana, Rāmapāla led an army against the Kaivarttas. After a preliminary reconnaissance conducted by the commander Śivarāja, the Pāla forces crossed the Ganges, defeated and captured the Kaivarta chief, Bhima, who had succeeded his father, Divvoka. Eventually the captive was put to death, and Rāmapāla was able to recover his paternal dominions in Northern Bengal. This triumph spurred on his ambitions, and we learn that he then overran Kaliṅga and Kāmarūpa. His protection was even sought by the Yādava Varman ruler of eastern Bengal. The revival of Pāla supremacy was, however, only temporary. Rāmapāla died after a reign of about forty-five years, and with him the strength of the dynasty also departed. In the time of his son, Kumārapāla, a revolt took place in Kāmarūpa; it was, no doubt, quelled by the minister, Vaidyadeva, but he himself virtually became independent there. The successors of Kumārapāla were weak like him, and they could not arrest the decline of the family. The feudatories gradually asserted themselves, and the rise of Vijāyasena even resulted in the expulsion of Madanapāla from Northern Bengal. The authority of the Pālas was now confined to a portion of Bihar, where they maintained a precarious existence for a short period, hemmed in on the east by the Senas and on the west by the Gāhadavālas. The last glimpse of a Pāla ruler is afforded by an inscription, dated V.E. 1232 = 1175 A.D. in the fourteenth year of Govinda-pāla, about whom nothing else is known.1

Achievements of the Pālas

Thus, having ruled Bihar and Bengal with many vicissitudes of fortune for over four centuries, the Pālas disappeared from the stage of history. Scholars

have not yet been able to locate their capital with certainty, but it may have been Mudragiri (Monghyr), from where the Pāla kings issued several grants. The most powerful members of the dynasty were Dharma-pāla and Devapāla; their spheres of activity and influence were much wider than the limits of their direct jurisdiction. The Pāla kingdom ultimately suffered decay owing to internal dissensions, revolts, and the rise of new powers. The Pālas were great patrons of art and literature. Vincent Smith has mentioned the names of two artists, Dhīmān and his son Vītapāla, who “acquired the highest fame for their skill as painters, sculptors, and bronze-founders.” 1 Unfortunately no building of that age is extant, but a large number of tanks and channels dug during their rule bear witness to the interest the Pāla monarchs took in works of public utility. They were earnest followers of Buddhism, which developed newer Tāntric forms and was revivified under their patronage. Monasteries were generously endowed, being the most effective agencies for the promotion of learning and religion. One of the monks, the famous Āṭṭa, is known to have gone to Tibet on a Buddhist mission about the middle of the eleventh century. The Pālas were, however, by no means unfavourable towards Hinduism. They freely made gifts to Brahmins, and even constructed temples in honour of Hindu gods.

SECTION C

THE SENAS

Origin

The Senas, who gave the death-blow to the Pāla

power in Bengal, were probably of southern origin. It has been suggested that they carved out a principality in Rādha (West Bengal) in the confusion following the north-eastern expedition of Vikramāditya Cālukya, son of Someśvara I (c. 1042-68 A.D.).¹ The founder of the dynasty, Sāmantasena, is described as a descendant of Virasena, born in "the family of the moon," and as "the head-garland of the Karnāṭa-Kṣatriyas" or of the Brahma-Kṣatriyas which term perhaps signifies that the Senas were at first Brahmans, but subsequently adopted the military profession and became Kṣatriyas.

Vijayasena

Vijayasena, grandson of Sāmantasena, brought the family into prominence during his long reign of over sixty-two years (c. 1095-1158 A.D.). He distinguished himself in warfare, and made many territorial acquisitions. He is represented as having "impetuously assailed" the lord of Gauḍa, who has usually been identified with Madanapāla. That Vijayasena drove out the Pālas from Northern Bengal is proved by the discovery of an inscription at Deopārā in the Rajshahi district² and by his grant of a village in Paundravardhana-bhūkti, as recorded in a plate found at Barrackpur.³ The latter document was issued from Vikramapura in the sixty-second year, which shows that some time before the end of his reign Vijayasena had extended his authority over eastern Bengal also. We are further told that his fleet once sailed "in its playful conquest of the western regions up the whole course of the Ganges;"⁴ and he defeated a number of his contemporaries, the chief among them being Nānyadeva of Tirhut and

³ Ibid., XV, pp. 278-86.
⁴ Ibid., I, pp. 109-10, 314.
the kings of Kāmarūpa and Kaliṅga. The last was presumably identical either with Kāmāravīra (c. 1147-56 A.D.) or with Rāghava (c. 1156-70 A.D.), for there is some evidence to believe that their father, Ananta Varman Codagā (c. 1077-1147 A.D.), was on friendly terms with Vijayasena. The Sena sovereign was a devout Saiva and a generous patron of the Sōtrijīnas. He excavated an artificial lake, and built a splendid temple of Pradyumnesvāra Siva at Deopārā.

Vallālasena

Vijayasena was succeeded by his son, Vallālasena, whose mother was Vilāsadevi, a princess of the Sūra line of Western Bengal. He did not gain any notable victories, although he was able to maintain his dominions intact. Traditions affirm that he introduced Kālinism and re-organised the caste-system in Bengal. There is, however, no epigraphic corroboration of these social reforms. Like his father, Vallālasena too was a Saiva, and he is said to have compiled two well-known works, the Dānumāgura and the Adhūtaśāgura, under the guidance of his preceptor.

Lakṣmaṇasena

Lakṣmaṇasena or Rāi Lakhamaniyā was the last important member of the dynasty. He is credited with extensive conquests. It is probable he may have overrun the neighbouring regions of Kāmarūpa and Kaliṅga in his earlier career, but his other martial exploits and the alleged erection of “pillars of victory” at Benares and Allahabad are but empty vaunts and have no basis in fact. The Gāhājavālas were masters of these

two cities, and it would be utterly wide of the mark to suppose that Lākṣmanasena wrested them from such a powerful king as Jayacandra, whose territories extended in the east at least up to the Gayā district. Besides, if the Moslem historians deserve any credence, Lākṣmanasena must have been an extremely craven-hearted man. For we are told that he fled from the backdoor of his palace without making even a show of resistance at the approach of Muhammad ibn Bakhtyār Khilji, who, after conquering Bihar and massacring "the shaven-headed Brahmans" (Buddhist monks) probably in 1197 A.D., advanced against Nādiā towards the close of 1199 A.D. with a small force. Lākṣmanasena’s government was evidently rotten to the core, otherwise Bakhtyār would not have been allowed to press on to the capital, and take it by surprise with a party of eighteen horsemen only.¹ The Sena monarch then went across the Ganges to eastern Bengal, where he is known to have ruled until c. 1206 A.D. Minhāj-ud-dīn deposes that his reign lasted for eighty years, but this is certainly erroneous. There are strong grounds to place Lākṣmanasena’s accession about 1180 A.D.² After his death, the Senas continued to exercise authority in eastern Bengal ("Bang") for almost another half a century, when it also passed into the hands of the Moslems.

Like many kings of antiquity, Lākṣmanasena encouraged the cultivation of polite letters. Among the literary ornaments of his court, Dhojika, who wrote the Pavanā-dīta, and Jayadeva, the celebrated author of the Gītā-Govinda, deserve special mention.

¹ Without unduly stressing the correctness of this figure, there can be no doubt that Bakhtyār attacked the Sena capital with a small body of soldiers.
² Lākṣmanasena did not found the era of 1119 A.D., which afterwards came to be associated with his name. See also "On Lākṣmanasena Era," Sir Autosh Mukherjee Silver Jubilee Volume, Vol. III, Orientalia, pp. 1-5.
Lakṣmanasena himself was something of a poet, for he is said to have completed the Adhunata-sāgara begun by his father.

SECTION D

KALINGA AND ODRA

Extent

The boundaries of Kalinga have varied from time to time. Roughly speaking, it corresponded to the coastal region between the Godāvari and the Mahānadi. It was often distinguished from Odra, but there are indications that in its widest sense Kalinga denoted almost the whole of the modern province of Orissa.

Scanty Information

The history of this part of India during the period under survey is extremely obscure owing to the absence of a paramount power and the uncertainties of chronology. Among the dynasties that ruled simultaneously over portions of Kalinga and Odra with various ups and downs of fortune, the most important were the Keśarīs of Bhuvaṇeśvarī and the Eastern Gaṅgas of Kalinganagara (Kalingapatam or Mukhalingam in the Ganjam district?). Unhappily, we do not get much authentic political information about the former. They were devout Saivas, and immortalised their sway by constructing the magnificent temples of Bhuvaṇeśvar with a “profusion of decorative motifs inspired by human, animal and vegetable life”. The


* Their symbol was the lion.
great Lingarāja sanctuary (c. 11th century), which to this day stands as one of their noblest monuments, is veritably an inspired orgy of sculptural ornamentation almost unique in the world.\(^1\) It has a high steeple tower with vertical sides except near the summit, and the pyramidal roof of the porch is loftier than that of earlier periods, but the pillars are still wanting. Perhaps it may not be amiss to mention here that the Orissan style of architecture has certain distinctive features, each temple consisting of the Vimāna (towered shrine), Jagamohana (audience chamber), Natamandapa (dancing saloon), and the Bhogamandapa (refectory). The last two are believed to be "somewhat later appendages." What is, however, specially noteworthy in Orissan temples is the high spire (Jikhara) and abundance of carving.

The Eastern Ganges\(^2\)

The Eastern Ganges established themselves in Kalinga about the beginning of the eighth century A.D. They originally belonged to Kolâhala (Kolar), and were thus a branch of the Ganges of Mysore. Hardly anything is known of the earlier Ganges, during whose time Kalinga suffered a good deal from foreign incursions. For instance, in the middle of the eighth century Sri-Harṣa of Assam claims to have conquered Kalinga and Odra, and in the ninth century the Eastern Câlukya king, Vijayâditya (844-888 A.D.), overran it. Towards the last quarter of the eleventh century, however, the Ganga family rose to the zenith of its power under Anantavarman Coḍagaṅgā. He was so called because he was the son of Râjarâja Gaṅga by his Gola wife, Râjasundari, daughter of Râjendra Coḍa. Coḍagaṅgā ruled

---


for over 70 years, the known limits of his reign being Saka 999 and 1069=1077-1147 A.D. Tradition ascribes to him the building of the famous temple of Puri; and he considerably extended the bounds of his realm. He defeated the king of Utkala, and is represented as having “exacted tribute from all land between the Godavari and the Ganges.” Anantavarman came into conflict with the ruler of Veṇgi also, but he was on friendly terms with his Sena contemporary, Vijayasena. This did not, however, prevent the latter from attacking Kalinga in the time of his ally’s sons, Kāmārṇava or Rāghava. Later on, it was again ravaged by Lakṣmanasena. Early in the thirteenth century the Eastern Ganges began to be harassed by the Moslems, who continued their depredations until “Jājnagar” or Orissa finally fell a prey to their arms in the sixteenth century.

SECTION E

THE KALACURIS OF TRIPURI

Their Lineage

The Kalacuris or Kaṭacuris are said to have been the descendants of Kārtaṇivira Arjuna. They were thus a branch of the great Haihaya race, which, according to traditions preserved in the Epics and the Purāṇas, ruled the Narmadā valley with Māhiṣmatī or Māndhātā as their capital.

Kokalla I

The Kalacuris rose into prominence under Kokalla

1 If Rāmapāla's boast of the conquest of Utkala and Kalinga has any substance, Codagaṇaṇa must have then bowed to his steel.
2 Sometimes called Cedis owing to their occupation of the Cedi country. See for their history, Hubālal, "The Kalacuris of Tripuri," A. B. R. I., 1927, pp. 280-91; R. D. Banerji, "The
I, who founded a kingdom at Tripuri (modern Tevar) in Dahala i.e., the Jubbulpur region. He flourished about the last decades of the ninth and the early part of the tenth century A.D. His matrimonial alliances and political activities increased the power of the family considerably. He married a Candella princess named Nattadevi, and gave the hand of his daughter to Krishna II (c. 875-911 A.D.). We further learn from inscriptions that Kokalla I gave help and protection to his Rashtra Kshita son-in-law, presumably in the latter’s wars with the Eastern Calukya ruler, Vijayaditya III of Veangi, and also to other princes like Bhoja, identified with Bhoja II, who had to contend against his half-brother, Mahipala, for the Pratihara throne. Kokalla I is represented as having “conquered the whole earth” and plundered the treasures of a number of his royal contemporaries, but not much reliance can be placed on such boastful claims.

Gangeyadeva

Hardly anything important is recorded of Kokalla I’s successors until Gangeyadeva, whose known dates range from 1019 to 1041 A.D. He assumed the title of Vikramaditya, and is even described as “conqueror of the universe” in a Candella inscription discovered at Mahoba. Although this is an exaggeration, there are reasons to believe that he overran Northern India up to the Kira country or the Kangra valley, and annexed the districts of Prayaga (Allahabad) and Varanasi (Bená-

4 History of Kamaś, pp. 215-36.
res) after the downfall of the Pratihāras. The *Tarikh-us-
Subuktigin* of Al Baihaki definitely testifies that the latter
place was in possession of Gaṅga (Gaṅgeya), when
Ahmed Nialtigin, governor of the Punjab under
Ma'sūd I (c. 1031-40 A.D.), invaded it in H. 424=1033
A.D. Further, the colophon of a Nepalese Sanskrit
manuscript of the *Rāmāyana* indicates that Gaṅgeya
occupied Tirabhukti (Tirhut) some time before the Vik-
rama year 1076=1019 A.D., and an epigraph repre-
sents him as having vanquished the kings of Utkala
(Orissa) and Kuntala (Kanarese territory) also. Gaṅ-
geyadeva’s power was, however, ultimately eclipsed
by the rise of Bhoja Paramāra, who won a victory
over him.

**Lakṣmi-Karna**

Lakṣmi-Karna or Karṇa, son and successor of
Gaṅgeyadeva, was the most forceful personality among
the Kalacuri rulers. He dominated Northern India
during the greater part of his long reign from 1041 to
1072 A.D., and widely extended the bounds of his realm.
His authority was recognised in Benares, where he
erected a lofty temple of Siva called Karṇaśetre, and we
learn of the progress of his arms so far north-west, too,
as the land of the Kirtas (Kangrā). Thus Karṇa, like
his father, must have made depredations in the North,
and asserted his influence in the disintegrated Pratihāra
kingdom of Kanauj, and it is no doubt significant that
the Basahi plate mentions him along with Bhoja in
connection with the “earth's distress” before the rise

---

4 *Ep. Ind.,* II, pp. 4, 6, v. 13. Karṇa also built the new capital
of Karṇavatī (modern Karanbāl) near Tripuri.
5 *Ind. Ant.,* XVIII, p. 217, 1. 11.
of the Gāhaḍavālas.1 Karna also defeated his Candella contemporary, identified with Vijayapāla or with Devavarman. In the east, the Kalacuri monarch came into conflict with both Nayapāla and his son Vigrabapāla III, and the latter appears to have got the upper hand in this trial of strength. Next, Karna utterly routed Bhoja Paramāra of Dharā with the help of Bhīma I Cālukya of Gujarat (r. 1022-64 A.D.), and his power was even felt by the kings of Coḍa, Kalinga, Paṇḍya, etc. But towards the close of his career, Karna met with a series of disasters. Having broken off alliance, Bhīma I worsted him, and Mālava as well regained its independence under Udāyāditya. Karna suffered further reverses at the hands of the Cālukya Somesvara I Ahavamalla (r. 1042-68 A.D.) and Kirtivarman Candella.

Karna’s Successors

Unable to bear the burden of sovereignty, Lakṣmī-Karna in his last days probably abdicated in favour of Yaṣaḥ-Karna, his son by Āvalladevi of the Hūna race. He (r. 1073-1120 A.D.) is said to have ravaged Cam-pāranya (Camparan district), and “exterminated with ease” the Andhra ruler, who has rightly been identified with the Eastern Cālukya Vijayāditya VII of Veṅgi (r. 1060-76 A.D.). Yaṣaḥ-Karna could not, however, arrest the steady decline of the family fortunes. Lakṣṇadeva Paramāra paid off old scores against the Kalacuris by attacking and storming their capital Tripuri. In the north, the Gāhaḍavālas established their power in Kān-yakubja and Benares, and aggrandised themselves at the cost of the Cedis. Similarly, during the reign of Yaṣaḥ-Karna’s son and successor, Gayā-Karna, the Candella Madanavarman (r. 1128-64 A.D.) won some military successes, and the Ratnapura branch of the

1 Ind. Ant., XIV, p. 103, l. 3.
Kalacuris asserted its independence in South Kośala. In the time of the successors of Gayā-Karna, who were wesklingś, the Tripuri Kalacuris finally sank into insignificance.

SECTION F

THE CANDELLAS OF JEJĀKABHUKTI (Bundelkhand)

Their Origin

The origin of the Candellas is shrouded in mystery. A legend attributes their descent to the union of the Moon (Candramā) with a Brahman damsel. This is obviously an absurd myth, invented for giving the clan a noble pedigree. In the opinion of Vincent Smith, however, the indications are that the Candellas sprang from the aboriginal stock of the Bhars or the Gonds, and their original seat was Maniyāgarli on the Ken river in the Chatarpur State.

Beginnings of their power

The Candellas came into prominence in southern Bundelkhand under the leadership of Nannuka early in the ninth century. His grandson was Jejā or Jayaśakti, after whom the kingdom was called Jejākabhukti. It appears from traditions and epigraphic testimony that the first few princes of the dynasty were feudatories of the great Pratihāra emperors of Kanauj. But Harṣadeva Candella enhanced the prestige and influence

3 Ind. Ant., XXXVII (1908), pp. 136-37.
of the family considerably by placing Mahīpāla (Kṣiti-
pāla) on the Imperial throne in opposition to his
brother or half-brother, Bhoja II. During the reign
of Yaśovarman, the Candelas gained a larger measure
of independence, and aggrandised themselves at the
cost of their neighbours, viz., the Cedis, Mālavas, Ko-
salas, etc. According to an inscription, found at Khaj-
juraho, Yaśovarman was "a scorching fire to the Gur-
aras," and that he "easily conquered the fort of Kāla-
hara," one of the important strongholds of the Prati-
hāras. 1 He is also said to have compelled Devapāla
Prathāra to surrender to him a celebrated image of
Vaikuṇṭha (Viṣṇu), which he subsequently set up in a
stately shrine at Khajuraho. 2

Dhaṅga

Strangely enough, however, Yaśovarman’s son and
successor, Dhaṅga (c. 950-1002 A.D.), invokes the name
of the Prathāra king (Vināyakapāla II) as his overlord
in the Vikrama year 1011-1014 A.D. 3 It would, there
fore, appear that like the Nizām of the Dekkan and the
Nawābs of Oudh, who were virtually independent and
yet nominally acknowledged the suzerainty of the
great Moghul at Delhi, the Candel ruler did not all
at once break off formal relations with the effete Imperial
power at Kanauj, but for some time maintained an
outward show of submission. Subsequently, the
kingdom of Jejākabhukti saw its palmy days under
Dhaṅga, for an inscription, discovered at Mhow, al-
leges that he attained to "supreme lordship after in-
flicting a defeat over the king of Kānyakubja." 4 The
success of the Candelas is confirmed by the Khajuraho

2 Ibid., p. 134, v. 43.
4 Ibid., pp. 197, 207, v. 3.
epigraph, wherein we are told that Dhaṅga ruled the earth "playfully acquired by the action of his long and strong arms, as far as Kālañjara, and as far as Bhāsvat situated (?) on the banks of the river Mālava; from here to the banks of the river Kālindī (Jumnā), and from here also to the frontiers of the Cedi country, and even as far as that mountain called Gopa (Gopāḍri), which is the unique abode of marvel."1 The loss of Gwalior must have dealt a severe blow to the fortunes of the Pratihāras, since thereby the Candellas got hold of a strategic position, which they could well use as a base for further encroachments. Indeed, it is likely that towards the close of his reign Dhaṅga carried his arms up to Benares, where he granted a village to a Brahman in the Vikrama year 1035 = 998 A.D.2 In 989 or 990 A.D., when Jayapāla, the Sāhi king, invited prominent Hindu states to help him in resisting the aggressions of Sabuktrigin, Dhaṅga, along with other potentates, promptly responded with men and money, and shared the disaster suffered by the confederate army.

Ganda

Similarly, Dhaṅga's son, Ganda, joined the coalition formed by Ānandapāla Sāhi in 1008 A.D. to repel the invasion of Mahmūd but nothing availed the Hindus and their forces were utterly routed by the Sultan. Next, Ganda sent an expedition under the crown-prince, Vidyādhara, to punish Rājyapāla of Kanauj for his pusillanimous surrender to Mahmūd about the end of 1018 A.D. The Pratihāra monarch was, of course, slain, but when the tidings reached Ghazni the Sultan was so enraged that he forthwith marched against

1 Ibbi, pp. 124, 134, v. 45. The passage is important as showing the extent of Dhaṅga's dominions.
2 Ind. Ant., XVI, pp. 102-04.
Nanda (Ganda)\(^1\) to repress his audacity. Thus, the opponents came face to face in H. 410-1019 A.D. Just at the psychological moment, however, the Candal ruler became alarmed at the intrepidity and strength of the Moslem hosts, whereupon under cover of night he ‘fled with some of his baggage and equipments.’\(^2\)

In H. 413-1022 A.D., Mahmud attacked the Candel territories for the second time. Having taken Gwalior in 1023 A.D., he invested Kalañjara. Again, Nanda or Ganda cowardly submitted to the invader, who thereupon gave him back the conquered forts, and triumphantly returned home with a large booty.

**Kirtivarman**

The next distinguished member of this house was Kirtivarman. He revived the power of the Candellas, which had been eclipsed in the time of his predecessors owing to the military activities of the Kalacuri kings, GangayaDevra and Lakshmi-Karna. Kirtivarman himself was vanquished by the latter in the earlier part of his reign, but it appears from inscriptions and the prologue to Krisna Misha's Prabodha-Candrodaya, an allegorical play in honour of Visnu and the Vedanta philosophy, that the Candel ruler eventually won a decided victory over his mighty Cedi rival.

**Madanavarman**

Another notable figure was Madanavarman, whose known dates range from 1129 to 1163 A.D. He claims to have defeated the "lord of Gurjara," generally identified with Siddharaja-Jayasimha of Gujarat (c. 1095-

\(^1\) Dr. H. C. Ray, on the other hand, suggests that Nanda is a mistake for Bida (Vidyadhara) and not for Ganda (Dj. Hist. North. Ind., Vol. 1, p. 606).

1143 A.D.). An inscription, found at Mau (Jhansi district), further testifies that Madanavarman overcame the Cedi monarch (perhaps Gayā-Karna); exterminated his Mālava i.e., Paramārata contemporary; and forced the "king of Kāśi," probably identical with Vijayacandra Gāhaḍavāla, "to pass his time in friendly behaviour."1

Paramārda

Paramārdi or Paramal of popular traditions was the last prominent Candella sovereign. He ruled from circa 1163 A.D. to 1203. We learn from the Madanapur inscription2 and Cānd's Rājo that he sustained a reverse in 1182–83 A.D. at the hands of Prithvirāja Cauhān who occupied Mahobā and other fortresses in Bundelkhand. But Paramārdi escaped complete annihilation, and afterwards recovered the lost ground. In H. 599=1203 A.D., he offered stubborn resistance to Qutb-ud-din Aibak during the siege of Kālaṇḍara. Finding that the odds were altogether against him, Paramārdi capitulated, but he died before fulfilling any of the terms imposed. His minister, Ajadeva, then took up the defence; he also had, however, to surrender soon after. Qutb-ud-din next captured Mahobā, and put the subjugated territory under the charge of a Moslem governor. The Candellas were thus laid low, although they lingered on as petty chieftains until the sixteenth century.

Candella cities and lakes

The most important cities in the Candella kingdom were Khajurāho, Kālaṇḍara, and Mahobā. Vincent Smith remarks: "The first-named town, with its group

1 Ep. Ind., I, pp. 198, 204.
of magnificent temples, may be regarded as the religious, the second, with its strong fortress, as the military, and the third, with its palace, as the civil capital." The Candellas beautified Bundelkhand by constructing a large number of exquisite religious edifices and embanked lakes. One of the latter was the Madanasāgara, formed by Madanavarman at Mahobā.

SECTION G

THE PARAMĀRAS OF MALWA

Who were the Paramāras?

Tradition represents the Paramāras (sometimes called Paramaras or Powārs) as descendants of the hero Paramāra, who was created by Vaśiṣṭha out of his fire-altar at Mount Abu to rescue Nandī, the cow of plenty, from Viśvāmitra. The probable significance of this mythical derivation from fire (agnikula) appears to be that, like the Prathäras and other clans, the Paramāras were also of foreign extraction, and they became fit to be admitted into the Hindu caste-system after the performance of some fire-ceremony. But it has recently been contended on the strength of a passage in an inscription, unearthed at Harasola (Ahmedabad district)⁴, that "the Paramāras were members of the Rāstrakūṭa race," and that they originally belonged to the Dekkan, which "once formed the home dominion of the Imperial Rāstrakūṭas."⁵

---

¹ Ind. Ant., XXXVII (1908), p. 132.
² See C. E. Luard and K. K. Lele, Paramāras of Dhar and Malwa (Bombay, 1908); D. C. Ganguly, History of the Paramāra Dynasty (Dacca, 1933); H. C. Ray, Dy. Hist. North. Ind., II, Ch. XIV, pp. 837-932.
³ Ep. Ind., XIX, pp. 236-44.
Early stages of their power

We have discussed elsewhere that prior to their conquest of Kānyakubja the Pratihāras had their seat of power at Ujjayini. This region was for a long time a veritable bone of contention between them and their inveterate enemies, the Rāstrakūṭas of Mānya-kheṭa (Malkhed), who conquered it during the northward incursions of Dhanu Nirupama, Govinda III, Indra III, and Kṛṣṇa III. None of them could, however, hold Ujjain permanently. For there are evidences to show that some time at least in their careers the Pratihāra kings, Nāgabhaṭa II, Mihira-Bhoja, Mahendrapāla I, Mahipāla, and Mahendrapāla II, exercised authority over it. The Partabgarh inscription, at any rate, definitely informs us that in V.E. 1003=946 A.D. the last-named had stationed one Mādhava as his “great feudatory lord and governor” at Ujjayini, and another officer, Śrīśarman, was carrying on the affairs of state at Maṇḍapikā (Maṇḍū). Thus, Upendra or Kṛṣṇarāja, the founder of the Paramāra dynasty, and his immediate successors must have been vassals of the Pratihāras or of the Rāstrakūṭas as they alternately gained ascendancy in Malwa (ancient Avantī). The first substantial figure was Siyaka-Harṣa, the known limits of whose reign are V.E. 1003=949 A.D. and V.E. 1029=972 A.D. This was a period of the decadence of the Pratihāra monarchy, and he availed himself of it to increase his power. But Siyaka-Harṣa’s rise could not be a matter of indifference to his Rāstrakūṭa contemporary; so a conflict between the two became inevitable. According to the Udepur inscription, the former “took away in battle the wealth of Khoṭṭiga,” identified with his Rāstrakūṭa namesake (c. 955-70 A.D.), who succeeded Kṛṣṇa III (c. 940-53 A.D.).

1 Ep. Ind., XIV, pp. 176-86.
Bühler has further shown that the sack of Mānya-khetā is corroborated by Dhanapāla’s Pāïya-lacchī, a Prakrit work. Another notable victory of Siyaka-Harṣa was over a chieftain belonging to the Hūṇa stock.

Vākpati-Muṇja

Siyaka-Harṣa was followed by his illustrious son, Vākpati alias Muṇja, also called Utpalarāja, Śrivallabha, or Amoghavarṣa, the last two being typical Rāṣṭra-kūpī epithets. His earliest known date is V.E. 1031 =974 A.D., and we may, therefore, reasonably conclude that he ascended the throne about a year previously. He was a doughty fighter, and is said to have vanquished Yuvarāja II, the Kalacuri ruler of Tripuri. Besides, the Udepur epigraph adds that Vākpati-Muṇja made the Lāṭas, Karnāṭas, Coḷas, and the Keraḷas bow to his steel. He came into hostile contact with certain other ruling families also, but his greatest exploit was the defeat of the Cālukya Tailapa II no less than six times. Merutuṅga says that in the seventh campaign Vākpati-Muṇja, disregarding the sane counsel of his minister, plunged headlong beyond the Godāvari into the Cālukya dominions, and met with grief, having been taken prisoner and then killed. Dr. H. C. Ray points out that this disaster, which is confirmed by the Cālukya inscriptions, must have occurred between V.E. 1050=993-94 A.D., the last recorded date of Vākpati-Muṇja, and the Saka year 919=997-98 A.D., when Tailapa II died. Vākpati-Muṇja did not neglect the arts of peace as well. He excavated many artificial lakes, one of which, the Muṇjasāgara, situated at Dhar (Dhārā), still preserves his name. He also built splendid temples in the principal cities of the realm. We

1 Ibid., p. 236;
2 Ibid., v. 14;
further learn that he was gifted with poetic talents of a high order and liberally patronised men of letters. His court was graced by Padmagupta, Dhananjaya, who wrote the Datarupa, Dhanika, author of the Datarupavala, Bhatta Halaysia1, and other literary, celebrities.

Sindhuraja

Certain Jain works, like Merutunga’s Prabandha-
Cintamani, indicate that Bhoja was the immediate successor of Vakpati-Munja, but according to the more reliable epigraphic evidence there ruled between them the latter’s younger brother, Sindhula, i.e., Sindhuja or Navasahasanka. His achievements have been immortalised by Padmagupta in the Navasahasanka-Carita, which testifies to the success of his arms against a Huna prince, and Kosala or Daksina-Kosala (i.e., the Kalacuris of Tummara), the Calukyas of Lapa, and other neighbouring powers.

Bhoja

After a short reign Sindhuja was followed by his son, Bhoja, the most striking and versatile Parmara ruler. He raised Dharara, the capital, to a position of eminence, and owing to a rare combination of military ability and constructive statesmanship his influence was felt over a large part of India. An inscription calls him a Sarvabhauma, and in the Udepur Praasti he is represented to have “possessed the earth” from the Kailasa to the Malaya mountains.2 This is no doubt an exaggeration, if taken literally, but ample proof

1 Author of the Abhidhana-rutnamala and the Mritakamitha.
2 Prof. P. T. S. Ayyangar, Bhojaraja (Madras, 1931); B. N. Reu, Rajja Bhoja (in Hindi; Allahabad, 1932).
exists to show that Bhoja conquered extensive territories, and his ambitions involved him in ceaseless conflicts with contemporary states. Probably he first directed his energies towards the Kārṇaṭas, i.e., the Cālukyas of Kalyāṇi with a view to avenging the execution of Vākpati-Maṇḍana. Bhoja easily defeated and slew his southern antagonist, identified with Vikramādiya V (approx. 1008 A.D.).¹ The Paramāra monarch’s attempt to establish his hegemony over the Dekkan, however, came to naught shortly before the Saka year 941=1019 A.D., when the Cālukya Jayasimha II (c. 1016-42 A.D.) humbled him and broke (or “put to flight”) the “confederacy of Mālava.”² Next, Bhoja is spoken of as having beaten the king of Cedi, i.e., Gāngeyadeva of Tripuri and two other chiefs, named Indraratha and Toggala, whose identification is uncertain. Further, it appears from the Basahi pillar that Bhoja made some northward depredations and for a time exercised supremacy over the land of Kāṇyakubja. He won a victory also against the Turuṣkas, i.e., the Moslem marauders of Northern India, but his engagements with Vidyādharacandella and Kīrtirāja, the Kacchapaghāta prince of Gwalior, did not result in any advantage to him. Lastly, Bhoja overwhelmed the lord of Lāta (Southern Gujarat), identical with another Kīrtirāja,³ and Bhīma I of Gujarat (c. 1022-64 A.D.). Notwithstanding these exploits, Bhoja’s end was inglorious. His resources were sapped by constant wars, and besides he had to suffer the ign-

¹ Sir R. G. Bhandarkar prefers to call him Vikramādiya I (Early History of the Dekkan (1928), p. 140, n. 15). Some scholars, on the other hand, think that Bhoja invaded the Cālukya dominions in the time of Jayasimha II (History of the Paramāra Dynasty pp. 90-91).

² Ind. Ant., V, p. 17.

³ Ibid., XIV, p. 103, ll. 3-4.

⁴ This Kīrtirāja was the son of Goggirāja Cālukya.
nomy of a reverse at the hands of the Cālukya Some-
śvara I Ahavamalla (r. 1042-68 A.D.), who is said to
have plundered Malwa and its capital, and put Bhoja
to flight. The latter, however, soon returned and re-
vived his authority. Not long after, his Jain general,
Kulacandra, sacked Anhilvāda during the absence of
its ruler on an expedition against the Moslems. This
compelled Bhima I to enter into a coalition with the
great Kalacuri king, Lakṣmi-Karna, and the Paramāra
kingdom was then vigorously attacked from two sides
by the allied forces. During the progress of the war,
Bhoja passed away, having ruled for "fifty-five years,
seven months and three days" according to Meruttaṅga.
His death changed the situation entirely in favour of
the confederates, who occupied the royal city of Dhārā
and ravaged Malwa.

Bhoja appears to have wielded the pen with no less
dexterity than the sword. Called Kavirāja in an ins-
cription, he is the putative author of about two dozen
works on a variety of subjects, such as medicine, astro-
nomy, religion, grammar, architecture, alankāra (poes-
tics), lexicography, arts, etc. Among them, we may
mention here just a few: Ayurveda-sarvasva, Rājamrī-
gāṅka, Vyavahāra-samuccaya, Subdaṁsāsana, Samarāṅga-
a-sātradhāra, Saravutti-Kanṭhabharana, Nāma-mālikā,
Yuktī-kalpataru, etc. It is, however, doubtful if in the
midst of his incessant military activities Bhoja found
time to write so many books himself. Thus, the pos-
sibility cannot be ruled out that some of them, although
ascribed to him, were in reality productions of the literary
protégés flourishing at his court. Furthermore, Bhoja
was a munificent patron of learning. He founded a
college at Dhārā, where students flocked from far and
near to quench their intellectual thirst. Valuable com-
positions have been recovered from engraved slabs of
stone fixed to its walls. The "Bhoja-Sālā," as it is still
popularly known, was converted into a mosque by the
Moslem masters of Malwa.

Bhoja was a devout Saiva and also a great builder. The Udepur inscription informs us that he adorned the country with a large number of superb temples.\(^1\) He expanded Dhārā, and built the city of Bhojpur to the south of modern Bhopal. Close by was an extensive lake dug under his orders. This noble monument of Bhoja's engineers ceased to exist early in the fifteenth century, when Shah Hussain of Māṇḍu got the embankments destroyed for the purpose of utilising its bed.

Later History of the Family

The alliance between Bhima I and Lakṣmī-Karna did not survive long, for there are indications that they fell out over the division of the spoils of victory. Jayasimha seized this opportunity, and appealed for succour to Someśvara I Cālukya, the quondam enemy of his house. With a view to restoring the political equilibrium, the latter cleared Māla of the army of occupation, and placed Jayasimha on the Paramāra throne. The new monarch's reign was brief, his recorded dates being V.E. 1112=1055 A.D. and V.E. 1116=1059 A.D. Far from achieving anything of note, his intrigues appear to have involved him in a disastrous war with the Karnāṭas and the Cālukyas of Gujarat. Jayasimha's successor, Udayāditya (c. 1059-1088 A.D.), described as a bandhu (relation) of Bhoja,\(^2\) then made an attempt to revive the fortunes of the family. He defeated Karna, usually identified with Kalaçuri Lakṣmī-Karna, but who, as suggested by Dr. Ganguly,\(^3\) may be identical with Bhima I's son

---

\(^1\) *Ep. Ind.*, I, p. 218, v. 20.

\(^2\) Presumably Udayāditya belonged to a junior branch of the Paramāras. According to the Udepur (*Ep. Ind.*, I, pp. 332-33) and Nagpur inscriptions (*Ep. Ind.*, II, pp. 180-93), he was the immediate successor of Bhoja.

\(^3\) *History of the Paramāra Dynasty*, pp. 127-32.
of the same name (c. 1064–94 A.D.). After this flicker of glory, the Paramāras gradually lost their importance and influence. The downward sliding continued during the twelfth century under a succession of weaklings, whose local conflicts and petty jealousies are devoid of any interest for the general reader. Ambitious aggressors repeatedly harassed the people of Mālava until Hindu rule itself was swept away in 1305 A.D. by the onslaught of Alā-ud-dīn Khilji’s general, Ain-ul-Mulk, who triumphantly marched into Māṇḍū, Ujjain, Dhārā and other cities.

SECTION H

THE CĀLUKYA DYNASTY OF ANHILWĀDA

Founder’s ancestry and career

The Cālukya (Solaāki) house of Anhilwāda or Anhil-pāṭaka, identified with modern Patan in Gujarāt, was founded by Mūḷarāja. Unfortunately, it is difficult with our present data to ascertain the connection between this family and the earlier Cālukyas of the Dekkān, whose origin and history will be discussed in the next chapter. Nor is there any evidence to prove that Mūḷarāja was descended from the Cālukya chiefs of Saurāṣṭra (Kāthāwād) mentioned in two Unā charters—the one bearing the Gupta-Valabhi date 574=893 A.D., and the other the Vikrama year 956=899 A.D., as feudatories of Mahendrapāla Pratihāra.2 According to the chronicles of Gujarāt, however, Mūḷarāja’s father was Rāji, a son of the prince of Kalyāṇakatāka3 in Kanauj,


2 Ep. Ind., IX, pp. 1-10.

3 The identification of Kalyāṇakatāka has not yet been satisfactorily established.
and his mother belonged to the Cāvaḍa or Cāpotkaṭa line, which ruled a portion of Gujarat prior to the rise of the Cālukyas. Whatever value one may attach to the details of such traditions, this much appears clear that Mūlarāja was not a mere upstart adventurer, but had a noble parentage. It is further confirmed by inscriptions, which call his father Mahārājaḍhirāja. Regarding the circumstances of Mūlarāja’s accession, he is said to have slain his maternal uncle and then seized the Cāpotkaṭa throne for himself. The event must have occurred about V.E., 998–941 A.D., his earliest year known from the Sāmbhar epigraph, and not in 961 A.D., as asserted by some scholars on the basis of Merutunga’s Vicāratrapī. Having “acquired the Sāraswata-maṇḍala by the prowess of his arms,” Mūlarāja began his career of aggrandisement. He defeated and killed Lākha (Lakṣarāja) of Kaccha (Cutch), and captured Grnharipu, the Čudāsama chieftain of Vāmanasthali (mod. Wanthali) in Saurāṣṭra. Mūlarāja also waged wars against Bārappa, the ruler of Lāta (southern Gujarat), Vigrāharāja Cāhamāna of Sākambhari, and other rivals of lesser importance. As a devout Śaiva, Mūlarāja spent the evening of his life in religious acts, building temples and honouring the learned Brahmins. His last date recorded in a copper-plate grant is V.E., 1031–994-95 A.D., and we may, therefore, reasonably suppose that he died a year or two afterwards.

**Bhima I**

The next important figure was Bhima I, nephew of Mūlarāja’s grandson Durlabhāraja. Bhima ruled

---

for about forty-two years from c. 1021 A.D. to 1063 A.D. In H. 416—1025 A.D. his kingdom was rudely shaken by the insatiable ambition and greed of Mahmūd, who marched across the Indian desert with a view to plundering the famous temple of Somnāthā, the repository of untold riches accumulated for ages. The invader first appeared before the gates of Anhilwāḍa, but Bhīma I was so struck with terror that instead of offering resistance he sought safety in flight. Mahmūd then pressed on to Sumnat (Somnāthā) and invested it. After a day's stubborn opposition, the town fell and the defenders dispersed helter-skelter. A large number of Hindus were slaughtered, the shrine was sacked and desecrated, and thus Mahmūd returned to Ghazni in triumph with a huge booty and the broken idol, which was fixed to the steps of the Jāme-Masjīd at its entrance.

When the Sultān withdrew, Bhīma I recovered his capital and revived the Cālukya power. He vanquished the Paramāra chief of Abu, but during his campaign against the king of Upper Sind Anhilwāḍa was stormed by Kulacandra, the general of Bhoja Paramāra. This provoked Bhīma I to such an extent that he entered into a league with Lākṣmī-Κaṇa Kalacuri, and the combined armies are alleged to have completely devastated Mālava. Bhoja died in the course of the struggle, and it appears the coalition was also dissolved subsequently. Hostilities broke out between the allies with the result that Lākṣmī-Κaṇa suffered a reverse at the hands of Bhīma I. The Paramāras took advantage of this conflict and made Mālava free of foreign control.

Karṇa

Bhīma I was followed by his son Karṇa, who could not achieve anything substantial despite a long reign of about thirty years (c. 1063-93 A.D.). During this period, the power of the Paramāras once more waxed,
For Udayāditya is credited with a victory over Kṛṇa, and it has been suggested, as shown elsewhere, that the latter is identical with his Cālukya namesake. He built numerous temples, dug tanks, and founded a city after his name, now represented by Ahmedabad.

Jayasimha Siddharāja

Kṛṇa's successor was Jayasimha Siddharāja, his son by Miyaṇalla Devī. He was the most striking personality among the rulers of Anhilvāḍa, and he wielded the sceptre for nearly half a century—c. 1095 to 1145 A.D. In the beginning, the affairs of the state were managed by the Queen-mother because of the king's minority, and she did so with ability and tact. When Jayasimha came of age he embarked upon conquering the neighbouring territories. He defeated the Cauhāns of Nādol (Jodhpur State) and the Cūḍāśama chief of Saurāṣṭra, which was annexed. Next, Jayasimha carried on a Protracted war with the Paramāṇa potentates, Naravarman and Yaśovarman. Eventually Dhāratī fell, and the victor assumed the title "Avanti-nātha" in commemoration of the subjugation of Mālava. But his further drive against Madanavarman of Bundelkhand was not successful. Indeed, the struggle seems to have ended in favour of the Candella monarch. According to the Prabhāṇda-Cintāmaṇi, Jayasimha was on terms of friendship with the "king of Dāhala" (i.e., the Kalacuri sovereign of Tripuri) and the "lord of Kāśi," presumably Govindacandra.

Like his predecessor, Jayasimha erected a number of religious edifices in his kingdom. Furthermore, he patronised learning, and encouraged free debates among the votaries of rival sects to inculcate the lesson of toleration. He himself was perhaps a Saiva, but

1 The vanquished Kṛṇa is, however, usually identified with Lākṣmi-Kṛṇa Kalacuri.
this did not prevent him from giving a place of honour at his court to the celebrated Jain Ācārya, Hemacandra.

Kumārapāla

After the death of Jayasimha without leaving any male issue, the throne was seized by his distant relation, Kumārapāla. He was an energetic man, and having overcome all opposition to his accession he pursued a policy of active militarism. He attacked Amorāja, the Cāhamāna ruler of Sākambhari, and completely overwhelmed his forces. Kumārapāla also quelled the revolt of the Paramāra prince of Abu, and reasserted the Cālukya authority in Mālava, which had raised its head during his initial difficulties. He next turned his arms successfully against a chieftain of Saurāṣṭra, but his most remarkable exploit was the defeat of Mallikārjuna of Konkan.

Kumārapāla is said to have rebuilt the temple of Somanātha, and although inscriptions represent him as a Śaiva, the Jain works would have us believe that Hemacandra’s brilliant exposition converted him to the tenets of Jainism. Perhaps it was due to Jain influences that Kumārapāla issued stringent orders prohibiting the slaughter of animals throughout his vast dominions. His reign has further been made memorable by the scholarly labours of Hemacandra, who produced a crop of works on religion and other subjects. Kumārapāla died shortly before V.E. 1229 = 1172 A.D., the earliest known date of his successor Ajayapāla.

1 See Kumārapāla-carita of Jayasimha, ed. by Kaṃṭhivijaya Gaṇi (Bombay, 1926).
2 See Kumārapāla-pratibodha of Somaprabhācārya (Gaekwād Oriental Series, No. XIV); also Mahrājaparājya of Yādahpāla (G.O.S., No. IX).
Later history of Gujarat

We do not get much valuable information regarding the later monarchs of Gujarat. The usual wars and court intrigues, of course, continued, but their repercussions were not of any far-reaching consequence. In 1178 A.D., soon after the accession of Bhima II (Bholā Bhima), who ruled for over sixty years, Gujarat had to face a Moslem invasion led by the Sultān of Ghor. Bholā Bhima, however, repulsed him in a hard-fought battle. The next attempt was directed by Qurb-uddin in H. 593–1197 A.D.; this time Anhilwāda was captured, but, as subsequent events proved, the occupation was only temporary. Besides, Gujarat also suffered from the inroads of the king of Mālava and the Yadava ruler of Devagiri. When the power of the Čālukyas was altogether weakened, the Vaghlā minister and feudatory of Bholā Bhima, established himself in an almost independent position in southern Gujarat, thereby reducing the latter’s jurisdiction to its northern part. Gradually, the Vaghelas took Anhilwāda and extended their sway over the whole of Gujarat. In 1297 A.D. Ala-ud-din Khiljī despatched thither a strong army under his generals, Ulugh Khan and Nasrat Khan. At its approach, Karan or Karandevā Vaghela turned his back and hurriedly fled from

1 The marble temples of Līlwārī (near Mt. Abu) and Satrunjaya, built by the brothers Vastupāla and Tejabhāla during the time of one of these Vaghela rulers, are famous for their elegant carvings and rich design. As observed by Vincent Smith, this class of temples is characterised by "a free use of columns carved with all imaginable richness, strut brackets, and exquisite marble ceilings with cusped pendants" (A History of Fine Art in India and Ceylon p. 116).
LATER HISTORY OF GUJARAT

the capital, which was then plundered by the invaders. Soon they conquered other strategic points, and thus the curtain fell on Hindu rule in Gujarat.
PART IV

CHAPTER XVII

THE DYNASTIES OF THE DAKŠIṆĀPATHA

SECTION A

THE CĀLUKYAS OF VĀTĀPI (BADAMI)

Signification of the term Dakshiṇāpatha

The geographical application of the Sanskrit name Dakšiṇāpatha or Dakšina, of which the Dekkan represents the modern form, has not always been the same. It was often loosely used in ancient times for the whole of the Indian peninsula to the south of the Narmadā, just as Uttarāpatha vaguely designated the country to its north between the Vindhya and the Hīmālayas. Generally, however, the Dekkan denotes the tableland from the Narmadā to the Kṛṣṇā river, including Mahārāṣṭra on the west and the Telugu tracts on the east.

Early history

Southern India remained for long a dark land to the Vedic Aryans owing to the almost impassable barrier of the Vindhya mountains and the extensive forest called Mahākāntāra. During the Brāhmanic period,¹

¹It is significant that a story in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (VII, 13; E. H. D., (1918), p. 10) refers to the Andhras, Pundṛtas, Sabaras, Pulindas, and Mūḍhas as descendants of the sons of the Vedic seer, Viśvāmitra.
however, they crossed these natural obstacles with the object of conquest or the diffusion of their culture among the Dravidian tribes by peaceful means. Thus, the history of the trans-Vindhyian country may be said to begin with the southward migrations of the Aryan bands, although the roots of its distinctive civilisation lie embedded in a far more remote antiquity. Unhappily, we do not get much information regarding the stages of its Aryanisation. According to the epic tradition, it was the great sage Agastya, who first established a settlement beyond the Vindhya range to spread the Aryan religion, language, and institutions. Then followed a regular stream of conquerors, colonists, and missionary Risis both through the eastern and the Avanti routes until Kaliya, Vidarbha (Beras), Danjakaranya (Maharastra), and indeed the whole of the South were all widely affected by the advancing tide of Aryanism. Uncertainty hangs on the centuries leading to this result, but it may be pertinent to note that whereas the geographical horizon of Panini, assigned to c. 700 B.C. by Dr. Bhandarkar,\(^1\) extends only up to Kaliya, and the Sutta-Nipata—an early Buddhist work—mentions just a solitary hermitage of Bavairin to the south of the Godvari, the commentator on Panini’s grammar, Katyayana (circa fourth century B.C.), knew, besides Mahismat and Nasika (Nasik), the Cèdas and the Pandañas also. Further, the inscriptions of Asoka unmistakably testify that in the middle of the third century B.C. his authority was recognised as far south as the Chitaldroog district in Mysore; and the kingdoms of the Cèdas, Pandañas, Satyaputras, and the Keralputras in the extremity of the Peninsula, and even Tamraparni (Ceylon), were no longer unfamiliar regions. The barrier of isolation had been completely surmounted and the North and the entire South were now

brought into intimate political and cultural relations. It is not clear what happened to the dominions of Aśoka across the Vindhyas after the dismemberment of the Maurya empire. When the curtain rises again, the Sātavāhanas appear on the stage and, as already shown, they imposed their sway over the greater part of the Dekkan and adjacent territories.¹ For a time, their power was eclipsed in Mahārāṣṭra and western Malwa by the Śakas. Under Gautamiputra, the Sātavāhanas revived their glory, but about the middle of the third century A.D. an Ābhira chieftain, named Iśwarasena, again wrested northern Mahārāṣṭra from them. Next, we learn that the Vākāṭakas ruled Central India and a good bit of the Dekkan.² In its eastern portion, on the other hand, the Sātavāhanas were succeeded by the Ikṣvākus and the early Pallavas. Here also flourished such minor dynasties as the Brihatphalāyanas of Kudūra, the Śalaṅkāyanas of Veṅgīpura, and the Viṣṇukundins of Lendulura (Denduluru, near Veṅgi),³ which are mere names save to a few specialists.

With this rapid survey of the early history of the Dekkan, we now proceed to deal with the Cālukyas.

Who were the Cālukyas?

The origin of the Cālukyas⁴ is lost in the mists of myths. According to one tradition, they sprang from the water pot of Ḫāŋ with he was in the act of pouring out a libation; while according to another, as recorded in the Viṅkramaṅkudvavacarita of Bilhana, they are represented to have descended from a warrior, who was produced

¹ See ante, Ch. X, Sec. C.
² Ibid., Ch. XIII, Sec. B.
³ See K. R. Subramanian, Buddhist Remains in Āndhra and the History of Āndhra between 225 & 626 A.D., Chaps. VII-X.
⁴ Other variants of the name are Cālukya, Cālikya, Calkya and Solaṅkī.
by Brahmā from the palm of his hand to rescue the world from unrighteousness. We are further told that the family originally belonged to Ayodhyā, from where it went to the South. Shorn of the fantastic, the above legends indicate that the Cālukyas were a northern Kṣatriya race, and that the hero Haritī was their progenitor. Vincent Smith, however, rejects this conclusion. He believes that the “Cālukyas or Solankis were connected with the Cāpas, and so with the foreign Gurjara tribe, of which the Cāpas were a branch, and it seems to be probable that they emigrated from Rajputana to the Deccan.” But any definite proof of this is lacking.

Their rise

The Cālukya power in the South had a modest beginning under Jayāsimha and his son, RanaRāga. The latter’s successor, Pulakeśin I, who came to the throne about the middle of the sixth century A.D., was, however, a figure of some note. He made Vatāpi (modern Badami, Bijapur district) his capital, and even indulged in Imperial pretensions by celebrating an Aśvamedha or horse-sacrifice. The next member of the dynasty was Kiritivarman. He defeated the Mauryas of north Konkan as well as the Kadambas of Banavasi (north Kanārā) and the Naḷas, whose exact location is uncertain. According to certain epigraphs, his arms

1 See also Yuan Chwang’s Records (Watters, II, p. 239), where Pulakeśin II is described as a Kṣatriya by birth.
3 Called Satyāśraya Śrīvallabha.
4 An inscription, recently discovered at the hill-fort of Badami, yields us the Saka date 465 = 143 A.D. for Pulakeśin I, who is called therein Vallabheśvara, and is said to have performed the Aśvamedha sacrifice (The Leader, June 19, 1941).
5 Fleet thinks that the Naḷas were the rulers of Naḷavādī (modern Bellary and Karnal districts). They have, however, been recently located in Southern Kośala and Bastar State (J. N. S. I., Vol. I, p. 29).
penetrated right up to Bihar (Magadha) and Vānga (Bengal) in the north, and the Coţa and the Pāṇḍya territories in the far south, but in the absence of any other corroboration it is doubtful if the alleged exploits are founded on fact. When Kṛtivāman died,¹ his younger brother brushed aside the minor nephews and assumed the crown himself. Apart from the vague claim of having subdued the country between the western and eastern seas, Maṅgalarāja or Maṅgaleśa is said to have taken Revatīdvīpa (modern Reōli, Ratnagiri district) and subjugated the Kalarṣiris of northern Dekkan.² It was also during his time that an exquisite cave-temple of Viṣṇu was excavated at Badami. Maṅgalarāja’s last days were clouded by court intrigues leading to a civil war. Eventually all attempts to settle the succession on his son came to nought, and he met his death while fighting against the forces of his energetic and vigilant nephew.

Pulakeśin II

The accession of Pulakeśin II did not mean the termination of his initial troubles. The struggle for the throne had engulfed the affairs of the Čālukya kingdom in such a whirlpool of chaos that the powers, reduced to subservience by his predecessors, now ventured to raise the standard of their aggressive activities. Paramēśvara-Śrī-Prithvi-Vallabha-Śatyāśraya, as the new monarch is styled in inscriptions, faced the storm with courage, determination, and success, and thus won for himself the place of honour in the dynastic niche. He

¹ In the opinion of Sir Ramkrishna Bhandarkar, Kṛtivāman ascended the throne in 567 A.D., and ruled for about a quarter of a century (E. H. D., pp. 85-87).
² The two important princes of this family were Saṅkaragana and Buddharāja.
first repelled the attack of Appāyika and Govinda beyond the Bhimarathī (Bhimā); captured Vana-
vāśī (in north Kanārā), capital of the Kadambas; overawed the Gaṅgas of Gaṅgavādi (part of modern Mysore) and the Alūpas of Malabar (?); and also subdued the Mauryas of north Konkan seizing Puri, “the glory of the western sea.” Next, the Lātas of southern Guja-
rat, the Mālavas, and the Gurjaras (of Bhrigukaccha ?) are said to have submitted to the might of Pulakeśin II. But his most valorous achievement was the defeat of the great Harṣavardhana of Kāṇyakubja, whose personal command of the army proved of no avail against the Calukya sovereign’s superior strategy. With all these victories to his credit, Pulakeśin II became, as stated in the well-known Aihole-Meguṭi record dated the Saka year 536=A.D. 634, the undisputed master of the three Mahārāṣṭras consisting of nine and ninety thousand villages. Furthermore, the kings of Kośala (Mahākośala) and Kaśīṅga felt terror-stricken at the approach of his forces, and the fortress of Piṭapūra (modern Piṭḥāpuram) surrendered to him without

1 Their identification is uncertain. Does the name Govinda suggest a Rāṣṭrakūta origin?
2 Presumably the Gaṅga chief was identical with Durvinița, who, according to Prof. Dubreuil, ruled from c. 605 to 610 A. D. (Ame.
3 cf. “Harṣa whose lotus-feet were covered with the rays of the jewels of the diadems of hosts of feudatories prosperous with unmeasured wealth, was by him made to lose his mirth (harṣa) in fear, having become loathsome with his rows of lordly ele-
phants fallen in battle.”

(Ep. Ind., VI, pp. 6, 10, verse 23)
much opposition. The kingdom having enormously grown in dimensions, Pulakesin II entrusted the administra-
tion of the eastern territories to his younger brother, Kubja-Viṣṇuvardhana-Viṣṇamasiddhi, about 615
A.D. The latter made some additions to his charge
by conquests, but he does not appear to have broken
away from Vatapiṇḍa. It was perhaps his son and
successor, Jayasimha I, who asserted the independence
of the branch house at a favourable opportunity.3 Tow-
wards the south, Pulakesin II measured strength with
the Pallava prince, identified with Mahendravarmar
I, and threatened his capital Kānciṇḍa (Conjeeveram).

3 The rulers of this collateral line, known as the Eastern Cālukyas
of Vēṅgi, held sway, with various ups and downs of fortune,
over the Andhra country and a portion of Kalinga for about five
hundred years. Mere possession of such a fertile and strategic terri-
tory was enough to give the family an important place in the political
affairs of the Dekkan. But some of its members were also noted
for their military abilities; for instance, Vijayāditya II (r. 799-843
A.D.) and Vijayāditya III (r. 844-88 A.D.) are said to have fought,
and won victories, against the Rāṣṭrakūṭas, the Gaṅgas, and other
contemporary powers. About the last quarter of the tenth century
A.D., the kingdom of Vēṅgi suffered a decline, and was overrun
by Rājarāja I Cola. Saktivarman (r. 999-1011 A.D.) partially
retrieved the lost ground, but the next monarch, Vimalaśāyana
(r. 1011-18 A.D.), and his successors were unmistakably under the
influence of the Colas of Tanjore. This was partly due to matri-
monial relations between the two houses, for Vimalaśāyana took
the Cola princess, Kuṅdavā, as his spouse, and their son Rājarāja
Viṣṇuvardhana obtained the hand of Rājendra I’s daughter. The
offspring of the latter union was Rājendra Cola II, afterwards
called Kūḷottuṅga I. He assumed both the crowns in 1070
A.D., and having driven away his uncle Vijayāditya VII from
Vēṅgi, he successively appointed his sons, Rājarāja-Mummadśi-
Cola and Vītra-Cola, as Viceroy of that region. Thus resulted
the amalgamation of the Eastern Cālukya and the Cola realms, and
this mixed dynasty had a prosperous career for almost two
centuries. Ultimately it collapsed owing to the incursions of
the Kākatiyas of Waranga, the Hoysalas, and other hostile
neighbours (see also D. Č. Ganguly, Eastern Cālukyas, Benares
1937).
When the Cālukya arms reached beyond the Kāveri, the Coḷas, the Pāṇḍyas, and the Keraḷas averted hostilities by their readiness to form an alliance with Pulakeśin II.

Pulakeśin II not only distinguished himself in warfare, but also cultivated the softer art of diplomacy to strengthen his position. According to the Arab writer Tabārī, the former maintained friendly relations with Khusru II, king of Iran or Persia, who received from his Indian contemporary a special envoy in 625 A.D. bearing letters and presents. The Persian soveteign, too, sent an embassy to the Cālukya court, and it is generally supposed by scholars that the reception of the Persian mission is portrayed in one of the Ajanta cave paintings. This view is, however, doubted by Sten Konow.  

During the reign of Pulakeśin II, perhaps in the year 641 A.D., the celebrated Chinese pilgrim, Yuan Chwang, went in the course of his travels to the Ma-há-la-ch’u (or t’a) country or Mahārāṣṭra. We are told that “its soil is rich and fertile; it is regularly cultivated and very productive.” Furthermore, “the inhabitants were proud-spirited and warlike, grateful for favours and revengeful for wrongs, self-sacrificing towards suppliants in distress and sanguinary to death with any who treated them insultingly. Their martial heroes who led the van of the army in battle went into conflict intoxicated, and their war-elephants were also made drunk before an engagement.” Owing to his superior forces the king of the land, named Pu-la-ke-sho (Pulakeśin), who was a Kṣatriya

---

3 Beal, II, p. 236.  
4 Watters, II, p. 239.
by birth, treated the neighbouring powers "with contempt". Indeed, his benevolent sway is said to have extended "far and wide, and his vassals served him with perfect loyalty."¹

The last days of the great Cālukya monarch were inglorious. For the Pallavas now paid off all old scores under the leadership of Narasimhavarman I (r. 625-45 A.D.), who, after several successful campaigns, stormed the Cālukya capital, Vātāpi, in 642 A.D., and probably killed Pulakeśin II. But the resistance of the Cālukyas was not completely broken, and they soon emerged from their temporary eclipse.

Pulakeśin II's successors.

Pulakeśin II was followed by his second son, Vikramādiśya I, called Satyāśraya,² who valiantly recovered his paternal dominions from the rival house of the Pallavas by about 654 A.D. He captured Kāñcī (Conjeeveram), and is represented to have defeated three Pallava princes, Narasimhavarman I, Mahendravarman II, and Paramēśvaravarman. Certain documents, on the other hand, credit the last-named with victories over the Cālukyas. If there be any truth in these claims, it would appear that the struggle between the two powers continued long, and fortune was, as usual, fickle in the case of either. We further learn that Vikramādiśya I did not stop with the plunder of the Pallava capital; he pressed on to the extreme south and the weight of his arms was even felt by the Cōḷas, the Pāṇḍyas, and the

¹ Ibid.
² Presumably, Vikramādiśya I got the throne, as he was his father’s favourite son (priyatmanya). Candradeśiya, his elder brother, appears to have been given charge of some remote province; and Jayasimha, another brother of Vikramādiśya I, was assigned the province of Līṭa or southern Gujarat by the latter.
Keralas. In these wars he was ably assisted by his son, Vinayāditya, and grandson, Vijayāditya, both of whom afterwards became kings—the former ruling from c. 680 to 696 A.D., and the latter from c. 696 to 733 A.D. According to an inscription, Vinayāditya Satyāśraya acquired “the insignia of supreme dominion by crushing the lord of all the region of the North” (Sakalottarapatanaṇa). There is doubtless an element of exaggeration in this statement, for we do not know of any paramount sovereign of the North at this time, but it appears that Vinayāditya scored a military triumph against one of the successors of Ādityasena in the Later Gupta line. During the reign of Vijayāditya’s son, Vikramāditya II (c. 733-47 A.D.), the traditional hostilities with the Pallavas continued; Nandivarman sustained a defeat and the Cālukya army entered the city of Kāñci, where a mutilated epigraph of the victor, found in a temple, still bears witness to its occupation. Besides, the arms of Vikramāditya II are said to have been successful against other hereditary enemies, viz., the Colas, the Pāṇḍyas, the people of Malabar, and the Kāḷacakras. Vikramāditya II was also noted for giving largess to Brahmans, and both of his Haihaya wives built two splendid fanes in honour of Śiva. In Saka 669–747-48 A.D., Vikramāditya II was succeeded by his son, Kṛttivarman II, who too, like his predecessors, fought against the Pallavas. But perhaps owing to Pallava preoccupations he or his father lost Māhārāṣṭra to the Rāstrakūṭa chief, Dantidurga, about the middle of the eighth century A.D. The main Cālukya dynasty disappeared after Kṛttivarman’s reign, though the family itself was not annihilated and, as we shall see below, its scions subsequently reasserted their power.

1 Ind. Ant., IX, p. 120; VII, pp. 107, 117.
Patronage of Religion and Art

The Vatapi Calukyas were staunch Brahmanists, but they observed the golden rule of toleration. During their ascendancy, Jainism prospered in the Dekkan, specially its southern part. Ravi-kirti, the Jaina author of the Alhole inscription, who constructed a temple of Jinendra, claims to have obtained "the highest favour" of Pulakeśin II. Similarly, Vijayaditya and Vikramaditya II granted villages to well-known Jain Panditas. We have, however, no evidence to show in what manner Buddhism was patronised by the Calukya monarchs. It was perhaps on the wane, although it had not become extinct, as would be clear from the following testimony of Yuan Chwang: "Of Buddhist monasteries there were above 100, and the Brethren, who were adherents of both Vehicles, were more than 5,000 in number. Within and outside the capital were five Aśoka topes where the Four Past Buddhas had sat and walked for exercise; and there were innumerable other topes of stone or brick."1 As regards Brahmanism, the Paurānic deities rose into prominence, and superb structures were erected at Vatapi (Badami) and Pattadakal2 (Bijapur district) in honour of the Trinity—Brahmā, Viṣṇu, and Śiva; these gods were also known by a variety of names. Sometimes, temples were excavated out of solid rocks; as for instance, Maṅgaleśa signalled his reign by an architectural achievement of this description, consecrated to Viṣṇu.3 It has

1 Watters, II, p. 239.
2 The Pattadakal temples, particularly their Vīhanas, were built after the fashion of Pallava architecture.
3 See H. Cousens, The Calukyan Architecture (Arch. Surv. Ind., Vol. XLII, Calcutta, 1926). The Calukyan temple stands on an elaborately decorated base or plinth. It is polygonal, often star-shaped in plan. It is rooted by "a low pyramidal tower, surmounted by a vase-like ornament."
further been conjectured that some of the famous Ajantā cave-frescoes probably belong to the time of these early Cālukyas. Lastly, elaborate sacrifices were then in vogue, and we learn that Pulakeśin I alone performed a number of them, such as the Aśvamedha, Vājapeya, Paundarīka, etc.

SECTION B

THE RĀṢṬRAKUṬAS OF MĀNYAKHEṬA (MALKHED)

Extraction of the Rāṣṭraṅgūṭas

It is rather a vexed question what stock the Rāṣṭraṅgūṭas of the Dekkan belonged to? According to later documents of the dynasty, they had sprung from the race of Yadu; and their direct progenitor was a prince called Raṭṭa, whose son, Rāṣṭraṅgūṭa, gave his name to the family itself. Sir Ramkrishna Bhandarkar,¹ however, takes them to be "imaginary persons", and probably he is right in placing no reliance on such traditions. Similarly, the suggestion of Fleet² that the Rāṣṭraṅgūṭas of the Dekkan were derived from the Rathors (Rāṣṭraṅgūṭas) of the north would not bear the least scrutiny; nor is there any substance in the belief of Burnell³ that they were connected with the Dravidian Reḍḍis of Anēhradaēsa. The most probable view is that the Rāṣṭraṅgūṭas of Malkhed were descended from the Raṭṭikas or Raṭṭikas, who were important enough in the middle of the third century B.C. to be mentioned along with the Bhojakas and other Aparāntas (people of Western India) in the edicts of Asōka.

Their original home

Inscriptions and coins indicate, as shown by Dr.

³ South Indian Palaeography, p. x.
Altekar,¹ that the Raṭhika and Mahāraṭhi families occupied Mahāraṣṭra and portions of Karnāṭaka in the capacity of feudal rulers. Now wherefrom did the later Raṣṭrakūṭas of Mānyakhetō hai? Dr. Altekar locates their original home in Karnāṭaka, and adds that their mother-tongue was Kanarese, since they encouraged and themselves used this language and script.² Besides, they are described in several epigraphs as “Laṭṭalūra-puravarādhīśa,” i.e. “lords of Laṭṭalūra, the excellent town,” which is identical with Lāṭūr—a Kanarese-speaking locality in the Bedar district, Nizām’s dominions. No doubt, these are weighty arguments and militate against the assumption of some scholars that the Mālkhed Raṣṭrakūṭas were natives of Mahāraṣṭra.

Rise of the dynasty

The first few rulers of this house—Dantivarman, Indra I Prchakaraṇa, Govinda I, Karka I, and Indra-ṛaṇa II—are not known to have achieved any distinction. Indeed, we do not even know definitely where their territory lay. Dr. Altekar³ is of opinion that they held sway “somewhere in Berar”, the family having migrated from its original home in Karnāṭaka. Further, he regards them as “either the direct or collateral descendants of the Raṣṭrakūṭa king, Nannaraṇa Yudhāsura, who was ruling at Elichpur in Berar in the middle of the seventh century A.D.”⁴ Whether one agrees or not with these suggestions, it is certain that the Raṣṭrakūṭas of Mānyakhetō⁵ began their career of greatness under

¹ Raṣṭrakūṭas and their Times, pp. 19-21. I have consulted this book with profit.
² Ibid., pp. 21-22.
³ Ibid., pp. 11, 22, etc.
⁴ Ibid., p. 11.
⁵ The Raṣṭrakūṭa capital was established at Mānyakhetō by
Dantidurga. He was the son of the Cālukya princess, Bhavanāgā, whom Indrāji is said to have forcibly carried away in the midst of her nuptial ceremonies. The most notable exploit of Dantidurga was the subversion of the Cālukya power in Mahārāṣṭra about the beginning of the fifth decade of the eighth century A.D., as is evident from the newly-discovered Ellorā plates.1 The Rāṣṭrakūṭa monarch also vanquished other contemporary kings like those of Kāñci (a Pālava prince), Kaliṅga, Kośala (South Kośala), Mālava (the Gūrjara-Pratihāra ruler of Ujjain), Lāṭa (southern Gujarāt, where Karka II became governor), Taṅka (not satisfactorily identified), and Śṛiśaila (Karnul district). Dantidurga died without leaving a son, and consequently his paternal uncle, Kannara or Krisṇa I, succeeded to the throne not long before 758 A.D. Some scholars, however, believe that the former, being tyrannical, was deposed, and the omission of his name in certain grants appears to lend colour to this view. But presumably they pass over him because in relation to his successor he was only a collateral. Krisṇa I completed the overthrow of Kīrtivarman II Cālukya, whose authority, according to an inscription, survived in Karnāṭaka and adjacent lands until at least 737 A.D. Krisṇarāja2 is represented as having consolidated his position and assumed the Imperial title of Rājādhirāja-Paramēśhvara after crushing the proud Rāhappa. The latter was doubtless a strong opponent, but it is difficult to identify him with the extant materials. Krisṇa I then subdued Koukan; overran Gaṅgavādī (i.e., the kingdom of the Gaṅgas); and defeated Viṣṇuvardhana IV, the

Amoghavāra I. The earlier seat of power is unknown, although the names of Mayūrakāṇjali (Morkhānd, Nasik district) and ‘Soolōbhunjun’ (near Ellorā) have been suggested.

1 See Ep. Ind., XXV, pp. 25-31. The Ellorā plates, dated in Saka 663 = 741-42 A.D., furnish us the earliest year for Dantidurga. Evidently he ruled the Ellorā region at this date.

2 Krisṇa I is generally called Subhatuniga and Akālavarṣa.
Eastern Cilukya ruler of Vengi. Along with these military triumphs, Kriśna I signalised his reign by constructing a magnificent temple of Siva at Elāpura (Ellora, Nizām’s dominions). Excavated out of solid rock, the structure is indubitably, as observed by Vincent Smith, “the most marvellous architectural freak in India.”

Growth of Rāstrakūṭa Imperialism

(a) Govinda II—Kriśna I appears to have died shortly after 772 A.D., and was succeeded by his eldest son Govinda II Prabhūtavāra. As Yuvrāja, he had inflicted a defeat on Viśṇuvardhana IV of Vengi. But when he became king, Govinda II did not win any memorable victory except against one Pārijāta. The Rāstrakūṭa monarch dissipated his energies in unbridled licence and sensuality. Even the work of administration was carried on by his younger brother, Dhruva, who, taking advantage of the situation, rebelled and eventually seized the crown for himself in c. 779 A.D.

(b) Dhruva Nirupama—Dhruva Nirupama, also called Dhānāvarṣa and Kali or Śri-Vallabha, first dealt severe blows against his brother’s allies. The Gaṅga king, Sivamāra Muṭṭarasā, was humbled and imprisoned, and his territories were annexed. Next, the Pallava sovereign of Kāṇḍa had to bow to Dhruva’s steel. The latter then turned his eyes towards the north. He caused Vatsaṛāja, the Pratihara ruler of Ujjain, “to enter upon the path of misfortune in the centre of (the deserts of) Maru” which expression probably indicates that Dhruva defeated his antagonist and

---

2 This epithet occurs in the Jain Hariśvantra, which yields us the Saka date 701 = 783-84 A.D. for Dhruva.
drove him into the inhospitable regions of Rajputana. Dhruva also invaded the territories of the Gangetic Doab in the reign of Indrāyudha, and is said to have "added the emblem of the Ganges and the Jumna to his Imperial insignia." It was perhaps during this raid that Dhruva met Dharmapāla in a successful encounter, and "seized the white umbrellas, the sporting lotuses of Lakṣmī of the Gauḍa king, as he was fleeing between the Ganges and the Jumna." Dhruva's campaign in Madhyadesa did not, of course, result in any expansion of territory, but it clearly demonstrated that the Rāṣṭrakūṭa had now embarked upon a career of Imperialistic ambition and aggrandisement.

(c) Govinda III Jagattunga—Govinda III was selected by Dhruva as his successor; it is, however, uncertain if he came to the throne in circa 794 A.D. after his father's abdication or death. Stambha (Kambayya), governor of Gaṅgavāḍī and elder brother of Govinda III, challenged his accession, and the former's cause was espoused by a number of recalcitrant feudatories. Even Śivamāra, the released Gaṅgā king, raised his head against the new Rāṣṭrakūṭa ruler. But nothing availed the rebels and they were soon completely routed. Gaṅgavāḍī was again conquered, and Govinda III meted out a generous treatment to Stambha by reappointing him his local representative there. Next, having vanquished Dantiga' (or Dantivarman), the Pallava prince of Kāñci, Govinda III measured swords with Vijayarādyīa II (799–843 A.D.), the Eastern Caḷukya monarch of Veṅgi, and put him to humiliation. Like his father, Govinda III was victorious against the northern powers. He defeated and successfully foiled all attempts of Nāgabhaṭa II to recover his paternal dominions of Ujjain² some time between 806 A.D. and

¹ Ep. Ind., XVIII, pp. 244, 252; see also History of Kanauj, p. 214.
² Sanjan plates, Ep. Ind., XVIII, pp. 245, 253, v. 22; see also Radhanpur grant, Ibid., pp. 244, 250, v. 13.
808 A.D. Govinda III, however, continued to apprehend danger from the ambitious Pratihāra potentate, and so, according to the Baroda plates of Karkarāja, he (Govinda) “for the purpose of protecting Mālava . . . . . . . caused his (Karkarāja’s) arm to become an excellent door-bar of the country of the lord of Gurjara.” Govinda III then directed his attention towards the Gangetic Doab, and the Sanjan plates inform us that both Cakrāyudha of Kānyakubja and Dharmapāla of Gauḍa “surrendered of themselves” to him. But these victories brought him no peace. His preoccupations in the north led the Colas and Pāṇḍyas to form a confederacy with the kings of Kāṅcī, Ganga-vadī and Kerala against him. Once more the arms of Govinda III triumphed and afterwards he devoted the remaining years of his life to internal affairs of the kingdom.

Amoghavarṣa I

After the passing away of Govinda III early in 814 A.D., the crown devolved upon his son, who is known only by his epithet, Amoghavarṣa. As the latter was a mere boy, Govinda III appears to have entrusted, before his death, Karkarāja-Suvarṇavarṣa of the collateral Gujarat branch with the task of running the machinery of administration. Things went on smoothly for a time, but the forces of disruption did not long remain dormant. The dissensions in the royal house affected the ministers with disloyalty, the tributary princes became rebellious, and the ruler of

1 History of Kanauj, p. 232.
3 Ep. Ind., XVIII, pp. 241, 255, v. 25; see also Ibid., VI, pp. 102, 105. cf. स्वभाववैवत्तो व स्वभाववैवत्तो र्मवमावमावमाबो।
4 Sir R. G. Bhandarkar is of opinion that his proper name was Sarva (E. H. D., p. 116).
Gaṅgavāḍi asserted his independence. Even Vijayā
ditya II of Veṅgi attacked the Raṭṭas (Rāṣṭrakūṭas) to
avenge his previous discomfiture at the hands of Go
vinda III. Thus anarchy stalked through the land,
and ultimately it led to Amoghavārṣa’s deposition.
The Sūrat grant, however, indicates that some time
before April 821 A.D., he regained the throne, presu
mably owing to the efforts of Karkaraṇa. Being still
young, the position of Amoghavāra I long continued
to be insecure, and he could not, therefore, undertake
any military expedition. Of course, the Sūtur (Dhār
vāḍ district) charter, dated Saka 788 (A.D. 866),
and other later epigraphs testify that the Cālukya monarch
of Veṅgi bowed to his steel. But this must have
happened rather late in Amoghavāra’s reign, and most
probably his opponent was Vijayāditya III Guṇaga
(c. 844-88 A.D.), since there are grounds to believe
that, far from submitting, Vijayāditya II (c. 799-843
A.D.) achieved further victories against the Rāṣṭrakū
tas about the close of his career. Next, Amoghavāra
I is said to have extended his influence over the kings
of Aṅga, Vaṅga, and Magadha; these claims, however,
seem to be mere boasts without any basis in fact.
In the south as well as in the north, Amoghavāra’s arms
made no progress. On the other hand, his Pratihāra
contemporary, Mihira Bhoja, overran the tracts round
Ujjayinī up to the Narmadā river and perhaps beyond,
and the credit for repelling this invasion goes not to
Amoghavāra I but to his Gujarāt kinsman, Dhruva II.

1 Ep. Ind., XXI, pp. 153-47
3 Ind. Ant., XII, pp. 216 f.
4 Ibid., pp. 184, 189. The Gujarāt line was established by
Indra, who was appointed governor of southern Gujarāt by his
elder brother, Govinda III, about the beginning of the ninth cen
tury A.D. Among the prominent members of this branch were
Karka-Suvarṇavarṣa, Dhruva Dhāravāra, Aśājavarṣa Subhatsuṅga,
Indeed, the former proved so weak that he could not bring to book even the Gaṅga prince, who had cut asunder the Imperial ties early in his reign. This lack of martial ardour was perhaps due to Amoghavarṣa's leanings towards religion and literature. The tenets of Jainism, as expounded by his chief preceptor (paramaguru), Jinasena, greatly appealed to his heart and intellect; and if the Gopātārāsaṅgīrāha of Vīrācārya merits credence, Amoghavarṣa I openly turned an adherent of the Syādvāda doctrine. But he did not altogether forsake his catholic sympathies or Hindu attachments, for the Sanjan plates represent him as a devout worshipper of the goddess Mahālakṣmi. Further, he has been compared to the renowned Vikramāditya in liberality and patronage of men of letters. Amoghavarṣa I himself was the author of the Kavirājamārga, a Kanarese work on poetics; and of the Prasūttarāmālikā, a catechism on moral principles, which, however, is sometimes attributed to Saṅkaraśārya or to one Vimala.

The last days of Amoghavarṣa I were spent mostly in religious exercises. It appears that he used to retire into solitude for short intervals to practise meditation, leaving the cares of government to the crown-prince or the council of ministers.

Lastly, it may be mentioned that Amoghavarṣa I fixed his capital at Mānyakheṭa (now Malkhed in the Nizām's dominions). We do not know with certitude whether he was the actual founder of the city, but it surely owed its prosperity and importance to him.

Dhruva II, the last three having fought against a king named Vallabha, whom Dr. Altekar has identified with Amoghavarṣa I (Rāṣṭrakūṭas and their Times, p. 84). The Gujarati family disappeared sometime in the last decade of the ninth century A.D.

1 Ep. Ind., XVIII, pp. 248, 255, v. 47. Amoghavarṣa is called in this verse Vīra-Nārāyaṇa. 
2 Ibid., v. 48.
Amoghavarṣa’s successors

The last known date of Amoghavarṣa I is 878 A.D.;¹ we may, therefore, tentatively assume that he died the same year after a protracted reign of about sixty-four years. He was succeeded by his son, Kṛṣṇa II, surnamed Akālavarṣa or Śrī-Vallabha. The latter married a daughter of Kalacuri Kokalla I of Tripuri, who claims to have been a source of considerable strength to his son-in-law.² It was during Kṛṣṇa II’s time that the Gujarat Rāstrakūta branch lost whatever power it once enjoyed. He also carried on the traditional hostilities with the Eastern Calukya rulers of Vengi, Vijayaditya III Gunaga—his contemporary for a few years—and Bhima I (c. 888-918 A.D.), but the Rāstrakūta arms met with reverses after some successes. Another figure, with whom Kṛṣṇa II came into conflict, was Mihira Bhoja, and although the Barton Museum fragmentary inscription³ would have us believe that the former had to retreat hastily to his own country, the Bagumrā plates⁴, on the contrary, indicate that the Pratihāra monarch could not make much headway against his opponent in the region round Ujjainī. Perhaps their wars did not result in any advantage to either party,

Kṛṣṇa II passed away about 914 A.D., and was succeeded by his grandson Indra III Nityavarṣa. The latter was the offspring of Jagattunga (who had died prematurely in the lifetime of his father) by his Kalacuri wife, Lakṣmī. Indra III proved a daring

¹“Phālguna Suddha 10, Saka 799 (i.e., March, 878 A.D.) when the Jayadharanātikā of Viśvesa was finished.” See Rāstrakūtas and their Times, p. 87.
warrior; his greatest achievement, according to the Cambay plates, was the "complete devastation of that hostile city of Mahodaya" (Kanauj) in 916 or 917 A.D. He triumphantly marched through Ujjain, the veritable bone of contention between the Rāṣṭrakūṭas and the Pratihāras, and across the valley of the "unfathomable Yamuna," accompanied by his Cālukya feudatory, Narasimha, and overwhelmed Mahipāla who had shortly before seized the crown from Bhoja II with the help of Harṣadeva Candella. The invaders appear to have overrun the Gangetic Doab as far as Prayāga, but the campaign was in effect no more than a brilliant raid and left no permanent traces of Rāṣṭrakūṭa authority in the North.

After a brief reign, Indra III was succeeded by Amoghavarṣa II probably early in 918 A.D. Then followed Govinda IV, who, instead of looking into the affairs of the state, indulged himself in sensual gratification and had thus "with his intelligence caught in the noose of the eyes of women displeased all beings." He was worsted by Cālukya Bhima II of Vengi.

2 History of Kanauj, p. 260.
3 Ibid., pp. 256-57.
4 This date will have to be set aside, if, as I am informed by Dr. Aitken, Indra III ruled for a few years more according to an inscription. I have, however, not been able to find out the exact reference.

The temple of Kālapriya, mentioned in the Cambay plates, is probably to be identified with that of Mahākāla in Ujjaini. It has, however, been sometimes identified with the shrine of Kālapriya in Kālpī.
(c. 934-45 A.D.) at the fag-end of his career, and, according to the Vikramārjunavijaya of the Kanarese poet, Pampa1, even vassal chiefs like Arikesarīn II of Puligere gave much trouble to Govinda IV.

After Govinda IV his paternal uncle, Amoghavarṣa III Baddiga, ascended the throne in c. 936 A.D. Not much is known of him except that he was a righteous man, and was matrimonially allied to the Kālacuri Keyūravarṣa Yuvarāja I of Tripuri and the Gaṅga prince Būṭuga II, being the son-in-law of the former and father-in-law of the latter. Amoghavarṣa III ceased ruling about the beginning of 940 A.D.

Kriṣṇa III

Amoghavarṣa III’s successor was his son, Kriṣṇa III, who seems to have wielded substantial power while only an heir-apparent. Among his earliest exploits was the subversion of Rācamalla, the Western Gaṅga ruler, and the enthronement of Būṭuga II in his place. We further learn from the Deoli plates that when sometime before Saka 862=940 A.D., the date of the record, Kriṣṇa undertook an expedition in northern India “the hope about Kālaṇjiira and Citrakūṭa vanished from the heart of the Gūrjara.”2 If the Gurjara of this passage is identical with the Pārśhātra sovereign, Mahipāla, we get definite testimony regarding Kriṣṇa III’s clash with the hereditary enemies of his house. Indeed, it has been suggested that the Rāṣṭrakūṭa invader wrested Kālaṇjiira and Citrakūṭa from his northern rival. This may perhaps be true, although all that the epigraphic evidence implies is that, hearing of the victorious progress of Kriṣṇa, the Gurjara lord became so

2 Ibid., V, p. 194, verse 25.

cf. वक्षिपतिविकृतिविजयायां गृहीता गूर्जरःकृत्य न चिन्हविद्यां ।
panic-stricken as to lose hope of the defence and safety of two of his strategic strongholds. That Kṛiṣṇa III carried his arms northwards is also clear from an undated Kanarese inscription, engraved on a stone slab in Maihar State (Baghelkhand). It is, of course, significant that here he assumes the full Imperial titles of Paramabhaṭṭāraka, Mahārājādhirāja, and Paramesvara, and accordingly the probability cannot be altogether ruled out that the actual occupation of any territory in Central India may have been due to some later incursion of Kṛiṣṇa III as king, when the power of the Pratihāras was distinctly on the wane owing to the rise of the Candellas and other quondam feudatories.

The most notable victories of Kṛiṣṇa III were, however, won in the South. He occupied Kacchi (Kānci) and by his conquest of Tanjore earned the proud epithet of "Taṅjaiyumkonda." The Cola prince Rājāditya, son of Parāntaka I, was defeated in the famous battle of Takkolam (near Arkoṇam, North Arcot district) in 949 A.D. with the assistance of his brother-in-law, the Gaṅga chief, Būṭuga II, who got Banavasi and other tracts in reward for the services rendered during the war. Kṛiṣṇa III thus became master of Tondamāndai, but he could not annex the southern portion of the Cola realm. He also curbed the ambitions of the Pāṇḍyas and the Keralas, and even the king of Simhala (Ceylon) is said to have paid homage to him. Another remarkable achievement of Kṛiṣṇa III was that he successfully opposed Amma II and raised his ally Bāḍapa, son of Yuddhamalla, to the Vengi throne.

2 cf. the expression "Kacciyum-Taṅjaiyumkonda."
Downfall of the dynasty

Krīṣṇa III was the last great ruler of the Rāṣṭrakūṭa family, whose glory departed after his death in 968 A.D. During the reign of the next monarch, his brother Khoṭṭiga Nityavarṣa, the fortunes of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas sank to so low a level that their capital Mānyakheṭa was pillaged by the Paramāra Siyaka-Harṣa of Mālava.¹ Khoṭṭiga’s nephew and successor, Karka II or Kakkala, was decidedly a weak personality, although an inscription credits him with having put down a number of enemies. He succumbed to the onslaughts of the Western Cālukya Taila II or Tailapāṇi some time in the year 973 A.D., and thus after a vigorous career of almost two centuries and a quarter, the Imperial Rāṣṭrakūṭas passed into obscurity.

The Rāṣṭrakūṭas and the Arabs

The Rāṣṭrakūṭa kings, called by the Arab travellers and chroniclers Balhara (evidently an Arabic corruption of the Sanskrit term Vallaḥbaruja), were regarded by the latter as mighty monarchs. For instance, Sulaimān, alluding in 851 A.D. to “the long-lived Balhara,” identified with Amoghavarṣa I, includes him among the four great sovereigns of the world, the other three being the Khalifs of Baghdad and the Emperors of Constantinople and China. The Rāṣṭrakūṭas maintained friendly relations with the Arabs and afforded them ample facilities for trade. This policy was doubtless due to


Dhanapāla also says in his Pañcavilāṣī (v. 276) that he composed his work “when one thousand years of the Vikrama era and twenty-nine besides had passed, when Mannakheṭa or Mānyakheṭa had been plundered in consequence of an attack (made) by the lord of Mālava” (Ep. Ind., I, p. 226).
the exigencies of the political situation, because the "Baũūra" or the Pratihāra potentates of Kanauj were the inveterate enemies of both the Rāṣṭrakūṭas and the Arabs. Thus Al Ma'sūdī, writing in H. 332 = 942-44 A.D., deposes: "This Baũūra, who is the king of Kanauj, is an enemy of Balhara, the king of India." Again, he says regarding the disposition of the forces of Kanauj: "The army of the north wars against the prince of Multan, and with the Musulmans, his subjects on the frontier. The army on the south fights against Balhara, king of Mankir", i.e., Mānyakhetā.¹ This friendship with the Arabs, no doubt, speaks well of the religious broadmindedness of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas, but at the same time it reflects their lack of political foresight.

Religious conditions

During the age of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas, Paurānic Hinduism, specially the worship of Višṇu and Siva, grew popular in the Dekkan. The Rāṣṭrakūṭa copper-plate grants begin with invocations to both these deities, and their seal is either Garuḍa, the vāhana (vehicle) of Viṣṇu, or Siva seated in an attitude of Yoga. We hear of the performance of Brahmanical sacrifices (for instance, Dantidurga celebrated the Hiranyagarbha at Ujjayini) and also of Tulādānas, i.e., gifts of gold equal to one's weight, by the Royalty. Temples were constructed to house images, which were daily worshipped with an elaborate ritual. Unhappily, however, excepting the rock-cut shrine of Siva at Ellorā—an architectural wonder—richly endowed by Kuśāṇa I, no other important monument of this period is extant. Besides Hinduism, other faiths also flourished. Jainism was patronised by Rāṣṭrakūṭa rulers like Amoghavāraṇa I

and Indra IV, and even Kriṣṇa II and Indra III are recorded to have honoured it. But Buddhism had definitely declined, and according to certain inscriptions of the time of Amoghavarṣa I its chief centre in the Deccan was Kanheri.¹

SECTION C

THE WESTERN CĀLUKYAS OF KALYĀṆA²

Tailapa's descent

According to later documents of the dynasty, Tailapa was a descendant of an unnamed uncle of Kiritivarman II, who was ousted by the Rāṣṭrakūṭas from the sovereignty of the Deccan. Thus, Tailapa had in his veins the blood of the Cālu/ayas of Vatsāpi. Sir Ramkrishna Bhandarkar, however, doubts the authenticity of this pedigree.³ He considers Tailapa to have sprung from "quite a collateral and unimportant branch" on the ground that the latter and his successors do not, like the earlier Cālu/ayas, claim Hariti to be their progenitor or represent themselves as belonging to the Mānavya gotra.

³ E. H. D., p. 136. Dr. Altekar leaves the question open (Rāṣṭrakūṭas and their Times, p. 128). See also Fleet's Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts, p. 41.
His Career.

Before his dramatic rise, Tailapa was presumably a feudatory of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas. ¹ He took advantage of the confusion following the sack of Mānyakheṭa by the Paramāra forces, and boldly attacked Karka II, who was either killed in the struggle or had to retire to some safer corner of the kingdom. This, no doubt, enhanced Tailapa's power and prestige, but the issues could not be finally decided until the suppression of Indra IV and other claimants to the Rāṣṭrakūṭa crown. They, too, were overthrown in the course of a few years, resulting in the revival of the Cālukya monarchy. Tailapa then conquered Lāṭa (southern Gujrat) and stationed Bārappa as governor there. Its occupation could not, however, be permanent, since the latter was driven away by Mūlarāja Cālukya of Anhilvāḍa. Tailapa also brought Kuntala or the Kanarese country under his authority, although the alleged victories over the Cedis and the Cōlas do not seem to be founded on fact. ²

His northern frontiers were constantly menaced by Vākpati-Muṇīja Paramāra, who, according to Merutunja, defeated Tailapa no less than six times. Whatever truth the story may contain, Vākpati-Muṇīja ultimately met with a tragic fate in this duel. It is said that, despite the remonstrances of his sagacious minister, he marched right into the enemy's territory across the Godāvari, and was captured and eventually beheaded.³ Thus

¹ Dr. Altekar suggests that, as a feudatory, Tailapa was probably "living somewhere in the northern portion of the state of Hyderabad" (Rāṣṭrakūṭas and their Times, p. 110). See, however, Arch. Surv. Ind. Rep., 1930-34, pp. 224, 247. We learn from a record of A.D. 965, found at Narasalgi in the Bāgavāḍi Tailuka, that Tailapa was an officer under Kṛṣṇa III. Earlier still, in Śaka 879-887 A.D., Tailapa was probably governing Tārdeyāḍi.

² Or, were they local skirmishes against minor Cedi and Cōla chiefs?

³ See Ante.
began the long drawn tussle between the Cālukyas and the Paramāras. Tailapa died in c. 997 A.D. after a reign of about twenty-four years.

C. 997 A.D. to 1042 A.D.

Tailapa was followed by his son, Satyāśraya. During his reign (c. 997 A.D.-1008 A.D.), the Cola hosts under Rājarāja I mercilessly carried death and destruction in the Cālukya kingdom. Satyāśraya, however, soon recovered from this terrific blow and even made some successful depredations in the south at the cost of the Colas. After him, his nephew Vikramādiya V ruled for a short time. The latter was defeated by Bhoja Paramāra, who attacked the Cālukyas to avenge the humiliation and assassination of Vākpati-Muñija. Having thus paid off all old scores, Bhoja formed plans for establishing his hegemony in the Dekkan, and with this end in view he astutely came to terms with powerful neighbours like Bhīma I of Anhilwāḍa and the Kalacuri king. But an inscription informs us that the ambitions of Bhoja were frustrated shortly before Saka 941=1019 A.D., when Vikramādiya V’s successor, Jayasimha II Jagadekamalla (c. 1016-1042 A.D.), routed him and broke “the confederacy of Mālava”. This Cālukya monarch is also represented to have gained an advantage over Rājendra Cola I, although Cola epigraphs testify to the contrary.1

2 Some scholars identify the vanquished Cālukya prince with Jayasimha II.
3 It is noteworthy that Gāṅgeyadeva Kalacuri is said to have achieved a victory over the king of Kuntala, who doubtless was a Cālukya ruler.
In 1042 A.D., Jayasimha II Jagadekamalla was succeeded by his son, Someśvara I, whose bīrudas were Āhavamalla and Trailokyamalla. His father had already consolidated the Cālukya power, and so Someśvara I found himself in a better position to wage wars with the Colaś and the Paramāras—the traditional enemies of his house. Taking advantage of Bhoja’s depleted resources on account of constant military activities, Someśvara invaded Mālava and ravaged Māndū and Dhārā. The Paramāra potentate, unable to resist fled towards Ujjain, which was also captured and plundered by the Cālukya forces. Subsequently Bhoja returned to the capital and reasserted his authority. Ominous clouds, however, again gathered fast, and Bhīma I of Anhilvāda (c. 1022-64 A.D.) and Laksmi-Karna Kalacuri (c. 1041-72 A.D.) combined against Bhoja and threatened his dominions on two sides. The latter died in the course of the struggle, and the confederates too fell out over the division of the spoils of victory. At this juncture, Jayasimha, who claimed the Paramāra crown after Bhoja, invoked the aid of his family’s former foe, Someśvara I. The response was prompt, for any disturbance in the political equilibrium of Central India was fraught with grave danger to the Cālukyas as well. Someśvara I soon drove the allied army of occupation out of Mālava and placed Jayasimha on its throne. Thus amid the shifting politics of the times, the relations between the Cālukyas and the Paramāras took a friendly turn, enabling Someśvara I to carry his arms further northward. But before we refer to these incursions, let us note how he fared with his antagonists in the south. The inscriptions of the Colaś represent that as a result of their operations the Cālukya monarch suffered considerable losses. Whatever the truth, the
battle of Koppam in 1052 A.D.,¹ in which Rājadhirāja I was killed, does not, at any rate, appear to have ended in favour of the Colas. Indeed, Bihāna, the famous author of the Vikramaṅkadevacarita, would have us believe that on one occasion Someśvara I even stormed Kānci, then an important seat of Cola power. In his wars he was ably assisted by his son, Vikramāditya (VI), a valiant youth. When Someśvara I became comparatively free from his southern pre-occupations, he turned his attention to the alluring Gangetic Doab, which was in a state of turmoil owing to the rapacity of successive invaders after the disintegration of the Pratihāra empire. His forces marched right across Central India unchecked by the Candelas and the Kacchapagātas, and the Yewur tablet² tells us that the king of Kāanyakūṭa, probably identical with one of the Rāṣṭrakūṭa princes ruling there during this period of confusion,³ being afraid of Someśvara I’s might “quickly experiences an abode among the caves.” This expedition of the Cālukyas and their continued progress eastward could not have been a matter of indifference to Lakṣmī-Karṇa Kalacuri, who seems to have exercised some sort of control over Mādhyadeśa in the hey-day of his glory.⁴ Accordingly, he tried to checkmate their advance, but all efforts were in vain and he sustained a defeat. Someśvara I’s energetic son Vikramāditya (VI) overran Mithilā, Magadhā, Āṅga,

¹ Koppam has been identified with Khidrāpur at the confluence of the Krīṣṇa and Pañca-gangā rivers, Ep. Ind., XII, pp. 286-98. For an account of the battle, see S. I. I., III, pp. 19, 65, 112, etc. Curiously, the Cālukya inscriptions of the time of Someśvara I do not give us any information regarding the battle of Koppam.
² Ind. Ant., VIII, p. 19.
³ Cf. कल्किनाजिविवादकािकों भजको न तथा कन्दरसानान्दकािकों वर्ण प्रतापसमन्नहोभौगृहतिभन्तिभन्तित।
⁴ History of Kanauj, pp. 289-90.
⁵ History of Kanauj, p. 295.
Vaṅga, and Gauda, meeting with little or no opposition from the decadent Pāla monarchy. Ratnapāla of Kāmarūpa, however, beat back the Cālukya army, which then returned home by way of southern Kosala. Thus under Someśvara I, the Cālukyas grew strong and their influence was felt in remote parts of India.

Someśvara I founded a new capital at Kalyāṇa (modern Kalyāṇī in the Nizām’s dominions) and made it a prosperous town. His death in 1068 A.D. came about in a strange manner. It is said that he got a malignant type of fever, and when he was past recovery he ceremoniously entered the waters of the Tuṅgabhadrā, chanting mantras, and drowned himself.¹

_Someśvara II Bhuvanaikamalla_

In 1068 A.D., Someśvara I Āhavamalla was succeeded by his eldest son, the Yuvarāja Someśvara II, otherwise called Bhuvanaikamalla. The accession was quite peaceful. His younger brother, Vikramāditya, to whom should go the credit for most of the military achievements of Āhavan Ila’s reign, was then engaged in campaigns against the Colas and the country of Vengi. Having received the sad tidings of his father’s death, Vikramāditya hurried to the capital and offered allegiance to the new sovereign. But, as we shall see below, not long after the relations between the two brothers became strained, and in consequence Someśvara II lost the throne. There is nothing to show that the latter attained any distinction; his only exploit during a rule of about eight years was a successful attack on Jayasimha of Mālava—a partisan of Vikramāditya.

¹ It is known as Jalasamādhī (E.H.P., p. 144, n. 36).
Vikramāditya VI Tribhuvanamalla—(A.D. 1076-1126 A.D.)

The Vikramānkadevacarita of Bilhana throws some interesting light on the circumstances which raised Vikramāditya or Vikramānka to kingly dignity. We are told that Somesvara II Bhuvanaikamalla was tyrannical and distrustful, and this led to discontent among the people and the alienation of Vikramāditya's sympathies. The latter thereupon got away from the capital with his followers and younger brother Jayasimha, and repaired towards the Tungabhadrī. Then passing through the land of Banavasi (North Kanagara), Vikramāditya brought his military talents into play and subdued the ruler of Konkan, Jayakesin by name, and other southern powers. Vikramāditya next tried conclusions with the Cola monarch, Vira-Rajendra, who not only came to terms with him but also gave him the hand of his daughter. This alliance involved Vikramāditya in fresh troubles, for when confusion broke out in the Cola realm after the death of Vira-Rajendra, he had to go post-haste to Kānche to help his brother-in-law. The latter's career was, however, cut short by Kuloṭtunga I (Rājīga) of Veṅgī, who, in order to ward off Vikramāditya's expected attack, appealed to Somesvara II for succour. Vikramāditya at once took up the gauntlet and worsted both the opponents. Somesvara II was captured and ultimately deposed. Thus, Vikramāditya VI assumed the reins of government at Kalyana in 1076 A.D., which is the initial year of the Cālukya-Vikrama era started by him.

Vikramāditya VI was doubtless the most striking personality in the dynasty. After becoming king he directed his energies more towards peace than military adventures. He promoted art and learning, and his

court attracted distinguished men from far and near. He was the patron of the celebrated Kashmiri writer, Bilhana, who immortalised his master’s exploits in the *Vikramāṅkadevacakita*, and also of Vijnānesvara, author of the *Mīlāksarā*—an authoritative treatise on Hindu law. It should not, however, be understood that Vikramāditya VI’s protracted reign of about half a century was marked by “victories of Peace” only; he had to unsheathe his sword time and again. Indeed, on reviving friendship with the Paramāras he soon got entangled into hostilities with the Cālukyas of Anhilwāda. Another storm Vikramāditya VI had to face was the revolt of his younger brother Jayasimha, whom he had appointed Viceroy of the Banavasi province. But despite Jayasimha’s intrigues and machinations, the uprising miscarried and was suppressed. Further, Vikramāditya VI curbed the inroads of the Cola king and of the Hoysala Vīṣṇuvardhana, who challenged the might of the Cālukya monarch towards the close of his career.

*Later Rulers*

Vikramāditya VI’s son and successor, Someśvara III Bhūlokamalla, ruled from A.D. 1126 to 1138 A.D. It is, of course, doubtful whether his alleged exploits deserve credence, but he certainly encouraged learning and himself wrote the *Mānasollāsa* dealing with topics of varied interest. Someśvara III’s son, Jagadekamalla II (c. A.D. 1138–1151 A.D.), appears to have been a figure of some note. Having checked the encroachments of the Hoysalas, Jagadekamalla II attacked Jayavarman Paramāra and wrested a portion of Mālava. This was followed by a clash with Kumārapāla of Anhilwāda, who could never tolerate Jagadekamalla II’s activities in Mālava. In the time of his brother, Nṛmaṇḍ Taila, the Western Cālukya kingdom suffered considerable diminution owing to the ambitions and treasonable
designs of his Kalacuri minister for war, Vijjala or Vijjana. With the assistance of some disgruntled feudatories, the latter drove away his sovereign southward and himself usurped the throne in 1157 A.D. The Western Cälukya power then remained in abeyance for almost a quarter of a century, but in 1182 A.D. Nurmadi Taila’s son, Vira Soma or Somešvara IV, recovered a part of his ancestral territories with Annigeri in the Dhărâḍa district as capital. He continued to flourish at least up to 1189 A.D., after which nothing is heard of him. Presumably, he met his doom while defending his reduced dominions on two fronts against the aggressions of the Yādavas of Devagiri and the Hoysalas of Dvărasamudra.

The Kālacuri Interregnum

As mentioned above, Vijjala or Vijjana subverted the Western Cälukya authority in 1157 A.D. and initiated a new line, which had a brief existence until 1182 A.D. He belonged to the Kālacuri race, and was at first a mahāmandalesvara and dāṇḍamāyaka under Nurmadi Taila. Vijjala gradually strengthened his position, and by 1162 A.D. he even assumed the Imperial titles. His reign has been made memorable by Bāsava, who, besides occupying the exalted office of chief minister, played an important role in the religious history of the period. The latter was the founder of a sect, and his followers, called Vira Saivas or Līṅgāyatatas, are still numerous in the Kanares country and Mysore. They are ardent devotees of Śiva in the līṅga form and of his vāhana (vehicle) Nandin, and do not recognise the sanctity or infallibility of the Vedas. They have their sacred works, one of them being the Bāsava-Purāṇa. They do not uphold the caste-system and have got other social and doctrinal differences with orthodox Hinduism. Bāsava’s creed spread rapidly, and the Jains specially began to lose ground. This was not
liked by Vijjala, who was probably an adherent of Jainism. Accordingly, their relations became strained, and it is said that in some strange manner Bāsava hastened or brought about the end of Vijjala. Whatever the truth, Vijjala’s son, Sovideva or Soma, tried to put down Bāsava and perhaps succeeded. The successors of Sovideva are mere names, and we hardly know anything about them. In 1182 A.D. Someśvara IV overthrew the last Kalacuri ruler, and thus the Western Cālukyas once more came into the limelight for a few years.

SECTION D

THE YĀDAVA RULERS OF DEVAGIRI

Origin and growth of power

The Yādavas are said to have descended from the race of Yadu, to which belonged the great Mahābhārata hero, Kṛiṣṇa. Unfortunately, their early history is obscure, but there can hardly be any doubt that they were a feudatory family when the Rāṣṭrakūtas of Mānyakheta and the Western Cālukyas of Kalyāṇa held sway in the Dekkan. After the decline of the latter, the Yādavas rose into prominence and in course of time established an extensive empire. The first noteworthy figure in the dynasty was Bhīllama V, who, taking advantage of the moribund condition of the Western Cālukya monarchy as a result of the Kalacuri usurpation and the aggressions of the Hoysalas, wrested in c. 1187 A.D. the territories to the north of the Kṛiṣṇā from the feeble hands of Someśvara IV. Bhīllama V fixed his capital at Devagiri, modern Daulatabād in the Hyderabad State, and also assumed the Imperial titles. His arms did not, however, progress much towards the south, for in or about the year 1191 A.D. he was

defeated, and perhaps slain, by Vira-Ballāla I Hoysala at the battle of Lakkundī (Dhārvāda district). Bhillama's successor was his son, Jaitugi or Jaitrapāla I (c. 1191-1210 A.D.), who killed Rudradeva, lord of the Tāḷaṅgas (Trikalingas), in a hard-fought contest, and placed the latter's nephew Ganapati on the Kākatiya throne. Thus, the Yādavas gradually extended their influence among their contemporaries.

Sīṅghana

Sīṅghana, son of Jaitugi I, was the most energetic personality in the Yādava line, and during his long rule from c. 1210 to 1247 A.D. he is represented to have conquered many lands. He routed Vīrabhoja about 1215 A.D. and annexed the Sīlāhāra realm of Kolhāpur after the fall of the fortress of Parnāla or Panhala. Further, Sīṅghana avenged his grandfather's discomfiture by pushing his authority beyond the Kṛiṣṇa at the cost of Vira-Ballāla II Hoysala. The Yādava ruler successfully tried conclusions with other opponents too, like Arjunavarman of Mālava and Jājalla, the Cedi chieftain of Chattisgarh; and attacked Gujarāt at least twice in the time of the Vaghela princes. In consequence of these military achievements of Sīṅghana, the Yādava kingdom grew to almost as imposing dimensions as that of the Western Cālukyas had done.

Sīṅghana's court was graced by Sārāṅgadharā, whose chief contribution to the literature of the day was an excellent work on music called the Sāṅgīta-Ratnākara. A commentary on it is extant, and there are grounds to believe that it was written by the king himself. Another distinguished protégé of Sīṅghana was Gāṅgadeva, the astronomer, who founded a college (matha) at Patna (Khāndesh district) for the study of Bhāskarā-

1 Or, was the commentary attributed to Sīṅghana by one of his literary protégés?
cārya’s Siddhānta-Siromani and other astronomical treatises.1

Later Yādava Kings

Śīṅghaṇa was succeeded by his grandson, Kṛiśṇa or Kanhara (c. 1247-60 A.D.). It appears that he, too, came into conflict with the rulers of Mālava, Gujarāt, and Konkan. Kṛiśṇa was a devout follower of the Brahmanical religion, and to his reign may be ascribed the Sāktimukta-valī, a collection of verses by Jalhāṇa, and Amalānanda’s Vedānta-Kalpataru—a Vedāntic commentary.

Kṛiśṇa was followed by his brother, Mahādeva (c. 1260-71 A.D.), who is recorded to have annexed northern Konkan from the Śilāhāras, “reduced the arrogant sovereigns of Karnāta and Lātā to mockery,” and overawed the Kākatiya queen, Rūdrāmbā. In the time of Mahādeva and Rāmacandra or Rāmarāja (c. 1271-1309 A.D.) flourished the great Brahman minister (maṇtrin) Hemādri or Hemādpant, well known for his writings on Hindu Dharmāśāstra. His most important work is the Caturvarga-Cintāmani, divided into four parts and an appendix. He is also said to have introduced a special form of temple architecture in the Dekkan, and perhaps invented, or made modifications in, the Modi script. We further learn that Rāmacandra was a patron of saint Jñāneśvara, who wrote a Marāṭhī commentary on the Bhagavad-Gītā in 1290 A.D.

Moslem invasions

It was during the reign of Rāmacandra that the Moslem army led by Alāūddin Khilji, then governor of Karrā, marched towards the south and suddenly invested Devagiri in 1294 A.D. Rāmacandra having

1 E.H.D., pp. 194-95.
retired to the fort, his son, Saṅkara, advanced to his relief. But all was in vain, and Rāmacandra had to conclude a humiliating treaty, by which he stipulated to pay to Alāuddin “600 maunds of pearls, two of jewels, 1,000 of silver, 4,000 pieces of silk and other precious articles”, besides ceding Ellichpur and promising an annual tribute to Delhi.¹ It was, however, not sent regularly, and so when Alāuddin seized the throne he despatched his trusted general, Malik Kāfūr, to Devagiri in 1307 A.D. Rāmacandra was taken prisoner² and brought to Delhi, but Alāuddin purchased his loyalty by releasing him. In 1309 A.D., Rāmacandra died and soon after his successor, Saṅkara, stopped payment of tribute to Delhi. This provoked reprisals, and in 1312 A.D. Malik Kāfūr defeated and killed Saṅkara. Thus the Yādava line came to an inglorious end. Subsequently, Rāmacandra’s son-in-law, Hanapāla, attempted to raise the standard of revolt against the Moslems; he was, however, crushed and barbarously flayed alive under the orders of Sultān Mubārak.

SECTION E

THE KĀKATĪYAS OF WARANGAL

Origin

The exact derivation of the name Kākatiya is uncertain. It has sometimes been connected with the word Kākata signifying ‘a crow’, or with the name of a local form of goddess Durg³ but these suggestions would hardly bear scrutiny. Nor is our information regarding the ancestry of the Kākatiyas more definite. Their mythical genealogy, which includes many names of Raghu’s family, indicates that they probably belong:

² Elliot, History of India, III, pp. 77, 200.
to the solar race of the Kṣatriyas. On the other hand, several inscriptions of the Nellore district distinctly state that the Kākatiyas were Śūdras.

Brief account

The Kākatiyas were at first feudatories of the Later Cālukyas, after whose decline they rose to power in Telengānā and exercised authority there, with various vicissitudes, until its conquest by the Bahmani Sultān, Ahmād Shah, about 1424-25 A.D. The earlier seat of Kākatiya government was Anmakonda (or Hanumakonda), but subsequently Warangal (or Orungallu) became their capital. The first prince to bring the family into prominence was Prolarāja, one of whose records is dated in the Cālukya-Vikrama Saṅvat 42 = 1117-18 A.D. He distinguished himself in warfare against the Western Cālukyas, and ruled for a long time. After the reigns of Rudra (acc. c. 1160 A.D.) and his younger brother, Mahādeva, the latter’s son, Gaṇapati, ascended the Kākatiya throne in 1199 A.D. He was the most mighty monarch of the line, and he continued to wield the sceptre for at least sixty-two years, as recorded in an inscription. He is represented to have successfully measured swords with the kings of Coḷa, Kālīṅga, Seuṇa (i.e., the Yādava ruler), Karnaṭa Lāṭa, and Vaḷaṇāḷa. Gaṇapati was able to win these achievements owing perhaps to the weakness of the Coḷa sovereign and the confused political situation in southern India in the second quarter of the 13th century. Being without a son, Gaṇapati was succeeded by his daughter, Rudrāmbā, in c. 1261 A.D. She ruled sagaciously, and it is said she assumed the male name of Rudradeva-Mahārāja. After a reign of nearly thirty years, Rudrāmbā was followed by her grandson, Pratāparudradeva, who has been immortalised by Vaidyanātha’s Pratāpara-nudṛīya—a work on poetics dedicated to him. Pratāparaudra was the last great king of the Kākatiya
dynasty, and he had to submit to the yoke of the Moslems during the destructive southern raid of Malik Kafur. Thenceforward the Kakatiyas began to sink into insignificance, and eventually their kingdom passed into the hands of the Bahmani Sultan of the Deccan. It is believed that scions of the family then migrated and founded the small principality of Bastar.

II

SECTION F

THE SILAHARAS

Origin

The Silaharas or Silaras claim to be the descendants of the mythical Jimūravāhana, king of the Vidyādharas, who, according to tradition, offered himself as an āhāra (food) to Garuda in place of a serpent. Whatever the value of the story, the Silaharas appear to have been Kṣatriyas.

History

There are three branches of the Silahara family known to history. Their original home was probably Tagara or Ter. They never became an Imperial power, having been subordinate to the Rāṣṭrakūtas, Čālukyas, or the Yādavas in turn. The oldest Silahara house ruled over south Konkan from the last quarter of the eighth century A.D. to about the second decade of the eleventh century A.D. Their seat of government was at Goa and later perhaps at Kharepatan. The second family held sway over northern Konkan for roughly four centuries and a half from the beginning of the ninth century A.D. Their territory included the Thānā and Ratnagiri dis-

1 Dr. Altekar, "The Silaharas of Western India" (Indian Culture, Vol. II, No. 3, pp. 395-434).
tricts and a part of the Sūrat district. Their chief town was Thānā, and Puri (western) was a sort of a secondary capital. The third Silāhāra branch established its authority about the commencement of the eleventh century A.D. in Kolhāpur and the districts of Satārā and Belgaum.¹ For a time, it was also master of southern Konkan. This family enjoyed more independence, and one of its kings, Vijayārka or Vijayā-
ditya, is said to have helped Vijjana or Bijjala in bringing about the downfall of the last Cālukya sovereign. The most notable monarch of the line was, however, Bhoja (r. 1175-1210 AD.), after whom the kingdom was conquered by Siṅghaṇa, the Yādava prince.

SECTION G

THE KADAMBAS²

Derivation

The Kadambas are described as Brahmins belonging to the Mānavya gotra,³ and their family name is, curiously enough, said to have been derived from a Kadamba tree, which stood in front of their house.

History

The exact circumstances of the foundation of the Kadamba power are obscure. A tradition avers that a Brahman adventurer named Mayūraśarman took up arms on account of some fancied insult he met with in Kāñcī, the Pallava capital,⁴ and established a principa-
lity in Karnataka with Banavasi as his seat of government. This happened about the middle of the fourth century A.D., when the Pallavas were menaced by the aggressions of Samudragupta in the south. The immediate successors of Mayuranarman were almost nonentities until we come to Kakusthavarman, during whose reign the Kadamba dominion and influence grew considerably. The next noteworthy Kadamba king was Ravivarman (first few decades of the sixth century A.D.); he made Halsi (Belgaum district) his capital, and successfully fought against the Ganges and the Pallavas. The rise of the Calkyas of Vatapi then dealt a severe blow to the ambitions of the Kadambas. Their northern territories were wrested by Pulakesin I, and Pulakesin II finally reduced them to subservience and insignificance. The Ganges also aggrandised themselves at the cost of the southern portion of the Kadamba kingdom. The family, however, did not wholly disappear, for Kadamba princes again emerged into prominence about the last quarter of the tenth century A.D. after the decline of the Rastakutas. These Kadamba branches ruled various parts of the Dekkan and Konkan till almost the close of the thirteenth century A.D., but their activities were of local interest only.

SECTION H

THE GANGES OF TALKAD

Descent

The origin of the Ganges is uncertain. It is said

Brahmans should be so much feebler than the Ksatriya" (Ibid., PP. 12, 14, 22, 11 and 12).

1 Hangal (Dharwada district) and Goa were the main centres of the Later Kadambas.

that they belonged to the lineage of Ikṣvāku, whereas other traditions connect them with the river Gaṅgā or with the sage Kaṇva.

Short account

The kingdom of the Gaṅgas comprised the greater part of Mysore and was called after them Gaṅgavādi. It was founded by Didiga (Konganivarman) and Mādhava some time in the fourth century A.D. At first, the capital was Kuluvala (Kolar?), but about the middle of the fifth century A.D., it was transferred to Talavanapura or Talkād on the Kāveri in the Mysore district by Harivarman. One of the notable early Gaṅga kings was Durviniṭa,¹ who distinguished himself in warfare with the Pallavas. He was also an author, a Sanskrit version of the Paisāci Brīhat-kathā and other works being attributed to him. Another great Gaṅga monarch was Śripuruṣa (c. 726-76 A.D.). He not only successfully contended against the rising power of the Raṅtrakūṭas, but even inflicted a crushing defeat on the Pallavas at Vilandi. During the eighth and ninth centuries A.D., the Gaṅgas were greatly harassed by the aggressive activities of the Eastern Cālukyas of Vēṇgi, the Raṅtrakūṭas of Malkhed and other neighbours. Indeed, the Gaṅga king, Sivamāra, was taken captive and his territories annexed by Dhruva Nirupama (c. 779-94 A.D.). In the confusion following the accession of Govinda III, Sivamāra attempted to recover his lost authority; he was, however, firmly put down and Gaṅgavādi remained under a Raṅtrakūṭa governor. The fortunes of the family were to some extent retrieved by Rājamalla (acc. c. 818 A.D.), but still the Raṅtrakūṭas continued to be a serious menace to the safety and

¹ Probably the second half of the sixth century A.D. According to Dubreuil, however, Durviniṭa’s date is c. 603-50 A.D. (see Ante).
integrity of the Gaṅga realm. Later on, the Gaṅgas became involved in fighting with the Coḷas, and by 1004 A.D. Takkad was captured and the Gaṅga sovereignty extirpated. The Gaṅga line did not, of course, become extinct, for history records the existence of Gaṅga chiefs as vassals of the Hoysalas and the Coḷas.

Many of the Gaṅga princes were inclined towards Jainism. Avinīta, for instance, was brought up under the care of Vijayakirti, and the former’s son, Durvinīra, was a patron of the famous Jain Ācārya, Pūjyapāda. Similarly, during the reign of Rājamalla IV (c. 977-85 A.D.), his minister and general Cāmundāriya, a devout Jain, erected in 983 A.D. the celebrated image of Goma-tešvara at Śravaṇabelgola.

Section I

The Hoysalas of Dvārasamudra

Name and Ancestry

The Hoysalas (Poysalas) described themselves in their records as “Yādavakulatilaka” or “Kṣatriyas of the lunar race.” Whatever the truth in this claim, the historical founder of the dynasty was a certain Śāla, who became noted for having struck and killed a tiger with an iron rod at the behest of a sage. It is said that this circumstance (Poy Śāla, i.e., strike, Śāla) gave to the family the name of Poysala or Hoysala.

Historical Survey

The Hoysalas emerge into prominence about the beginning of the eleventh century A.D. The early princes of this line exercised control over a small area in Mysore, and owed allegiance either to the Coḷa sovereigns or to the Later Cālukyas of Kalyāṇa. Gradually, Vinayādiriya (av. c. 1045 A.D.) and his son Ereyāṇga, who ably assisted the Cālukya overlord in
his campaigns, increased their power, but it was not until the time of Bittiga Viṣṇuvardhana (c. 1110-40 A.D.) that the Hoysalas attained a position of some importance in the politics of southern India. He transferred the capital from Velāpura (modern Belūr, Hasan district) to Dvārasamudra (Halebid), and made himself almost independent of his Cālukya suzerain, Vikramāditya VI, although Viṣṇuvardhana did not formally assume the Imperial titles. He is represented to have humbled the Colās, the Pāṇḍyas of Madurā, the people of Malabār, the Tuluvas of South Kanārā, the Kadambas of Goa, and even carried his arms towards the river Kṛṣṇā and Kāñci. Thus, Viṣṇuvardhana established his authority over an extensive territory, which included nearly the whole of Mysore and adjacent lands. In his beliefs he appears to have been originally a Jain, but after coming into contact with the celebrated Ācārya, Rāmānuja, Vaiṣṇavism got the chief place in Viṣṇuvardhana’s affections.

The next noteworthy ruler of the house was Viṣṇuvardhana’s grandson, Vīra-Ballāla I (c. 1172-1215 A.D.), who was the first to style himself Mahārāja-Ballāla. He signalised his reign by defeating Brahma, the general of Someśvara IV Cālukya, and also the forces of Bhillama V Yādava at the battle of Lakkundī (Dhārvaṇḍa district) in 1191 A.D. Vīra-Ballāla I’s son and successor, Vīra-Ballāla II or Narasimha II, however, met with some reverses at the hands of the Yādava Singhana, who extended his sway far beyond the Kṛṣṇā. Not much is known of the subsequent Hoysala kings except that they were busy fighting with the Colās and the Pāṇḍyas. The last Hoysala monarch was Vīra-Ballāla III. About 1310 A.D., his kingdom was ravaged by the Moslem hosts under Malik Kafūr, who, after plundering Devagiri, advanced against the Hoysala capital. It was sacked and the king fell a prisoner. When he was released after a brief captivity in
Delhi, Vira-Ballāla III made an attempt to organise resistance to the Moslem invaders. But nothing availed him, and the Hoysala line came to a tragic end about the fifth decade of the fourteenth century A.D.

The Hoysalas were great builders of temples, and the numerous monuments, still extant at Halebid and other places, testify to their artistic achievements and love of religion.
CHAPTER XVIII

THE STATES OF THE SOUTHERN PENINSULA

SECTION A

Survey of early history

Not much is known of the early history of Southern India, comprising roughly the peninsula to the south of the Tungabhadra and Krişna rivers. Its population chiefly consists of what are called the Pre-Dravidian and Dravidian races. Among the former are the Minavar, the Villavar, and other cognate tribes, who represent the earliest inhabitants of the land. The Dravidians, however, are believed to be “later immigrants.”¹ They had developed a higher culture, and their principal members, the Tamils, attained a dominant position in Southern India as to give its greater part the name Tamilakam² in ancient times. Then came the Aryans, and there are dim traditions of their southward movements reaching back to the age of the Vedic Rishi Agastya, who is said to have established Brahmanical settlements on the distant Podiyur hill (Tinnevelly district), besides those in the Dekkan. With the influx of the Aryans, an important and vigorous element was, no doubt, introduced into the body politic of the South, but beyond superimposing

² Writing about the middle of the second century A.D., Ptolemy has corrupted the name Tamilakam into Damirika or Limyrike.
their religion and to some extent their institutions, they could not essentially alter or modify the structure of Dravidian society, languages, and customs.

The traditional division of Southern India was into three kingdoms: (a) the Ceras or Keralas of the Malabar coast, occupying what are at present known as the States of Cochin and Travancore; (b) the Pāṇḍyas, whose territories included the modern districts of Madurā and Tīnevelly; (c) and the Coḷas, who ruled the tract to the north of the Pāṇḍya dominions up to the Pennar river along the east coast, called accordingly Coḷamandalam, from which is derived the English name Coromandel. The boundaries of these realms varied as their power waxed or waned in the course of their dynastic intrigues and internecine wars. There were also other petty principalities, too numerous to mention, but their chiefs maintained a precarious existence in constant dread of their stronger neighbours. It is noteworthy that none of the great southern kingdoms is referred to in Vedic literature, nor do they appear to have been known to the Sanskrit grammarian, Pāṇini.¹ But Kāryāyana, the celebrated commentator on the Āṣṭādhyāyī, whom Sir Ramkrishna Bhandarkar assigns to “the first half of the fourth century before Christ,”² was acquainted with both the Pāṇḍyas and the Coḷas. They are mentioned along with the Keralaputras (i.e., the Keralas) in the second Rock Edict of Aśoka also. Megasthenes, the Seleucid ambassador at the court of Candragupta Maurya, speaks of the Pāṇḍyan kingdom, its wealth, and the strength of its army; and the Arthāśāstra of Kauṭilya bears obvious evidence of familiarity with the South. Then, in the Rāmāyana an allusion is made to the

² Ibid., p. 15.
grandeur of Madurā, the Pāṇḍya capital. Next, Patañjali (circa 150 B.C.) knew Kāñci (Conjeeveram) and Kerala (Malabar); and the author of the Periplus (c. 81 A.D.) and the geographer Ptolemy (c. 140 A.D.) give some details regarding the principal ports and marts of the South. All these references doubtless indicate that the three kingdoms existed from a fairly remote antiquity.

The prosperity of Southern India was due to the fact that it produced spices, pepper, ginger, pearls, beryls, precious stones, and other articles of luxury, then in great demand among the peoples of the world. Thus, there grew up early a flourishing trade with western countries like Arabia, Chaldea, and Egypt, and also with the Far East and the Malay islands. We learn from the Bible that the "Ships of Tarshish" sent by Hiram, king of Tyre, brought for the temple constructed by the latter's mighty ally Solomon "ivory, apes, and peacocks" and "a great plenty of almug trees and precious stones" from Ophir (modern Sopārā in the Bombay Presidency). Some of these commodities must have come from the South, as the Hebrew word tuki-im for peacock appears to be connected with the Tamil term tokai. Ancient Egypt also imported muslin, cinnamon etc. from Southern India, and one remarkable relic of commercial relations between the two countries is the Oxyrhynchus Papyri, a Greek farce on papyrus containing the story of a Greek lady who was ship-wrecked somewhere on the Kanarese coast. Likewise, the Greeks got ginger, pepper, and rice, etc. from South India, as the Greek words for them seem to have been derived from Tamil names. About 43 A.D., Hippalus, an Alexandrian merchant, discovered the phenomenon of monsoons, which made it

1 See Rawlinson, India (1937), pp. 178-79.
   cf. Ivory, Skt. ibha-dunte, Hebrew šebḥin, Ape, Skt. kapi, Hebrew kaph.
possible for mariners to cross the Arabian Sea in a much shorter time than they could do by keeping close to the coast. This gave considerable fillip to trade between South India and the Roman Empire. Pliny informs us that Roman gold to the extent of over a million sterling flowed annually into India in return for spices, pepper, pearls, beryls, tortoise-shell, aromatics, silks, and other Oriental luxuries; and this estimate can hardly be regarded as an exaggeration, considering the large finds of Roman coins of the first two centuries A.D. at several places in Southern India. To further their trade, Roman merchants are said to have established settlements at certain ports like Kaveripaddanam (Puhar) and Muziris (Cranganore), where they even built a temple of Augustus.¹ Tamil writers also speak of “Yavana” ships visiting their ports with wine, vases, and gold, which were exchanged for the products of South India. Indeed, we are told that Dravidian rulers sometimes employed as their bodyguards “powerful Yavanas, dumb Mitcchar,”² clad in long coats and armour³—so impressed were they by the smartness, prowess, and constancy of these foreigners. Thus, South India was early brought into contact with the outer world, and her people grew mighty and prosperous by their maritime and commercial activities.

SECTION B

THE PALLAVAS OF KÂNCI³

Who were the Pallavas?

The origin of the Pallavas is one of the most vexed

¹ Smith, E.H.I., 4th ed., pp. 462, 463, note 1. Other important trading towns in Tamilakam were Korkai, Tonli, Bakai, Kayal, etc.
² They are so described because their language being unintelligible they could express themselves only by gestures.
³ R. Gopalan, History of the Pallavas of Kâñci, Madras, 1928;
problems of ancient Indian history. They find no place among the traditional three powers of Southern India, which, as mentioned above, are the Ceras, Pandyas, and the Cojas. Accordingly, some scholars think that the Pallavas were foreign intruders, probably a branch of the Pahlavas or Parthians of North-western India. Apart from superficial similarity in names, there is, however, no evidence of any Pahlava migration into Southern India except perhaps into the Dekkan. Another theory is that the Pallavas were autochthons of the land, associated or allied with the Kurumbas, Kallars, Maravars, and other “predatory” tribes. After welding them, the Pallavas are believed to have emerged as a mighty political force. But Mr. M. C. Rasanyagam holds that the Pallavas were of Coja-Naga extraction, and belonged to the southern extremity of the peninsula and Ceylon. It is said that as a result of the liaison between Killivalavan Coja and a Naga princess, Pillivalai, daughter of king Valaivanan of Manipallavan (an island near the coast of Ceylon), a son was born to them named Iram-Tiraiyan, who was made ruler of Tondamandalum by his father, and the dynasty thus founded came to be called after the name of the mother’s native-place. Next, we may refer to the view put forward by Dr. Krishnaswami Aiyangar that the Pallavas were known in the Sangam literature as Tondaiyar, and they were descended from the Naga chieftains, who were vassals of the Satavahana sovereigns. On the other hand, Dr. K. P. Jayaswal was of opinion that the Pallavas were “neither foreign-


1 See R. Gopalakrishnaswami Aiyangar that the Pallavas were known in the Sangam literature as Tondaiyar, and they were descended from the Naga chieftains, who were vassals of the Satavahana sovereigns. On the other hand, Dr. K. P. Jayaswal was of opinion that the Pallavas were “neither foreign-

This book has been very useful to me.

---

ers nor Dravidians, but good Brahmin aristocrats from the North, military by profession”, and that they were an offshoot of the Vâkâtakas. The suggestion regarding the northern affinities or affiliations of the Pallavas has probably some substance; for it is significant that their earliest charters are in Prâkrit, and that they were also patrons of Sanskrit learning and culture. But their Brahmanical pedigree, despite certain traditions of their connections with Dronâcârya and Aśvatthâman, does not appear to be based on fact. Indeed, in the Talagunda inscription the Kadamba Mayûrasâman deplores the influence over Kânci of the “Pallava Ksatriya,” which expression doubtless indicates the Ksatriya stock of the Pallavas.1

Beginnings of Pallava power

The earliest sources of Pallava history are three copper plate charters, in Prâkrit, assigned on paleographical grounds to the “third and fourth centuries of the Christian era.” They mention a set of rulers named Bappadeva, Sivaskandavarman, Buddhya (ânkur, and Viravarman. Whether Bappadeva was the actual founder of the Pallava power or not, there are reasons to believe that he held sway over the Telugu Andhrapatha and the Tamil Tondamandalâri; the headquarters of the two regions were respectively Dhânyakaṭa (Dharanîköṭṭa, near Amarâvati) and

1 Ep. Ind., VIII, pp. 32, 34, v. 11, 1, 4. cf. sva Pallavas sammâ bhnâtah ca Kâñcatàrîkatåhet, râjasthâna pradhanah dwâra bhavan dhârakoṣṭha. Dhanapala. See also C. Minâkshi, Administration and Social Life under the Pallavas, p. 13.
2 (a) Mayidavolu (Guntur district) plates; (b) Hiraçidâllâ plates and (c) Queen Čâruḍevi’s grant found in the Guntur district.
3 R. Gopalâ, History of the Pallavas of Kâñcî, p. 32. I owe many suggestions and references to this book.
Kāñci (modern Conjeeveram). His son, Sivaskandavarman, designated Dharmanahärāja, appears to have extended the kingdom, perhaps southward, for, unless justified by successful warfare, he would not have performed the Asvamedha, Vajapeya, and Agnistoma sacrifices. We learn from the Hiraḥadgalli (Bellar) district plates recording his gift of a village in the Sātāhāna-rāṣṭra that southern Dekkan, at any rate, acknowledged his authority. Probably he was also called Viṣaya-Skandavarman, but this identification is doubted by some scholars. Another important figure in early Pallava annals is Viṣṇugopa, who is mentioned in the Allahabad pillar inscription as king of Kānci. Being thus a contemporary of Āramaḍragupta when he invaded the Dakṣināpatha, Viṣṇugopa may be said to have flourished about the second quarter of the fourth century A.D. Unfortunately, his precise place in Pallava genealogy, or his relation with the monarchs of the Prakrit charters, is uncertain. Assuming, however, that they were his immediate predecessors, it may not be wide of the mark to date the rise of the Pallavas about the middle of the third century A.D.—the period which saw the dissolution of the Sātavāhana empire.

Pallavas of the Sanskrit Charters

Six sets of copper-plates, inscribed in Sanskrit, reveal the names of a number of Pallava princes—some mere Yvamahārājas and more than a dozen of them kings who ruled roughly from the middle of the fourth to the last quarter of the sixth century A.D. These epigraphs give the regnal year of the donor, and are not dated in any known era, but on palaeographical considerations they have been rightly ascribed to the fifth and sixth centuries A.D. Their object is merely to record gifts of land to pious Brahmans and shrines, and they
throw little light on political events. It is not at all clear whether the sovereigns of the Prākrit and Sanskrit grants belonged to different branches or were directly connected, and even the chronology and order of succession of the latter group are "far from settled." Nor do we get any definite information regarding the limits of their territory, or the founder of the line. Of course, this much we know that Virakurca or Virakurcavarman was the first to come into prominence after his marriage with a Nāga princess. Another noteworthy point about these Sanskrit charters is that they were issued from royal camps. Accordingly, it has been argued that Kānci had slipped from the grips of the Pallavas, presumably owing to a Coḷa incursion in the days of Karikāla, and they had to retire to the Nellore district.¹ The Velūrpāḷayam plate inscription² is even supposed to testify that the re-capture of Kānci took place in the time of king Kumāraviṣṇu. The theory of a Coḷa interregnum is, however, open to objections; for, chronological difficulties apart, it is significant that the records of the Pallavas themselves nowhere give any indication of their loss of Kānci.

The Great Pallavas

With the last quarter of the sixth century A.D., we enter upon the most glorious epoch of Pallava history, and happily the materials, too, at our disposal yield us comparatively more data. A new Pallava dynasty was then founded by Simhaviṣṇu, also known as Simhaviṣṇupottarāyan and Avanisimha. He extended his sway up to the Kāveri at the cost of the Coḷas, and is further said to have defeated the Pāṇdyas, Kaḷabhras, and the Mālavas (people of Malanāḍu?) in the course of his

² S.I.I., II, pp. 303 f.
southern expeditions. He was probably a devotee of Viṣṇu.

Mahendravarman I

Simhaviṣṇu was succeeded by his son, Mahendravarman I or Mahendra-Vikrama, about the beginning of the seventh century A.D. A few years after his accession there began a deadly and long-drawn struggle between the Pallavas and the Cālukyas for supremacy in the South. Pulakesin II claims in the Athole inscription\(^1\) to have vanquished “the lord of the Pallavas who had opposed the rise of his power” and made him “conceal his valour behind the ramparts of Kāṇci-pura, enveloped in the dust of his armies.” Pulakesin II wrested from his opponent the province of Vennai, which was put in charge of his younger brother, Kubja-Viṣṇuvardhana-Viṣamasiddhi. As shown elsewhere, the latter’s successors, designated the Eastern Cālukyas of Vennai, subsequently became independent of the Imperial house of Vatapi (Bādāmi). The Kasakkudi plates,\(^2\) on the other hand, depose that Mahendravarman I was victorious at Pullalur (modern Pallur, Chingleput district). Although the enemy is not named, it is likely we have got a reference here to the Pallava monarch’s success in driving back his Cālukya adversary when he attempted a thrust on Kāṇci itself.

Mahendravarman I originally professed Jainism, and was not well disposed towards other faiths. But about the middle of his reign, or earlier still, he abjured Jainism and turned a staunch Śaiva through the influence of Saint Appar. After Mahendravarman I’s conversion, the Jains fell into disfavour, and Saivism markedly

\(^1\) Ep. Ind., VI, pp. 6, 11, v. 29. cf. शास्त्रांकामातर्थस्यवल्लभाय श्रवणनवार्षकायाम्रपरं परस्मर्षणकारा।

revived and spread owing to the missionary activities of Saints Appar and Tirumāna-Sambandar. Mahendravarman I appears to have been tolerant of other forms of Brahmanism. It is said that he constructed a rock temple in honour of Viṣṇu on the bank of a tank, called after him, in Mahendravādi (North Arcot district). The Mandagappattu inscription further informs us that Mahendravarman I dedicated a shrine to Brahmā, Iśvara, and Viṣṇu, and that it was built without bricks, mortar, metal, and timber. Thus, Mahendravarman I introduced into Southern India the practice of hewing temples out of solid rocks. Indeed, one of his many birūdas or epithets was Cettukārī or Caitya-kārī, i.e., the builder of Caityas or temples. They were distinguished by certain peculiarities, specially cubical pillars. These rock-cut temples have been discovered at various places, such as Dalavanur (South Arcot district), Pallavaram, Sīya-māngalar, Vallam (Chingleput district).

Mahendravarman I also gave a fillip to the arts of painting, dancing, and music; and the musical inscription at Kuḍumiyamalai in Pudukotta State is believed to have been incised at his instance. Besides, he is the reputed author of the Mattavilāsa-prabha-sana, a burlesque, which affords an interesting glimpse into the revelries and religious life of the Kāpālikas, Pāsupatas, Sākyabhikṣus, and other sects.

Narasimhavarman I

After the death of Mahendravarman I, his son Narasimhavarman I ascended the Pallava throne about the beginning of the second quarter of the seventh century A.D. He is one of the most striking personalities among the Pallava potentates. According to the

2 Ibid., XVII, pp. 14-17.
3 See History of the Pallavas of Kāṇeś, p. 90.
Kurram plates, he successfully repulsed the onslaughts of Pulakeśin II Cālukya, who is said to have advanced almost up to the gates of Kānci. Not content with this achievement, Narasimhavarman I despatched a strong force under the command of his general, Siru Tonda, nicknamed Paranjoti, against Vatapi (Bādāmi). It was stormed in 642 A.D., and Pulakeśin II appears to have been killed while heroically defending his capital. For the next thirteen years Cālukya authority remained in abeyance, and Narasimhavarman I assumed the title of Vatapi-Konda in commemoration of this great victory. Another epithet of his was Mahāmalla, which occurs in a fragmentary epigraph, discovered at Vatapi, and written in letters of about the middle of the seventh century A.D. Further, we learn that he sent two naval expeditions to Ceylon in support of Mānavaṃma, a claimant to its throne, who as a refugee at the court of Narasimhavarman I had rendered him loyal service. The first could not achieve any permanent results, and so the Pallava ships had again to set sail from the port of Mahābalipuram. This time Mānavamman’s position became secure, and the invasion created such a profound impression on popular mind that it was long remembered like Śrī Rāmacandra’s conquest of Lankā. Narasimhavarman I not only distinguished himself in warfare; he was also noted for his architectural activities. He is credited with the construction of several rock-cut temples in the Trichinopoly district and Pudukkotta. Their general plan is almost similar to those excavated by Mahendravarman I except that the façades are more ornamental and the pillars, too, look more proportionate and elegant. Narasimhavarman I Mahāmalla founded, and called after his name, the town of Mahābalipuram or Mahāmalla-

purāṇī, which he beautified by shrines like the Dharma-
rāja Ratha belonging to the group now known as the
Seven Pagodas.

In Narasimhavarman I’s reign, the celebrated
Chinese pilgrim, Yuan Chwang, visited Kāñcī about the
year 642 A.D. and stayed there for some time. According
to him, the country, of which Kūn-chi-pu-lo (Kāñcī-
pura) was the capital, was known as Ta-lo-pi-ch’ē
(Dravīḍa). It was 6,000 li in circuit. “The soil is fertile
and regularly cultivated, and produces abundance of
grain. There are also many flowers and fruits. It
produces precious gems and other articles. The climate
is hot, the character of the people courageous. They
are deeply attached to the principles of honesty and
truth, and highly esteem learning; in respect of their
language and written characters, they differ but little
from those of Mid-India. There are some hundred
of Sanghārāmas and 10,000 priests. They all study
the teaching of the Sthavira (Chang-iso-pu) school belonging
to the Great Vehicle. There are some eighty Deva
temples, and many heretics called Nirgranthas.”1 Yuan
Chwang says that the Tathāgata often came to this
country to preach the Law, and Aśoka raised stūpas
here to commemorate sacred sites. The pilgrim further
informs us that the famous Buddhist teacher, Dharma-
pāla, hailed from Kāñcīpura.

Paramēśvaravarman I

After the brief and uneventful reign of Mahendra-
varman II, who succeeded his father Narasimhavarman
I about 635 A.D., Paramēśvaravarman I acceded to the
throne. During his time the old enmity between the
Pallavas and the Cālukyas revived, and, as usual, both
sides claim victories for themselves. It is stated in the

1 Beal, Buddhist Records of the Western World, Vol. II, pp. 228-
29.
Gadval plates\(^1\) that Vikramāditya I Cālukya captured Kāñcī, laid low the line of Mahāmalla,\(^2\) and carried his arms up to Uragapura (Uraiyur, near Trichinopoly) on the river Kāverī. The Pallava records, on the contrary, represent Parameśvaravarman I as having put to flight, at the battle of Peruvālanallur in the Lalguḍi Tāluk of the Trichinopoly district, the army of Vikramāditya I, who had “only a rag” left for covering himself. The evidence being conflicting, it may be reasonably presumed that neither of the antagonists was able to have a decided advantage over the other. Parameśvaravarman I was a devotee of Śiva, and he built a number of temples in his realm in honour of that deity.

Narasimhavarman II

About the last decade of the seventh century A.D. Parameśvaravarman I died, and the sceptre passed on to his son, Narasimhavarman II Rājasimhā. His reign was marked by peace and prosperity, and his chief title to fame is the building of the well-known Kailāśanātha or Rājasimhesvara temple. The Airāvatesvara at Kāñcī and the so-called Shore temple at Mahāballipuram have also been attributed to him. Narasimhavarman II was a patron of men of letters, and it is believed that the great rhetorician Dāṇḍin flourished at his court.

Narasimhavarman II was succeeded by Parameśvaravarman II, about whom we do not get much information from the sources available.

---

\(^1\) Ep. Ind., X, pp. 100-6.
\(^2\) Ibid., pp. 103, 105, v. 4. cf. राजवल्लभे मिहितमाहालस-
NANDIVARMAN: HIS SUCCESSORS

Nandivarman and his successors

When Paramesvaravarman II died about the second decade of the eighth century A.D., the kingdom was involved in civil war, each claimant making a bid for the throne. It appears from the testimony of the Kasakkuḍi plates and the sculptural representations inside the Vaikunṭhapetram temple at Kāñci that the people eventually chose as king a popular prince named Nandivarman, son of Hiranayavarman, who was a descendant of a brother of Simhasatnu. During the reign of Nandivarman there was a renewal of the Pallava-Calukya animosity. It is said that Vikramādiya II Calukya invaded the Pallava territories shortly after coming to the throne in A.D. 733, and took their capital Kāñci. Nandivarman, however, soon recovered the lost ground, and drove away the enemy. The Pallava monarch had also to contend against other powers, specially of the South, like the Dramilas (Tamils), the Pāṇḍyas, and a Gaṅga chief, who may be identified with Sripuruṣa (c. 726-76 A.D.). In his wars Nandivarman was ably assisted by his general Udayacandra. Further, it is alleged that Nandivarman suffered a reverse at the hands of Dantidurga, a prince of the Rāṣṭrakūṭa dynasty, which supplanted the Calukyas of Vatapi (Bādāmi) in the Dekkan about the middle of the eighth century A.D.

Nandivarman ruled for at least sixty-five years according to an inscription discovered at the Ādivarāha temple at Mahābalipuram. He bore the epithet Pallavamalla, and was a Vaiṣṇava by faith. He is credited with having built a number of religious edifices.

Nandivarman's successor was Dantivarman, his son by queen Revā, probably a Rāṣṭrakūṭa princess. It is believed that she was the daughter of Dantidurga, who, after the cessation of warlike relations with Nandivarman Pallavamalla, married her to him. But in spite of this alliance, Govinda III is recorded to have attacked Kāñci about the year 804 A.D., and vanquished
its ruler Dantiga (Dantivarman). The latter, whose reign lasted a little over half a century from *circa* 776 to 828 A.D., also measured swords with the Pāṇḍyas—the traditional opponents of his house. So did his successors, Nandi (c. 828-51 A.D.) and Nripa-tuṅgavarman (c. 851-76 A.D.). The last important sovereign of the line was Aparājitavarman (c. 876-95 A.D.), who, having allied himself with the Gaṅga prince, Prithvipati I, inflicted a crushing defeat about 880 A.D. on the Pāṇḍya monarch, Varaguna II, in the battle of Sṛl Puṛambīyam near Kumbhakonam. These conflicts went on until the Pallava power received its death-blow by the arms of the Coḷa king, Ādiya I, who overwhelmed Aparājitavarman and annexed Tondāmanda-laḷaḷa. Thus, the once mighty Pallava kingdom ceased to exist as a factor in the politics of the South. Some other minor princes are, no doubt, known from inscriptions, but their position in the Pallava genealogy is uncertain.

Administration

In the course of their rule for about seven centuries, the Pallavas left an indelible impress on the administration, religion, literature, and art of the Tamil country. Let us now consider each of these aspects in brief:

At the head of the government was the king, called in inscriptions Mahārāja and Dharmamahārāja. He was assisted by a body of ministers or councillors (*rahuvar-dikadas*) in the disposal of state business, and his orders were drawn up by his private secretary. As in the Maurya and Gupta administrations, there was a regular hierarchy of officials, civil and military. Thus, in a Pallava inscription the king is said to have sent greetings to the princes (*rājakumāra*), rulers of district (*raṣṭra*), chief *Madambus* (customs officers), local prefects (*dēśā-
dhikata), the free-holders of the various villages (gāma-gāmabhujaka) ministers (amuccha), guards (arākbadikata), gāmikas (captains, or forest-officers?), divikas (messengers?), spies (sanjarantakas), and warriors (bhadamanusas). The territory of the empire was divided into provinces (rāstras or mandalas), which were governed by princes of the blood royal or by scions of noble and distinguished families. Other smaller divisions were kottoms and rādus having their own officers. Regarding the organisation of the village (gāma or gāma), which was the lowest and most important unit of administration, we do not get much information from the early Pallava records, but during the time of the later Pallavas the village Sabhā with the various committees for the management and upkeep of gardens, temples, public baths, tanks, etc., so characteristic of rural life under the Colas, appears to have existed. Besides, the Sabhā exercised judicial functions and acted as the trustee of public endowments. There was an efficient system of irrigation and land-survey. The village boundaries were properly marked, and full details of arable and fallow lands were collected for revenue purposes as well as for making grants to pious and learned Brahmans. Taxation was elaborate, and we are told that the king laid claim to eighteen kinds of dues (aśṭādaśaparakharas) from the village people. Some idea of these exactions may be had from the exemptions enumerated in inscriptions. For instance, the Hirahadagalli plates refer to the immunity granted from the taking of sweet and sour milk and sugar...from taxes...forced labour......grass and wood......vegetables and flowers, etc. The Tandantottam plates also give freedom from the following taxes: duty on oil-press and looms, uvanjakali, the fee on marriages, urți fee on potters, ṭaṭṭukógram, duty on toddy-drawers and shepherds, fee on stalls, brokerage fee, tirumugakkanām, royalty paid for the manufacture of salt, the good cow, the good bull,
vattinālī, fee on baskets of grain exposed for sale in the market, areca-nuts exposed for sale in the shops, etc. Thus, the resources of the people were fully tapped and harnessed in the interests of administration, which was well organised.

**Literature**

During the rule of the Pallavas there was considerable literary activity, and Sanskrit enjoyed royal patronage. Barring a few, all the early Pallava inscriptions are in that language, and even in the later ones, where Tamil is used, the prākṣasti portions are in Sanskrit of a high order. Kāñci, the capital, seems to have been a recognised centre of learning and culture from quite early times. Hither came the famous Buddhist dialectician, Dignāga, to satisfy his intellectual and spiritual thirst, and about the middle of the fourth century A.D. the Brahman Mayūraśarman, who founded the Kadambaline, is said to have completed his Vedic studies here. The Vedic colleges were then located in temples endowed by the rich and the devout. Further, Simhaviśṇu (last quarter of the sixth century) is represented as having invited the great poet, Bhāravi, to his court, and it is believed that Dāndin, the celebrated writer on poetics, lived in the reign of Narasimhavarman II Rājasimha (end of the seventh century A.D.). Among other contemporaries of Dāndin, we may mention Mātridatta. One of the Pallava kings, Mahendravarman I, was himself probably an author of repute. To him has been attributed a burlesque named the Mattavilāśa-prāhasana. Some scholars are also of opinion that "the Sanskrit plays published recently in Trivandrum as Bhāsa's were abrid-

district) represent a new style initiated in South India by Mahendravarman I. They are excavated out of solid rocks, and are distinguished by circular śīlās, peculiar forms of dvārapālas, prabhātoras, and cubical pillars. To the second stage belong the temples constructed by Narasimhavarman I Mahāmalla. His earlier shrines at Pudukotta and Trichinopoly district are rock-cut like those of Mahendravarman I except that they have more ornamental façades and pillars of better proportions. Subsequently, Narasimhavarman I Mahāmalla built Raśhas as the Dharmarāja, carved from a single granite boulder, at Mahābalipuram. Then followed the structural temples of brick and stone, or of both, with lofty towers rising in tiers. The best specimens of these are the Kailāsānātha at Kāṇe and the so-called Shore temple of the Seven Pagodas group. One noteworthy feature of some shrines is that they are adorned by beautiful life-like images of Pallava kings and queens. The evolution and development of Pallava architecture continued until the rise of a new style called after the great Čolas.

SECTION C
THE COḷAS

Derivation

The name Coḷa has sometimes been taken to mean ‘hoverer’ from the Tamil root ‘cūḷ’ (to hover), whereas others connect it with Sanskrit ‘cora’ (thief) or Tamil ‘colam’ (millet), or with the word ‘Kōla’, which “in the early days designated the dark-coloured pre-Aryan population of Southern India in general.” Whatever the value of these suggestions regarding the origin

¹ History of the Pallavas of Kāṇe, p. 92.
² K. A. Nilakanta Sāstri, The Coḷas, p. 24. I have studied both the volumes with great profit.
81 A.D.) and the Geography of Ptolemy (circa middle of the second century A.D.) further give us some information regarding the Cola country and its inland towns and ports. Then the Sangam literature, assigned with a good deal of plausibility to "the first few centuries of the Christian Era," testifies to the rule of several Cola princes, some of whom appear to be mere legendary models of charity and justice. Others, however, may probably be historical figures, although any attempt to settle their chronology and order of succession is baffling in the extreme. One of them was Karikāla, son of Ilanjeṭcenni. It is said that the Cola kingdom gained greatly both in territory and in influence under him, his most notable achievement being the defeat of the Pāṇḍya and the Cera kings and a number of minor chieftains, allied with them, in the battle of Venni (Kovil-Venni, near Tanjore). Passing down the stream of time, we come to Perunarkilli, alleged to have celebrated the Rājasthāna; and Koccenganan, who, like Karikāla, is the subject of many a legend. About the third or fourth century A.D. the Colas suffered an eclipse owing to the rise of the Pallavas and the aggressions of the Pāṇḍyas and the Ceras. Of course, the Colas continued to exist, but for the next few centuries they were of no consequence, bowing low before almost every blast. Towards the close of the fourth decade of the seventh century A.D. we are told by Yuan Chwang that "the country of Chu-li-yê (Cūlya or Cola) is about 2400 or 2500 li in circuit, and the capital is about 10 li round. It is deserted and wild, a succession of marshes and jungle. The population is very small, and troops and brigands go through the country openly. The climate is hot; the manners of the people dissolute and cruel. The disposition of men is naturally fierce; they are attached to heretical teaching. The Sanghāramas are ruined and dirty as well as the priests. There are some tens of Deva temples, and many
of the name, there is hardly any doubt that, like the Pāṇḍyas and the Ceras, the Coḷas were indigenous to the South, although in later literature and inscriptions they are ascribed a mythical descent from the Sun.¹

Their territory and towns

The traditional Coḷa-mandalam or the kingdom of the Coḷas lay north and south between the two rivers, Pennar and Vellaru (Vellar), and roughly comprised the modern districts of Tanjore and Trichinopoly and a portion of the Pudukotta State. These limits considerably varied as the power of the Coḷas developed or declined in the course of dynastic conflicts. Among the capitals, we know of Uragapura (Uraiyur, near Trichinopoly), Tanjuvur (Tanjore), and Gangaikonda-Coḷapuram; and their most important port was Kaḷeri-paddanam (Puhār), situated at the mouth of the Kaḷeri river (northern branch), from where the Coḷas carried on a brisk trade with the outside world.

Early history

The Coḷas or Coḷas, as rulers, are known to have existed from remote antiquity. They have been mentioned by the grammatician, Kātyāyana (circa 4th century B.C.), and in the Mahābhārata. According to II and XIII Rock Edicts of Aśoka, which are the earliest historical documents to refer to the Coḷas, they were a friendly power in the South beyond the pale of Mauryan suzerainty. Next, the Mahāpanha throws some light on the relations between Coḷa-rattha and Ceylon, for we learn that about the middle of the second century B.C. a Coḷa named Elāra conquered the island and ruled there for a fairly long period. The Periplus (circa

¹ Ibid., p. 48. In some inscriptions an eponymous Coḷa also finds mention (see Ibid., p. 149).
Religion

According to Yuan Chwang, the country, whose capital was Kāñcīpura, had "some hundred of Saṅghā-
rāmas and 10,000 priests. They all study the teaching
of the Sthavira (Chung-tso-pu) school belonging to the
Great Vehicle." He further deposes that Dharmapāla, the well-known Buddhist teacher, hailed from
Kāñcīpura. Thus, Buddhism was not decadent in the
Pallava kingdom; indeed, some of the early princes of
the family were votaries of this faith. Similarly, Yuan
Chwang refers to the existence of "many Nirgranthas."
Mahendravarman I was himself originally a Jain, and
he turned a Saiva through the influence of Saint Appar.
The latter and Tirujñāna-Sambandar zealously carried
on their missionary activities in the South with the re-
sult that Buddhism and Jainism declined, and there
was a marked revival of Saivism. Many of the Pallava
monarchs were profound devotees of the god Siva.
But they were also tolerant of Vaiṣṇavism, which flourished
because of the efforts of the Aṭīvars (Vaiṣṇava saints).

Art

The religious revival of the period gave an immense
impetus to the architectural activities of the Pallava
princes. Their edifices are doubtless among the noblest
monuments in South India. We see in them three
or four distinct types. Those found at Dalavanur
(South Arcot district), Pallavaram, Vallalām (Chingleput

1 R. Gopalan, History of the Pallavas of Kāñcī, p. 119.
2 See Ante.
81 A.D.) and the Geography of Ptolemy (circa middle of the second century A.D.) further give us some information regarding the Cola country and its inland towns and ports. Then the Sangam literature, assigned with a good deal of plausibility to "the first few centuries of the Christian Era," testifies to the rule of several Cola princes, some of whom appear to be mere legendary models of charity and justice. Others, however, may probably be historical figures, although any attempt to settle their chronology and order of succession is baffling in the extreme. One of them was Karikāla, son of Ijarjeṭṭenni. It is said that the Cola kingdom gained greatly both in territory and in influence under him, his most notable achievement being the defeat of the Pāṇḍya and the Cera kings and a number of minor chieftains, allied with them, in the battle of Venni (Kovil-Venni, near Tanjore). Passing down the stream of time, we come to Perunarkillī, alleged to have celebrated the Rañjatiya, and Koccenganan, who, like Karikāla, is the subject of many a legend. About the third or fourth century A.D. the Colas suffered an eclipse owing to the rise of the Pallavas and the aggressions of the Pāṇḍyas and the Cerās. Of course, the Colas continued to exist, but for the next few centuries they were of no consequence, bowing low before almost every blast. Towards the close of the fourth decade of the seventh century A.D. we are told by Yuan Chwang that "the country of Chu-li-ye (Cūlya or Cola) is about 2400 or 2500 li in circuit, and the capital is about 10 li round. It is deserted and wild, a succession of marshes and jungle. The population is very small, and troops and brigands go through the country openly. The climate is hot; the manners of the people dissolute and cruel. The disposition of men is naturally fierce; they are attached to heretical teaching. The Sangharāmas are ruined and dirty as well as the priests. There are some tens of Deva temples, and many
Nirgranthha heretics.”1 The country, thus described by the Chinese pilgrim, corresponds, according to Dr. Vincent Smith, with “a portion of the Ceded districts, and more specially with the Cuddapah district.”2 Whether one agrees with this identification or not, it is doubtless noteworthy that Yuan Chwang maintains silence regarding its ruler. Presumably, this was because the Cola chief then wielded little power, and was perhaps only a feudatory of the Pallava sovereign. The fortunes of the Colas were indeed now completely enveloped in darkness. But when the Pallava monarchy declined about the middle of the ninth century A.D., the sun of Cola glory once again shone on the political horizon, of the South.

**The Imperial Colas**

The greatness of the Colas was revived by the dynasty founded by Vijayālaya, whose exact relation to the earlier Colas is unfortunately unknown. He began his rule shortly before 850 A.D. in the neighbourhood of Uraiur, probably as a vassal of the Pallava king. It is believed that Vijayālaya captured Tañjavūr or Tanjore3 from the Muttaraiyar chiefs, who were partisans of the Pândya monarch, Vāraguṇavarman.

**Aditya I**

Vijayālaya was succeeded by his able son, Aditya I, about 875 A.D. He considerably enhanced the power

---

3 Vijayālaya made Tañjavūr or Tañjāpuri (Tanjore) the chief city of the Cola realm, although after the conquest of the Pallava territories Kāñcī became “a sort of subsidiary capital.” Subsequently, Rājendra I built the new capital of Gangāpuri or Gangai-konḍa-Colapuram.
and prestige of the family, for he overthrew the Pallava Aparajitavarman and brought Tondamantalam under his sway about 890 A.D. Aditya I is also represented to have conquered Kongudeśa and taken Talkād, the seat of the Western Gaṅgas. Aditya I was a votary of Śiva, in whose honour he built several temples.

Parāntaka I

When Aditya’s son, Parāntaka I, ascended the throne, the Coḷa realm comprised almost the entire eastern country from Kalahasti and Madras in the north to the Kāverī in the south, and during his long reign from 907 A.D. to 953 A.D. he extended it still further. First, he annexed the territories of the Pāṇḍya king, Rājasimha, who had to flee for safety to Ceylon; and to commemorate this exploit Parāntaka I adopted the title of “Maḍuraikonda.” The Coḷa conqueror then turned his arms towards Ceylon, but the raid proved abortive. He next “uprooted two Bāna kings and conquered the Vaiḍumbas.” Parāntaka I finally swept away all traces of Pallava power, and pushed his authority up to Nellore in the north. This rapid expansion of the Coḷa kingdom, however, did not bring him peace. In the last decade of his reign, disruptive tendencies manifested themselves, and he was involved in a terrible conflict with Kṛṣṇa III Rāṣṭrakūṭa. Although some late Coḷa inscriptions credit Parāntaka I with having repulsed his mighty rival, a consideration of the available evidence would show that Kṛṣṇa III won a decided victory over the Coḷa forces with the help of the Gaṅga prince, Būtuga II. Indeed, it appears that the Rāṣṭrakūṭa invader seized Kāṇcī and Tanjore, and assumed the proud epithet of “Tanjaiyunkonda.” Rājāditya, the eldest son of Parān-

1 S. I. I., II, no. 76, v. 9; The Coḷas, p. 110.
taka I, was killed in the battle of Takkalam (North Arcot district) in 949 A.D., and Kriṣṇa III is alleged to have marched triumphantly even up to Ramāsvaram. Whether the latter claim is true or not, there is hardly any doubt that the Cola received a disastrous blow, and that they took some time to recover from it.

Parāntaka I performed several charitable sacrifices; and being a devout Śaiva, like his father, he gave impetus to the erecting of religious edifices, and himself covered the Śiva temple of Cidambaram with gold. ²

Period of obscurity

With the death of Parāntaka I in 953 A.D. the history of the Cola for the next three decades is much confused. Scholars differ in their opinions considerably regarding the interpretation of facts, but it seems that after him ruled his two sons, Gandarāditya and Aṇiṇḍaya, and that the latter was followed by his son, Sundara Cola, who was in turn succeeded by Āditya II Karikāla and Uttama Cola. They were weaklings, and except for the usual family intrigues and wars with neighbours, their reigns are not relieved by any important event.

Rājarāja I (c. 985-1014 A.D.)

With the accession of Sundara Cola’s son, Rājarāja I, who was known by a variety of titles such as Mūnmadhi-Colajadeva, Jayangonda, Cola-mārtanda etc., began the most glorious epoch of the Colas. ³ He inherited a dis-

---

³ cf. the Atakūr inscription, dated in the Śaka year 871=949-50 A.D. (Ep. Ind., IV, pp. 50-57). Takkalam is about six miles to the south-east of Arkoṇam in the North Arcot district (Ibid., IV, p. 531, n. 5).

² The Cola, p. 164.

³ According to Kielhorn, Rājarāja I ascended the throne between the 25th June and the 25th July 983 A.D. (Ep. Ind., IX, p. 217).
organised and an attenuated kingdom, but by his ability, prowess, and military skill he soon built it up again, and raised himself to a position of supremacy in the South.

One of the earliest exploits of Rājarāja I was the subjugation of the Ceras, whose fleet he destroyed at Kandalur. Then he took Madura and captured the Pāṇḍya king, Amarabhujanga. Rājarāja I also conquered Kollam and the fortress of Udagai in the Western Ghats and Malai-Nādu, identified with Coorg. At this time, the affairs of Ceylon having fallen into confusion, he invaded the island and annexed its northern part, which became a Coḷa province under the name, Mummadiga-Coḷa-Mandalam. Next, he subdued Gāṅgavāḍi and Nolambapāḍi, constituting the bulk of Mysore. The ever-expanding power and influence of Rājarāja I could not be a matter of indifference to his Western Cālukya contemporary, and so a trial of strength between the two was inevitable. Whatever the truth in Tālapa’s claim (referred to in an inscription dated 992 A.D.) to have vanquished the Coḷas, his successor Satyāśraya, at any rate, fared badly against Rājarāja I, who is alleged to have captured Rattapāḍi and devastated the Cālukya territory. Satyāśraya (c. 997-1008 A.D.) was, no doubt, stunned by the terrific onslaught, but he did not take long to recover and hurl back the Coḷa advance. Rājarāja I then overran the Eastern Cālukya country of Veṅgi. Saktivarman (c. 999-1011 A.D.) tried to stem the rising tide of Coḷa aggression, but his younger brother and successor, Vimalāditya (1011-18 A.D.), recognised the overlordship of Rājarāja I, who as a mark of friendship gave him the hand of his daughter, Kundavvai (Kundavā). We are further told that the conquests of Rājarāja I included Kaliṅga and “the old islands of the sea numbering 12,000”, which have been generally identified with the Laccadives and the Maldives. This, if true, doubtless speaks highly of the effectiveness of the Coḷa
fleet. Thus, Rājarāja I made himself master of almost the whole of the present Madras Presidency, Coorg, parts of Mysore and Ceylon, and other islands. These were indeed remarkable achievements, and place Rājarāja I among the foremost warriors and empire-builders of ancient India.

Rājarāja I's claim to fame rests also on the beautiful Śiva temple which he constructed at Tanjore. It is called Rājarājeśvara after his name, and is specially noted for its huge proportions, simple design, elegant sculptures, and fine decorative motifs. On the walls of the temple is engraved an account of Rājaraja's exploits, and but for this fortunate circumstance we should not have known all the details of his career.

Rājarāja's Śaivism was by no means intolerant of other creeds. He endowed and built some temples of Viṣṇu too. Besides, it is said that he granted a village to the Buddhist Vihāra at Negapatam, constructed by Śrī-Māra-Vijayottungavarman, the Sainendra king of Śrī-Vijaya and Kaṭiha beyond the sea in the Malay peninsula.

Rājendra I Gangaikonda (c. 1014-44 A.D.)

After the death of Rājarāja I, the sceptre passed to his worthy son, Rājendra I, who had shared the burden of government with the former during the closing years of his reign. Indeed, the regnal years of Rājendra I are counted from 1012 A.D., when he was formally declared Yuvarāja.1 He proved a chip of the old block, and by his military valour and administrative talents he raised the Cola empire to the pinnacle of glory. Already in the time of his father, Rājendra I had won renown as a warrior by his successful attacks on Idirūraṇadu (Rai chur district), Banavasi (north Kānāra), Kolliippakkai

1 This event took place approximately between the 27th March and the 7th July A. D. 1012 (Ep. Ind., IX, p. 217)
(Kulpak), and Manpaikkadakkam (perhaps Mānyakheta or Malkhed). He had thus carried his arms across the Tuṅgabhadrā right into the heart of the Cālukya territory. A few years after coming to the throne, probably about 1017 A.D., he annexed the whole of Ceylon, its northern part having been previously conquered by Rājarāja I. The following year he re-asserted the Cola supremacy over the kings of Kerala and the Pāṇḍya country, and appointed his son, Jaṭāvarman Sundara, Viceroy of these territories with the title, Cola-Pāṇḍya. Further, Rājendra I maintained his hold on the "many ancient islands" (probably the Laccadives and Maldives), which had been conquered earlier by his father Rājarāja I. Rājendra I also came into conflict with the Western Cālukya monarch, Jayasimha II Jagadekamalla (c. 1016-42 A.D.). The Cālukya records represent the latter as having got the better of his Cola adversary, but the Tamil prāfatti, on the other hand, avers that Jayasimha II "turned his back at Musangi (or Muyangi) and hid himself." Whatever may have been the final issue, this much seems certain that Jayasimha II continued to be master of the country up to the Tuṅgabhadrā. Next, Rājendra I directed his arms towards the North, and his armies marched triumphantly as far as the Ganges and the dominions of Mahipāla, the Gauḍa sovereign. We are told in the Tirumalai (near Pojūr, North Arcot district) inscription that Rājendra I subjugated Odda-Viṣayā (Orissa); Kosalainādu (Southern Kosala); Dharmapāla of Tandabutti (Danda-bhäkti, probably the districts of Balasore and a portion of Midnapore); Ranaśūra of Takkana-lāḍam (South Rāḍha); Govindacandra

1 S.I.I., II, pp. 94-93. Muṣani or Muyangi has been identified with Uccangidurg in the Bellary district (ibid., p. 94, n. 4; Ep. Ind., IX, p. 230).
2 See also R. D. Banerji, Rājendra’s Ganges expedition, J.B. O.R.J., XIV (1928), pp. 212-20.
of Vaṅgāladesa (Eastern Bengal); Mahīpāla, the Pāla ruler (c. 992-1040 A.D.); Uttra-lāḍam (North Rāḍha). As this northern incursion is mentioned in the Tirumalai inscription dated in the 13th year of Rājendra I's reign and has been omitted in the Merpāḍi inscription of the 9th year,¹ one may reasonably suppose that it took place some time between 1021 and 1025 A.D.² It was doubtless an audacious campaign, and to commemorate it he adopted the title of Gaṅgai-konda.³ But the invasion did not yield any permanent results except that some minor Karnāta chieftains settled in Western Bengal, and Rājendra I imported into his kingdom a number of Śaivas from the banks of the Ganges. The Coḷa monarch's achievements were not limited to land only; he possessed a powerful fleet, which gained successes across the Bay of Bengal. It is said that he vanquished Samigrāmavijayottungavarman, and conquered Kaṭāha or Kāḍāma and other places in Farther India. Presumably, the expedition was undertaken not merely to satisfy Rājendra I's ambitions, but to further commercial intercourse between the Malay peninsula and South India. After this almost uninterrupted career of conquest and aggrandisement, Rājendra I sheathed the sword. His subsequent reign was, however, not entirely peaceful. Revolts occurred in Kerala and the Pāṇḍya realm, but they were effectively suppressed by the crown-prince, Rājādhīrāja, who also claims to have successfully fought against the Western Cālukya ruler, Somesvara I Āhavamalla.

Rājendra I founded a new capital called after him Gaṅgai-konda-Colapuram, identified with modern Gaṅgākunḍapuram. It boasted of a magnificent palace and a temple adorned with exquisite granite sculptures, but

---

³ Among other bhrataś of Rājendra I were Vikrama-Coḷa, Parakeśatīrvārmaṇ, and Vīra-Rājendra, etc.
unfortunately these edifices and works of art have altogether perished owing to the pitiless operations of both man and nature. In the vicinity of the new city, Rājendra I also excavated an immense artificial tank, which was filled with water by channels from the Kole-rūn and Vellār rivers. It is said that the lake and the embankments were destroyed by a hostile force, and its bed is now a thick forest.

Rājādhirāja I (c. 1044-52 A.D.)

Rājendra I was succeeded by his son, Rājādhirāja I, in 1044 A.D. He had been associated with his father's administration since 1018 A.D. in the capacity of Yuvārāja, and had distinguished himself in warfare as well. When he came to the throne, Rājādhirāja I had to face many troubles, but all opposition was soon laid low. He subdued the Pândya and Kerala kings, who were in league with the rulers of Laṅkā (Ceylon) named Vikkama-bāhu, Vikkamapāṇḍu, Vīra-Sālamegha, and Śrī-Valla-bha-Mādānapaśa. Presumably, it was to celebrate his victories over these adversaries that Rājādhirāja I performed the Atvamedha sacrifice. He also fought with the Western Cālukya monarch, Somesvara I Āhavamalla (c. 1042-68 A.D.). At first, fortune appears to have favoured the Coḷa sovereign, but eventually in the famous battle of Koppaṁ he lost his life in May, 1052 A.D.²

Rājendra (deva) II (c. 1052-65 A.D.)

Rājādhirāja I having been killed, his younger brother,

² It is said that Āhavamalla "became afraid, incurred disgrace, and ran away" (S.I.I., III, p. 112).
³ This date is known from the Manipurāgalam inscription of the fourth year of Rājendra II's reign (Ibid., III, 38); see also Historical Inscriptions of Southern India, (Madras, 1932), p. 72.
Rājendra II Parakeśarī, was proclaimed king on the battlefield itself. During his time, the war between the Coḷas and the Cālukyas continued, and both sides, as usual, claim victory for themselves. Indeed, the Coḷa inscriptions state that Rājendra II pressed on to Kolhāpur (Kollāpuram) and planted a Jayastambha there;1 while Bilhana, author of the Vikramāṅkadevaśarita, represents Someśvara I to have stormed even Kānci, then an important Coḷa centre. In the face of these conflicting accounts, what seems to be the truth is that none of the contending parties could decidedly succeed against the other. One thing, however, is clear that Rājendra II maintained the Coḷa empire intact.

Vira-Rājendra (c. 1063-70 A.D.)

In 1063 A.D., Rājendra II was followed by his younger brother, Vira-Rājendra Rājakeśarī, who carried on the traditional hostilities with the Cālukyas. We are told that he inflicted a crushing defeat on Someśvara I Āhavamalla in the battle of Kūdal-Saṅgam (Kumool district), near the confluence of the Kṛṣṇa and Tūṅga-bhadra rivers.2 Subsequently, the latter is said to have resolved upon again trying conclusions with the victor at the same spot, but it is not known what happened to prevent him from appearing on the scene. An effigy of the cowardly Someśvara I was then put up, and Vira-Rājendra subjected it to disgrace. The Coḷa monarch next turned his energies towards Veṅgi, where affairs had gone wrong with his ally Vijayaḍitya VII owing to the activities of the Western Cālukya prince, Vikramā-

1 See the Tirukkoyilār (South Arcot district) inscription (V. Rangacharya, Inscriptions of the Madras Presidency, Vol. I, p. 227, no. 811).
2 See the Tiruvengādu inscription (S.I.I., III, 193). Another view makes Kūdalsangamam “a confluence of the Tūṅga and Bhadrā rivers.”
ditya (afterwards Vikramāditya VI), younger son of Someśvara I. Vira-Rājendra engaged the Western Cālukya forces not far from modern Bezwāḍā, and, having vanquished them, crossed the Godāvari and overran Kaliṅga and Cakka-Koṭṭam. Veṅgi was thus reconquered and Vijayāditya VII was restored to his former dignity. Further, Vira-Rājendra curbed the Pāndya and Kerala princes, who attempted to re-assert themselves; and he foiled all efforts of Vijayabāhu of Ceylon to extend his authority and drive away the Coḷas from Siṁhaladvīpa. Vira-Rājendra is alleged to have sent an expedition against Kadāram or Srī-Viṣaya too, but the details, which led to it, are obscure. Lastly, we learn that when Someśvara II Bhuvaṇaikamalla succeeded Someśvara I Āhavamalla in 1068 A.D., Vira-Rājendra again made some incursions in the Western Cālukya territory. The latter also came into clash with Vikramāditya, who, having quarrelled with his elder brother Someśvara II, left Kalīṇa, the capital, and repaired towards the Tuṅgabhadrā. Ultimately, friendship was established between the belligerents; Vira-Rājendra gave the hand of his daughter to the Cālukya prince, and espoused his cause.

Adhirājendra (c. 1070 A.D.)

After the death of Vira-Rājendra in 1070 A.D., his son, Adhirājendra, occupied the throne. He appears to have served his apprenticeship as heir-apparent for three years, but his actual rule was very brief. There was confusion in the kingdom, and despite the aid of his brother-in-law, Vikramāditya (VI), Adhirājendra could not hold his own, and was killed.

Kulottuṅga I (c. 1070-1122 A.D.)

Adhirājendra probably did not leave any issue to

1 See K.A. Nilakanta Śāstrī, The Celaṭ, Vol. II (Part I), Mad-
succeed him. Accordingly, the crown devolved on Rājendra II, whose title to it was based on close matrimonial relations between his house and that of the Cola. For Vimalāditya of Veṅgi (c. 1011-18 A.D.) had married the daughter of Rājarāja I Cola, named Kuruvā (Kundavai), and their son Rājarāja Vīṣṇuvardhana had won Rājendra I Cola’s daughter, Ammaṅgadevi, as his spouse. But of this union was born Rājendra II Cāḷukya, called afterwards Kulottuṅga I, who had himself obtained the hand of Madhurāntaki, daughter of Rājendraeva II Cola. It would thus appear that Kulottuṅga I had more of Cola than Cāḷukya blood; and although there are no grounds to believe that he was adopted into the Cola family, the failure of the main line as well as the confusion that prevailed about the time of Adhirājendra’s death certainly helped him to make good his claim to the Cola crown. Presumably, Kulottuṅga I first settled accounts at Veṅgi with his uncle, Vijayāditya VII, and then assumed power in the Cola country on the 9th of June, 1070 A.D. 1 Thus, Kulottuṅga I united the two kingdoms of the Eastern Cāḷukyas of Veṅgi and the Cola of Tanjavur (Tanjore). The Western Cāḷukya prince, Vikramāditya, tried to undo this amalgamation, perhaps at the instigation of Someśvara II Bhuvanaikamalla, who himself wanted to put his gifted younger brother out of the way somehow, but the attempt miscarried. Having secured his position and restored order in the Cola realm, Kulottuṅga I appointed his son Rājarāja-Muṁmaḍi-Coḍa to govern Veṅgi. The latter assumed charge of his office on the 27th of July, 1076 A.D., but gave it up a year after. Then his brothers, Vira-Coḍa (1078-84 A.D.) and Rājarāja-Coḍa-

gaṅga (1084-89 A.D.), successively served as Viceroys of Vengi. Henceforth it became the seat of a princely Vic
roy. Kulottuṅga I next brought to book the recalcitrant Pāṇḍya and Kerala chiefdoms and other feudatories in
the south. He is also said to have successfully measured
strength with his Paramāra contemporary of Mālwā,
and Kaliṅga fell a prey to his arms twice. Kulottuṅga
I himself led the first expedition some time prior to
his 26th regnal year to counteract the designs of the
Western Cālukya Vikramāditya VI, whereas the second,
undertaken about 1112 A.D. against the Eastern Gaṅga
king, Anantavarman Coḍagauḍa (c. 1077-1147 A.D.),
was dispatched under the command of Kulottuṅga’s
trusted general, Karunākara Tondaimān. There are,
however, grounds to believe that Kulottuṅga I did not
exercise any power across the seas, and that he had to
suffer the loss of Gaṅgavāḍi or Southern Mysore towards
the close of his reign owing to the aggressions of the
Hoysala chief, Bṛṛgī Vaiṣṇuvardhana (c. 1110-40 A.D.),
who was independent of his aged Cālukya suzerain,
Vikramāditya VI, in all but name.

Kulottuṅga I introduced certain reforms in the
internal administration of the kingdom. Of these the
most important was that he got the land re-surveyed for
taxation and revenue purposes.

The reign of Kulottuṅga I was further marked by
religious and literary activity. Himself a devout Saiva
by faith, he is recorded to have made grants to the
Buddhist shrines at Negapattam. But he was not favour-
ably disposed towards the great Vaiṣṇava teacher, Rāmā-
uja, who was, therefore, compelled to leave Śrīraṅgam,
near Trichinopoly, and seek the protection of Bṛṛgī
Vaiṣṇuvardhana Hoysala in Mysore. Among the literary
figures that flourished in the time of Kulottuṅga I,
we may specially mention Jayagondan, author of the
Kalingattuparam, and Adiyarkkunallar, who wrote a
commentary on the Silappadikāram.
Successors of Kulottunga I

After a long reign of about half a century, Kulottunga I passed away some time in 1122 A.D. and was succeeded by his son, Vikrama Cola, surnamed Tyagasamudra, who had held the Viceroyalty of Venagl. He was probably a Vaisnava, and it is believed that during his time Ramanauja returned from Mysore to the Cola country. Vikrama Cola (c. 1118-33 A.D.) and his immediate successors, Kulottunga II (c. 1133-47 A.D.), Rajaraja II (c. 1147-62 A.D.), and Rajadhiraja II (c. 1162-78 A.D.), were all weaklings, under whom the power of the Colas rapidly declined. The Hoysalas of Dvaramamudra now emerged as a considerable factor in the politics of the South, and the rulers of Ceylon, Kerala, and the Pandyas kingdom boldly attempted to shake off their (Cola) allegiance. Indeed, the Cola authority had fallen so low that the Ceylonese king even ventured to interfere in Pandyayan affairs on behalf of one of the claimants to its throne, although eventually Rajadhiraja II was able to overcome all opposition and settle the succession in favour of his protege. The next monarch, Kulottunga III (c. 1178-1216 A.D.), had also to face an internal turmoil in the Pandyas realm, and we learn that he marched in triumph to Madura, and hurried back the advancing tide of the Ceylonese incursions in the peninsula. But despite these minor successes, the day of Cola ascendancy was soon drawing to a close. In the reign of Kulottunga III's son and

1 The latest known date of Kulottunga I's reign is the year 52 (The Colas, Vol. II, pt. I, pp. 49, 61).
2 Vikrama Cola's accession took place about the end of June, 1118 A.D. (Ep. Ind., VII, pp. 4-5). For a few years he appears to have ruled jointly with his father (The Colas, p. 61).
3 Ep. Ind., VIII, p. 260. Kielhorn says that Kulottunga III began his reign "between (approximately) the 6th and 8th July A.D. 1178, and Rajaraja III between (approximately) the 27th June and the 10th July 1216."
successor, Rājarāja III (c. 1216-32 A.D.), Tanjore itself was sacked by Māravarman Sundara Pāṇḍya I (c. 1216-38 A.D.), and the former was reduced to such dire straits that he had to appeal to Vīra Bāllāla II or Narasimha II Hoysala (c. 1215 A.D.) to come to his succour and rescue him from captivity. About this time, another chieftain named Kopperunjiṅga, belonging to the Pailava stock, rose into prominence at Sendamangalam (South Arcot district), and he, too, is said to have taken Rājarāja III prisoner. The Hoysala prince again intervened, and after defeating Kopperunjiṅga set Rājarāja III free. Thus, the fortunes of the Coḷas were already tottering, and when there ensued a civil strife between Rājarāja III and Rājendra III in 1246 A.D., the Hoysalas of Dvārakā, the Kākatiyas of Warangal under the energetic rule of Ganapati (c. 1199-1261 A.D.), and the Pāṇḍyas of Madura freely aggrandised themselves at the cost of the decadent Coḷa monarchy. Indeed, it was in the time of Rājendra III, who first ruled jointly with his rival Rājarāja III from 1246 A.D. to 1252, and afterwards independently until 1267 A.D., that the final blow to the hegemony of the Coḷas was given by Jatāvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya (c. 1251-72 A.D.). He claims to have overrun a large part of their territory, and seized Kāṇṭhi. He overawed other contemporary chiefs also, and as a mark of his superior might and position assumed the title of Maharājādhirāja. Rājendra III was unable to arrest the rot, and by 1267 A.D., owing to internal troubles and the rise of the Pāṇḍyas and other feudatory powers, the empire suffered complete disintegration, and the Coḷas sank into obscurity.
The King and his officers

The inscriptions of the Coḷas prove that their system of administration was highly organised and efficient. The emperor was the pivot on which turned the whole machinery of the state. He discharged his onerous duties and responsibilities with the advice and help of ministers and other high officers. His verbal orders (tiruvākya-kalpi) were drafted by the Royal or Private Secretary. It is believed that in the days of Rājarāja I and his son the Chief Secretary (Olaṁyakam) and another functionary (Perundaram) had to confirm the royal orders before they were communicated to the parties concerned by the despatch-clerk (Vidūyādīkāri). Finally, the local governors scrutinised the orders before they were registered and sent to the Department of Archives for preservation.

Territorial divisions

The kingdom (rājya or rāstram) was divided into a number of provinces (maṇḍalam), the most important of which were under the charge of Viceroy. Generally, the viceroyalties were conferred on princes of the blood or on scions of noble families. Some of the provinces were formed of such principalities as had been annexed by the Coḷa Imperialists. Besides, there were the territories of the vassal princes, who paid tribute and rendered service to the suzerain in times of need. The provinces were subdivided into divisions (koṭṭams or valanīda), and the other units of administr-

1 See Dr. S. Krishnasvami Aiyangar, Ancient India, pp. 158-190; Prof. K. A. Nilakanta Sastry, Studies in Coḷa History and Administration, pp. 73-162; The Coḷas, Vol. II, pt. I, pp. 210-462. To these works, I owe several references and suggestions.
ration in the descending scale were the districts (nāduś),
unions or groups of villages (kurrams) and the village
(grāmam).

Assemblies

There is ample evidence to show that these divisions
had their own popular assemblies during the period
of Cola ascendancy. First, we hear of the assembly of
the people of a whole mandalām in connection with the
remission of certain taxes on land under its jurisdiction.¹
Next, inscriptions refer to the Nāṭṭar, assembly of the
people of a nādu (district), and Nagarattār, i.e., “assembly
of the mercantile groups which went by the generic name
Nagaram.” These two terms perhaps corresponded to
the Janapada and Paura respectively. Unfortunately,
however, the details of their constitution and working
are unknown. Besides, local administration was greatly
facilitated by the existence of guilds or tṛṇis, pūgas,
and such other autonomous corporate organisations
in which persons following the same craft or calling
banded themselves together.² Turning to the assem-
blies of villages, some had what were called Ur. They
were mere congregations of local residents to discuss
matters without any formal rules or procedure. Then
there was the Sabhā or Mahāsabhā—an assembly of Brahm-
man villages (Brabhmadvus)—about which our infor-
mation is copious indeed. It would appear from
epigraphic documents, particularly from those found
at Uttarāmerūr (about 50 miles S.W. of Madras), that
these village assemblies, subject to the supervision and
general control of Imperial officers designated Adhi-
ḥārins, enjoyed almost full powers in the management

¹ See Nilakanta Śāstra, Studies in Cola History and Admi-
   nistration, p. 79.
² See Dr. R. C. Majumdar, Corporate Life in Ancient India;
Dr. R. K. Mookerji, Local Government in Ancient India.
of rural affairs. They were the proprietors of village lands, both tilled and untilled. Since agriculture was their chief concern, they acquired lands by fresh clearings and afforded all protection to the cultivator from molestation. They gathered taxes, and resumed lands in case of non-payment. But unnecessary strictness in the collection of the customary dues was avoided. Often the assembly alienated or sold land for religious purposes without reference to the central government or its local representative. Further, it received deposits in cash or gifts of land to administer them as charitable trusts. The Sabbā seems to have acted also as a sort of guardian of the village morals. It was invested with some authority to mete out justice and award suitable punishments to offenders. Through mutbas the assembly probably made provision for the education of village children both in Sanskrit and Tamil. The number of the members of the Sabbā cannot be precisely ascertained; presumably, it depended upon the importance and the area of the village. The meetings of the assembly were held in a temple, or a public hall, if there was any, or under an umbrageous tamarind or some other tree. To look after various affairs of common interest, the Sabbā had smaller committees. Thus, we learn of committees for general management (pāñca vāra vāriyam), tanks (ēri vāriyam), gardens, fields, temples, charities, justice, gold (pōn vāriyam), etc. For election to these bodies elaborate rules were devised. Each village was divided into wards (kudumbas), and the eligibility or otherwise of a person for membership was determined on a consideration of certain qualifications or disqualifications based on one’s age, learning, character, mode of living, relations, social status, etc. A member was elected for one year only. The method of election was simple; tickets of all candidates were first thrown and thoroughly mixed up in a pot, from which they were drawn, one by one, by a boy. The successful
names were then announced to the people by the priest-arbitrator. If any member of a committee was ever adjudged guilty of an offence, he was at once removed from office. Everybody was expected to be above board, and so to conduct himself as to be an example to others. Accounts were kept with meticulous care, and they were regularly checked by accountants. Any kind of tampering, embezzlement, or defalcation was severely dealt with.¹

Land-survey

The government carried out land-survey operations periodically. They were correct to the lowest fraction, and a record of holdings was maintained. In the earlier period, rods of 16 and 18 spans were used for purposes of survey but subsequently the foot-print of Kulottunga I became the unit of linear measure.

Sources of Revenue (Ayam)²

The state derived its income mainly from land-revenue, which normally amounted to one-sixth of the gross produce. Variations, if any, from this rate depended upon the quality of land and water facilities.³ Sometimes remissions were granted in case of floods or famine. The royal dues were collected by the village assemblies, and were paid either in cash or in kind or in both. The unit of grain then was a kalam (about three maunds), and the current coin was the gold Katu. An inscription enumerates numerous imposts such as those on looms (tari irai), oil-mills (tekkkerai),

¹ See also The Cetas, Vol. II, pt. I, Ch. XVIII.
² Ibid., Ch. XIX.
³ To increase the income of the State forests and waste-lands were steadily reclaimed.
trade (settirai), goldsmiths (tatturpattam), animals, tan, water-courses (Oulkkmur pattam), salt-tax (uppayam), tolls (vali ayam), weights (itaiyart), bazaars (angadipattam), besides other exactions, whose connotation is not at all clear. It would thus appear that the government tapped almost every conceivable source of revenue to fill its coffers (talam).

Expenditure

The chief items of expenditure were the royal household, maintenance of the civil and military administration, planning and laying-out of cities (e.g., Gaṅgaikondacolapuram), construction of temples, roads, irrigation channels, and other works of public utility.

Army and Navy

The Cola emperors had at their command highly trained land forces and an effective fleet, which respectively made possible the brilliant victories of Rājarāja I and Rājendra I against the neighbouring powers and their overseas conquest in the Indian ocean and the Malay peninsula. The Cola army was divided into sections according to the arms used and to whether they were mounted or not. Thus, there were “the chosen body of archers (village),” footsoldiers of the bodyguard (valperra kaikkōlar), “infantry of the right-hand (vēlakkkārar of the valangai),” “chosen horsemen” (kudiraiccevage), elephant corps (ānaiyātkal, kuṇji-ramallar), etc. The army was garrisoned in different localities in cantonments called kaḍagams, where discipline was enforced and military training given. Some Smāpatis were Brahmans, known as Brahmādhirāja.

1See Dr. S. Krishnaswami Aiyangar, Ancient India, p. 180.
The Coḷas as builders

(i) Irrigation works—Like the Pallavas, the Coḷas undertook vast irrigational projects. Apart from sinking wells and excavating tanks, they threw mighty stone dams across the Kāverī¹ and other rivers, and cut out channels to distribute water over large tracts of land. One of the most remarkable achievements belongs to the time of Rājendra I. He dug near his new capital, Gaṅgaikondacoḷapuram, an artificial lake, which was filled with water from the Kolerun and Vellar rivers. Its embankments were sixteen miles in length, and it was provided with stone sluices and channels. One can imagine what untold benefits this reservoir must have conferred on the poor peasant.

(ii) Roads—The Coḷas also constructed “grand trunk roads”, which served as arteries of commerce and communication. Their existence must have indeed greatly facilitated the rapid movements of the Coḷa forces during military expeditions. Troops were stationed at regular intervals along important roads, and public ferries were provided across rivers.

(iii) Cities and Temples, etc.—The Coḷas built cities and beautified them with magnificent palaces and temples. The latter were in those days the centres of village or city life. It was there that the people found spiritual solace, and listened to the solemn recitations of the sacred texts. Further, they served as schools for the study of the Vedas, Purāṇas, Epics, Dharmasastras, astronomy, grammar, and other sciences. There kings and nobles performed religious ceremonies, and gave largess to the destitute and the needy. On festivals and joyous occasions dramas were also staged in temples and people amused themselves with dancing and singing.

¹ Thus, the Tiruvāduṟṟai inscription (110 of 1915) refers to the raising of the banks of the Kāverī by Parakeśari Karikkāḷa Coḷa.
Their Art

The chief features of Cola temples are their massive vimānas or towers and spacious courtyards. In later Dravidian structures, however, the central towers are dwarfed by richly carved gopurams or gateways, which dominate the landscape for miles around. In the great temple of Śiva, called Rājarājaśvara after the name of its builder Rājarāja I, at Tanjore, the vimāna or tower is about 190 feet high, rising like a pyramid upon a base of 82 feet square in thirteen successive storeys. It is crowned by a single block of granite, 25 feet high and about 80 tons in weight. What infinite labour and engineering skill it must have required to be placed in position! Another elegant, if less imposing, edifice at Tanjore of about the 10th or 11th century A.D. is in honour of the god Subrahmanya. Similarly, Rājarāja I’s valorous son and successor, Rājendra I, erected a splendid temple at his new capital, Gaṅgai-kōnda-Colapuram (Trichinopoly district). Its immense proportions, huge lingams of solid granite, and delicate carvings are specially striking. The Colas encouraged plastic art, and the metal and stone images cast in their time are exquisitely executed and display a wonderful vigour, dignity, and grace. It may be added that some Cola temples at Tanjore and Kālahasti contain beautiful portrait images of royal personages, like those of Rājarāja I and his queen Lokamahādevī, and of Rājendra I and his queen Ėḷamahādevī.

Religion

As already noticed, the Cola emperors were worshippers of Śiva, but they were by no means intolerant

1 The names Iśāna, Śiva, and Śarva Śiva in the inscriptions of Rājarāja I and Rājendra I bear testimony, as pointed out by Prof. Nilakantha Sastrī (The Cola, Vol. II, pt. I, p. xxii), to the “North Indian connections of the Śaivism of the Cola court.”
of other faiths then prevailing. Indeed, Rājarāja I, an ardent Saiva himself, built and endowed temples of Viṣṇu, and made gifts to the Buddhist Vibāra at Negapatam. The Jains also appear to have pursued their persuasion in peace and harmony. The Saiva Kulottuṅga I, who, too, is recorded to have granted a village to a Buddhist Vibāra, was, on the other hand, unfavourably inclined to the illustrious Vaiṣṇava reformer Rāmānuja. Accordingly, the latter had, for a time, to leave Srīraṅgam and retire to the Hoysala dominions in Mysore; he returned when Vikrama Cola reversed his father's attitude towards him. Such instances of persecution were, however, rare, and generally Vaiṣṇava Alvars and Saiva Nayanmars were free to preach and disseminate their doctrines. Further, it is noteworthy that there are scanty references (except in the poems of the Saṅgām period) to the performance of Vedic sacrifices by Cola kings. Indeed, the solitary allusion to the Aṣvamedha occurs in the records of Rājādhirāja. Perhaps greater stress was then laid on Dāna (gift) than on Yaṭṭhas or sacrifices. Brahmins were given largess, and temples were richly endowed.

SECTION D

THE PĀNḍYAS OF MADURĀ

Origin

It is a baffling problem, indeed, as to who were the Pāṇḍyas, and what is the exact significance of their name. Legends are unhappily at variance. According to some, they were the descendants of the mythical three brothers

---

1 See the Leyden grant.
of Korkai, who respectively founded the Pāṇḍya, Coḷa, and the Cera kingdoms. Other traditions connect them with the Pāṇḍavas of the North or with the Moon. Do these apparently conflicting stories imply that, although the Pāṇḍyas belonged to the Dravidian stock, a claim to kinship with epic heroes was advanced when the Aryans had established themselves and their religion and institutions in Southern India?

Pāṇḍya Land

The Pāṇḍyas ruled the southern extremity of the Indian peninsula along the east coast. Their kingdom, no doubt, expanded or shrivelled as the king happened to be strong or weak. Normally, however, the Pāṇḍya country comprised the present districts of Madurā, Ramnad, and Tinnevelly. Its capital was Madhurā (Madurā), the "Mathurā of the South," and Korkai (Tinnevelly district) at the mouth of the Tāmraparṇī river was its chief commercial port in early times. Afterwards, owing to a gradual change in the land formation of the coast, it decayed, and Kayal, a few miles further down the river, became the emporium of trade.

Early glimpses

The Pāṇḍya kingdom was of high antiquity. Kātyāyana (c. 4th century B.C.) probably refers to it in his commentary on Pāṇini's Aṣṭādhyāyī, and the Rāmāyana of Vālmiki speaks of the wealth of the Pāṇḍya capital. According to a somewhat confused statement in the Mahāvamsa, prince Vijaya of Ceylon is said to have married a Pāṇḍya princess shortly after the parinibbāna of the Buddha. Next, in the Ārthasastra of Kauṭikya

1 Ārthasastra, Bk. I, Ch. XI; Eng. Trans., 3rd ed. (1929), p. 76.
mention is made of a special kind of pearl, called Pândya-
 Tümāra, obtainable in Pândyakāva (a mountain in
 the Pândya country); and Megasthenes transmits to us
 some curious bits of information that females governed
 the Pandaian nation, and that they bore children at the
 age of six years. He further deposes that Herakles had
 only one daughter named Pandaia, and the land in
 which she was born, and with the sovereignty of which
 he (Herakles) entrusted her, was called after her name,
Pandaia, and she received from the hands of her father
 500 elephants, a force of cavalry 4,000 strong and another
 of infantry consisting of about 150,000 men. Whatever
 the value of the testimony of Megasthenes, it is
 certain that in II and XIII Rock Edicts of Ašoka
 the Pândyas are described as an independent people
 on the southern frontiers of his empire. Coming
 down the stream of time, we are told in the Hāthigumpha
 inscription (line 13) that Kāḷavela of Kaliṅga humbled
 the Pántya king and obtained from him horses, elephants, jewels, rubies, as well as numerous pearls.
 An allusion to a Pántya king also occurs in the writings
 of Strabo, who says that "king Pandion" sent an
 embassy to the great Roman emperor, Augustus Cæsar,
 about 20 B.C. Then in the Periplus and the Geography
 of Prolemy we hear of the Pandinoi with their capital
 Modoura (Madurai) and other cities and trading cen-
tres.

Obscure centuries

The data available for the history of the Pántyas
until about the beginning of the seventh century A.D.

1 McCarroll, Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian
2 Ibid., Frag. ii, p. 171. This is altogether absurd.
3 Ibid., Arrian, viii, p. 206.
4 Bk. XV, Ch. 4, 73.
are meagre in the extreme. The Saṅgam works—the *Silappadikāram*, the *Manimekalai*, and other anthologies—assigned on plausible grounds to “the early centuries of the Christian Era,” of course, yield us a few names of kings, but they throw no light on their chronology or achievements, being more concerned with the portrayal of the religious and social life of the period. One of these rulers, Nedunjeliyan, appears to have greatly increased the prestige of the Pāṇḍyas by overpowers a formidable league of his enemies at Talaiyālāṅgānam (modern Talai-ālam-kādu, Tanjore district). The next three centuries or so after the close of the Saṅgam age are utterly enveloped in darkness. Presumably, the Pāṇḍyas first lapsed into obscurity owing to the rise of the Pallavas; at any rate, later, in the sixth century A.D., their country was occupied by the Kalabhras. The intruders were, however, overthrown, and Pāṇḍya power revived, by Kaḻungōn about the close of the sixth century A.D. or the commencement of the seventh.

**Period of Growth**

Thus, Kaḻungōn initiated what has often been termed the “Age of the First Empire.” Unfortunately, not much is known of him, but there are grounds to believe that either he or his son, Māravarman Avani-śūlāmaṇi, came into conflict with Simhaviṣṇu, who was about this time laying the foundations of Pallava greatness. The next notable Pāṇḍya king was Arikeśāri Māravarman (*circa* middle of the seventh century A.D.), identified with Neḍumāran or the legendary Kun Pāṇḍya. Originally a Jain, it is believed that he afterwards turned an ardent champion of the Śaiva faith under the influence of Saint Tiruṭṭānāsambandar. During the reign of Arikeśāri Māravarman and his

---

successors, Kocca-dayan Ranadhira (circa close of the seventh or the beginning of the 8th century A.D.), Māravarman Rājāsimha I, and Nedunjadayan Varaguna I (c. 763-813 A.D.), the Pāndya kingdom continued to expand on all sides at the expense of the Coḷas, the Keralas, and other neighbours. The last two appear to have fought with some success against Nandivarman Pallavamalla. Further, Nedunjadayan completed his father’s conquest of Kongu-desa (modern Coimbatore and Salem districts) and annexed Venāḍa (South Travancore). His son and successor, Sri-Māra-Sri-Vallabhā (c. 815-62 A.D.), distinguished himself by defeating the king of Ceylon¹ as well as a combination of the Pallavas, Gaṅgās, and the Coḷas, etc. at Kudamukku (Kumbakonam). The struggle with the Pallavas, however, went on till the time of Aparājītavarman, who, with the help of the Gaṅga chieftain Prithvyipati I and perhaps of Śādyā Cōla also, gained a decisive victory over the Pāndya monarch, Varagunavarman or Varaguna II, about 880 A.D. in the battle of Śrī-Purambhiyam (Tiruppurambhiyam), near Kumbakonam. Besides this heavy blow, the Pāṇḍyas had now to face another serious complication in the political situation of the South owing to the rise of the Coḷas. It is said that Māravarman Rājāsimha II, having allied himself with the ruler of Ceylon, attacked Parāntaka I (c. 907-53 A.D.) to curb the Coḷas, but he was repulsed and routed with considerable loss. The victor then seized the Pāṇḍya territories, and in commemoration of this exploit assumed the title of “Maṭurai-konda.” Māravarman Rājāsimha II fled to Ceylon, from where he tried to regain his position. All his efforts, however, came to nought.

¹ The Ceylonese, on the other hand, make counter-claims of their own success in their records.
Cola Suzerainty

Thus the Pândya kingdom lost its independence, and it had to suffer the Cola yoke from about 920 A.D. to the commenceent of the thirteenth century. Of course, the ruling family was not extirpated, and from time to time its scions made attempts to throw off the Cola suzerainty. The battle of Takkolam (949 A.D.), in which Krishna III Râstrakûta gave a rude shaking to the Colas, furnished one such opportunity, but the uprising led by Vira-Pândya was put down. The rebel prince was then captured and killed. Similarly, Râjarâja I (c. 985-1014 A.D.) had to overcome the opposition of Amarâbhujaṅga and subjugate the Pândya country again. Troubles, however, recurred soon, and accordingly Râjendra I (c. 1014-44 A.D.) appointed his son, Jatâvarman Sundara, Viceroy there with the title of Cola-Pândya. The Pândya territories thus became a mere province of the Cola empire. But despite this direct control, the Pândyas, along with the Ceras and the Singhales, held aloft the banner of revolt, and successive Cola monarchs were hard put to it to suppress them. Indeed, by the time of Râjâdhiraṅga II (c. 1162-78 A.D.) the Cola grip was so loosened that the king of Ceylon felt bold enough to intervene in Pândyan affairs, taking the side of Parâkrama and his son Vira, although the other claimant to the throne, Kulaśekhara, had got the support of the Cola suzerain. The dispute was, no doubt, ultimately decided in favour of the latter's protégé. Nevertheless, it clearly demonstrated that the Colas could no longer be considered the sole arbiters of South Indian politics. The last flicker of Cola power we see when Kulottuṅga III (c. 1178-1216 A.D.) beat back the Ceylonese and occupied Madurâ to afford protection to Kulaśekhara's successor, Vikrama-Pândya. After this event, the Colas sank fast into insignificance, and the Pândyas gradually regained much of their lost glory and importance.
Renewed prosperity

The accession of Jatavarman Kulaśekhara in 1190 A.D. may be regarded as a turning-point in the fortunes of the Pāṇḍyas. From now on, their recovery began, and for a century or more they dominated the political stage in Southern India. The materials for the period, usually called the "age of the second Pāṇḍya empire," are ample enough; but the recurrence of similar names and the phenomenon of several princes ruling contemporaneously over different parts of the kingdom constitute a frequent source of chronological or genealogical difficulties. Indeed, some foreign writers have even observed that there were "five crowned kings" of the "great province of Ma'bar." The belief in their "co-regency" has, however, no basis in fact, for it has been rightly maintained that they were local chiefs governing certain territories as feudatories.

During the reign of Jatavarman Kulaśekhara's successor, Māravarman Sundara Pāṇḍya I (r. 1216-38 A.D.), the Colas had to recede further into the background. For he overran their dominions and pillaged and burnt the towns of Tanjore and Uraiur. The Cola king, Rājarāja III (r. 1216-52 A.D.), at first took to his heels, but having submitted afterwards he was reinstated on the throne. He revolted again but was promptly put down. It appears that on both the occasions Māravarman Sundara Pāṇḍya I could not adopt any extreme measures against Rājarāja III owing to the intervention of Narasimha II Hoysala, who is described in an epigraph as the "displacer of Pāṇḍya and establisher of the Cola kingdom." This active interference of Narasimha II, who himself is alleged to have advanced against Srīraṅgam, was inevitable, since any accession of strength to the Pāṇḍyas was fraught with danger to the Hoysalas as well. In the time of Māravarman Sundara Pāṇḍya II (r. 1238-51 A.D.), the Cola-Pāṇḍya-Hoysala
relations remained almost unchanged. The next ruler, Jayavarman Sundara Pandy (r. 1251-72 A.D.), was, however, a vigorous personality, and he raised the Pandyas to the pinnacle of their power. He finally crushed Cola authority in the South, occupied Kãndi, and subdued the Cera country, Kongudeśa, and Ceylon. Besides, he chastised the Hoysalas under Vira-Somesvara by storming the fortress of Kannanur-Koppam. He also defeated the Kákatya Ganapati (r. 1199-1261 A.D.) of Warangal and Kopperunjiga, the Pallava chieftain of Sendamangalam. Thus, these victories resulted in a rapid extension of Jayavarman Sundara Pandy’s rule over a large portion of Southern India up to Cuddapah and Nellore in the north; and to mark this supreme position he assumed the grandiloquent title of Mahārajadhināja-Sri-Paramesvara.¹ In his wars and administration, Jayavarman Sundara Pandy was, for the greater part of his reign, associated with another prince named Jayavarman Vira Pandy; and from 1268 A.D., i.e., a few years before Jayavarman Sundara Pandy’s end, Māravarman Kulaśekhara is said to have begun his rule. Similarly, we hear of other kings during the time of the latter. Foreign observers erroneously believed that they were ruling independently of one another; but, as already remarked, they were perhaps only feudatories of the Imperial power at Madurai. This system of subordinate rulers was a noteworthy feature of Pandy government, and its adoption was presumably due to the immense growth in the extent of the kingdom. On becoming the supreme monarch in 1271 A.D. after the death of Jayavarman Sundara Pandy, Māravarman Kulaśekhara won some military successes, especially in Mahānādu (Travancore country) and Ceylon. He also built a palace

¹ Jayavarman Sundara Pandy is recorded to have given largess on occasions of the many sacrifices that he performed; and he also richly adorned and endowed the temples of Cidambaram and Srimangam.
at Jayangondasolapuram, which proves beyond doubt that the Colas had now vanished into nothingness.

Towards the close of the thirteenth century (1293 A.D.), the Venetian traveller, Marco Polo, visited the South, and he throws interesting light on the king, the court, and the life of the common people. He further speaks admiringly of its accumulated riches, pearls, and its extensive trade in precious stones and other articles of luxury. The observations of Marco Polo are in many respects corroborated by the Moslem writer, Wassaf. According to the latter, “Kales Dewar, the ruler of Ma’bar enjoyed a highly prosperous life, extending to forty and odd years.” The last days of Kales Dewar, identified with Maravarman Kulaśekhara, appear to have been tragic. There was a fratricidal struggle between his illegitimate son, Vira Pandyja, and the legitimate Sundara, both of whom were “co-rulers” with their father since 1296 A.D. and 1303 A.D. respectively. It is alleged that Maravarman Kulaśekhara was murdered, and Sundara sought the aid of Alaūdīn Khilji. Whatever the truth, it is clear that the dispute between the two brothers furnished a golden opportunity to Malik Kafur, the Sultan’s intrepid general, and heboldly led an expedition to Madura in 1310 A.D. and plundered and looted it of its wealth. This Moslem incursion, of course, introduced another complication in Southern India, but it did not mean any advantage to either of the contending brothers. They miserably dragged on their existence for some time more. Alaūdīn Khilji again despatched a strong force under Khusru Khan a few years afterwards, and the Cera king, Ravivarman Kulaśekhara, and the Kākatiyas of Warangal also took advantage of the prevailing confusion to aggrandise themselves. Thus, weakened by all-sided aggressions, the “second Pandyja empire” soon broke up and became a thing of the past, although we continue to hear of scions of the Pandyja line for long. The Moslem
governor of Madura cut himself adrift of Delhi about 1350 A.D. His independence was, however, short-lived, and ultimately the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar wrested power in the South.

APPENDIX

Yuan Chwang's testimony

The indefatigable Chinese pilgrim, Yuan Chwang, who went to Southern India in 640 A.D., gives us the following description of Mo-lo-kiu-ch'a or Malakūta, identified with the Pândya country: "The temperature is very hot. The men are dark-complexioned. They are firm and impetuous in disposition. Some follow the true doctrine, others are given to heresy. They do not esteem learning much, but are wholly given to commercial gain. There are the ruins of many old convents, but only the walls are preserved, and there are few religious followers. There are many hundred Deva-temples, and a multitude of heretics, mostly belonging to the Nirgranthas." We thus get an account of the land, character of the people, and of their religious persuasions about the middle of the seventh century A.D. It would appear that Brahmanism was then prosperous, and the Jains, too, were numerous; but Buddhism had rather fallen in popular favour.

SECTION E

THE CERAS

Their origin and territory

The Ceras or Kerala belonged to the Dravidian stock. Their kingdom, which constituted one of the three traditional divisions of Southern India, roughly

corresponded to the modern district of Malabar and the States of Travancore and Cochin. Sometimes it included also the Kongu region, i.e., the district of Coimbatore and the southern portion of Salem. The western coast of the Cera realm had some fine natural ports like Muziris (modern Kranganur) at the mouth of the Periyar river, and Vaikkkarai, from where in ancient times flowed a large volume of trade in spices and other precious articles to foreign lands. Indeed, Muziris attracted Roman merchants and businessmen in such considerable numbers that they even built here a temple of Augustus. There was also, it seems, an old Jewish colony, and a Cera king, Bhāskara Rāivarman, is recorded to have given a charter to them about the beginning of the tenth century A.D.

History

Very little is known of the history of the Ceras. The earliest reference to them occurs in II Rock Edict of Aśoka, which mentions the Keralaputas or Keralapurtras along with the Cojas (Cojas) and the Pāndyas as a frontier power (in the south). The next definite historical allusion to the Ceras is found in the Periplus and in the accounts of the geographer, Ptolemy. But unfortunately our knowledge of their political history is extremely scanty until we come to the time of Senguttuvan, whose exploits have been immortalised in the celebrated Tamil classic, Silappadikāram, written by his own monk-brother, Ilango-adigal. It is believed that Senguttuvan was a contemporary of Neṭunjēliyan Pānḍya and of Karikāla Coja’s grandson. Whatever the value of this alleged synchronism, Senguttuvan appears to have been a powerful monarch, and to have won several victories against his neighbours, although the statement that he carried his arms right up to the Himalayas has hardly any air of reality. His successor had to wage wars with the Cojas
and the Pándyas, who at one time even captured him, but ultimately he managed to escape. For the next few centuries after this event, the Ceras fade away from our view. When the curtain rises again about the commencement of the eighth century A.D., we find the Cera king engaged in a fight with Pallava Parameśvaravarman. During the latter part of this century, the Cera rulers had to face the aggressions of the Pándyas, especially of Māravarman Rājāsimha I and Neḍunjadayan Varaguna I (c. 763-815 A.D.), who conquered Konguveda and Venāda (South Travancore). With the Coḷas, however, the relations of the Ceras were friendly, and both Parāntaka I (c. 907-53 A.D.) and his namesake are said to have taken Cera princesses as their queens. About the end of the tenth century, the Cera-Coḷa relations deteriorated, for Rājarāja I (c. 985-1014 A.D.) subjugated the Cera ruler and destroyed their fleet at Kandalur. The supremacy of the Coḷas was re-affirmed by Rājendra I GaṅgaiKonda (c. 1014-44 A.D.); indeed, they continued to dominate the Cera country until the beginning of their decline in the twelfth century A.D., when Virakeśara succeeded in asserting his independence. In the thirteenth century A.D., the revival of Pándya power, specially under Jatāvarman Sundara Pándya (c. 1251-72 A.D.), again reduced the Ceras to subservience. But the sack of Madurā in 1310 A.D. by Malik Kafūr, the ever-victorious general of Alāuddin Khilji, gave a paralysing blow to the Pândyas; and Ravivarman Kulaśekhara, who had ascended the Cera throne in 1299 A.D., at once seized this opportunity and freely aggrandised himself at the cost of the Pândyas as well as of the effete Coḷas. His aggressive activities were, however, arrested by the Kākatiya king, Rudra I. After Ravivarman Kulaśekhara, none of his successors is known to have achieved any distinction; and thus the Ceras, as a power, disappear from the historian’s view about this time without ever having risen to Imperial position in Southern India.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Note—This Bibliography has been prepared specially with a view to stimulating research. We have accordingly indicated here the literature on such subjects also as have not been discussed in the present volume.

IMPORTANT ORIGINAL SOURCES

The Vedas:
Rigveda Sanhitā, ed. by Th. Aufricht (Bonn, 1877); recent ed. Svādhyāya Maṇḍala (Aundh, V. E. 1906); Yajurveda, Taittiriya Sanhitā, ed. by A. Weber (Berlin, 1871-72); Yajurveda, Kāṭhaka Sanhitā, ed. by L. V. Schroeder (Leipzig, 1900-11); Yajurveda, Maitrāyaṇīya Sanhitā, ed. by L. V. Schroeder (Leipzig, 1881-86). Yajurveda, Vājaṇeṣyī Sanhitā, ed. by A. Weber (London, 1832); Svādhyāya Maṇḍala ed. (Aundh, V. E. 1834); Sāṃaveda Sanhitā, ed. by Thomas Bentey (Leipzig, 1848); Svādhyāya Maṇḍala ed. (Aundh, V. E. 1896); Atharvaveda Sanhitā ed. by S. P. Pandit (Bombay, 1893-8); Svādhyāya Maṇḍala ed. (Aundh, V. E. 1895).

The Brāhmaṇas:
Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, ed. by Th. Aufricht (Bonn, 1879); ed. and trans. by Hug (Bombay, 1865); Kauṣīntaki (Sāńkhāyana), ed. by Lindner (Jena, 1887); Pańcavirāśa, ed. by Vedāntavāgīśa (Calcutta, 1869-74); Śatapatha, ed. by A. Weber (London, 1853); Taittiriya, ed. by N. Godbole (Poona, 1898); Gopatha, ed. by R. L. Mitra and H. Vidyābhūṣaṇa, (Calcutta, 1872).

The Āraṇyakas:
Aitareya Āraṇyaka, ed. by A. B. Keith (Oxford, 1909); Sāṁkhāyana Āraṇyaka, ed. by A. B. Keith (Oxford, 1909); Taittiriya Āraṇyaka, ed. by H. N. Apte (Poona, 1898).

The Upaniṣads:
Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad, ed. by O. Böhtlingk (Leipzig, 1889); Kāṭhaka Upaniṣad, ed. by H. N. Apte (Poona, 1889); Chāṇdogya Upaniṣad, ed. by Böhtlingk (Leipzig, 1889); Mūṇḍaka
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Upaniṣad, ed. by Apte (Ānandāśrama Skt. series, 1889); Other Upaniṣads also have been edited with commentaries in the Ānandāśrama Sanskrit series (Poona, 1895). For translations of the Upaniṣads, see F. W. Max Müller, Sacred Books of the East Series, Volumes I and XV.

The Śūtras:

(a) Śrauta Śūtras:
Sāṅkhāyana Śrauta Śūtra, ed. by Hillebrandt (Calcutta, 1888); Āśvalāyana Śrauta Śūtra, ed. by R. Vidyāratna (Calcutta, 1864-74); Lātāyana Śrauta Śūtra, ed. by Ananda-candra Vedāntavāgīśa (Cal., 1870-72); Āpastamba Śrauta Śūtra, ed. by R. Garbe (Cal., 1882); Kātyāyana Śrauta Śūtra, ed. by A. Weber (London, 1893).

(b) Grihya Śūtras:
Sāṅkhāyana Grihya Śūtra, ed. by H. Oldenberg (Indische Studien, XV); Āśvalāyana Grihya Śūtra, ed. by A. F. Stenzler (Leipzig, 1864); Gobhila Grihya Śūtra, ed. by F. Knauer (Dorpat, 1884); Pāraskara (Vājasaney) Grihya Śūtra, ed. by A. F. Stenzler (Leipzig, 1876).

(c) Dharma Śūtras:
Āpastamba Dharmaśūtra, ed. by Bühler (Bom. Skt. series, 1892, 1894); Badhyāyana Dharmaśūtra (also called Dharmaśāstra), ed. by E. Hultsch (Leipzig, 1884); Gautama Dharmaśūtra, ed. by A. F. Stenzler (London, 1876); Vasiṣṭha Dharmaśūtra, ed. by A. Führer (Bombay, 1885).

The Dharma-Śāstras:
Mānava Dharmaśāstra, ed. by J. Jolly (London, 1887); Viṣṇu Dharmaśāstra, ed. by J. Jolly (Calc., 1881); Nārada Śrīm. ed. by J. Jolly (Calc., 1885); Vaiśāvalīkya Śrīm. ed. by A. F. Stenzler (Berlin, 1849); Brihaspati Śrīm., Ānandāśrama Skt. series, Poona; Dharmaśāstra Sāhīgraśa, ed. by J. Vidyāśāgara (Calc., 1876).

The Epics:
Vālmiki Rāmāyana, ed. by P. C. Roy (Calcutta, 1881-82); North-Western Recension, ed. by Bhagvad Datta, (Lahore, 1931); Mahābhārata, ed. by P. C. Roy (Calcutta, 1882); trans.
by the same (Calc. 1883-96); Śrimanmāhābhārataṁ, based on South Indian texts, ed. by Kṛṣṇacārya (Bombay, 1906).

Works Based on the Epics:
Rājaśekhara’s Bāla-Rāmāyana, ed. by Govindadeva Śāstri, (Benares, 1869); Pracanda-Pāṇḍava or Bāla-Bhārata, ed. by Durgā Prasāda and Parab (Bombay, 1887).

Parāsas:
Agni Purāṇa, ed. by R. L. Mitra (Calcutta, 1873-79); Brahma Purāṇa, ed. by H. N. Apte (Poona, 1895); Matsya Purāṇa, Ānandaśrama Skt. series (Poona, 1907); Vāyu Purāṇa, Ānandaśrama Skt. series (Poona, 1909); Viṣṇu Purāṇa, ed. by J. Vidyāsāgara (Calcutta, 1882); trans. by H. H. Wilson (London, 1864-70); Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ed. by Nityasvātiṣṭha Brahmacārī (Brindāvana, 1916-17); Bhaviṣya Purāṇa, (Bib. Ind., 1910); Padma Purāṇa, ed. by V. N. Mandalika (Poona, 1894); Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa, Śrīvenkatesvarā Press (Bombay, 1906).

Niti and Arthaśāstras:
Kauṭilya’s Arthaśāstra, ed. by Shamasastri (Mysore, 1909); trans. by Shamasastri, 3rd ed. (Mysore, 1929); Kāmandakiya Nitisāra, ed. by Ganapati Śāstri (Trivandrum, 1912); Śukra Nitisāra, ed. by Gustav Oppert (Madras, 1882); Mitra Miśra’s Vīrāmitrodya, Chowkhambhā Skt. series, Benares; Bhoja’s Yuktikalpataru, ed. by Īśvaracandra Śāstri (Calcutta, 1917); Nilakantha’s Niti-Mayukha (Benares, 1880).

Works on Exegesis and Grammar:
Yāṣṭika’s Nirukta, ed. by R. Roth (Gottingen, 1832); Pāñcar’s Aṣṭādhyaśīl, ed. by Böhtlingk (Leipzig, 1887); Kātyāyanā’s Vārttikas; Patañjali’s Mahābhaṭya, ed. by Kielhorn, 3 vols. (Bombay, 1880-83); Jayāditya and Vāmana’s Kāśikāvritti, 2nd ed. (Benares, 1898).

Works on Astronomy:
Sūrya-Siddhānta, ed. and trans. by Whitney (JAOS., VII); The Āryabhatīya, ed. with Comm. by Kern (Leiden, 1874); Varāhamihira’s Brihat-Samhitā, ed. by S. Dhivedi (Benares, 1893-97); Varāhamihira’s Horā-Sāstrī, trans. by C. Iver (Madras, 1883); Pañca-Siddhāntikā, ed. and trans. by Thibaut and Dhivedi (Benares, 1889); Gārgī Samhitā.
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Works on Medicine:

Works on Philosophy:
Sāṅkhya-kārikā, ed. in Benares Skt. series (1883); Sāṅkhya-sūtras, trans. by Garbe (Calcutta, 188-92); Mīmāṃsā Darśana, ed. with comm. of Sābaraśvāmin (Calc., 1887); Brahma Sūtras, ed. in Anandārama Skt. series (1890-91); Vedānta-Sūtras, trans. by Thibaut in S. B. E., XXXIV; Nyāya Sūtras, Vijnanabhaṭa Skt. series (Benares, 1896); Vaiśeṣika Darśana, ed. with Comm. (Calc., 1877); Sarvadarsana Sāraṅgraha, ed. by T. Tarkavācaspati (Calc., 1872).

Lexicons:
Amarakoṣa, ed. with Maheśvara's Comm. (Bombay); Halāyudha's Abhidhānaramamālā, ed. by Aufrecht (London, 1861); Hemacandra's Abhidhāna-Gīrīman, ed. by Böhtlingk and Rieu (St. Petersburg, 1847); Śabdakalpadruma (Calc., 1889); Keśava's Kalpadrokoṣa (GOS., XI, 1928); Yadavaprakāśa's Vaiṣayanti, ed. by Gustav Oppert (1893).

Historical Romances and other Works:
Bāṇa's Hūrṣacarita, ed. by J. Vidyāsāgara (Calc., 1892); also by Führer (Bombay, 1909); trans. by Cowell and Thomas (London, 1897); Bāṇa's Kādambari, ed. by Parab (Bombay, 1896); also by Petcr Peterson (Bombay, 1900); trans. by Ridding (London, 1896); Kālhaṇa's Rājatarangini, ed. by Durgā Prasāda (Bombay, 1891); trans. by Sir Aurel Stein (London, 1900); also by R. S. Pandit (Allahabad, 1933); Jonarāja's Dvitiya Rāja- tarangini, ed. by Peterson (Bombay, 1896); Maṅkha's Śrīkaṇṭhacarita, ed. by Durgā Prasāda and K. P. Parab (Bombay, 1900); Vikramādi-Jayata or Pampa-Bhārata, ed. by Lewis Rice, (Bangalore, 1898); Padmapinī's Nāvaśāhasārkacarita, ed. by Islampurkar, Bom. Skt. series (Bombay, 1893); Bilhana's Vikramādikadevacarita, Bom. Skt. series, No. 14; Sandilyākaranandi's Rāmacarita (Mem. As. Soc. Beng., III); Jaṭaratha's Prithviśa-Jayata, ed. by S. K. Belvalkar (Bib. Ind.); Prithviśa Rāṣṭra, ed. by S. S. Das (Benares, 1904); Rāṣṭra-Sāra, ed. by S. S. Das (Benares, 1904); Nayacandra's Rāmābhamañjari; Bhāsa's Svapnavāsadattā, ed. by Gaṇapati Śāstrī,
Trivandrum Skt. series; Suhandhu’s Vasanavadatta, ed. by F. E. Hall (Calc., 1859); Kālidāsa’s Mālaviyānimitra, ed. by S. P. Pandit (1889); Kālidāsa’s Meghadūta, ed. by Hultsch (London, 1871); Kālidāsa’s Abhijñāna Sakuntala, ed. by M. R. Kale (Bombay, 1894); Kālidāsa’s Raghuvaṃśa, ed. by Stenzler (1812); Later editions by S. P. Pandit and others; Viṣṇukhaṇḍa’s Mudrārākṣasa, ed. by Hillebrandt (Breslau, 1912); also ed. by Telang (Bombay, 1893); Bhavabhūti’s Mālaviyā-Mādhava, ed. by R. G. Bhandarkar (Bombay, 1901); Bhavabhūti’s Mahāvīrmecita, ed. by F. H. Trithen (London, 1848); Bhavabhūti’s Uttarārāmacarita, ed. by S. K. Belvarkar, P. V. Kane etc.; Harṣa’s Ratnāvali, Nirnaya Sāgara Press (Bombay, 1885); Harṣa’s Viśnunanda, ed. by R. D. Karamarkar, and ed.; (Bombay, 1923); Harṣa’s Priyadarśīka, ed. by Nariman, Jackson, and Ogden (Columbia Uni. series, 1923); Śūdraka’s Mrichchakaṅkīka, ed. by J. Vidyāśāgara (Calc., 1891); Dandin’s Daśakumārīcarta, ed. by P. Banerji (Calcutta, 1888); Rājaśekhara’s Karpūrava-mañjarī, ed. by Konow and Lanman (Harvard Oriental series, 1901); Rājaśekhara’s Vīdhānasālabhaṇja, ed. by B. R. Arte (Poona, 1886); also by J. Vidyāśāgara (Calc., 1885); Kāvyamānaśā, ed. by C. D. Dalal and R. A. K. Sāstri (GOS., No. 1, 1916); Māṁśa’s Kavyaprakāśa, ed. by Jhalkikara (Bombay, 1921); trans. by G. Jhā (1915); Nāgoji’s Kavyaprādipodyota, ed. by D. Chandorkar (Poona, 1898); Sāṅgadharā Paddhati, ed. by Peterson (Bom. Skt. series, No. 35); Vallabhadeva’s Subhaṭṭatavali, ed. by Peterson (Bombay, 1886); Śrīharṣa’s Naiṣadha-carita, ed. by Sivadatta (Bombay, 1919); Kriṣṇa Miśra’s Prabodha-Candrodaya, ed. in the Nirnaya Sāgara Press (Bombay, 1898); Soodhala’s Udayasundari Kathā, ed. by C. D. Dalal and Kriṣṇamacārya (GOS., No. 11 Baroda, 1920); Prasannarāghava, ed. by Paranjiye and Panse (Poona, 1894); Somadeva’s Kathāsaritsāgara, ed. and trans. by Brockhaus, (Leipzig, 1849, 1862-66); also ed. Bomb., 1889; trans. by C. H. Tawney in Bibl. Ind., 1880-87; Kṣemendra’s Brīhatkathāmahājāri, ed. and trans. by Sylvestre Lévi in Journal Asiatique, 1885; Kathākavya, trans. by D. H. Tawney from Skt. MSS (London, 1895); Bhartrihari’s Niti and Vairāgya Sātaka, ed. and trans., Bombay, 1898; Pañcatantra, ed. by Kielhorn and Bühler, Bom. Skt. series, Trans. (Trichinopoly, 1887); Sinhāsana-dvātriśākika, ed. by J. Vidyāśāgara (Calc., 1881).

Buddhist Works:
Dīgha Nīkāya, ed. by Rhys Davids and J. E. Carpenter (P.T.S., London, 1890-1911); Angutara Nīkāya, ed. by R. Morris and
E. Hardy (Ibid., 1881-1900); Meijhima Nikāya, ed. by V. Trenckner and R. Chalmers (Ibid., 1888-99); Samyutta Nikāya, ed. by Léon Feer and Mrs. Rhys Davids (Ibid., 1884-1904); Khuddaka Nikāya; Vinaya, ed. by H. Oldenberg (London, 1879-81); Dhammapada, ed. by Sūriyagoda Sumanagal Thera (P. T. S., London, 1914); Jātakas, ed. by Faüßboll (London, 1877-97); Ayasūtra’s Jātakamālā, ed. by Kern (Boston, 1891); trans. by J. S. Speyer (London, 1891); Dipavarta, ed. and trans. by H. Oldenberg (London, 1879); Mahāvamsa, ed. and trans. by W. Geiger (P. T. S., London, 1908, 1912); Millinda-pañha, ed. by V. Trenckner (London, 1880); trans. by Rhys Davids (Oxford, 1890-94); Lalita-Vistara, ed. by Lefmann (Halle, 1902-03); Mahāvastu, ed. by Senart (Paris, 1882-97); Divyavadāna, ed. by E. B. Cowell and R. A. Neil (Cambridge, 1886); Sanskrit Buddhist Literature of Nepal, by R. L. Mitra (Calcutta, 1882); Mañjuśrīmālākhalpa, ed. by Gaṇapati Sāsiri (Trivandrum, 1925).

Jain and other Works:
Aćārāṅga sūtra, (Āgamodaya Samiti, Surat); Sūtrakritāṅga, (Āgamodaya Samiti, Surat); Samavāyāṅga, (Āgamodaya Samiti, Surat); Uttarādhiyayana, (Āgamodaya Samiti, Surat); Bhasvati Sūtra, (Āgamodaya Samiti, Surat); Bhadrabahu’s Kalpasūtra, ed. by H. Jacobi (Leipzig, 1879); Hemacandra’s Sthaviravaliyacarita, ed. by H. Jacobi (Calcutta, 1891); Hemacandra’s Parīṣṭaparvan, ed. by Jacobi; also by Jain Dharma Prasāraka Sabha, Bhavnagar; Merutūṅga’s Prabandha-Cintāmani, ed. by Jinasvijaya Muni (Sāntiniketan, 1933); trans. by C. H. Tawney (Calc., 1899); Prabhacandra’s Prabhāvākacarita, ed. by H. M. Šarma, (Bombay, 1909); Rājaśekhara’s Prabandha Kosā, (Singhi Jain series, Calc.); Jina-prabhāsūri’s Tirthakalpa, (Singhi Jain series, Calc.); Vākapātirāja’s Gaudavah, ed. by S. P. Pandit (Bombay, 1887); Dhanapāla’s Pālācchati, ed. by Bühler (Gottingen, 1879); Hemacandra’s Kumārapālacakacarita, ed. by S. P. Pandit (Bombay, 1900); Somaprabhācarya’s Kumārapālā-pratibodha (GOS., No. XIV); Jain Harivansha.

Some South Indian Works:
Maṇi-Mekkalai in its historical setting by S. K. Aiyangar (London, Luzac and Co.); The Śilappadhikāram by V. R. R. Dikshitar (Oxford, 1939); Puranāṅuru, Periyapāṇam; Nandikkalambakari, Jayangopālar’s Kalligattu-pparan; Rājarājasoḷantilā; Kulottungan-Pillaittamil; Buddhhamitra’s Virasāliquvam; Cojavanācārām.
MOSLEM WORKS:

Kitâb-ul-Hind by Alberâni, trans. by E. C. Sachau (London, 1914); Târikh-i-Firâshtâ (N. K. Press, Lucknow, 1905); John Briggs, History of the Rise of the Mahomedan Power in India; Sir H. M. Elliot and John Dowson, History of India as told by its own Historians, Vols. I-III, specially see extracts from: Chach-nâmâ by Mohamed Ali Abû Bakr Kûfî; Sulaimân’s Silsilat ur-Tawârîkh; Al Mašûdî’s Murûj ul-Zahab (Paris, 1861); Al Uthî’s Târikh-i-Yamînî, ed. by Ali and Sprenger (Delhi, 1847); Nîżâmuddîn’s Tabaqät-i-Akbarî, trans. by B. Dey, (Bib. Ind. new series, No. 1383); Minhâjuddîn’s Tabaqät-i-Nâṣîrî, trans. by H. G. Raverty (London, 1881); Ibn Asîr’s Kâtîb ur-Tawârîkh (Elliot, Vol. II); Hasan Nîzâmî’s Tâj ul Mâssir (Elliot, Vol. II); Mîr Khônâ’s Rauğät us-Sâfâ (Lucknow, 1874); Khôn Mîr’s Ḥâbbâ us-Sîyâr (Bombay, 1877).

TRANSLATIONS OF CHINESE WORKS:

James Legge, A Record of Buddhist Kingdoms being an account of the Chinese monk Fa-hian’s travels (Oxford, 1886); Herbert A. Giles, Record of the Buddhist Kingdoms (Trübner and Co., London); Samuel Beal, Buddhist Records of the Western World (Kegan Paul, London); Samuel Beal, Hwui-li’s Life of Hiuen Tsang (London, 1911); Samuel Beal, The Travels of Fa-hian (Fa-hun-ki); Thomas Watters, On Yuan Chwang’s Travels in India—(Si-yu-ki)—two vols. (London, 1904); J. Takakusui, A Record of the Buddhist Religion as practised in India and the Malay Archipelago (Oxford, 1896).

GAZETTEERS:

Imperial Gazetteer of India; Provincial Gazetteer Series; District Gazetteers.

WORKS ON CHRONOLOGY:

C. Mabel Duff, The Chronology of India (Westminster, 1899); Sitâ Nath Pradhan, Chronology of Ancient India (Calcutta, 1927); A. Cunningham, Book of Indian Eras (Calcutta, 1885); L. D. Swami Kandru Pillai, The Indian Ephemeris; B. G. Tilak, Vedic Chronology and Vedânga Jyotisa (Poona, 1925); N. Jagannadha Rao, The Age of the Mahâbhârata War (Madras, 1931); T. S. N. Sastri, The Age of Sânkara (Madras, 1916); K. N. Sivarama Pillai, The Chronology of the early Tamils (Madras, 1932).
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Works on Geography:

S. N. Majumdar, M’crindle’s Ancient India as described by Ptolemy (Calcutta, 1927); S. N. Majumdar, Cunningham’s Ancient Geography of India (Calcutta, 1924); W. H. Schoff, Translation of the Periphae Maris Erythraei; N. L. Dey, Geographical Dictionary of Ancient India (Calcutta, 1927); B. C. Law, Geographical Essays (London, 1917); Mark Collins, Geographical Data of the Raghuvamsa and the Daśakumāracarita (Leipzig, 1907).

Works on Epigraphy:

G. Bühler, Indische Paläographie (Strassburg, 1896); Indian Palaeography, Eng. Trans. by J. F. Fleet in Ind. Ant., 1904, Appendix; G. H. Ojha, Prācīna-lijī (in Hindi); A. C. Burnell, Elements of South Indian Palaeography (London, 1878); Epigraphia Indica; Epigraphia Carnatica; Reports of the Archaeological Survey of India; Numerous inscriptions have been edited in other Journals also, mentioned in the list of abbreviations; A. C. Woolner, Aśoka Text and Glossary (Oxford Univ. Press, 1924); D. R. Bhandarkar, Inscriptions of Aśoka (Calcutta, 1912); E. Senart, Les Inscriptions de Piyadasi (Paris, 1881, 1886); E. Hultsch, Corpus inscriptionum Indicarum, Vol. I (Oxford, 1923); Sten Konow, Corpus inscriptionum Indicarum, Kharoṣṭhī Inscriptions (Calcutta, 1929); A. M. Boyer, E. J. Rapson and E. Senart, Kharoṣṭhī Inscriptions (Oxford, 1920); J. F. Fleet, Corpus inscriptionum Indicarum, Vol. III (Calcutta, 1888); Robert Sewell and Krishnaswami Aiyangar, The Historical Inscriptions of Southern India (Madras Uni. Hist. Series, No. V., 1932); V. Rangacharya, Inscriptions of the Madras Presidency, 3 vols. (Madras, 1919); South Indian Epigraphy, South Indian Inscriptions; Lewis Rice, Mysore and Coorg from the Inscriptions; C. R. Krishna-ramar, Bombay-Kanāṭaka Inscriptions; (Madras, 1940); Burgess and Indraji, Inscriptions from the cave temples of Western India (Bombay, 1881); Hirālal, Descriptive Lists of Inscriptions in C. P. and Berar (Nagpur, 1916); J. Vogel, Antiquities of Chamba State (Calcutta, 1901); N. G. Majumdar, Inscriptions from Bengal (Rajshahi, 1929); see Gauḍalokabhamālā; A. P. Banerji Sastri, Early Inscriptions of Bihar and Orissa (Patna, 1927); B. M. Barua, Old Brāhmi Inscriptions in Udayagiri and Khandagiri Caves (Calcutta, 1929); B. M. Barua, Barhüt Inscriptions (Calcutta, 1926).
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Works on Numismatics:

Classical Sources and Works based on them:
Herodotus, History, ed. by C. Hude, 2nd ed. (Oxford, 1913-14); trans. by G. Rawlinson (London, 1860); also by G. C. Macaulay (London, 1904); Pliny, Naturalis Historia, ed. by C. Mayhoff (Leipzig, 1892-1909); Strabo, Geographica, ed. by A. Meineke (Leipzig, 1866-7); trans. by H. C. Hamilton and W. Falconer (London, 1854-7); J. W. M’crindle, Ancient India as described in Classical Literature (Westminster, 1907); J. W. M’crindle, Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian (Calcutta, 1906); J. W. M’crindle, Ancient Indi— Its Invasion by Alexander the Great (Westminster, 1896); J. W. M’crindle, Ancient India as described by Ktesias the Knidian (Calcutta, 1882); S. N. Majumdar, M’crindle’s Ancient India as described by Ptolemy (Calcutta, 1927); Peripitus
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Marius Erythraei, ed. by Fabricius (Leipzig, 1883); trans. by W. H. Schuff (London, 1912); Arrian, Anabasis, ed. by A. G. Roos (Leipzig, 1897); Arrian, Indica, ed. by R. Hercher (Leipzig, 1881); both trans. by E. J. Chinnock (London, 1894); Rooke, Arrian's History of Alexander's Expedition; E. A. W. Badge's Translation of the Life and Exploits of Alexander; W. W. Tarn, The Greeks in Bactria and India (Cambridge, 1958); H. G. Rawlinson, Intercourse between India and the Western World (Cambridge, 1916); H. G. Rawlinson, Bactria (London, 1912); H. G. Rawlinson, Foreign Influences in the Civilisation of Ancient India—900 B.C. to 400 A.D.; E. Pococke, India in Greece (London, 1851); Gauranga Nath Banerjee, Hellenism in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1920); Gauranga Nath Banerjee, India as known to the Ancient World (Calcutta, 1921); Bail Nath Puri, India as described by early Greek writers (Allahabad, 1939).

Tibetan Authorities:

Taraṇātha, Trans. by F. A. Schieffner (St. Petersburg, 1869).

Histories of Indian Literature:


Works on Pre-historic India:

A. C. Logan, Old Chipped Stones of India (Calcutta, 1906); P. T. Srinivasa Ayyangar, The Stone Age in India (Madras, 1926); Panchanan Mitra, Pre-historic India (Calcutta, 1921); Bruce Foote, Catalogue of Pre-historic Antiquities in the Government Museum, Madras (1901); Bruce Foote, Notes on the Ages and Distribution of Indian Pre-historic Antiquities (Madras, 1916); P. C. Bagchi, Lévi's Pre-Aryan and Pre-Dravidian India (Calcutta, 1929); A. P. Banerji Sastri, Asura India (Pam, 1926); V. Rangacharya, Pre-Musulman India, Vol. I (Madras); Sir John Marshall, Mohenjo-daro and the
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Indus Civilisation, 3 volumes, (Probsthain & Co., London); E. J. H. Mackay, Further Excavations at Mohenjo-daro, two volumes, (Govt. of India Press, 1937, 1938); E. J. H. Mackay, The Indus Civilisation (London, 1931); K. N. Dikshit, Pre-historic Civilisation of the Indus Valley (Madras, 1939); Moho Sarup Vats, Excavations at Harappa, two volumes (Govt. of India Press, 1940); L. A. Waddell, The Indo-Sumerian seals deciphered (London, 1925); G. R. Hunter, The Script of Harappa and Mohenjo-daro (Calcutta, 1932).

Works on Political History etc.

E. J. Rapson, Ancient India (Cambridge, 1916); E. J. Rapson, The Cambridge History of India (Cambridge, 1923); Allan and Dodwell, The Cambridge Shorter History of India (Cambridge, 1934); F. E. Pargiter, Ancient Indian Historical Tradition (London, 1922); F. E. Pargiter, The Purâṇa Text of the Dynasties of the Kali Age (Oxford, 1913); V. Rangacharya, History of Pre-Muslim India, Vol. II; H. C. Raychaudhuri, Political History of Ancient India, 4th ed. (Calcutta, 1938); Ratilal N. Mehta, Pre-Buddhist India (Bombay, 1939); C. V. Vaidya, Epic India (Bombay, 1907); B. C. Law, Some Kṣatriya Tribes of Ancient India (Calcutta, 1924); B. C. Law, Kṣatriya clans in Buddhist India (Calcutta, 1922); B. C. Law, Historical Gleanings (Cal., 1922); H. K. Deb, Udayana Vattarāja (Calcutta, 1919); Rhys Davids, Buddhist India (London, 1905); V. A. Smith, Early History of India, 4th ed. (Oxford, 1924); V. A. Smith, The Oxford History of India (Oxford, 1920); E. B. Havell, The History of Aryan Rule in India (London, memxviii); A. F. R. Hoernle and H. A. Stark, A History of India, 2nd ed. (Cuttack, 1904); M. Prothero and S. C. Vidyāśānta, History of India, Bk. I, (London, 1911); E. B. Cowell, The History of India, Hindu Period; W. H. Moreland and A. C. Chatterjee, A Short History of India (London, 1936); Adolf Waley, A Pageant of India (London, 1927); C. S. Srinivasacar and Ramaswami Aiyangar, A History of India (Madras, 1934); A Somayajulu, The Ancient History of India (Madras, 1935); Panchanan Ray, A Historical Review of Hindu India, 300 B. C. to 1200 A. D. (Delhi, 1939); R. D. Banerji, Pre-historic, Ancient, and Hindu India (Blackie and Son, 1934); H. G. Rawlinson, Indian Historical Studies (London, 1913); R. Sathanathalayer, A College Text-book of Indian History (Madras, 1940); N. N. Ghosh, Early History of India (Allahabad, 1939); D. R. Bhandarkar, Carnichael Lectures on the Ancient History of India (Calcutta,
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

History of the Dekkan, 3rd ed. (Calcutta, 1928); J. Dubreuil, Ancient History of the Deccan (Pondicherry, 1920); K. V. Subrahmanya Iyer, Historical Sketches of Ancient Dekhan (Madras, 1917); J. F. Fleet, The Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts (Bombay, 1899); Ranjit S. Satyashaya, Origin of the Calukyas (Calcutta, 1937); A. S. Altekar, The Rāṣṭrakūtás and their Times (Poona, 1934); B. A. Saleatore, Ancient Karnātaka, (Poona, 1936); George M. Morra, The Kadamba-Kula (Bombay, 1933); M. V. Krishna Rao, The Gaṅgas of Talkād (Madras, 1936); Lewis Rice, Mysore; Bayley, History of Gujarat (London, 1885); W. Wilberforce-Bell, The History of Kāthiawād, (London, 1916); A. S. Altekar, A History of important Ancient Towns and Cities in Gujarat and Kāthiawād (Bombay, 1926); Robert Sewell, A Forgotten Empire (London, 1900); Içvār Prasāda, History of Medieval India (Allahabad, 1925); R. C. Majumdar, The Arab Invasion of India (Dacca, 1931); M. Nazim, Mahmud of Ghaznī (Cambridge, 1931).

Works on South Indian History:

Works in Hindi:
Jayacandra Viḍyālārikāra, Bhāratīya Itiḥāsa ki Rūpārekha
(Prayāga, V. E. 1981); J. Vidyālāṃkāra, Bhāratabhūmi aur uske Nivāś (Punjab, V. E. 1988); Jayacandra Vidyālāṃkāra, Itihāsa Praveśa (Allahabad, 1941); Bisheshwar Nath Ren, Bhārata ke prācīna Rājavarṣa; Gaṅgā Prasad Mehta, Prācīna Bhārata (Kāśi, 1933); Shyām Bihārī and Sukdeo Bihārī Miśra, Bhārathavarṣa kā Itihāsa (Prayāga, V. E. 1986); Shyām Bihārī and Sukdeo Bihārī Miśra, Buddhapūrva Bhāratīya Itihāsa (Prayāga, V. E. 1986); Śrī Sampūrṇānanda, Āryon kā ādi duśā (Allahabad, V. E. 1997); Śrī Sampūrṇānanda, Sarnāt Asoka; Satyaketu Vidyālāṃkāra, Maurya Sāṃrājya kā Itihāsa (Prayāga, V. E. 1985); Gaṅgā Prasad Mehta, Candragupta Vikramāditya (Prayāga, 1932); Vāsudeva Upādhyāya, Gupta Sāṃrājya kā Itihāsa (Prayāga, 1959); Śrī Sampūrṇānanda, Sarnāt Harsavardhana (Bombay, V. E. 1977); Gaurishankar Chatterji, Harsavardhana (Prayāga, 1938); Lala Sitaram, Avodhyā kā Itihāsa (Prayāga, 1932); Rajendra Singh, Tripure kā Itihāsa; Bisheshwar Nath Ren, Rāthoron (Rāstrakūṭon) kā Itihāsa (Jodhpur, 1933); Bisheshwar Nath Ren, Rājā Bhoja (Prayāga, 1932); Chandragupta Vidyālāṃkāra, Brihātara Bhārata (Gurukula Kāngri, 1939); Gaurī Shankar Ohja, Madhyakālīn Bhāratīya Sanskriti (Prayāga, 1928); Dvivedi Abhinandan Grantha (Kāśi, V. E. 1990); Bhāratīya Anusūlana Grantha (Prayāga, V. E. 1990).

Works on Polity:

J. J. Anjaria, The Nature and Grounds of Political Obligation in the Hindu State (Longmans, Green & Co., 1935); H. N. Sinha, Sovereignty in Ancient Indian Polity (London, 1928); K. P. Jayaswal, Hindu Polity (Calcutta, 1924); Beni Prasad, Theory of Government in Ancient India, post-Vedic (Allahabad, 1927); Beni Prasad, The State in Ancient India (Allahabad, 1928); K. A. Nilakantha, The Theory of pre-Muslim Indian Polity (Madras, 1912); A. K. Sen, Studies in Hindu Political Thought (Calcutta, 1926); N. C. Bandyopādhyāya, Development of Hindu Polity and Political Theories (Calcutta, 1927); N. N. Law, Studies in Ancient Hindu Polity (Calcutta, 1914); N. N. Law, Aspects of Ancient Indian Polity (Oxford, 1921); N. N. Law, Inter-State Relations in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1920); P. N. Bandyopādhyāya, International Law and Custom in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1920); S. V. Viswanātha, International Law in Ancient India (Longmans, Green & Co., 1924); P. C. Basu, Indo-Aryan Polity (London, 1923); P. N. Banerji, Public Administration in Ancient India (Macmillan & Co., 1916); D. R. Bhandārkar, Some aspects of ancient

Works on Economic Conditions:
S. K. Das, Economic Life in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1923); M. A. Buch, Economic Life in Ancient India (Baroda, 1924); N. C. Bandhyopādhyāya, Economic Life and Progress in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1925); Punnāthā, A Study in the Economic Condition of Ancient India (pub. by Royal As. Soc., London); K. V. Rangaswami Aiyangar, Aspects of Ancient Indian Economic Thought (Benares, 1944); J. N. Samaladar, Lectures on the Economic Condition of Ancient India (Calcutta, 1922); Mrs. C. A. F. Rhys Davids, Economic Conditions in Ancient India (Economic Journal, Sept., 1901); N. S. Subba Rao, Economic and Political Conditions in Ancient India, being an Analytical Study of the Jātakas (Mysore, 1911); U. N. Ghoshal, Contributions to the History of the Hindu Revenue System (Calcutta, 1929); U. N. Ghoshal, The Agrarian System in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1930); Rādhāraman Gāngopādhyāya, Agriculture and Agriculturists in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1932); U. N. Bagchi, The Law of Minerals in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1926); Binode Bihari Dutt, Town-Planning in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1921).

Works on Education:
S. K. Das, The Educational System of the Ancient Hindus (Calcutta, 1930); D. C. Sarkar, Educational Ideas and Institutions in Ancient India, circa 11th to 10th century B. C. (Panna, 1928); N. N. Mazumdar, A History of Education in Ancient India (Macmillan & Co., 1916); A. S. Altekar, Education in
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Ancient India (Benares, 1934); F. E. Keay, Indian Education in Ancient and Later Times (Oxford, 1938); V. P. Bokel, The History of Education in India (Bombay, 1925); H. D. Sankalia, The University of Nalanda (Madras, 1934).

Works on the Position of Women:
B. S. Upádhya, Women in Rigveda, and ed. (Benares, 1941); A. S. Ahekar, Position of Women in Hindu Civilisation (Benares, 1933); C. Bader, Women in Ancient India (London, 1927); Indra, Status of Women in Ancient India (Lahore, 1941); B. C. Law, Women in Buddhist Literature.

Works on Religion and Culture:
1916); P. C. Nahar, An Epitome of Jainism (Calcutta, 1917); M. Bloomfield, The Life and Stories of the Jaina Savior Parśvanātha (Baltimore, 1919); Mrs. Sinclair Stevenson, The Heart of Jainism (Oxford, 1915); Bühler, The Indian Sect of the Jains; Amulyacandra Sen, Schools and Sects in Jain Literature (Calcutta, 1931); C. L. Shah, Jainism in North India (Longmans, Green & Co., 1921); M. S. R. Aiyangar, Studies in South Indian Jainism; S. Radhakrishnan, Indian Philosophy (Great Britain, 1921); Dunsen, System des Vedānta (Leipzig, 1881); Garbe, Philosophy of Ancient India (Chicago, 1897); F. W. Max Müller, Six Systems of Indian Philosophy (London, 1899); T. C. Hodson, The Primitive Culture of India (London, 1921); A. C. Das, Rigvedic Culture (Calcutta, 1925); A. C. Das, Rigvedic India (Calcutta, 1927); R. C. Dutt, A History of Civilisation in Ancient India (London, 1893); R. K. Mookerji, Hindu Civilisation (Longmans, Green & Co., 1936); S. Radhakrishnan, The Heart of Hinduism (Natesan & Co., Madras, 1952); S. Radhakrishnan, Hindu View of Life (George Allen, & Unwin, London, 1921); Broja Sundara Roy, Aims and Ideals of Ancient Indian Culture (Calcutta, 1938); P. K. Acharya, Elements of Hindu Culture; M. M. Kunte, The Vedic Istrades of Aryan Civilisation in India (Bombay, 1880); N. N. Law, Studies in Indian History and Culture (Calcutta, 1921); R. C. Majumdar, Outline of Ancient Indian History and Civilisation (Calcutta, 1927); A. A. Macdonell, India’s Past (Oxford, 1921); L. D. Barnett, Antiquities of India (London, 1913); R. K. Mookerji, The Fundamental Unity of India (Longmans, Green & Co., 1914); F. Max Müller, India, What can it teach us? (London, 1892).

Works on Social Conditions:

P. T. S. Aiyangar, Life in Ancient India in the Age of the Mantras (Madras, 1912); V. M. Apte, Social and Religious Life in the Grihya Šūtras (Ahmedabad, 1939); S. C. Sarkar, Some Aspects of the Earliest Social History of India (London, 1928); Ratilal N. Mehta, Pre-Buddhist India (Bombay, 1939); Richard Fick, The Social Organisation in North-East India in Buddha’s Time (Calcutta, 1920); N. C. Sengupta, Sources of Law and Society in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1924); Julius Jolly, Hindu Law and Customs (Calcutta, 1928); H. C. Chakraborty, Social Life in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1929); Chandra Chakraberty, A Study in Hindu Social Polity (Calcutta, 1925); B. K. Sarkar, Positive Background of Hindu Sociology (Allahabad, 1927); R. C. Huerta, Studies in Purāṇic Records on
Hindu Rites and Customs (Dacca, 1940).

Works on Art and Architecture:


Painting:

Percy Brown, Indian Painting (Heritage of India series); A.K. Coomaraswamy, Indian Drawings; Stella Kramrisch, A survey
GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY


Works on the Aryans:

Works on Ethnography and Castes:
Baines, Ethnography (Strassburg, 1912); W. Crooke, The Tribes and Castes of the North-Western Provinces and Oudh (Calcutta, 1896); Elliot, Races of the North-Western Provinces and Oudh; J. A. Anderson, Peoples of India (Cambridge, 1913); H. H. Risley, The People of India, 2nd ed. (London, 1915); R. P. Chanda, The Indo-Aryan Races (Rajshahi, 1916); E. Thurston and Rangachari, The Castes and Tribes of Southern India (Madras, 1909-10); M. Senart, Origin of Caste; S.V. Kerkar, The History of Caste in India.

Miscellaneous Works:
N. K. Dutt, The Aryanisation of India (Calcutta, 1925); P. Bose, Indian Teachers of Buddhist Universities (Adyar, Madras, 1923); S. C. Das, Indian Pandits in the Land of Snow (Calcutta, 1893); R. K. Mookerji, A History of Indian Shipping and Maritime Activities (Longmans, Green & Co. 1912); P. C. Chakravarti, The Art of War in Ancient India (Dacca, 1941); G. T. Dace, The Art of War in Ancient India (Oxford, 1929); Gustav Oppert, On the Weapons, army organisation and political Maxims (London, 1888); Rama Prasad Das Gupta, Crime and Punishment in Ancient India (Calcutta, 1936); H. H. Wilson, Theatre of the Hindus (London, 1871); G. A. Grierson, The Linguistic Survey of India; B. G. Tilak, The Orion (Poona, 1893).

Works on Greater India:
R. C. Majumdar, Ancient Indian Colonies in the Far East—Champa—(Lahore, 1927); R. C. Majumdar, Suvarṇadvipa
(Dacca, 1937); P. Bose, The Indian Colony of Champa (Adyar, Madras, 1926); P. N. Bose, The Hindu Colony of Cambodia (Adyar, Madras, 1927); Bijan Roy Chatterji, Indian Cultural Influence in Cambodia (Calcutta, 1928); Bijan Roy Chatterji, India and Java, pt. I, 2nd ed. (Calcutta, 1933); Bijan Roy Chatterji, Indian Culture in Java and Sumatra (Calcutta, 1927); Himansu Bhusan Sircar, Indian Influences on the Literature of Java and Bali (Calcutta, 1934); A. J. Berenck Kempers, Cultural Relations between India and Java (Calcutta, 1937); H. G. Quaritch Wales, Towards Angkor; P. C. Bagchi, India and China (Calcutta, 1927); N. P. Chakravarti, India and Central Asia (Calcutta, 1927); U. N. Ghoshal, Ancient Indian Culture in Afghanistan (Calcutta, 1928).

Modern Dictionaries:


Journals etc.:

INDEX OF NAMES

A
Ahastanoi, 158.
Abhaya Kumāra, 91.
Ābhīna, 192, 196, 219, 244, 245n, 332, 394.
Abhusūra, 122, 128, 134.
Abhīnasrī, 122, 122n.
Abu (Mount), 378, 387, 389, 390n.
Abu-Rihān Muhammad, sec Alberuni.
Abu Zaid, 318.
Acyuta (Acyū), 241.
Aṭṭāl-dīn-kā-Jhoprā, 331.
Adhirājendra, 468, 469.
Āditya I, 412, 419, 460, 484.
Āditya II Karikāla, 461.
Ādityasena, 286, 287, 289, 298n, 314, 401.
Ādityavarbhana, 292.
Ādīvarāha (temple), 451.
Ādīyarkkunallat, 470.
Ādīyastai, 128.
Ādīka, 190.
Afghanistan, 28, 84, 117, 170, 204, 207, 209, 220, 221, 222, 226, 227, 246, 279, 341.
Agalassians (Agalassoi), 136.
Agastya, 195, 438.
Agathocles, 205.
Agisala (Agēsirās), 228.
Agnimitra, 183, 187, 190.
Agrammes, 111, 131.
Agrāraṇca, 136.
Āhavamalla, see Somesvara I.

Ahīchhatra, 84, 241, 299.
Ahīrwāda, 244.
Ahmad Nīelītrī, 326, 371.
Ahmad Shab, 430.
Ahmedabad, 378, 388.
Ahoms, 353.
Aihole (Alhole-Meguti), 291n, 296, 297, 397, 402, 446.
Ain-ul-Mulk, 385.
Airāvateśvara (temple), 450.
Airikīṇa, 219.
Ajadeva, 377.
Ajanta, 9, 275, 270, 276n, 278, 278n, 399, 403.
Ajas, 30, 213n.
Ajayamara, 334.
Ajayapāla, 389.
Ajayatūja, 334.
Ajita-Kesakambalin, 97n.
Ājīvikaśa, 97n, 163, 174, 179.
Ajīka, 91.
Ajam, 7, 216, 334, 336, 341.
Akalavarga Subhatabhūga (Guja- rat branch) 409n.
Akbar, 46, 177.
Akouphis, 119.
Al Balhaki, 573.
Al Bailaman, 337.
Al Bilāluri, 7.
Al pīsūdi, 5, 518, 324, 416.
Al Uthil, 6, 342 n, 543n.
Alakhāna, 346.
Ālara (Ālām Kālāma), 86, 100.
Alāuddin (Ghuri), 329.
INDEX OF NAMES

Amma II, 414.
Ammanagdevi, 469.
Amoghavarṣa I, 349, 318, 319,
401n, 408, 409, 410, 41on
411, 416, 417.
Amoghavarṣa II, 412.
Amoghavarṣa III (Baddiga),
413.
Amohini, 214.
Amraķārlava, 253, 253n, 269.
Amsūvarman, 332n.
Amsūlkhina (Amsūlkhim), 188,
207.
Amitkina, 168.
Amitiyoka, 168.
Āmānadvardhanas, 346.
Āmāndapāla, 326, 340, 342, 371.
Āmāņgāpāla Tomara, 329n.
Ānantaslevi, 263.
Ānantavarman, 369.
Ānantavarman Cudāgā, 365,
368, 470.
Ānattis, 218, 321.
Andhau, 217, 217n.
Andhras, 3, 19, 199, 218n, 279,
320, 377, 379n, 398n.
Andhradeśa, 192, 195, 405.
Andhrapatha, 443.
Andhār, 42, 172, 191, 192, 193,
289, 392n.
Andrākotīnās, 212.
Āng-shu-fa-m, 332.
Ānga, 41, 47, 83, 85, 89, 99,
93, 97, 98, 409, 421.
Āngiyas, 194.
Angkor, 9n
Angkor Thom, 9.
Angkor Vât, 9.
Angulimalā, 92.
Anhīl-pāśaka, see Anhīlvāḍa.
Anhīlvāḍa (Anhīlvāḍa), 323,
329, 383, 385, 387, 388, 390,
418, 419, 420, 424.
Annakonda, 450.
Anigeri, 425.

Alānudīn (Khiḷiḷi), 356, 385,
390, 428, 429, 488, 491.
Alberuni, 10, 5, 127n, 339,
339n, 340, 340n, 341, 347.
Alexander, 4, 110, 111, 112,
116, 117, 118, 118n, 119,
120n, 120, 120n, 121, 121n,
122, 122n, 123, 123n, 124,
124n, 125, 125n, 126, 126n,
127, 127n, 128, 128n, 129,
129n, 130, 130n, 131, 131n,
132, 132n, 133, 134, 135,
135n, 136, 137, 137n, 138,
139, 139n, 140, 141, 141n, 142,
142n, 143, 144, 144, 145, 147,
148, 149, 150, 168-9, 184,
206, 208.
Alexanderia, 117, 118.
Aligasuladaro, 168, 169n.
Alinna, 90.
Alising-Kumar, 118.
Allahabad, 70, 83, 89, 125n,
227n, 233, 240, 242n, 246,
247, 248, 271, 278, 331, 339,
351, 365, 370, 440.
Allakappa, 85.
Allirouchades, 160.
Almora, 331.
Alor, 139, 357.
Altapas, 397.
Alvars, 435, 480.
Alwari, 43, 47, 244, 318.
Amalānanda, 428.
Amrabhujaṅga, 462, 481.
Amarakāntaka, 324.
Amaraśīma, 272.
Amaraśvatī, 231, 443.
Ambāli, 28n.
Ambaṣṭhas, 138.
Ambhi, 322, 134, 142n, 143,
148.
Amīr Khusrau, 329.
Amitrachates, 160.
Amitraksha, 160.
Amitrakhāda, 160.
INDEX OF NAMES

Antialkidas, 188, 207, 608.
Antigonos, 148, 150.
Antigonos Gonatos, 168.
Antimachus, 205.
Antiochos I Soter, 167.
Antiochos II Theos, 168, 203.
Antiochos III, 203, 203n, 209.
Antiochos IV, 204, 211n.
Anuśa, 191.
Anus, 29, 42.
Aromas, 127, 128, 144.
Apālā, 32.
Aparājitavarman, 452, 460, 484.
Aparānta, 195.
Aparāntas, 403.
Aparastamba, 19, 152n.
Aphāsā, 286, 286n, 351.
Aphsk, 299.
Apolloctos, 203, 203n, 206, 207n.
Appar, 449, 447, 453.
Appārika, 397.
Appian, 3.
Arā, 228n, 231, 232.
Arabia, 440.
Arabix, 141.
Arachosia, 130, 170, 212, 219.
Arachosis, 117.
Arbela, 117.
Ardashir Babagan, 234n.
Arda, 130, 170.
Arda, 204, 204n.
Arikeśtri Meravvarman, 483.
Arikeśtrin II, 413.
Arināya, 461.
Arīṣtās, 128.
Arīṣtās, 128.
Arjun (Mbh. hero), 66.
Arjuna (Arjuna), 314, 331.
Arjunavarman, 427.
Arjunāyanas, 284, 284n.
Arkonam, 414, 461n.
Arnährāja, 389.
Arzah, 177.
Arzian, 4, 138, 119n, 120n, 121n, 122n, 123, 123n, 124n, 1250, 126n, 127n, 128n, 129, 130n, 131, 132, 132n, 136n, 137, 137n, 138, 140, 140n, 156n, 482n.
Arsakes, 134, 202.
Artabanus I, 212.
Artatama, 38.
Arupāśā, see Arjuna.
Ārūnāshta, 273.
Ārūya, 91.
Ārūyāvarta, 241, 250.
Asa, 195.
Asandimitra, 182.
Asandivantas, 45.
Asika, 195, 200n.
Asikanagar, 200n.
Asiknā, 28, 128.
Āśmakas, 110, 119.
Āśokavardhāna (Āśoka), 162.
Aspasian (Aspasion), 118, 119, 143.
Aspavaran, 220.
Assacanus, 120n.
Asapetes, 121n.
Assaka, 84.
Assākāni (Āsvakas), 119.
Assakeros, 120.
Assam, 68, 242n, 244, 294, 298, 300, 301, 308, 314, 349, 350, 352, 353, 357, 368.
Āṣṭakarāja, 122.
Aṣṭin, 122, 122n.
Āṣvaghoṣa, 223, 229, 231.
INDEX OF NAMES

Avajjat, 121n.
Avâlânâna, 183.
Avâpata, 218.
Avâpatai Kâkaya, 47.
Avâsana, 82, 98.
Avatthâmâ (Avatthâman), 140, 184, 443.
Atakûr, 474n, 461n.
Athenaios, 160.
Atisâ, 360, 363.
Atmok, 122.
Augrâsânya, 121.
Augustus, 441, 490.
Augustus Caesar, 482.
Aurangzeb, 333.
Áya, 243.
Ávalladevi, 372.
Ávalokiteśvara, Bodhisattva, 291, 311.
Avamukta, 242.
Avamûdha, 443.
Avanîvarman II Yoga, 324.
Avantipura, 346.
Avantivardhana, 97, 109.
Avantivaran (Mauskari), 249.
Avantivaran (of Kashmir), 343, 346.
Avinâta, 453.
Ayâ, 213n.
Ayodhya, 47, 62, 63, 64, 67, 82, 103, 186, 186n, 204, 271n, 209, 391.
Ayojha (Ayodhya), 105.
Ayudhas, 317.
Ayu-te (Ayodhya), 209.
Azamgarh, 399.
Azes I, 213, 213n, 214.
Azes II, 214, 216, 219, 220.
Aziltes, 214.

B

Babylonia (Babylon), 39, 107, 141, 210.
Bacchus, 26, 113, 117, 250n, 200n, 202, 202n, 203, 204, 202n, 201, 206n, 207, 212, 220, 222.
Bâd-kambu, 444.
Bádal, 377.
Bâdili, 6.
Bádami (Bâdami), 393, 393n, 396, 402, 445, 448, 449, 451.
Bádura, 414.
Bâgâ, 87.
Bâgevâdi, 418n.
Bâgh, 276.
Baghdad, 413.
Baghekkund, 414.
Bagumâ, 413.
Bahasamitra, 200.
Bâhawalpur, 226, 244.
Bâhikas (in the N.W.), 232n.
Bâhikas (id. uncertain), 312.
Bâharanabad, 141n, 337.
Bâhman, 430, 431.
Bâimbikas, 184n.
Bairât (Bairat), 84, 177, 298.
Baithan, 179.
Bajaur, 201n.
Bakarai, 441n.
Bakerganj, 361n.
Bakhtiyâr (Khilif), 366, 366n.
Bâlândiyya (Narasimhagupta), 264.
Bâlândiyya (Identification uncertain), 274, 281, 282.
Balaputradeva, 357.
Balarâma, 344.
Balavarman (Unâ grant), 323.
Balkh, 202, 203, 253n.
Baluchistan, 15, 16, 24, 41n, 150, 170, 209, 212, 336.
INDEX OF NAMES

Bāna (Southern people), 460.
Bānabhaṭṭa, see Bāna.
Banavāsi, 395, 414, 42, 424, 433, 463.
Bandhupālīna, 182.
Bandiḥuvārman, 219.
Bang, 366.
Bangal, 359.
Bāṅkura, 443.
Banbhāra, 299, 299, 509.
Bappadeva, 443.
Barāhar, 177, 289.
Barah, 321n.
Bārāṇasī, 103.
Bārāṇapura, 386, 418.
Bareilly, 242.
Barharakhin, 339.
Bari, 326.
Baroda, 408.
Barrackpur, 364.
Bārygaza, 206.
Basadh (Basadh), 327, 371, 382.
Basābh, 86, 237.
Bāsava, 425, 426.
Bastar, 395n, 433.
Bāthagath, 243.
Baudhāyana, 39.
Bāvīrā, 321, 416.
Bāvārin, 393.
Bāveru, 107.
Bayān, 244n.
Bazira, 121.
Bazodeo, 233.
Bens, 28, 47, 129, 132.
Beunar, 404.
Begram, 224.
Beīstun, 7, 113.
Belgaun, 451, 453.
Bellary, 53, 192n, 393n, 444, 464n.
Belur, 436.
Benares, 98, 103, 109, 224, 237, 291, 299, 326, 528, 530, 534n, 563, 570, 570n, 571, 377, 379, 411n.
Bener, 42, 302n, 303, 277, 278n, 393, 404.
Berar, 188, 207.
Betwā, 244.
Bezwājā, 368.
Bhagā, 164, 177.
Bhadakacchā, 100.
Bhaddiya, 87.
Bhadrā, 407n.
Bhadrabāhu, 98, 139.
Bhagabhadra, 207, 207, 272n.
Bhagadatta, 350.
Bhagāla, 112, 131.
Bhagalpur (Bhagalpur), 83, 93, 299, 313, 359, 377n, 377n, 318.
Bhāgavata Śūṅga, 118, 190, 207, 272n.
Bhagās (Bhargas), 83.
Bhagāsthī, 233.
Bhalānasa, 30.
Bhandī (Prince), 293, 294.
Bhandī (clan), 320.
Bhāṅgugupta, 265, 266, 280, 286.
Bhārādvāja, 183.
Bhārṣaiva (Nāgas), 233, 247n, 278.
Bharata, 63, 83, 89.
Bharān, 29, 42, 47.
Bharatpur, 47, 244n.
Bhāravi, 454.
Bhās, 373.
Bhrūkacchā, 107.
Bhāskara Rāvarman, 490.
INDEX OF NAMES

Bhāskarācārya, 427-28.
Bhāsvar, 375.
Bhattinda, 325, 341.
Bhaṭṭa Halāyudha, 381.
Bhaṭṭārakas, 583, 284.
Bhaṭṭas, 320.
Bhaṭṭya, 93.
Bhaṭṭṛas, 344.
Bhavabhūti, 317.
Bhavanāga, 231, 278, 405.
Bhavnagar, 283.
Bhedā, 16.
Bhillama V, 426, 427, 436.
Bhilsa, 249, 250.
Bhim (Bhima Sāhi), 340.
Bhimśa (river), 597.
Bhimā (Kalvarta), 562.
Bhima (Sāhi), 340, 341, 348, 362.
Bhima I (Eastern Cālukya), 411.
Bhima II (Eastern Cālukya), 412.
Bhima II, Bholā (Cālukya of Gujarāt), 335, 390.
Bhūmākshi, 347.
Bhīmapāla, 340, 342.
Bhīmarathī (Bhīma river), 397.
Bhīmasena, 45.
Bhīmal, 338.
Bhitārgaon, 273.
Bhitari, 259, 261, 264, 265, 280.
Bhogavarman, 289.
Bhoja (Prathīhāra, see also Mihira Bhoja), 321, 322, 323, 345, 357, 358, 379, 409, 411.
Bhoja (Sīhārā), 452.
Bhoja (state), 336.
Bhoja II (Prathīhāra), 323, 359, 370, 374, 412.
Bhojadeva, 323n.
Bhojakas, 200, 405.
Bhojas (people), 171-2.
Bhojpur, 384.
Bholā Bhāmā, 390.
Bhopal, 384.
BhriguKacchha, 397.
Bhūmaka, 215, 216.
Bhūmīnītrā, 190.
Bhutan, 330.
Bhuvanesvar, 199, 367.
Bīla, 376n.
Bijapur, 395, 402.
Bījayagadhi, 244n.
Bījala, 412.
Bījari, 298.
Bījolī, 334.
Bīlaspur, 244.
Bīlaha, 3, 194, 421, 423, 424, 467.
Bīllari, 370n, 411n.
Bīlsad, 219, 299.
Bimā, 100.
Bimūrā, 91, 93, 94, 95, 97, 98, 108, 109, 115.
Bīrīga Vīguvārdhāna, 436, 470.
Boddo, 228.
Bodīāyana, 152n.
Bodhīsā, 100, 164, 172, 241.
Bodhiyukṣa, 90, 90n.
Bodhisattvas, 254, 370.
Bogra, 171n, 244.
Bogha-zōi, 7, 58.
Bolān, 141.
Bombay, 189n, 440.
Boro-Bodur, 8.
Boukephalā, 127, 127n.
INDEX OF NAMES

Brahma (military general) 436.
Brahmadatta (Aṅga king) 83, 93.
Brahmadatta (Brahmadattus) 46, 47, 82.
Brahmadatta (Viceny) 264.
Brahmagupta 257, 273.
Brahmagiri 177.
Brahmapāla 312.
Brahmapūrā 299.
Brahmaputtra 282, 287, 311.
Brahui 11.
Brihadratha (Pre-Maurya ruler) 83, 93.
Brihadratha (Maurya) 180, 182, 183, 184.
Brihaspati (Maurya) 182.
Brihaspati (Smriti writer) 80.
Brihadphalāyana 394.
Broach 107, 198, 206, 281, 296, 298, 320.
Buddhaghosā 88, 93.
Buddharāja 396n.
Budhagupta 265, 266, 274, 280.
Buddhānākura 443.
Bulandshahr 241, 263.
Bulis 81.
Būtuga II 413, 414, 460.
Buxar 287n.

Cæsar, Augustus, see Augustus.
Cāhamānas 323, 3290, 333, 334, 336, 386, 389.
Cakka-Kottam 468.
Cakrapālita 162.
Cakrāvyudha 317, 318, 320, 316.
Cālikya 3949.
Calkya 394m.
Cālukya Vinayaditya, see Vinayaditya.
Cālukyas 325, 364, 468, 372.
386, 388, 382, 382, 383.
384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389.
390, 392, 394, 394, 395.
396, 397, 399, 400, 401, 402.
402, 403, 403, 409, 412.
417, 418, 419, 419, 421.
421, 422, 423, 424, 426.
431, 432, 433, 435, 436, 446.
448, 449, 451, 462, 464, 467.
468, 469, 470.
Cālukyas, Eastern 370, 372.
428, 440, 469.
Cālukyas, Western 413, 417.
417n, 424, 425, 426, 427.
430, 462, 464, 465, 466, 467.
468, 469, 470.
Cambay 324, 412, 422.
Cambodia, 9n.
Cambyses I 178.
Cambyses II 178.
Camnuk 258n.
Campana (Cambārika) 372.
Cāmūndarāya 454.
Cāṇaka (Cāṇakya) 160n.
Cāṇakya 112, 147, 111, 111, 160n.
Cāṇḍ (Bānālī) 669, 577.
Cāṇḍa-Pajura 90.
Cāṇḍa (Cāṇḍa) 337.
Cāṇḍasena 237.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Candawar, Candella</td>
<td>330, 373, 374, 376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candellas, 325, 326, 330, 333, 370, 372, 373, 375n, 376, 378, 382, 388, 414, 421</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candra (of the Mehu east pillar)</td>
<td>241, 252, 252n, 253n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canafrahagha, 346</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candradeva (Gahaavadala)</td>
<td>327, 328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candraditya, 400n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candragupta 1, 238, 259, 240n, 252n, 266, 274</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chandragupta Maurya, 6, 112, 117, 121, 126, 130, 131, 132, 138, 139, 143, 145, 147, 148, 149, 149n, 150, 151, 152, 154, 156, 158, 159, 160, 163n, 172, 182, 208-9, 223, 262, 291, 299, 459</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candranila, 233n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candrapida, 343</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candranvarman, 241, 233n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cangadeva, 427</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canhu-daro, 16, 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capas, 391</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capotkata (Cavada), 386</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caraka, 231, 338</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cauvedevi, 4439</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carumati, 171, 337</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cagdana, 217, 217n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cauhams (Cathamanas), 330, 333, 335, 336, 377, 388</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cawnpore, 14, 273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cedi, 68n, 83, 318, 366, 369n, 375, 376, 377, 382, 408n, 427</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cedis, 83, 325, 369n, 372, 374, 418</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellanã, 94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Provinces (C.P.), 424, 241, 259, 263, 277, 279, 291n, 321n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cena, 343, 418, 487, 488, 490, 491</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceras, 439, 442, 437, 438, 462, 481, 488, 490, 491</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceta (dynasty), 99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceta (dynasty), 93, 99, 98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceti (Cedi), 83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceta, 83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceylon, 101n, 107, 168, 170, 171, 235, 337, 390, 393, 474, 442, 445, 417, 460, 462, 464, 466, 466, 471, 481, 484, 485, 487</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chacch, 337</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaldea, 440</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Champã (Champa), 91, 83, 94, 105</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Champaran (see also Camparan), 177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charsadda, 47, 121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chatarpur, 373</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chattriagarh, 427</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clautang, 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cherish, 26, 128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chithahara, 214, 214n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicacoec, 243</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China, 97, 221, 225, 238, 253, 276n, 277, 279, 302, 314n, 316, 331n, 333, 341, 413</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinabhuski, 216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chingleput, 12, 446, 447, 416</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinna, 196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chitaldroog, 171, 172, 177</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chitor, 204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chittagong, 244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chouang-mo, 222</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ, 58, 56, 439</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chuksha, 214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chu-li-ye (Cola), 458</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX OF NAMES

Chunar, 178.
Cidambaram, 461, 487n.
Cinas, 68.
Cirtadatta, 239.
Citrikuta, 413.
Cochin, 439, 490.
Codagangā, 368, 369n.
Coimbatore, 484, 490.
Colamahārā, 479.
Colamandalam, 439, 417.
Combodia, 277n.
Comilla, 244.
Confucius, 97.
Conjeeveram, 243, 398, 400, 444, 444.
Constantine, 177.
Constantinople, 419.
Coorg, 462, 463.
Corinth, 169n.
Coromandel, 439.
Cosmas Indicopleustes, see Indicopleustes, C.
Cranganore, 441.
Cādīsama, 386, 388.
Cuddapah, 12, 419, 487.
Cūlya (Cola), 458.
Cumuri, 30n.
Curtius, 110, 111, 119n, 120n, 122n, 123n, 124n, 125n, 130n, 131, 131n, 133, 135n, 136, 156n, 157, 157n, 158, 141n.
Cutch, 57, 217, 217n, 218, 386.
Cyrene, 168.
Cyrus, 113.
Cyrus II, 113.

D

Dacca, 244.
Dadda II, 285, 296.
Dāhala (Dahāla), 323, 370, 388.
Dāhir, 337.
Daivaputra-Sahi-Sahānuwałih, 246, 259.
Danāmarī, 216.
Dakaśa-Koemā, 381.
Dakṣināpatha, 68, 193, 218, 245, 394, 444.
Dalavanur, 447, 453.
Damana, 243.
Dāmaras, 346, 348.
Damirka, 458n.
Dāmodara gupta, 286, 286n, 287, 287n, 289.
Dāmodara gupta (author), 345.
Dāmodara pur, 257, 265.
Dāmodar, 245.
Dāndabhukti, 360, 464.
Dāndakāranyā, 393.
Dāndin, 450, 454.
Dāntilūrga, Rāstrakūta, 319, 403, 403n, 405, 405n, 416, 431.
Dāntiga (Dantivarm), 407, 452.
Dantivarna, 404, 407, 451, 452.
Daphne, 211n.
Dara dādela, 344.
Dārāyavuṣṭa, 115.
Darbāpāni, 357.
Dardistan, 344.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Darius (Darius I)</td>
<td>7, 115, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darius III K odomonnos</td>
<td>116, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darjeeling</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darśaka</td>
<td>89, 108, 108n, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darvābhīsāra</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daśāpurā</td>
<td>239, 263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daśarathā</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daśarathā (Aśoka's grandson)</td>
<td>179, 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daśāraṇa</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dattaśevī</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dattāśmitrī</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daulatībhād</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daulatīpurā</td>
<td>321n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dayāvīśāra</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debil</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deccan (Dekkan)</td>
<td>192, 243, 243n, 277, 278, 375, 442n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dehli</td>
<td>171, 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dēmachiōs</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delhi</td>
<td>45, 67, 84, 232, 276, 328, 329, 329o, 334, 335, 336, 341, 374, 429, 437, 489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dēmētrios</td>
<td>185, 200n, 203, 203n, 204, 204n, 205, 209, 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dēmētrios II</td>
<td>205n, 207n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dendulūrū</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deo-Barnārk</td>
<td>281, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deogaṇḍi</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deoli</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deopāṭā</td>
<td>364, 365, 365n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devabhūmi</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devabhūti</td>
<td>189, 189n, 190, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devālattā</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devāgarī</td>
<td>272n, 329, 390, 425, 426, 428, 429, 436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devagupta</td>
<td>287, 289, 293, 294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Davāka</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devaki</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devapāla (Pāla)</td>
<td>321, 333, 557, 558, 563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devapāla (Pratihāra)</td>
<td>325, 374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devapāladēvā</td>
<td>558n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devapāla Khattiyā</td>
<td>171, 531</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devāpi</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devarāṣṭra</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devavarman (Candella)</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devavarman (Maurya)</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanabhūti (Dhanadeva)</td>
<td>186n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanadeva</td>
<td>186n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanananda</td>
<td>111, 147, 147n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanādāya</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanādāya (author)</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanapāla</td>
<td>318, 431n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanāga</td>
<td>374, 375, 375n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanavantari</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanayakūta</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanavīśāra</td>
<td>266, 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhar (Dhar or Dhār)</td>
<td>7, 372, 378n, 380, 381, 383, 384, 385, 388, 420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharanikotta</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharapatta</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharasena I</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharasena IV</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharma (Dharmapāla)</td>
<td>318, 356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharmapāla</td>
<td>317, 320, 331, 336, 337, 357n, 363, 407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharmapāla (Buddhist teacher)</td>
<td>449, 451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharmapāla (of Daṇḍa-bhukti)</td>
<td>454</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharmarāja Ratha</td>
<td>449, 456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhārvāda (Dhārvāda or Dhārvāda)</td>
<td>409, 425, 427, 433n, 436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhauyll</td>
<td>113, 171, 172, 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhāvakā</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhillika</td>
<td>329n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhīmān</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhoyika</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX OF NAMES

Dhridhavarman, 89.
Dhritaśrtra, 66, 67.
Dhruva (Rāstrakūta), 317, 318, 320, 326, 406, 408n, 407.
Dhruva II, 409, 410n.
Dhruva II Dhārāvarṣa, 409n.
Dhruva Nirupama, 379, 406, 434.
Dhruvabhaṭa, 284, 285, 296, 301, 308.
Dhruvadevi, 248, 249, 258, 259, 266.
Dhruvasena I, 284.
Dhruvasena II, 284, 285, 296, 301.
Dhruvasvāminī, 258.
Dhunī, 30n.
Diddā, 341, 348.
Didiga, 434.
Dieng, 8.
Dīgha-Cārāyanā, 92.
Dīnāga, 271, 434.
Dīlwārā, 390n.
Dīmitra, 200n.
Dinajpur, 244, 265, 319.
Diodorus (Siculus), 4, 120, 120n, 121, 122n, 126n, 133, 136n, 138, 138n, 139n, 141n.
Diodotus (I), 202, 203.
Diodotus II, 203.
Dion, 188, 207.
Dionysos, 117, 119.
Divodāsa, 31n.
Divyoka (Divya), 361, 362.
Diya, 188, 207.
Doab, 45, 84, 181, 317, 318, 326, 330, 336, 407, 408, 412, 421.
Dohad, 216n.
Doxares, 124.
Dramilas, 431.
Draupadi, 67.
Drīśadvati, 28.
Drona (Dronācārya), 140, 184, 443.
Dronasimha, 284, 284n.
Druphyus, 29, 42.
Dummukha (Durmukha), 84.
Durgā (princess), 297n.
Durlabhaka, 344.
Durlabhārī, 386.
Durlabhavardhana, 344.
Durviniśta, 397n, 434, 434n, 435.
Durvodhana, 66, 67.
Dustārī, 44.
Dvaiṣapāyaṇa Vāṣṭa, 65.
Dvārakā, 83.
Dvārasamudra, 425, 433, 436, 471, 472.
Dyrta, 121.

E

Eastern Gaṅgas, see Gaṅgas, Eastern.
Egypṭ, 16, 168, 440.
Ekhaṇa, 158.
Elam, 16, 20, 24, 25.
Elāputra, 406.
Elēsa, 457.
Elichpur (Ellichpur), 404, 429.
Ellora, 401n, 403, 403n, 406, 416.
Ellore, 243.
Embisaṭos, 122n.
Embolida, 121.
Ephthalites, 279.
Epirus, 169.
Eran, 259, 263, 266, 280.
Erandapalli (Erandapalla), 245.
Erandol, 243.
Eranmobaos, 155.
Ereyaṅga, 435.
Eteḥ, 299.
Etwah, 350.
Eutamēs, 142n, 148.
Eukratides, 205.
Eukratides, 204, 205, 203n, 207, 207n, 209, 219.
INDEX OF NAMES

Bumenes, 148.
Euthydemia, 205.
Euthydemos, 203, 204, 204n, 205.

F
Fa-hian, 1, 175, 227n, 253, 253n, 254, 255, 256, 269, 274, 277, 509n.
Farrukhabad, 46.
Fatehpur, 299.
Fazilpur, 86.
Firishna, 6, 234, 235n, 243n, 333n, 362n, 341n, 342n.
Firoz, 280.
Fyzabad, 328.

G
Gadadhara, 360.
Gadara, 115.
Gadwal, 450.
Ganapatia, 427, 430, 472, 487.
Ganda, 326, 375, 376, 376n.
Gandak, 46n, 47, 333.
Gandaraditya, 461.
Gandaria, 128.
Gandhara, 47, 84, 94, 113, 169, 180, 203, 201, 210, 213, 222, 226, 229n, 230, 231, 233, 293, 335.
Gandhharas, 84, 175.
Gandhulris, 57.
Ganga (chief), 397n, 406, 407, 410, 413, 414, 434, 451, 452, 460, 484.
Ganga (Gangers), 28, 41, 369.
Ganga (Gangeyadeva), 326, 371.
Gangai-Konda (title), 465.
Gangai-Konda-Colapuram

(Gangai-Konda-Colapuram), 417, 419n, 465, 477, 478, 479.
Gangakundapuram, 461.
Gangapuri, 439n.
Gangaridai (Gangaritai or Gangaritai), 133, 133, 134.
Gangas, Eastern, 367, 368, 368n, 369.
Gangas (or Talkād), 397, 398n, 407, 433, 454, 435, 484.
Gangas, Western, 460.
Gangavadi, 397, 403, 407, 408, 409, 434, 462, 470.
Gangeya (Gangeyadeva), 371.
Gangeyadeva (Cci), 326, 360, 370, 371, 376, 372, 419n.
Ganjam, 171, 177, 244, 247n, 245, 296, 298, 299, 300, 314, 314n, 367.
Gärli, 49.
Garthwal, 244, 299.
Gaudas, 289, 314.
Gaugarnela, 117.
Gauhati, 350, 355.
Gautama, 19, 101, 60, 61, 132n.
Gautamiputra Satakarni (Gautamiputra), 193, 194, 195, 217, 217n, 218, 278, 394.
Gavinath, 177.
Gedrosia, 141, 150, 170n.
Ghātopca, 238, 266.
Ghātopcagupta, 239.
INDEX OF NAMES

Ghazipur, 299.
Ghaznavides, 339.
Ghazni (Ghazni), 329, 371, 387.
Ghor, 390.
Ghosa (Sunga), 190.
Ghosa, 21.
Girivraj, 83, 93, 93n, 109.
Gimar, 171, 173, 177, 262.
Gluanakai (Glanucukayana), 127.
Glausai, 127, 128, 144.
Gna, 431, 433n, 436.
Goalpadra, 350.
Gobi (desert), 255.
Goethe, 30.
Goggiraja Calkka, 382n.
Goharwa, 371n.
Gola, 356n.
Gollas, 283.
Gomal (Gomati), 28.
Gonanda, 344.
Gonarda, 188.
Gonda, 82.
Gondophares (Gondophernes), 220, 222n.
Gondophernes, 214, 220, 222n, 222.
Gonds, 373.
Gondwana, 242.
Gopa (Gopadri), 375.
Gopa, 100.
Gopadri (Gopa), 375.
Gopala (of Avanti), 91.
Gopala (of Gaudhpura), 327, 327n.
Gopala (Pala), 355.
Gopala II, 359.
Gopalavaran, 341, 347, 348.
Gopalpur, 224.
Goparaja, 266, 280.
Gorakhpur, 86, 101, 224, 321.
Gotama (Buddha), 100, 100n, 101.
Gotama Raghuna, 46n.
Gotamakas, 97n.
Govinda (chuftrain), 397, 397n.
Govinda I (Rashtrakuta), 404.
Govinda II (Prabhutavara), 406.
Govinda IV, 412, 413.
Govindacandra (Guhadavala), 328, 328-9, 329, 388.
Govindacandra (of Vangaladesa), 360, 464.
Govindagupta, 358.
Govindapala, 362.
Govisnata, 299.
Grahamvaran Maukhari, 287, 289, 290, 293.
Greece, 130, 143, 210, 271.
Gudana (Guduphara), 220n.
Guduvhara (Guduphara), 220, 220n.
Guhilas, 325.
Gunacandra, 248.
Gunacliya, 199.
Gunambodydeyva, Kalacuri, 321.
Guntur, 443n.
INDEX OF NAMES

Guptas, Later, see Later Gu-
tas.
Gurjaras, 292, 299, 315, 318
319, 322, 323f, 340, 346,
352, 357, 374, 376, 395, 397,
407, 408, 413.
Gurkhas, 333.
Gushana, 221n, 223n.
Gūvaka I, 334.
Gwaliar, 241, 276, 299, 3190,
321, 323, 326n, 371, 376, 382.

H
Hagāmana, 214.
Hagāna, 213.
Hages, 125n.
Hahayas, 84, 110, 358, 369,
370n, 401.
Hajib Tughātigin, 328.
Hajjar, 337.
Hāla, 190, 199.
Halebid, 436, 437.
Halla, 95.
Halal, 435.
Hammīrā, 342.
Haurisavega, 394.
Han, 225.
Hangal, 433n.
Hansot, 330n.
Hanumakonda, 433.
Harāhā, 286, 288, 290, 334-
Harapāla, 429.
Harappa, 16, 170, 18, 22, 220,
23, 24.
Harā (of Kanauj), 285, 287,
291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296,
297, 297n, 298, 299, 300,
300n, 301, 302, 303, 304,
305, 306, 306n, 307, 308,
309, 309n, 310, 311, 312,
313, 314, 315, 316, 311, 312,
397n.
Harā (of Kashmir), 349.
Harā (place-name), 334.
Harṣadeva (Candella), 323, 373,
412.
Harṣagupta, 286.
Harṣavardhana (Harṣa of
Kanaui), 285, 287, 291, 332,
337, 394, 397.
Harasola, 378.
Haricandra, 319.
Harirája, 336.
Hariscandra, 330.
Harṣena (poet), 240, 272.
Harṣena (Vākāṭaka), 279.
Hariti, 394, 395, 417.
Harivamana, 433.
Harjana, 333n.
Harṣyaṅka-Kula, 95.
Hasan (district), 436.
Hassan Nizāmi, 6.
Hasti, 122.
Hasṭināpura, 45, 67, 83, 84.
Hasṭivarman, 243.
Hāthugumpha, 7, 111, 194,
199, 200n, 243, 282.
Hatthinipura (Hasṭināpura), 84.
Hayamukha, 299.
Hazārā, 154, 170, 177, 344, 347.
Helioderes, 207.
Heliodorus (Heliodora), 188,
207, 211.
Hellas, 116.
Hemacandra, 4, 147n, 189.
Hemādpant, 428.
Hemādri, 428.
Hephaestion, 118, 122n, 136.
Herakles, 117, 144, 482.
Herubapāla, 324.
Hent, 170, 170.
Hermæus, 208, 222.
Herodotus, 1, 4, 116.
Hi-thun, 222.
Hien-mi, 222.
Himālayas, 14, 29, 42, 67, 169,
171, 219, 282, 298, 321, 331,
334, 337, 392, 400.
Himavant, 29.

Hind. 333.

Hindu-kush, 118, 120, 170, 172, 202, 203, 204.

Hindustan, 333.

Hippalus, 440.

Hippocrates, 214.

Hiracladi, 443n., 444, 445.

Hiran, 440.

Hiranyavarman, 431.

Hittites, 38.

Hüen Tsung (emperor), 345.

Hiung-nu, 221, 222, 279.

Homer, 209.

Hooghly (Hoogly), 14, 360.

Howrah, 360.


Huṣkapura (Huṣkpur), 233, 233, 343.

Huviska, 232, 233, 343.

Huviskapura, 233.

Hydaspes, 123, 127n., 134, 136, 145.

Hyderabad, 276, 418n., 426.

Hydroates, 128.

Hyphasis, 126n., 129, 130, 130n., 131, 132, 133, 134, 1340, 1331, 133.

Hwui-li, 226, 291.

I

Ibn-ul-Akhir, 6.

I-ch'a-fon-mo, 316.

Iditrusinădu, 463.

Ikevâku, 47, 63, 434.

Ikevâkus, 110, 196, 396.

Ilam-Tiraiyan, 442.

Ilango-badulgal, 490.

Ilānjetoceníni, 438.

III, 22.

Indapatta (Indarpat), 84.

Indarpat (Indraprastha), 67.

Indicopleustes, Cosmas, 283.

Indor, 263.

Indra (founder of the Gujarat branch), 409n.

Indra I Prachakarṣa, 404.

Indra III (Nityavarṣa), 324, 339, 379, 411, 412, 413, 417.

Indra IV, 417, 418.

Indrapālita, 182.

Indraprastha, 67, 84.

Indrapura (Indor), 263.

Indrarāja (Indrarāja II), 404.

Indrarāja (Indrāyudha), 336.

Indraratha, 382.

Indrāsthana, 328.


Ipsos, 130.

Irāgudi, 171, 177.

Iran, 7, 220, 337, 399.

Irāvatī, 28, 128.

Īśānavarman Maukhari, 286, 289, 334.

Isilā, 172.

Īśvaradatta, 219.

Īśvarasena, 394.

I-tsing, 1, 164, 238, 238n., 239, 286.

J

Jagadekamalla II, 424.

Jagattunga, 411.

Jalpur, 43, 47, 84, 177, 244.

Jaitrapāla I, 427.
INDEX OF NAMES

Jaitugi, 427.
Jayalla, 427.
Jaimagar, 569.
Jala Jatukarnya, 47n.
Jalalabad (Jalalabad), 118n.
170, 342.
Jalandhar (Jalandhara), 186.
229n, 244, 298.
Jalauka, 179, 180, 182, 543.
Jalhana, 428.
Jambudvipa, 167.
Jamuna (Jumna), 530.
Janka, 46, 49, 63, 86.
Janakpur, 46n, 86.
Janamejaya, 45, 68.
Jaršandha, 83, 93.
Jaso, 242n.
Jayavarman Kulaśekhara, 486.
Jayavarman Sundara, 464.
Jayavarman Viśva Pāṇḍya, 487.
Jatilakas, 97n.
Jatiṅga-Rāmeshwar, 177.
Jaugada, 171, 177.
Java (Jāvā), 8, 90, 233, 277n, 309n, 318.
Jaxartes, 212, 222.
Jayacandra, 329, 330, 330n.
334, 356, 366.
Jayadāman, 217.
Jayatātra, 265.
Jayadeva (author), 313, 366.
Jayadeva (of Nepal), 442.
Jayagondan, 470.
Jayagondār (Jayagondan), 4.
Jayakeśin, 423.
Jayagondāśolapuram, 488.
Jayanta, 345.
Jayapāla (Pāla prince), 353.
353n, 357.
Jayapāla (Śāhi), 323, 340, 341.
371.
Jayāpida Vinayaśāliya, 317, 343.
Jayaraththa, 4.
Jayāsakti, 371.
Jayasena, 300n, 312.
Jayasimha (governor of Lāṭa), 400n.
Jayasimha (of Kashmir), 318.
Jayasimha (of Mālava), 364.
420, 422.
Jayasimha (Vātapi Cālukya), 59t.
Jayasimha (Vikramādiya VI's younger brother), 423, 424.
Jayasimha I (Eastern Cālukya), 398.
Jayasimha II (Cālukya), 382.
382n, 419n.
Jayasimha II Jagadekamalla, 419, 420, 464.
Jayasimha Siddharāja, 388.
389, 389n.
Jayavarman (Paramān), 424.
Jayendravyahāra, 348.
Jejā, 375.
Jejākahukti, 325, 375, 374.
Jethamitra (Jyeṣṭhamitra), 187.
Jhang, 157.
Jhansi, 273, 277.
Jhelum, 28, 113, 1260, 134.
343, 346.
Jhīkār-dāro, 16, 24.
Jimūtavāhana, 431.
Jinasena, 410.
Jñitagupta I, 286.
Jñitagupta II, 281, 286, 287,
316.
Jāññēvana, 428.
Jñātrikas, 83.
Jodhpur, 329, 388.
Jogadhamba, 195, 216.
Johīvārā, 244.
Jubbulpur, 14, 177, 370.
Jumna, 29, 30, 43, 67, 83, 84.
89, 308, 517, 356, 373, 457.
Junagadh (Junagadh or Junagadh or Junāgarh), 149, 171.
176n, 177, 195, 196, 216n,
217, 261, 292n, 271, 323.
INDEX OF NAMES

Jūnāhī, 233n.
Junaid, 337.
Junnar, 216, 216n.
Jura (see also Jūzī), 338.
Justin, 5, 120n., 126, 126n., 146,
149, 205, 207, 207n.
Jūzī, 318.

K
Kabul, 28, 117, 118, 118n., 121n.,
142, 150, 170, 205, 206, 208,
212, 213, 222, 224, 233, 339,
341.
Käçu, 240n., 240n.
Kaccha, 57, 386.
Kacchataghūltās, 323, 382, 421.
Kacchi (Kāñchī), 424.
Kadambas, 397, 397, 452, 453n.,
Kadilam (Kādiṃṭh), 463, 468.
Kādhphises (I and II), 224n.
Kādhphises, Vīma, 222, 224.
Kādhphises, Wēma, 221n.
Kādhphises I (see also Kiṭhās Kādh-
phises), 220n., 221n., 223n.
Kadungōn, 483.
Kafiristan, 270, 286.
Kalīn, 263, 270n.
Kahla, 321n.
Kalīgās, 66.
Kalīgīyī, 63.
Kalīṣa, 381.
Kalīṣanātha (temple), 410, 456.
Kairā, 283n.
Kairītasa, 361, 362.
Kajangala, 300.
Kākasa, 243.
Kākatab, 429.
Kākastāyās, 398n., 427, 428, 429,
430, 431, 472, 488, 491.
Kākavarpa (Kālāśoka), 109n.,
110, 113.
Kākhāndīkā, 417n.
Kākṣālā (Kākṣa II), 415.
Kakusthavārman, 432n., 433.
Kalāburās, 401, 443, 483.
Kalācīras, 279, 321, 360, 369,
369n., 371, 372, 373, 376,
380, 381, 383, 384, 387,
388, 388n., 396, 411, 423,
419, 419n., 420, 421, 425,
426.
Kalāhasti (Kālaḥasti), 460, 479.
Kalāmas, 85.
Kalāfija, 283n., 342, 374, 375,
376, 377, 413.
Kalānās (Kālayāśa), 144.
Kālāśoka, 109n., 110, 114.
Kalawān, 213n., 214n.
Kales Dewar, 488.
Kalayāśa, 4, 170, 343, 344, 347.
Kalī (yoga), 432n.
Kalīśās, 2, 274, 276n., 313.
Kalīndī, 261, 377.
Kalīṅga, 57, 89, 111, 160, 163,
170, 171, 174, 177, 178, 186,
192n., 194, 198, 200, 219,
220, 232, 252, 257, 268,
369, 369n., 377, 391, 397,
398n., 405, 430, 462, 468,
470, 482.
Kalīṅganagara, 367.
Kalīṅgapatam, 367.
Kalīṅga, 110, 163n., 164, 224.
Kallat, 340.
Kallatt, 442.
Kalpakā, 111.
Kālpi, 412n.
Kalsī, 171, 177.
Kālayāsa (Kālayān or Kālayāña)
198, 417, 417n., 422, 423,
426, 435, 468.
Kālayānakapaka, 383, 384n.
Kālīyaravārman, 432n.
Kālīyāni, 382, 417n., 422.
Kāmūkhyā, 355.
Kamlū, 340, 341, 347.
Kamlukā (Kamilū), 347.
Kāmbārupa, 363, 369.
INDEX OF NAMES

Kamboja (family), 339.
Kamboja (state), 84.
Kambojas, 68, 84, 171.
Kambuja, 8.
Kāmbuliya, I, 115.
Kāmbuliya II, 115.
Kāmpiliya, 42, 43, 84.
Kāntisa, 83, 91.
Kanāda, 312.
Kanakagiri, 172.
Kanāra, North, 393, 397, 423, 465.
Kanāra, South, 436.
Kāncipura (see also Kānci), 398, 446, 449, 451.
Kandahar, 117, 150, 270, 272.
Kandalar, 492, 493.
Kaneṣka, 226n.
Kangra (Kangra), 346, 370, 371.
Kanha (Kriṣṇa Sātvāhama), 193.
Kanhabenda, 200.
Kanharā (Kriṣṇa Yādava), 428.
Kanheri, 196, 417.
Kanik, 227n, 339.
Ka-ni-sī-ka, 227n.
Kaniṣka, 8, 223, 224, 224n, 225, 226, 226n, 227, 227n, 228, 228n, 229, 230, 231, 232, 234, 339, 345.
Kaniṣka (of Atā Insć.), 231, 232, 232n.
Kaniṣkapura, 228.
Kānispūr, 228.
Kamanur-Koppam, 487.
Kannara (Kriṣṇa I Rāṣṭrakūṭa), 405.
Kāntu, 222.
Kāntipuri (Kantit), 233.
Kānya, 434.
Kāṇvas, 189, 190, 191, 193.
Kanvāyanas (Kanvās), 189, 190.
Kāņyakubja (Kanauj), 284, 293, 300, 327, 372, 374, 379, 382, 397, 421.
Kān-fu, 222.
Kapila, 312.
Kapilavastu (Kapilavatthu), 83, 100, 213, 256, 298.
Kapīsā, 170, 226, 298, 340.
Kapittha, 290.
Karakōtakas (Karkoṭaka line), 313, 344, 345, 346.
Karamilanda, 217n.
Karanbela, 371n.
Karanda-Venu-Vana, 94.
Karandeva Vaghela, 590.
Karatai, 213n.
Karikāla, 443, 458, 461, 478, 490.
Karka I, 404.
Karka II (governor of Lāṇa), 405.
Karka II (Kakkala), 413, 418.
Karka-Suvarnavarṣa (Karkarāja), 408, 409n.
Karkarāja 408, 409.
Karl, 198, 216.
Karmmâna, 244.
Karmâ (of Anhilwâda), 384 (?), 387, 388, 388n.
Karul, 322, 323.
Karnâ, 428, 430, 465.
Karnâtaka, 353, 404, 405n, 433.
Karnâtaka, 360, 380, 382, 384.
Karnâvâlî, 371n.
Karnool (Karul), 467.
Karnul, 11n, 13, 391n, 404.
Karnâya (Laksmi-Karnâ), 360.
Karrel, 428.
Kart, 184.
Karrarpur, 244.
Kâravîrya Arjuna, 369.
Kartâripurâ, 244.
Karnâkara Tejâshâman, 470.
Kânuvâki, 182.
Kântandâ, 116.
Kakakkudi, 446, 451.
Kasigar, 223, 226.
Kashipur, 299.
Kâli, 41, 42, 46, 47, 49, 68n, 82, 83, 85, 91, 93, 95, 96, 107, 253, 328, 377, 388.
Kasia, 86, 101.
Kâšiputra Bhâgabhâdrama, 188, 207.
Kâśîn, 47n, 110.
Kasîttes, 39.
Kâsyapa, 134n.
Kâşîcûrîs, 369.
Kâșâha, 463, 464.
Kâthaians (Kâthas), 128, 129, 135, 144.
Kâthas, 128.
Kâthiyâvâdâ, 321, 322, 381.
Kâthâmanâdu, 331.
Kâmûràjâ, 244.
Kâpyâna, 391, 439, 477, 481.
Kaurava, 68, 330.
Kauśalyâ, 63.
Kauśâmbi (Kosambî), 42, 43, 83, 89, 90, 105, 172.
Kauṭilyâ, 127, 140, 150, 151, 152n, 153, 156, 158n, 165n, 209, 459, 481.
Kâveri, 399, 434, 445, 450, 473, 460, 478, 478n.
Kaveripaddanam, 441, 447.
Kâyal, 441n, 481.
Kedâra Mâsa, 337.
Kekaya, 47.
Kela, 16, 24.
Kerul, 373.
Keralaputras (Keralaputras), 168, 171, 393, 439, 490.
Keralâs, 324, 380, 399, 414, 459, 464, 484, 489.
Kesaputta, 83.
Kesârîs, 367.
Kesâvasena, 361n.
Kesâni, 86.
Ketas, 344.
Kevâvarṣa Yuvarâja I, 413.
Khejurâho, 321n, 374, 377.
Khalatse, 223n.
Khâlimpur, 355, 377n.
Khâîatika, 160n.
Khambâyâ, 407.
Khandesh (Kândesh), 427.
Kharapullâ, 227.
Khâmparkhâs, 425.
Kharavela, 7, 186, 194, 199, 200, 207, 482.
Kharepan, 431.
Kharpars, 243.
Khawat, 233n.
Khedâ, 385n.
Khêdâpur, 421n.
Khôh, 287n.
Khond Mîr, 6.
Khotan, 225, 226, 233.
Khotîtâ, 379.
Khotîtiga, 415.
Khôshayrarhâ, 116.
Khurasan, 202.
Khusrav Malik, 329.
Khushru II, 399.
Khushru Khan, 488.
Kia-ni-se-kia, 227n.
Kia-pi-shi, 340.
Kidar Kushans, 234.
Kieou-tsieou-klo, 222.
Kîkâpa, 30n.
Kîjîvāvan, 442.
Kim-chi-pu-lo, 449.
Kî-ni-kâ, 227n.
Kîpin, 222.
Kîra, 316, 379, 377.
Kirata, 68, 321, 332.
Kirîrâjâ, 382, 382n.
Kirîrvâman II, 401, 403, 417.
Kirîrvâman Candella, 372, 376.
Kirîrvâman (early Calukya), 395, 396, 396n.
Kleophas, 120, 120n.
Koccadayan Râpadhiram, 484.
Kocchengan, 438.
Koh-i-Mor, 119.
Kôinos, 130n, 122.
Kokâla I (Cedi), 369, 369-370, 370, 411.
Kola, 336n.
Kolahâla, 368.
Kolar, 368, 434.
Kolern, 466, 478.
Kolhâpur, 427, 432, 432n, 467.
Koliyas, 86, 88.
Kollam, 462.
Kollâpur, 467.
Kollipākkâ, 463.
Konganivarmam, 434.
Konguda, 298, 300.
Kongu (Kongudeśa), 490.
Kongudeśa, 460, 484, 487, 491.
Kophaios, 121n.
Kophen, 121n.
Kopili, 444.
Koppan, 421, 421n, 456.
Kopperumânga, 472, 487.
Korâda (Korâla), 242.
Korâla, 242, 443.
Korkai, 441n, 481.
Košala, 41, 43, 46, 460, 47, 64, 65, 68n, 82, 89, 91, 92, 98, 111, 242, 279, 332, 350, 373, 381, 391n, 397, 401, 423, 424.
KOśalâdevi, 91, 93, 97.
KOśalâmâdu, 464.
KOśalâs, 47n, 57, 374.
KOṣam (KOṢambli), 83, 89.
KOŚI, 531.
KOṬAHA, 289, 326.
KOṬṭûra (KOṭhoor), 242, 243.
KOŬ-I-CHOUANG, 222.
KOŬ-VENNI, 418.
KOŬZOULO KADAPHE, 222.
KRANGANUR, 490.
KRATERS, 123, 136, 411.
KRISNÂ (district), 196.
KRISNA (Mbh. hero), 67n, 71, 144, 198, 261, 426.
KRISNÂ (river), 192, 193, 200, 279, 392, 421n, 426, 427, 436, 438, 467.
KRISNA (Sâtavâhana), 193.
KRISNA (YÂdava king), 428.
KRISNA I, 403, 403n, 406, 416.
INDEX OF NAMES

Krīṣṇa II, 322, 370, 411, 417.
Krīṣṇa Mitra, 376.
Krīṣṇagupta, 286.
Krīṣṇarāja (Krīṣṇa I Rāṣṭra- kūṭa), 405.
Krīṣṇarāja (Paramān), 379.
Krita, 289.
Krivī, 29, 42.
Krumi, 28.
Kṣaharitas, 194, 195, 215, 216.
Kṣatraujas (Kṣemajit), 113.
Kṣatri, 139.
Kṣatriya Jñātrika, 98.
Kṣemā, 93.
Kṣemadhārman, 113.
Kṣemagupta, 341, 348.
Kṣemajit, 113.
Kṣitiplā, 324, 374.
Kṣudraka (king), 92n.
Kṣudrakas (clan), 136.
Kubera, 245.
Kuberanāgā, 250, 278.
Kuhdā, 28.
Kuḥja-Viṣṇuvardhana-Viṣama- siddhi, 398, 446.
Kuḍal-Saṅgamam, 467, 467n.
Kudamukku, 484.
Kudumiyamalai, 7.
Kudumiyamalai (Kudumiyamalai), 447.
Kudūra, 394.
Kuṭṭala Katiphises, 208, 222, 234.
Kuṭṭala Kasa (Katiphises), 222.
Kukura, 191, 213.
Kulacandra, 383, 387.
Kulaipa, 218.
Kulaka, 92n.
Kulasēkharā, 485.
Kullu, 299.
Kulottunāga I (Kulottunāga), 398n, 423, 468, 469, 469n, 470, 471, 471n, 476, 480.
Kulottunāga II, 471.
Kulottunāga III, 471, 471n, 485.
Kulpak, 464.
Kulūtas, 324.
Kulūvala, 434.
Kumāon, 244, 299.
Kumāra (Kumāragupta II), 267n.
Kumāradevi, 259, 266.
Kumāragupta I, 257n, 258, 259, 260, 261, 265, 267, 266, 272, 274.
Kumāragupta II, 264, 266, 267n, 272, 281.
Kumāragupta III, 286.
Kumārājiva, 277.
Kumārapala (of Anhilwāda), 389, 389n, 444.
Kumārapala (Pāla), 335, 362.
Kumārāja (of Assam), 308, 351.
Kumāraviśnub, 441.
Kumbakonam (Kumbhakonam), 452, 484.
Kūndāvā, 398n, 462, 469.
Kumārah, 158.
Kun Pāṇḍya, 483.
Kunāla, 179, 179n, 182.
Kundagrama, 98.
Kundalavāna, 229.
Kundavvai (Kūndāvā), 462, 469.
Kūnika, 94.
Kuntala, 278, 279, 371, 418, 479n.
Kuntalas, 324.
Kureṭṭha, 326n.
Kurram, 28, 342n, 448.
Kuru, 84, 316.
Kurukṣetra, 41, 67.
Kurumbas, 442.
Kurus, 29, 42, 43, 41, 46, 68, 84, 130.
Kurush I, 113.
Kurush II, 113.
INDEX OF NAMES

Kushān (Kushāna), 221n.
Kušika, 328.
Kušinagār (Kušinārā), 83, 86, 101, 164n, 233, 256, 299.
Kuṣṭhalapura, 243.
Kusumadhva, 185.
Kuṭub-Minar, 232.
Kuṭṭahur, 243.
Kuveranāga, 238.
Kwen-mo, 221.

L

Lacchadi, 462, 464.
Ladakh, 225n.
Lagatūrmān, 340.
Lahore, 339, 342.
Lajā, 318.
Lakh (Lakṣarāja), 386.
Lakuṇḍi, 427, 436.
Lakṣarāja, 386.
Lakṣmadeva Paramāna, 372.
Lakṣmana, 63, 319, 319n.
Lakṣmī, 411.
Lakṣmīdham, 329.
Lalgudi, 450.
Lallādīrya (Mukāpīḍa), 316, 344, 345, 355.
Lalitaśatana, 177, 179, 321.
Lallīya (Śāhī), 340, 346.
Lalghān, 342.
Lankā, 63, 170, 448, 456.
Larkana, 16.
Lāṭā, 279, 292, 380, 381, 382, 386, 397, 400n, 405, 418, 428, 430.
Later: Guptas, 286, 292, 298n, 351, 401.
Later Utspah, 347.
Laṭṭalīm (Lāṭīrī), 404.
Lauhitya, 282, 287, 331.
Launiyā-Parārāj, 177.
Lavanasprāśa, 390.
Lendulura, 394.
Leyden, 414n, 480n.
Liaka Kusulaka, 214.
Limaṭike, 433.
Little Yüeh-chi, 221.
Livy, 1.
Lohana, 348.
Lohitya, 331.
Lokkot, 349.
Lomahapana, 5.
Lumbinal, 100, 164.

M

Ma'bar, 486, 488.
Maccha, 84.
Macedonia, 118, 141, 168.
Madanapāla (Gāhaḍavāla), 328.
Madanapāla (Pāla) 362, 364.
Madanapur, 377.
Mandanasāgar, 378.
Mandanavarman (Candella), 372, 376, 377, 378, 388.
Mādhava (feudatory), 379.
Mādhava (Gāṅga king), 434.
Mādhavagupta, 287, 303, 314.
Mādhavasena, 315.
Mādhiḷāṇagar, 365n.
Mādhuban, 292n, 293, 299, 309.
Mādhurā (Madura), 481.
Madhurāntaki, 469.
Mādhyadesa, 41, 43, 47, 63, 68, 109, 192n, 254, 255, 269, 321, 407, 421.
Mādhyāmikā, 183, 204, 206.
INDEX OF NAMES

Mahāśena, 90n.
Mahāśemagupta, 287, 292, 335.
Mahāśenagupta, 292.
Mahāvīra, 86, 94, 97, 98, 99n.
Mahendra-Vikrama, 446.
Mahendra (Mahendragiri), 242.
243, 252.
Mahendra (Maurya prince), 170,
170n, 242.
Mahendra (of Piṭapura), 242.
Mahendrapāla I, 339, 322.
323, 346, 358, 381.
Mahendrapāla II, 321, 379.
Mahendravādī, 447.
Mahendravarman I, 398, 446.
447, 434, 433, 436.
Mahendravarman II, 400, 449.
Mahendrāyudha (Mahendrapāla I), 322n.
Mahēśvarapura, 399.
Mahīpāla (Pāla), 339, 360, 361.
Mahīpāla (Prathāha), 319, 323.
324, 325, 370, 374, 413, 413.
Mahīsāsândal, 169.
Mahīspāladeva (Mahīpāla Prathāha), 322n.
Mahīṣmat, 395.
Mahīṣmati, 84, 369.
Mahīśaṭṭhi (Mahīṣmati), 84.
Mahmūd (of Ghuzni), 5, 326.
339, 342, 349, 557n, 573.
376, 387.
Mahobā, 333, 370, 377, 378.
Mahodaya, 324, 412.
Mahārāja, 414.
Mira, 112, 212n.
Maitrihās, 110.
Maitraka, 283, 283n, 284n.
Maitreyī, 49.
Majjhāntika, 169.
Majjhima, 169.
Makkaḥali-Gosāla, 97n.
Malabār, 243, 397, 401, 436.
439, 440, 490.
Malai-Nādu, 462, 487.
INDEX OF NAMES

Mālakūṭa, 489.
Mālakand, 119n.
Malanādu, 445.
Mālāvas, 136, 216, 244, 374, 397, 445.
Mālay, 246n, 276n, 381, 440, 463, 465, 477.
Mālayavarman, 326n.
Mālāyas, 216.
Māldives, 462, 464.
Māliya, 284n.
Mālkhed, 379, 403, 404, 410, 424, 464.
Mālīs, 83, 86.
Māllikārjuna, 389.
Mālloi, 136, 137, 137n, 138, 244.
Māmbanās (Mambarūs), 216.
Māṃmāta, 313.
Māmūlanāt, 149.
Mānavamma, 448.
Mānavyatt, 417, 432.
Māndagapattu, 447.
Māndanis, 144.
Māndapikā, 379.
Māndasor, 216n, 219, 2630, 282, 282n.
Māndawar, 298.
Māndhāśā, 84, 218, 369.
Māndor, 319.
Māṇḍu (Māṇḍū), 384, 385, 420.
Māṅgalarāja (Māṅgaleśā), 396.
Māṅgaleśā, 396, 402.
Māngraon, 287n.
Māṇikyaśaya, 226, 226n.
Mānidangalasū, 466n.
Mānippalavān, 442.
Māniyāgarha, 373.
Mānkī, 416.
Māṇuākkaśakaśaka, 464.
Mānakhoda, 413n.
Māneśa (Māneśhā), 170, 177.
Mānśūrah, 339.
Māntārāja, 242.
Mānu, 5, 490, 73, 77, 76, 77, 79, 80, 103n, 123, 127, 127n, 139, 140, 152n, 184, 288.
Māo, 212.
Mānarvarman-Avaniśūlāmaṇi, 483.
Mānarvarman Kulaṭekhara, 487, 488.
Mānarvarman Rājasimha I, 483, 491.
Mānarvarman Rājasimha II, 484.
Mānarvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya I, 472, 486.
Mānarvarman Sundara Pāṇḍya II, 486.
Mānarvaras, 443.
Marco Polo, 488.
Marcus Aurelius, 177.
Māru, 218, 406.
Mārutas, 39.
Mārwar, 321.
Marītās (Maritās), 39.
Maṣakavati, 119n.
Māski, 171, 176n, 177.
Māssaga, 119, 119n, 120, 120n, 121, 144.
Massano, 119.
Mā'sūd I, 332n, 371.
INDEX OF NAMES

Ma’sūd III, 328.
Māt, 232.
Mārāṇga-Dīvākara, 313.
Mathana, 362.
Mathanadeva, 318n.
Māthava, 46n.
Māthūra, 84, 90, 105, 185, 206, 214, 213, 211n, 226, 227, 231, 232, 233, 237, 248, 250n, 251, 253, 259, 298, 300, 481.
Matīla, 241.
Matipūra, 298, 300.
Mātrīcesa, 251.
Mātrīvisnu, 263, 266, 280.
Matsya, 47, 68n, 84, 316.
Matsyas, 45, 84, 321.
Mau, 377.
Mauakes (Maues), 213.
Maues, 212, 273.
Mauya (Maurya), 213, 10, 104, 174, 179, 180, 182, 183, 184, 199, 209, 316, 343, 354, 394, 395, 397, 439, 452.
Māyā, 100.
Mayādavolu, 445n.
Mayūra, 313.
Mayūrakhandi, 403n.
Mayūrasarmman, 452, 453, 443, 454.
Meerut, 67.
Megasthenes, 3, 125, 150, 152, 214, 155, 156, 156n, 157, 192, 193n, 209, 439, 482, 482n.
Meghanāda, 379n.
Meghavanna (Meghavarna), 345.
Meghavarna, 245, 246.
Meher (Mers), 283.
Mehruni, 242, 232, 276.
Mekal, 260n.
Mekhalas, 324.
Mecager, 123.
Menander, 8, 181, 204, 204n, 205, 201n, 206, 206n, 209, 210, 211n.
Mēros, 179.
Merpāḍī, 463.
Merutunga, 380, 381, 383, 418.
Mesopotamia, 16, 20, 24, 27.
Mēwar, 334.
Mhow, 374.
Midnapur (Midnapore), 233, 360, 464.
Mihira Bhoja, 321, 522, 346.
Mihirakula (Mihiragula), 281, 282, 283, 344.
Mihira, 186.
Mithila, 266.
Muvār, 438.
Minhājuddin, 6, 366.
Minnagara, 216n.
Mīr Jumā, 333.
Mīrkhond, 6.
Mīrzapūr, 23, 85, 231.
Mītāni, 38, 39.
Mīthilā, 46, 73, 86, 98, 300, 421.
Mithridates II, 212.
Mīyānalladevi, 368.
Mōdoura, 482.
Mōres, 141.
Moga, 212, 214.
Moggallāputta Tissa, 165, 169.
Mō-ha-la-ch’a (Mo-ha-la-ta), 295, 399.
Mokhalis, 288.
Mō-la-po, 284.
Mō-lo-kio-ch’a, 489.
Monghyr, 93, 299, 320, 328, 356, 357n, 389, 385.
Montgomery, 16, 137.
INDEX OF NAMES

Mom, 213.
Moriyas, 36, 146, 146n.
Morkhand, 403n.
Mousikanas, 139, 140, 144.
Mrigaśikhāvana, 238.
Mubārak, Sultān, 429.
Mudgagiri (Moughyr), 320, 328, 336, 358, 363.
Muhammad ibn Bakhtyār, 353, 366.
Muhammad ibn Kāsim, 357.
Mukhalingath, 367.
Muktrāpida (Lalitāditya), 343.
Mulaka, 195.
Mūlārāja, 383, 386, 418.
Mūlān, 336, 337, 339, 416.
Mūrtrumādi-Cojadeva, 461.
Mūrmādi-Coj-Mandalam, 462.
Mūnda-Sāvalkas, 971n.
Mūnja, 380.
Mūnjasāgara, 380.
Murā, 149, 146n.
Muralas, 324.
Murundas, 247n.
Mussangi, 464, 464n.
Musika, 200.
Mūsikanagara, 200n.
Musikas, 139.
Mutibas, 392n.
Mu-to-pi, 344.
Muttaraiyat, 459.
Muyangi, 464, 464n.
Muzaffarpur, 81, 86, 319.
Muzitris, 441, 490.

N

Nama-Bhaka-Nābhapamtis, 172.
Nadiā, 366.
Nadol, 388.
Nāga Karkotaka, 544.
Nāgabhata I (Nāgabhata), 319-20, 338.
Nāgadda, 241.
Nāganikā, 194.
Nagod, 171.
Nāgojī, 313n.
Nāgpur, 123n, 384n.
Nāgar, 181, 204.
Nāgārjuna, 231.
Nāgārjunī, 179, 289.
Nāgā, 234, 247, 247, 259, 442, 443.
Nāgasena, 243.
Nāgāvalokha, 319.
Nahapāna, 197, 213, 216, 217, 217n.
Nakah-ī-Rustām, 7, 115.
Nāl, 16, 24.
Nālandā, 219n, 267n, 274, 286, 291n, 312, 312n, 313n, 317, 318, 358n.
Nalās, 393, 399n.
Nalavādi, 395n.
Nānāghat, 192, 193, 198n, 199.
Nanda (Gandā), 376.
Nandārāja, 200, 201.
Nandas, 109, 111n, 122, 113, 146, 147, 147n, 148, 149, 165, 354.
Nandi (Pallava), 452.
Nandin, 241.
Nandinī, 378.
Nandivardhana, 108n, 113, 114.
Nandivarman, 401, 431.
Nandivarman Pallavanalla, 451, 484.
Nandrum, 147n.
Nannārāja Yudhāsura, 404.
Nannuka, 373.
Nan-teou-mi, 221.
Nānyadeva, 333, 364.
INDEX OF NAMES

Nārada, 76, 79, 80, 80n.
Nārāyaṇa, 530.
Nārāyaṇī, 418n.
Nārāyaṇī (Cālukya), 324, 412.
Nārāyaṇī II, 435, 472, 486.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa (Nāraśaṃgha-
puṭa), 264, 266.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa Bālāditya, 281.
Nārasimhavarman I (Mahā-
malla), 400, 447, 448, 449, 456.
Nārasimhavarman II (Rāja-
simha), 450, 454.
Nāravaridhana, 291.
Nāravaridhana, 388.
Nārāyaṇa, 190.
Nārāyaṇapāla, 317, 318, 319.
Nārāyaṇa, 29, 186, 219, 260n, 261, 322, 324, 369, 392, 409.
Nārāyaṇa, 245.
Nārāyaṇa, 245.
Nārāyaṇapāla, 317, 318, 319.
Nārāyaṇa, 190.
Nārāyaṇapāla, 317, 318, 319.
Nārāyaṇa, 29, 186, 219, 260n, 261, 322, 324, 369, 392, 409.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa (Nāraśaṃgha-
puṭa), 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa (Varaguna I), 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa (Varaguna II), 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraga, 424.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
Nāraśaṃghapuṭa, 484, 491.
INDEX OF NAMES

Oxykanos, 139, 140.
Ozene, 217.

P

Padampawāyā (Padam Pawaḵā), 231, 241.
Padihāra, 325.
Padika, 215.
Padmagupta, 5, 381.
Padmāvatai (Ashoka's queen), 182.
Padmāvatī (Padam-Pawāyā), 231, 241.
Padmāvatī (Udena's queen), 89, 108n.
Padmānā, 86.
Pahlavas, 194, 217, 212n, 213, 218, 220, 222, 252n, 442.
Pañāhā, 107, 195, 198.
Pañjota (Padyota), 89, 90.
Pakoras, 220.
Pakluthun (Pakthaš), 50.
Pakudilī-Kacchāyana, 97n.
Pāladas, 172.
Pālaka, 90, 91.
Pālakkā (Paḷakkādu), 243.
Pālas, 317, 321, 324, 328.
Pālgauta, 243.
Pālimbothra, 155.
Pālkigundu, 177.
Pālava, Paramesvaravarman, 491.
Pālavaraham, 447, 455.
Pallur (Pallalūr), 446.
Pamiru, 26, 225, 253, 343.
Pampi, 319, 433.
Paṅca-gaṅga, 421n.
Paṅcāla, 49, 66, 68n, 84, 181, 204.
Paṅcīlas, 42, 43, 45, 86, 110.
Pan-chao, 225.
Panda, 482.
Pāndavas, 67, 68, 481.
Pāndia, 482.
Pāṇḍu, 66, 68.
Pāṇḍu-leṣa, 195, 196, 216.
Pāṇḍu (Pāṇḍuvas), 68.
Pāṇḍyakāvata, 482.
Pānha, 427, 452n.
Pānuni, 2, 54, 140, 56, 17, 128, 183, 184n, 188, 189, 288, 393, 439, 439n, 481.
Pānąta, 221n, 223n.
Pān-yang, 225.
Pāntaeon, 205.
Pāra, 43.
Pārakeśari Kārikāla Gola, 478n.
Pārakeśarivarman, 461n.
Pārakrama, 485.
Pāramala, 333, 377.
Pāramananda, 333n.
Pāramana, 378, 384, 413, 418, 419.
INDEX OF NAMES

Panamārdi, 335, 377.
Parameśvaravarman (I), 449.
450.
Parameśvaravarman II, 450.
451.
Pamnār, 449.
Pamnajoti, 448.
Pamāṭaka I, 414, 460, 461.
484, 491.
Pamunapa, 84, 89.
Pamaraśūrāma, 110, 140.
Patharghata, 316.
Patiṣṭha, 406.
Parkṣit, 41, 67.
Pārīndas, 172.
Parradatta, 262.
Parnāla, 427.
Paropenisudr, 150, 170.
Pārṣva (Buddhist teacher), 229.
230.
Pārṣva (Tīrthāṅkara), 82, 98.
260.
Pārśvanātha (Jain Pārṣva), 98.
Pārśvika (Buddhist Pārśva), 229.
Parrabhāra, 299, 379.
Pārthā, 547.
Pārthā, 102, 212, 223.
Pārusāni, 28, 29, 128.
Paṛvaṇa, 348.
Parvata, 148.
Pāvarati, 244.
Paśandas, 174.
Paśenādi (Paśenājīt), 85, 91, 92.
93, 94.
Paśupatas, 447.
Patala, 145.
Pātaliputra, 64, 105, 108, 114.
115, 169, 172, 179, 185, 186.
194, 206, 239, 242n, 249.
237, 254, 301.
Patan, 385.
Patañjali, 1, 184n, 185, 186.
188, 205, 288, 440.
Pathan, 50.

Patila, 347.
Patika, 212, 214, 215, 215n.
Patīṭhāna, 107.
Patna, 83, 99, 108n, 158, 328.
319.
Patna (Khandesh district), 427.
Pattadakal, 402, 402n.
Pattalene, 145, 204.
Paṇḍravarādhana, 299, 311, 343.
354, 364.
Paṇurava (Porus), 123, 128.
Pāvā (Pāvāpurī), 83, 86, 99.
Peda-vēgī, 243.
Pehot, 322, 322n, 323, 328 n.
Peithron, 144, 144n.
Pennar, 439, 437.
Perdiccas (Perdikkas), 118, 123.
138.
Petriyar, 490.
Persepolis, 7, 115, 117.
Persia, 21, 97, 115, 116, 123.
302, 399.
Perunarkili, 438.
Peruvanamallur, 450.
Pañashvara (Puruṣāparna or Puruṣa
śaṅkar), 47, 170, 177, 220, 222.
226, 227, 2276, 231, 232, 353.
Peukēātōs, 121, 121n.
Phegetis, 111, 131.
Phegenes, 112, 131.
Philip, 128, 142, 147.
Philippos, 121n, 138, 142n.
Phrañates II, 212.
Phrañates IV, 108n.
Phrañates V, 108n.
Phrônai, 204n.
Piyāva, 31n.
Pilībhīt, 299.
Pilīvalai, 442.
Pimpaṇa, 128, 143.
Pāpōla, 90.
Pipphaliyana, 86.
Piprāṭa, 6.
Piprē, 300.
INDEX OF NAMES

Piṣapura (Piṣapur or Pithāpuram), 242, 397.

Pithānḍa, 243.

Pliny, 8, 134n, 111n, 92n, 193, 441.

Plutarck, 5, 121, 127n, 124, 124n, 130, 130n, 131, 131n, 139, 206, 210.

Podiyil, 149.

Podiyur, 458.

Pokhari (Puṣkara), 216.

Pokharana, 247.

Pokharner, 464.

Poni, 294, 502.

Poona, 192, 195, 216.

Poonch, 122.

Poros, 122n, 125, 124, 125, 126, 126n, 127, 128, 129, 130, 134, 143, 148.

Portikanos, 139n.

Potali (Pota), 54.

Powaks, 578.

Poysalas, 433.

Prabhākara (Prabhākaravardhāna), 292.

Prabhākaradeva, 340-41, 347, 348.

Prabhākaravardhāna, 289, 292.

Prabhāvatī, 270, 278.

Prabhāvatiguptā (Prabhāvatī), 278.

Pradyota, 39, 89n, 90, 90n, 96, 109.

Pradyotan, 109.

Prāgīyotisa, 98, 353, 357.

Prāgīyotisapura, 350.

Prakrutīdyāna, 281.

Prabhānana, 8.

Prājrūnas, 245.

Prasi, 131, 334.

Pratipadraśadā, 430.


Pratīṣṭhāna, 107, 193.

Pravāhāna, 46, 49.

Pravarasena (I, Vākāmaka), 235, 247n, 278.

Pravīra (Pravarasena I), 278.


Prithūdikā, 324.

Prithvīpati I, 452, 484.

Prithvīraja (II), 329n, 330, 331, 336, 336n, 377.

Prithvisena (minister), 257n.

Prithvisena (Prithvisena I), 278.

Prolatāra, 430.

Protenys, 5, 195, 219n, 217, 418n, 440, 458, 482, 492.

Protenys II, Philadelphus, 168, 211n.

Pudukotta, 447, 448, 456, 457.

Puhār, 441, 457.

Pūjyaśa, 435.

Pukkūṣāti, 94.

Pulakesin I, 391, 403, 433.

Pulakesin II, 391n, 395, 297, 297n, 300, 301, 302, 303, 303n, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 402, 433, 446, 448.

Pulamāvi, Vaiśīṣhiputra Śrī, 195.

Pullgure, 413.

Pumlindaka, 190.

Pumlinda, 42, 392n.

Pullur (Pullur), 446.

Pu-lo-ke-she (Pu-lo-ki-sha), see Pulakesin.

Punch, 344, 348.

Pundras, 42, 392n.

Punjab, 16, 24, 28n, 29, 47, 145, 116, 121, 134, 142n, 143, 145, 147, 148n, 149, 186.
INDEX OF NAMES

Rajapur, 242.
Rais, 337.
Rajadhurtaja (I), 424, 463, 466, 480.
Rajadhurtaja (II), 471, 485.
Rajaditya, 414, 460.
Rajasaha (Rajagriha), 105, 107.
Rajagriha, 92, 93, 95n, 101, 169n, 317.
Rajamalla, 434.
Rajamalla IV, 435.
Rajapura, 83, 344.
Rajaraja (I Cola), 398n, 419, 461, 461n, 462, 463, 464, 469, 475, 477, 479, 479n, 480, 481, 491.
Rajaraja II, 471.
Rajaraja III, 471n, 472, 486.
Rajaraja-Colāgāṇā, 469-70.
Rajaraja Gāti, 368.
Rajaraja Mumbadi Cōda, 398n, 469.
Rajaraja Viṣṇuvardhana, 398n, 469.
Rajarājeśvara (temple), 463, 479.
Rajasēkhara 319, 323.
Rajasimha, 460.
Rajasimhēśvara (temple), 450.
Rājasthān, 381n.
Rajasundari, 368.
Rājendra II Cālukya (called afterwards Kulottunga I), 469.
Rājendra II Parakeśari (Rājendradeva II), 467.
Rājendra III, 472.
Rājendra Cōda, 368.
Rājendra Cola II (afterwards Kulottunga I), 398n.

Q

Quintus Curtius, 4.
Quṭb-ud-dīn (Aḥbak), 336, 377, 390.

R

Rācamalla, 413.
Rāihaṇpur, 320, 407n.
Rae Badel, 299.
Rāghava, 361, 369.
Rāhappā, 405.
Rāhula, 100.
Rāi Lakhamaniyā, 365.
Rai Pithaurā (Pritivirāja III), 335.
Raichur, 464.
INDEX OF NAMES

Rājendradeva (Rājendra Cola), 466, 466n, 469
Rājgir, 330.
Rājī, 335.
Rājju, 423.
Rajmahal, 299, 500.
Rajor, 318.
Rājori, 344.
Rajputana, 107, 131, 218, 244,
292, 309, 311, 319, 320, 311,
222, 341, 395, 407.
Rajshāhi, 244, 364.
Rājuvula (Rājjuvula), 314.
Rājyapāla, 341, 326, 339, 371-
Rājyasri, 283, 293, 294, 510.
Rājyavardhana, 287, 293, 293n,
314.
Rāma, 47, 63, 64, 65, 319, 337.
Rāma (Kāca ?), 240n.
Rāma (Parājumāma), 193.
Rāmabhadrā, 321.
Rāmacandra (author), 248.
Rāmacandra (Rāma), 448.
Rāmacandra (Yādava king),
428, 429.
Rāmagāma (Rāma-grāma), 86,
299.
Rāmagupta, 240n, 248, 249,
249n, 266.
Rāmaṇuja, 436, 470, 471, 480.
Rāmapāla, 161, 562, 569n.
Rāmāra (Rāmacandra Yā-
dava), 428.
Ramathā, 324.
Rāméśvaram, 461.
Rāmud, 481.
Rāmugar, 241.
Rampur, 299.
Rāmpuravā, 177.
Rāntrīga, 395.
Rāntrāra, 360, 464.
Rānjuvula, 213.
Ranthambhor, 316.
Rāṣṭika-Petenikas, 171.
Rāṣṭikas, 403.

Rāṣṭrakūtus, 317, 318, 320, 322,
324, 325, 327, 318, 362, 370,
378, 379, 380, 397n, 398n,
401, 403, 404, 404n, 405,
406, 409, 412, 412, 413, 415,
416, 417, 417n, 418, 418n,
421, 426, 431, 435, 434,
431, 460, 481.
Rāthbīl, 400n.
Rāṭhikas, 200, 404, 404.
Rāthor, 327, 403.
Ratna-giti, 396, 431.
Ratnapāla, 332, 422.
Ratnaputa, 372.
Rāṭa (Princ), 409.
Rāṭas (Rāṣṭrakūtap), 409.
Rāṭampādi, 462.
Rāvanā, 63, 65.
Rāvi, 28, 128.
Rāvikṛtī, 402.
Rāvinvarman, 453.
Rāvinvarman Kulaśekhara, 488,
497.
Rawalpindi, 47, 84, 226.
Reddi, 403.
Redi, 396.
Revā, 337, 451.
Revatīdvija, 396.
Rigabhuddattā, 216.
Rohilkhand, 46, 84, 244, 299.
Rohimp, 86.
Rohri, 337.
Rāṣikas, 200n.
Rudra (Rudradāman), 396.
Rudra I (Kākatīya), 497.
Rudradāman, 149, 157n, 171,
178, 193, 196, 217, 217n,
218, 264, 265n, 271.
Rudradeva (All. P. Insc.), 441,
278.
Rudradeva (Kākatīya), 427, 430.
Rudrābhā, 428, 450.
Rudrasena II, 278.
Rudrasena I (Vākṣṭaka), 241,
278.
INDEX OF NAMES

Rudrasena II (Vakāṣṭaka), 250.
Rudrasinha III, 219, 231.
Rummindei, 100, 171, 177.
Rūpan-dehi, 100.
Rūpniith, 177.

S

Sāba-Virasena, 250, 255, 255n, 257n.
Śabarasa, 42, 502n.
Śabuktīgīn (Subuktīgīn), 325, 341, 372, 377.
Śaddī-Candrap, 255n.
Śadānitra, 46n, 47.
Śaffārid Ya’qub ibn Laith, 341.
Śahalya, 111n.
Śahāli, 337.
Śahastam, 177.
Śahṣet-Mahefth, 82, 337n.
Śāhīs (Śāhīs), 327, 339, 340, 341, 342, 347.
Śahīshāhānumāḥ, 246.
Śalendrap, 463.
Śaloddhavas, 314.
Śt. Chrysostrum, 209.
Śt. Thomas, 220, 220n.
Śaidunāga, 149.
Śakā-dvīpa, 212.
Śaka-Murunadas, 246, 297.
Śaka-Pahlava, 210.
Śakai, 211n.
Śakala, 186, 187, 203, 206, 210, 244.
Śakambharī, 325, 333, 334, 386, 389.
Śakastan, 212.

Śakatāla, 117.
Śāketa, 64, 82, 185, 201, 206, 225, 259.
Śakṭi-Srī, 194.
Śaktivarman, 398n, 462.
Śākyamuni, 228.
Śākyas, 83, 86, 88, 91, 92, 92n, 100, 146.
Śāla, 433.
Śālanākāyanas, 394.
Śālastamba, 312.
Śālātura, 57.
Śalem, 13, 484, 490.
Śāliūka, 182.
Śālivāhana, 193n.
Śalvas, 43.
Śāmand (Śāmanta), 340, 341, 347.
Śāmanta, 340, 341.
Śāmanta-deva (Śāmanta), 347.
Śāmantasena, 364.
Śamāpā, 172.
Śamarkand, 202.
Śāmataṭa, 244, 299, 311, 334.
Śambhar, 322.
Śambasai, 138.
Śambhalpur, 242.
Śambhar, 334, 335, 386.
Śambhu (Śambhus), 139.
Śambhus, 139, 139n.
Śanāthantra, 170.
Śāngramā (Śāngramā), 348.
Śāṅgāṃavijayottugavaran, 461.
Śāṅkāya, 253.
Śāṅkhopha, 287n.
Śatpadi (Śampati), 179, 180.
Śampati, 179, 182.
Śamudragupta, 7, 8, 231, 239, 240, 240n, 243, 241, 242, 243, 244, 244n, 246, 247, 247n, 248, 250, 273, 260, 271, 272, 274, 276, 282, 331, 332, 339, 331, 333, 444.
INDEX OF NAMES

Sativādaka, 293.
Satiyogita, 530, 333.
Sanakaśika (Sanakāṇika), 241.
Sāṅchī, 177, 188, 192, 194, 230, 232, 233n, 259.
Sandhyākaramandala, 4, 361.
Sandrakottos, 6.
Sangāla, 128, 129, 141.
Sang-gaicos, 121n.
Sanjana, 249, 318, 319, 407n, 408, 410.
Saṅjaya-Belurṭhaputta, 97n.
Saṅkara (Yādava), 429.
Saṅkarācārya, 410.
Saṅkaragana, 596n.
Saṅkarācārya, 249.
Saṅkaravarman, 325, 340, 346, 347.
Sankisa, 299.
Sāntana, 49.
Sārangadhitra, 427.
Sārusvatī, 386.
Sarmanc, 144.
Saravati, 336.
Sarva, 408n.
Sarvanāth, 287n.
Sarvavarman (author), 199.
Sarvavarman (Maukhari), 289.
Sātyā, 49.
Śātānaka, 287, 293, 293n, 294, 296, 297, 331, 334.
Śātigupta, 127.
Śatadhana (Satadhanvan), 182.
Śadāputra, 299.
Śātāhāni-rama, 444.
Śatakarṇi, 192, 193, 194, 200, 218.
Śatānika Śātājita, 43.
Śatārā, 432.
Śātavāhanas, 191, 192, 192n, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 197n, 198, 199, 212n, 216, 218, 294, 444, 444.
Śātīraputra, 168, 171, 193, 391.
Śatrunjaya, 390n.
Śarirakāma Jabala, 46n.
Śatyākṣrya (of Kalyāṇa), 419, 462.
Śaubaṅgītā, 131.
Śaugor, 219, 261.
Śauvira, 68, 205.
Śavatthi (Śavatthi), 82, 103, 107.
Śeistan, 117, 212, 219.
Seleukos (Nikator), 121, 131, 149, 150, 150n, 176, 208.
Śendamangalam, 472, 487.
Śeng-po-ta, 316.
Śenguttruvan, 490.
Śenjya, 93.
Śerci, 204n.
Śetali, 193.
Śevena, 430.
Śeven Pagodas (temple), 449, 456.
Śhah Hossain, 384.
Śhah Mir, 349.
Śhahabad, 87, 286, 287n.
Śhahbāzgārhi (Shāh bāz gārhi), 170, 177.
Śhahjahānpur, 309.
Śhapur, 287.
Śhams-ud-din, 349.
Śhan, 333.
Śhe-lo-ye-to, 314.
Śhe-lang-kia (Śatānaka), 293.
Śhore (temple), 450, 456.
INDEX OF NAMES

Shrutias, 59.
Sialkot, 47, 186, 201, 244.
Siao Yuch-chi, 221.
Silboi, 156.
Sidhapur, 177.
Siddharāja (Jayasimha), 319.
Siddharāja Jayasimha, 328, 329, 376.
Siddhārtha, 98.
Sigerdis, 204n.
Sīgra, 50.
Silābuddin (Ghorl), 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334.
Silānaya, 198.
Silharas Rāi, 537.
Sīhwān, 159n.
Sīkharavāmin, 277n.
Sīlidīya (Harṣa), 284, 285, 295, 296, 311, 314n.
Sīlidīya VII, 283.
Sīlidīya Dharadvāsī, 283.
Sīlidīvyasārga (Sīlidīya-Harṣa), 303.
Sīlānaya, 427, 428, 431, 433n, 432.
Sīlārās (Silāhāra), 431.
Sīnhadavāya (Sihadaya), 198.
Sīnhala (Sīnhaladvipa), 414, 468.
Sīnhaputta, 344.
Sīnharāja, 348.
Sīnḥavīśōu, 445, 446, 451, 454, 483.
Sīnḥavīṃaputtarāyana, 445.
Sīmuka, 191, 193.
Sīmyūs, 30n.
Sīnd, 16, 18, 19, 24, 121, 342, 1422, 204, 205, 297, 296, 299, 300, 336, 337, 338, 388n, 339, 387.
Sīnḥthu, 28, 113, 187, 320.
Sīnḥthu, 381.
Sīnḥtrijā, 381.
Sīnḥtra, 68.
Sīnḥtrilma, 139n.
Sīṅghana, 427, 427n, 428, 431, 432, 436.
Sīṅghala (Sīṅghala), 246.
Sīpylos, 203.
Sīrīn, 234, 299.
Sīr-Sukh, 228n.
Sīuru, 409.
Sīru Tonda, 448.
Sīlkottas, 127.
Sīsuka, 191.
Sīṣunāgā, 93n, 109, 110, 113, 114.
Sītā, 63, 65.
Sīvadeva, 332.
Sīvamārā (Muṭṭamaṇa), 406, 407, 434.
Sīvarāja, 362.
Sīvas, 30.
Sīvaskandavarmana, 443, 444.
Sīvīra, 116.
Sīyak-Hara, 379, 380, 413.
Sīyamangalā, 447.
Skandagupta, 260n, 261, 262, 262n, 263, 264, 266, 274.
Sīyān, 116.
Sodāsa, 215, 215n.
Soddhala, 313.
Sodhral, 139.
Sodīsana, 222.
Sōläṅkī (Sōläṅkī), 383, 394n, 395.
Sōlomana, 440.
Sōma, 446.
Sōmadeva, 331.
Sōmaņthi, 387, 389.
Sōmaśarma, 382.
Sōmāvāṇus, 322.
Sōmeśvara I (Ahavamalla), 312, 361, 364, 372, 383, 384, 420, 421n, 422, 461, 466, 467, 468.
Sōmeśvara II (Bhuvanakamalla), 422, 423, 468, 469.
Sōmeśvara III (Bhūlokaṇama), 424.
Sōmeśvara IV, 423, 426, 436.
INDEX OF NAMES

Sona (Sona), 91, 170.
Sone, 108, 133, 324.
Songir, 133, 172, 173.
Sonpat, 291n.
Sonpur, 242.
Sooolobhunjun, 403n.
Sopāra, 171, 177, 198, 440.
Sophasensoe, 203, 209.
Sophta, 133, 135n, 44.
Sopur, 346.
Southivati, 83.
South Arcot, 447, 455, 467n.
South Rādha, 464.
Southam Kodala, 464.
Sovideva, 426.
Spalagadames, 219.
Spalahoets, 219.
Spalirises, 216, 219.
Śravanabelgola, 435.
Śravasti (Śravasti), 82, 101, 167, 226, 253, 256, 299, 311.
Śrī, 93.
Śrī-Mārā Śrī-Vallabha, 484.
Śrī-Mārā-Vijayottungavārman, 461.
Śrī Pujaṃvī, Vāśliṣṭhiputra, 191, 196.
Śrī Purambiyam, 412, 484.
Śrī Sānantdeva, 341.
Śrī-Sahadāna, 349.
Śrī-Vallabha-Mātaratāja, 466.
Śrī-Vijaya, 463, 468.
Śrī Yājñat Sātakarni, 196.
Śrīharṣa (author), 331.
Śrīharṣa (of Assam), 322, 335, 368.
Śrījiñāna, 360.
Śrīkuntha, 291.
Śrīṅagar, 170, 171, 345.
Śrīṅjayas, 29.
Śrīpurūsa, 434, 451.
Śrīrājam, 470, 486, 487n.
Śrīśaila, 401.
Śrīśarmman, 379.
Śrūng-btsan-Gampo, 314, 352.
Śrugham, 299.
Śrutasena, 43.
Śrī, 211.
Śrāmbha, 407.
Śhrapāla, 359.
Śrabo, 1, 128, 128n, 133, 133n, 139n, 138n, 160, 183, 204, 209, 482.
Śrato I, 206, 215.
Śrato II, 215.
Śrābhagāsena, 203, 209.
Śudarsana, 218, 262.
Śudās, 29, 30, 31n.
Śuddhodana, 87, 100.
Śūdraka, 453.
Śūgh, 299.
Śugrīva, 63.
Śūl Vihār, 226, 226n.
Śuṇā, 100.
Śuṣṭhās, 187, 190.
Śukalpa, 111n.
Śukanā, 49.
Śukkura, 139.
Śuktimati, 83.
Śulaimān, 1, 222, 415.
Śulikas, 289.
Śumāyā, 111n.
Śumana (Śuṣṭha), 163, 182.
Śumatra (Śumātra), 277n, 309, 338.
Śumer, 24, 25.
Śumitra, 92n.
Śummat (Śumantha), 387.
Śumsumagiri, 85, 90n.
Śundara (Gola), 461, 488.
Śūngas, 183, 184, 184n, 187n, 188, 189, 189n, 190, 191, 193, 207, 272n.
Śung-yun, 217n.
Śunādhā, 96.
Śūṃ (dynasty), 365.
Śūṃpāla II, 361.
Śūminsena, 84, 110.
Śūrakīncānanda, 267.
INDEX OF NAMES

Surästrä (Saurästrä), 218.
Surmi (Shrät), 409, 432.
Surastra (Saurästrä), 195n.
Surathä, 92n.
Süraçéma, 84, 90.
Sürawarman II, 348.
Sürya (Shurias), 59.
Süryavarahäla, 532.
Susa, 138.
Süšürräman, 190, 191.
Süšima, 160, 163, 182.
Süsthüvararman, 287, 351.
Süsunia, 241.
Süétüdri (Sutic), 28.
Süvarçabhümä (Burmä), 170.
Süvarçadvipa, 357.
Süvarçagirä (Songir), 213, 172, 173.
Süväștu, 28.
Süviliäkha, 218.
Suyašas, 179, 182.
Suya, 346.
Suyapura, 346.
Süvästrä, 300.
Svetaketu Arunçya, 460.
Swämidadatta, 242.
Swar, 83, 211, 253.
Syr Daryä, 212.
Syria, 168.

T

Tabäri, 302, 399.
Tagara (Tet), 198, 431.
Ta-his, 222.
Ta-lo-pi-ch'a, 449.
Ta Yüeh-chi, 221.
Tai-Toung, 302.
Talks, 352, 352n.
Talla II, 415.
Tailanga, 427.
Tailapa, 417, 417n, 418, 418n, 419, 462.
Tailapa II, Çülükya, 380, 413.
Täjikäsa, 552.

Takti-i-Bählä, 220, 2200, 222.
Takkam-lödam, 360, 462.
Takkolam, 414, 461, 461n, 483.
Talagundä, 432n, 443.
Talai-şälam-kädu, 483.
Talaiyänangänam, 483.
Talavanapura, 434.
Talkid ("Talkad"), 453, 455n, 454, 455, 460.
Tamilakam, 428, 4380, 441n.
Tamilis, 438, 471.
Tämraliplä (Tamluk), 107, 172, 253, 299, 314.
Tämraparnä (Tämraparni), 168, 393, 481.
Tändabutti, 464.
Tandantośam, 453.
Tang, 502, 343.
Tanjayunkonda, 460.
Tanjore (Tañjäpurū or Tañ-ja-vaś or Tañjavur, or Tan-juvaś), 398n, 414, 457, 418, 459, 459n, 465, 465, 466, 472, 479, 483, 486.
Täntäka, 405.
Täranätha, 5, 160n, 180n, 185, 186, 187, 203, 333, 337n.
Taraoni, 350, 337.
Tarddevädi, 418n.
Tarájanapälä, 340.
Tärsih, 440.
Tästhágaragaṇa, 274.
Taula, 141.
Taxiles, 122.
Tchen-tö-lo-pi-li, 345.
INDEX OF NAMES

Tedandikas, 97n.
Tejasparna, 390n.
Tel-el-Amarna, 38.
Teloeas, 203.
Teléangâna, 450.
Telugu, 392, 443.
Ter, 431.
Tewar, 370.
Thakkiiya (Thakkiya), 323, 347.
Thâkuri Amâsuvarman, 332.
Thâna, 171, 177, 196, 431, 432.
Theodoroas, 211.
Thera Nâgasena, 206.
Tiastenes, 217.
Tibet, 314, 331, 334, 333, 335, 363.
Tilaurâ-kot, 85.
Tinnevelly, 149, 438, 439, 481.
Tippera, 244, 359.
Tiprî (Tiprî-bhukti), 46, 333, 318, 360, 564, 571.
Tirufââna-Sambandar, 447, 455, 485.
Tirukkoâlîr, 467n.
Tirumalaî, 360, 464, 465.
Tiruppurâthiyam, 464.
Tiruvâdourâ, 478n.
Tiruvâlângâdu, 414n.
Tiruvengâdu, 467n.
Tissa (Tisya), 182.
Tisya, 162.
Tisya-râkâtâ, 179, 182.
Tivara, 179, 182.
Togalla, 382.
Tomaras, 329n.
Tondâyâr, 442.
Tondâmãdâlu, 414, 442, 443, 452, 460.
Tondâ, 441n.
Topa, 177.
Toramâla, 266, 280, 281.
Toramâla (Toramâla-Kama-
luca), 341, 347.
Tosâli (Dhauli), 153, 172, 173.
Trânkâyi-lu, Mahâraâlî, 194.
Travancore, 459, 484, 487, 492, 491.
Trichinopoly, 448, 450, 456, 457, 470, 479.
Trigarta, 341.
Trikâânas, 427.
Trikûta, 279.
Trilocanâpâla (Pratîhâra), 326.
Trilocanâpâla (Sâhîl), 340, 342, 349.
Tripâradâcos, 142n, 150.
Tripûr, 369, 369n, 370, 370n, 371n, 372, 373, 380, 382, 411, 413.
Triâlî, 98.
Tritus, 29.
Trivandum, 454.
Tukhâristan, 344.
Tu-lo-po-po-ta, 284.
Tuâvâs, 436.
Tummanâ, 381.
Tûnga (Khass), 348.
Tûnga (river), 467n.
Tûngabhâdî, 422, 423, 428, 464, 467, 468.
Tusmâyâ, 168.
Turukas, 341, 349, 382.
Turvâsâs, 29, 42.
Tuâspa, 171, 171n, 173.
Tusrattâ, 39.
Tyâgâsamudra (Vikrama Coja), 471.
Tyre, 44c.
Tyrosis, 128.

U

Uccangâdu, 464n.
Uccakalâra Mahârâla Sarva-
nâtha, 287n.
Uccala, 349.
Udbhândâpur, 327, 341.
INDEX OF NAMES

Udagai, 462.
Udayacandra, 451.
Udayaditya, 371, 384, 384n, 388.
Udayagiri, (near Bhilsa), 245, 250, 251n, 257n.
Udayagiri, (Purba district), 199.
Udayana, 89, 89n, 108n.
Udbhuta, 545.
Uddaka Rama-putta, 100.
Uddalaka Aruni, 26n.
Uddanapura, 359.
Udana, (Udayana), 84, 89, 89n, 90, 108n.
Udepur, 379, 380, 381, 384, 384n.
Udhita, 309.
Ugrasena, (Janamjaya’s brother), 41.
Ugrasena, (Mahapadma), 109n.
Ugrasena, (of Pallakka), 245.
Ugrashravas, 3.
Ulugh Khan, 390.
Unä, 325, 385.
Und, (Und), 122, 226.
Unmittavanti, 347, 348.
Upagupta, 169.
Upendra, 379.
Urja, (Uragapura), 410, 417, 419, 486.
Urśa, 134, 344, 347.
Uruvela, 100, 101.
Uttaradida, Śaka, 198, 216.
Uttarayana, 43, 47.
Uṣkūt, 233.

U-ṣsē-ki-lə (Huṣkapura), 233n.
Uttaka, 300, 337, 369, 369n, 371.
Utpalarāja, 380.
Utpalas, 345, 346, 347, 348.
Uttama (Cola), 461.
Uttamahadhras, 216.
Uttara, 170.
Uttarakotāla, 328.
Uttarāpatha, 392.
Uttirā-Lādam, 465.
Uvima Kavitha, 223, 223n.

Vācaknavī, 49.
Vacchas (Vaṭyas), 83.
Vadhryasva, 31n.
Vaghe, 390, 390n, 427.
Vahlikas, 212, 252n.
Valumbas, 460.
Vaidyadeva, 362.
Vaidyanātha, 430.
Vaikkara, 450.
Valkunthaparamula, 411.
Vainyagupta Dwādaśaditya, 267.
Vaśathapayana, 45.
Vaivasvata, 228.
Vaiḥeska (Vaiḥeska or Vaiḥospa, 251n, 252, 252n.
Vajirā, 91, 93.
Vajī (Vajjies), 83.
Vajjīs, 88.
Vajramitra, 190.
Vajrāyudhā, 313, 345.
Vākāta, 277.
Vākātyāka, 233, 230, 238, 277, 278, 278n, 279, 394, 443.
Vākpata, 4, 317.
Vākpata-Muñila, 380, 381, 382, 418, 419.
Valabhī, 283, 283n, 284, 285, 286, 296, 299, 301, 385.
INDEX OF NAMES

Vallavan, 442.
Valanādu, 450.
Vallabha, 410n.
Valālasena, 361.
Vallān, 447, 451.
Vālmiki, 62, 64, 481.
Vāmana, 345.
Vāmanasthali, 386.
Varaha, 85.
Vāsanāsā, 332.
Vānapara, 277.
Vānavāst, 397.
Vānga, 252, 396, 409, 422.
Vāṅgāla-deśa, 360, 461.
Vāntpur, 346.
Vāpāra, 531.
Vāranguṇa II, 412, 484.
Vāranguṇavarman (Vāranguṇa II), 419, 484.
Vārāhamihira, 232n, 273.
Vārānasī 82, 109, 299, 517, 370.
Vārāhamāna, 98.
Vārāhini, 361.
Vārman, 361.
Vārtyavardhana, 109.
Vāsabha-Khattriyā, 92.
Vāsantapāla, 319.
Vāsias, 43.
Vāsālī, 139.
Vāsvavādattā, 89.
Vāsiṣṭha, 532.
Vāsiṣṭha, 50, 59, 578.
Vāsiṣṭhiputra Śrī Pūlamāvi, 195, 196.
Vāssākara, 96.
Vastupāla, 390n.
Vasubandhu, 272.
Vāsudeva (Cāhamāna), 534.
Vāsudeva (Kanva), 189, 189n, 190, 191.
Vāsudeva (Kushan), 233, 234.
Vāsudevapāla, 190.
Vāsuladattā, 89.
Vāsumitra, 183, 187, 190, 229, 231.
Vātāpī, 392, 397, 400, 402, 417, 433, 446, 448, 411.
Vātāpiṇḍa, 448.
Vātāpipura (Vātāpi), 398.
Vatsa, 85, 89.
Vatsabhaṣṭi, 272.
Vatsadēvi, 264, 266.
Vatsarāja (Prathāra), 316, 406.
Vatsas, 321.
Veda-Śrī, 194.
Vṛcchā, 95.
Vṛcchāpura, 416.
Vellār, 417, 466, 478.
Vellāru (Vellār), 417.
Vellurpālayam, 445.
Venā, 484, 491.
Venōnī, 458.
Vesālī, 109.
Vethadēpa, 85.
Vicitra-virya, 66.
Vidabhā (Vidarbha), 191.
Vidarbha, 42, 184, 185, 191, 320, 393.
Videgha Māthava, 46.
Videhā, 41, 40n, 49, 63, 86.
Videhā, 47n, 63, 86.
Vidīśā Dēvi, 182.
Vidūdābha (Vīrudhaka), 92, 92n.
Vidyādharā, 377, 376n, 382.
Vidyādharasdeva (Vidyādharā), 326.
Vighrapāla II, 359.
Vighrapāla III, 361, 372.
Vighraharāja (Cāhamāna king), 331n, 386.
Vighraharāja (Lohara prince), 348.
INDEX OF NAMES

VignaHarāja (IV) Visaladeva, 329, 334.
Vijaya, 481.
Vijaya-Skandavarman, 444.
Vijayabhuk, 468.
Vijayacandra, 329, 334, 377.
Vijayāditya (of Vātāpi), 401, 402.
Vijayāditya (VijayaRāka Silāhāra), 432.
Vijayāditya II (of Vengi), 398n, 407.
Vijayāditya III (Gunaga), 368, 370, 396n, 409, 411.
Vijayāditya V, 372, 398n, 407, 468, 469.
Vijayakirri, 435.
Vijayalaya, 459, 459r.
Vijayanagar, 489.
Vijayapāla (Candella), 372.
Vijayapāla (Pratihāra), 321.
Vijayapāladeva, 318n.
Vijayārūka, 432.
Vijayāsena, 328, 362, 364, 365, 369.
Vijaya, 428, 429
Vijaya (Vijaya), 428, 432.
Vijñānācārya, 424.
Vikkamahāhu, 466.
Vikkamaṇḍu, 466.
Vikrama-Cola, 405n.
Vikrama-Pāṇḍya, 483.
Vikramāditya (patron of the "nine gems"), 231, 271, 410.
Vikramāditya I (of Vātāpi), 400, 400n, 450.
Vikramāditya II (of Kalyāna. See also Vikramāditya VI), 361, 364, 422, 423, 423nn, 467-68, 468, 469.
Vikramāditya II (Vātāpi), 401, 402, 431.
Vikramāditya V (or I (? of Kalyāna), 382, 382n, 419.
Vikramāditya VI (Trihuva-ramalla), 372, 421, 421, 424, 456, 468, 470.
Vikramānaka (Vikramāditya VI), 425.
Vikramapura, 364.
Vikramasillā, 356.
Villardi, 454.
Villaśadevi, 363.
Villavar, 458.
Vima Kadphises, 222, 223, 225, 24, 224, 224, 225.
Vimala, 410.
Vimalāditya (of Vengi), 398n, 462, 469.
Vinayāditya (Hoysala), 435.
Vinayāditya, Satyāśraya (of Vātāpi), 398n, 401.
Vinayakapāla (Mahāpāla Pratihāra), 324, 325.
Vinayakapāla II, 374.
Vindapharṇa (Gondophernes), 220.
Vindhyas, 23, 29, 42, 57, 294, 298, 334, 357, 392, 393, 394.
Vindhyāsakti, 278.
Vipāla, 12.
Vira, 481.
Vira-Ballāla I (Hoysala), 427, 456.
Vira-Ballāla II (Hoysala), 427, 436, 472.
Vira-Ballāla III, 436, 437.
Vira-Coḍa, 398n, 469.
Vira-Nārāyaṇa, 410n.
Vira-Pāṇḍya, 481, 488.
Vira-Rājendrā (Rājakeshara), 423, 467, 468.
Vira-Saivas, 425.
Vira-Sālanegha, 466.
Vira Soma, 425.
Vira-Somēśvara, 487.
ViraBhoja, 427.
INDEX OF NAMES

Virācārya, 410.
Virakṣerālā, 491.
Virakṣukaravāman (Virakṣura), 441.
Virāsenā (author), 411n.
Virāsenā (Nāga), 233.
Virāsenā (of Gandhānā), 180, 203.
Virāsenā (Senā), 364.
Virūṭ-nagarā, 84.
Viravaraṇav, 443.
Viruṭ-discan (Viṣṇuḍāhha), 92, 92n.
Viśākhadatta, 248, 272.
Viśākhayūpā, 91.
Viṣṇuṇās, 30.
Viśāka, 199.
Viṣṇu (Śrīṃuti writer), 78n.
Viṣṇugopa, 243, 344.
Viṣṇugupta (Cāṇakya), 147.
Viṣṇugupta (Candrāditya), 267, 267n.
Viṣṇugupta, Paramēśvara-Śri, 287n.
Viṣṇukindins, 394.
Viṣṇuvardhāna, Bīrīga (Hosēla), 424, 436.
Viṣṇuvardhāna IV (of Venql), 403, 406.
Viṣṇuvardhāna, Rājarāja, 393n.
Viśvānītra, 29, 397, 397n.
Viśvarūpa, 360.
Viśvarūpa, 32.
Viśapāla, 365.
Viśastā, 28, 343, 346.
Viṣṇapatanam, 242n, 243n.
Vonones, 219.
Vṛćī (country), 299.
Vṛćī, 37.
Vṛṣadhraśāja, 242.

W
Waingāngā, 192n.
Wala, 285.
Wani-Dindoti, 320.
Wanthali, 386.
Warangal, 398n, 419, 430, 473, 487, 488.
Wardak, 233n.
Wassaf, 488.
Wara Kudphites, 221n, 223.
Western Čālokayas, see Čālokayas, Western.
White Huns, 279.
Wu-sun, 121.

X
Xandrames, 111.
Xattholi, 139.
Xerxes, 116.

Y
Yādava Varmans of Eastern Bengal, 362.
Yādavarāja, 329.
Yadus, 29, 316, 401, 426.
Yājñā Śri, (Yājñā Śri Śāralārṇi), 196.
Yājñāsenā, 184, 185.
Yājñavalkya (secr), 46.
Yājñavalkya (Śrīṃuti writer), 76, 77, 79.
Yākus, 30.
Yamunā (Jumna), 29, 41, 265, 412.
Yarkand, 225, 226.
Yarkhun, 343.
Yaṣāh-Kara, 372.
Yaṣāhrāska, 348.
Yaṣāhpāla (author), 389n.
Yaṣāhpāla (Prathārā), 326.
Yaṣaka, 34, 36.
Yaṣodhara, 100.
INDEX OF NAMES

Yaśodharman, 264n, 279, 281, 282, 282n.
Yaśovarman (of Kanaui), 316, 317, 344, 355.
Yaśovarman (Paramāra), 388.
Yaśovarman Candella, 3210, 374.
Yaudhheya, 37, 218, 244, 244n.
Yauvanārī, 361.
Yava-bhūmi, 318.
Yavana, 170, 185, 187, 194, 198, 200, 204, 206, 210, 213, 212, 329, 356, 441.
Yavanās, 68.
Yayāti, 327.
Yayātīnagarī, 242.
Yellamaścilli, 243.
Yen-kao-chen, 222.
Ye-tha-i-li, 279.
Yewur, 421.
Yomas (Yavanas), 171.
Yāsamotika, 217.
Yuan Chwang, 3, 111n, 170.


Yuddhamalla, 414.
Yuddhāsthabhi, 66, 67.
Yueh-chi, Siao, 221.
Yueh-chis, Ta, 211, 221, 222.
Yung Hwei, 324n.
Yusufzai, 221.
Yuvarāja II (Kalacuri), 380.

Z

Zoroaster, 97.

Zukur, 233.
HISTORY OF KANAUJ TO THE MOSLEM CONQUEST

By

Dr. Rama Shankar Tripathi
M.A., Ph.D. (London)

SELECT OPINIONS AND REVIEWS

"My hearty congratulations on getting your history into print...I hope it will win for you much glory, as you deserve..." (L. D. Barnett)

"...You have treated it with great vivacity and with soundness of judgment. On the well-worn topic of Harsha, you have succeeded in writing much that is both sound and of substantial value...I have no doubt that you have made a really valuable addition to our historical knowledge of important facts"—(A. B. Keith, 7-4-37).

"You have thus produced a work of reference for which students of Indian history will be grateful"—(E. J. Rapson, 28-4-37).

"...It is a scholarly work, marked by accuracy, precision and sound judgment. The author has carefully examined all the sources and placed before his readers an interesting but unvarnished account of the memorable events that centred around Kanauj. His style is condensed and elegant and his criticism is always dispassionate and to the point. The author is to be congratulated on the fine piece of work which he has produced."—(R. C. Majumdar, Modern Review, July, 1938).

"The book shows considerable research, and is a valuable contribution to ancient Indian History" (The London Times, Literary Supplement, September 18, 1937).

"...Dr. Tripathi’s treatment of his subject is full and critical, and he has given us a contribution to the medieval history of his
native land which is likely to be the standard one until our sources are unexpectedly increased. The book is well written, has an excellent index, is nicely printed, and is pleasing to handle: It has been produced in a manner worthy of its merits."—(John Allan).

"This is an excellent account of the ancient city of Kanauj and the various kingdoms of which it was the capital......Dr. Tripathi shows fairness and discrimination in setting out and elucidating the numerous doubtful points in the political history and in addition provides useful discussions of the references in the inscriptions to fiscal, administrative, and religious affairs—" (Sir Richard Burn, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*).

"...The book is a very good history of a great country and a welcome contribution to scholarship..."—(Lagoe’s *Oriental List*, London, April-June, 1917).

"The present author is one of those distinguished scholars who are devoting themselves to the elucidation of the early mediaeval period of Indian history. His studies about Harṣa are exhaustive and surpass the existing works both in materials and presentation. The Chinese pilgrim’s evidence has been studied in a manner which can rightly claim to be an advance over his predecessors on the subject...The task has been executed with a care and ability on which Dr. Tripathi can rightly be congratulated."—(*The Indian Historical Quarterly*, Calcutta, Vol. XIII, No. 1).

"...Dr. Tripathi has removed a long-felt want in a worthy manner. His survey shows a complete mastery over the sources and a synthetic mind, which, without being perplexed by the conflicts of evidence, has succeeded in firmly grasping the vital factors of this period..."—(*Indian Culture*, Calcutta, April, 1938).

"Dr. Tripathi’s account of this panorama of events is scholarly and readable, and one of its interesting features is his delineation of the social conditions, literary and religious activity, and the forms of civil government under the several dynasties. The subject is a useful contribution to the study of Ancient Indian history..."—(*The Times of India*, Bombay, July 30, 1937).

"Dr. Tripathi has rendered a distinct service to the cause of resuscitating early Indian History by his admirable and scholarly work. He shows a remarkable grasp of events that took place thousands of years ago, methodical skill in the arrangement of all the wealth of materials he has collected from original literary and
epigraphic sources, and his narration of facts is in a very vigorous and polished style. Indeed, one does not know what to admire most—the author’s sound judgment, critical analysis of the available data or literary ability—which are all found in rare combination in this work”—(The Leader, 30-3-37).

"The History of Kanauj is a landmark in the publications bearing on Indian history. It will indeed rank among the most remarkable ventures on history of all times; for if deep research, marshalling into array of historical incidents in their proper setting, due assessing of values on these events and happenings, ripe judgment, logical conclusions, freedom from bias, intelligent outlook and brilliant imagination be the criteria of the excellence of an admirable publication, Dr. Tripathi’s theme will indeed elicit the highest esteem from the worthies of his profession”—(Journal of the B. H. U., Vol. V, No. 3).

"Dr. Tripathi has given ample evidence in this book of possessing a fine sense of proportion, acute critical powers, and scholarly sobriety...Dr. Tripathi is scrupulous even in matters of detail and rational in his outlook. He writes without efforts in an even style suited to the nature of the subject.”—(The Hindustan Times, Magazine Supplement, 14-6-37).

"......This is a monument of historical scholarship.”—(The Servant of India, 12-1-39).